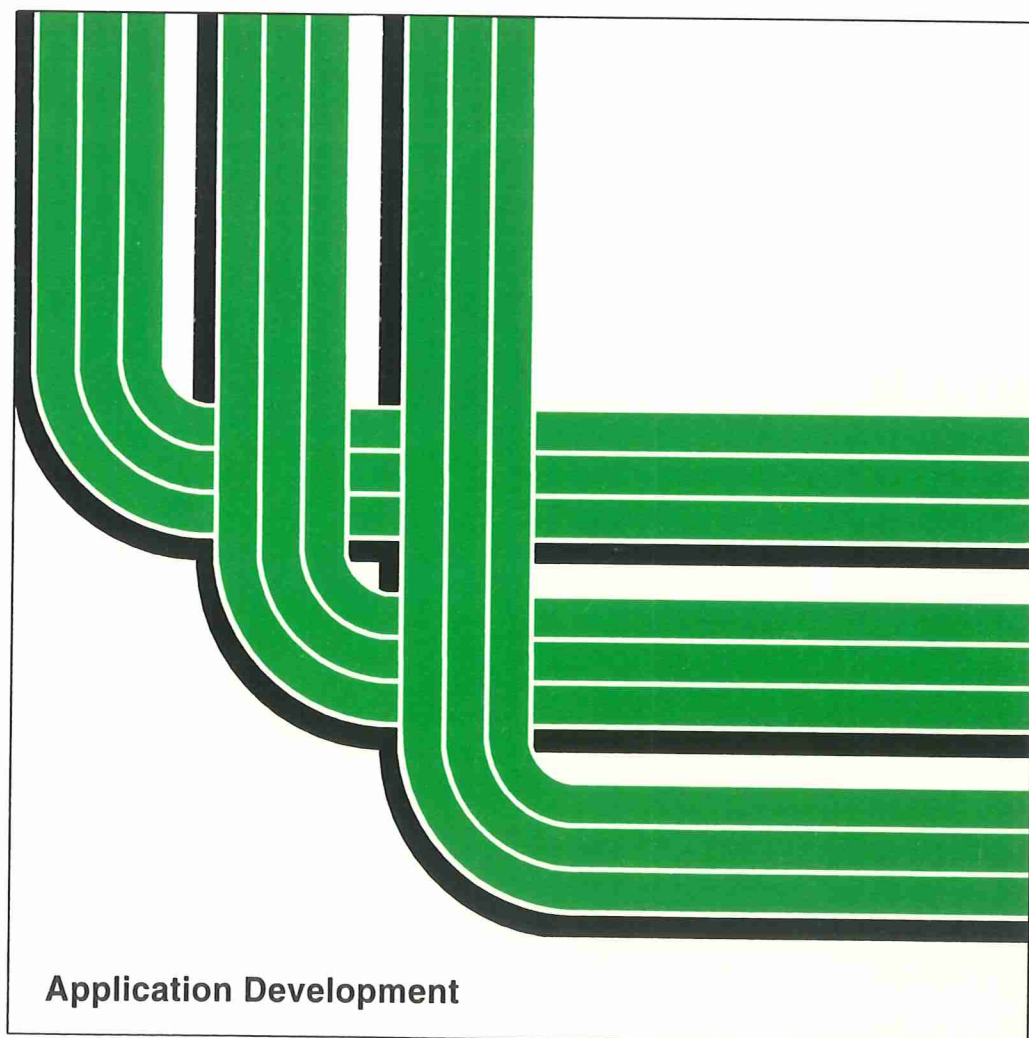


Application System/400

SC41-8226-02

**Machine Interface  
Functional Reference**

Version 2





Application System/400

SC41-8226-02

**Machine Interface  
Functional Reference**

Version 2





### **Third Edition (November 1993)**

The functions described in this publication apply to the IBM AS/400 machine interface.

Order publications through your IBM representative or the IBM branch serving your locality. Publications are not stocked at the address given below.

A Customer Satisfaction Feedback form for readers' comments is provided at the back of this publication. If the form has been removed, you may address your comments to:

Attn Department 245  
IBM Corporation  
3605 Highway 52 N  
Rochester, MN 55901-7899 USA

or you can fax your comments to:

United States and Canada: 800 + 937-3430  
Other countries: (+ 1) + 507 + 253-5192

When you send information to IBM, you grant IBM a non-exclusive right to use or distribute the information in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you or restricting your use of it.

© Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 1991, 1993. All rights reserved.

Note to U.S. Government Users — Documentation related to restricted rights — Use, duplication or disclosure is subject to restrictions set forth in GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.



# Contents

|                              |     |
|------------------------------|-----|
| Special Notices              | iii |
| <b>About This Manual</b>     | v   |
| Who Should Use This Manual   | v   |
| What You Should Know         | v   |
| How This Manual Is Organized | v   |

---

## Overview

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>Chapter 1. Introduction</b>                     | 1-1 |
| Instruction Format Conventions Used In This Manual | 1-2 |
| Definition of the operand syntax                   | 1-3 |

---

## Basic Function Instructions

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| <b>Chapter 2. Computation and Branching Instructions</b> | 2-1   |
| Add Logical Character (ADDLC)                            | 2-3   |
| Add Numeric (ADDN)                                       | 2-6   |
| And (AND)  | 2-10  |
| Branch (B)   | 2-13  |
| Clear Bit in String (CLRBTS)                             | 2-15  |
| Compare Bytes Left-Adjusted (CMPBLA)                     | 2-17  |
| Compare Bytes Left-Adjusted with Pad (CMPBLAP)           | 2-19  |
| Compare Bytes Right-Adjusted (CMPBRA)                    | 2-21  |
| Compare Bytes Right-Adjusted with Pad (CMPBRAP)          | 2-23  |
| Compare Numeric Value (CMPNV)                            | 2-25  |
| Compress Data (CPRDATA)                                  | 2-28  |
| Compute Array Index (CAI)                                | 2-30  |
| Compute Math Function Using One Input Value (CMF1)       | 2-32  |
| Compute Math Function Using Two Input Values (CMF2)      | 2-41  |
| Concatenate (CAT)  | 2-46  |
| Convert BSC to Character (CVTBC)                         | 2-48  |
| Convert Character to BSC (CVTCB)                         | 2-52  |
| Convert Character to Hex (CVTCH)                         | 2-55  |
| Convert Character to MRJE (CVTCM)                        | 2-57  |
| Convert Character to Numeric (CVTCN)                     | 2-62  |
| Convert Character to SNA (CVTCS)                         | 2-65  |
| Convert Decimal Form to Floating-Point (CVTDFFP)         | 2-74  |
| Convert External Form to Numeric Value (CVTEFN)          | 2-76  |
| Convert Floating-Point to Decimal Form (CVTFPDF)         | 2-79  |
| Convert Hex to Character (CVTHC)                         | 2-82  |
| Convert MRJE to Character (CVTMC)                        | 2-84  |
| Convert Numeric to Character (CVTNC)                     | 2-88  |
| Convert SNA to Character (CVTSC)                         | 2-90  |
| Copy Bits Arithmetic (CPYBTA)                            | 2-100 |
| Copy Bits Logical (CPYBTL)                               | 2-102 |
| Copy Bits with Left Logical Shift (CPYBTLLS)             | 2-104 |
| Copy Bits with Right Arithmetic Shift (CPYBTRAS)         | 2-106 |
| Copy Bits with Right Logical Shift (CPYBTRLS)            | 2-108 |
| Copy Bytes Left-Adjusted (CPYBLA)                        | 2-110 |

|  |         |
|--|---------|
| Copy Bytes Left-Adjusted with Pad (CPYBLAP)                | 2-112   |
| Copy Bytes Overlap Left-Adjusted (CPYBOLA)                 | 2-114   |
| Copy Bytes Overlap Left-Adjusted with Pad (CPYBOLAP)       | 2-116   |
| Copy Bytes Repeatedly (CPYBREP)                            | 2-118   |
| Copy Bytes Right-Adjusted (CPYBRA)                         | 2-120   |
| Copy Bytes Right-Adjusted with Pad (CPYBRAP)               | 2-122   |
| Copy Bytes to Bits Arithmetic (CPYBBTA)                    | 2-124   |
| Copy Bytes to Bits Logical (CPYBBTL)                       | 2-126   |
| Copy Extended Characters Left-Adjusted With Pad (CPYECLAP) | 2-128   |
| Copy Hex Digit Numeric to Numeric (CPYHEXNN)               | 2-132   |
| Copy Hex Digit Numeric to Zone (CPYHEXNZ)                  | 2-134   |
| Copy Hex Digit Zone To Numeric (CPYHEXZN)                  | 2-136   |
| Copy Hex Digit Zone To Zone (CPYHEXZZ)                     | 2-138   |
| Copy Numeric Value (CPYNV)                                 | 2-140   |
| Decompress Data (DCPDATA)                                  | 2-143   |
| Divide (DIV)   | 2-146   |
| Divide with Remainder (DIVREM)                             | 2-150   |
| Edit (EDIT)  | 2-154   |
| Exchange Bytes (EXCHBY)                                    | 2-162   |
| Exclusive Or (XOR)   | 2-164   |
| Extended Character Scan (ECSCAN)                           | 2-167   |
| Extract Exponent (EXTREXP)                                 | 2-171   |
| Extract Magnitude (EXTRMAG)                                | 2-174   |
| Multiply (MULT)  | 2-177   |
| Negate (NEG)   | 2-181   |
| Not (NOT)  | 2-184   |
| Or (OR)  | 2-187   |
| Remainder (REM)  | 2-190   |
| Scale (SCALE)  | 2-194   |
| Scan (SCAN)  | 2-198   |
| Scan with Control (SCANWC)                                 | 2-201   |
| Search (SEARCH)  | 2-209   |
| Set Bit in String (SETBTS)                                 | 2-212   |
| Set Instruction Pointer (SETIP)                            | 2-214   |
| Store and Set Computational Attributes (SSCA)              | 2-216   |
| Subtract Logical Character (SUBLC)                         | 2-220   |
| Subtract Numeric (SUBN)                                    | 2-223   |
| Test and Replace Characters (TSTRPLC)                      | 2-227   |
| Test Bit in String (TSTBTS)                                | 2-229   |
| Test Bits Under Mask (TSTBUM)                              | 2-231   |
| Translate (XLATE)  | 2-233   |
| Translate with Table (XLATEWT)                             | 2-235   |
| Translate with Table and DBCS Skip (XLATWTDS)              | 2-237   |
| Trim Length (TRIML)  | 2-240   |
| Verify (VERIFY)  | 2-242   |
| <br><b>Chapter 3. Date/Time/Timestamp Instructions</b>     | <br>3-1 |
| External Data Formats                                      | 3-3     |
| Date, Time, and Timestamp Concepts                         | 3-3     |
| Compute Date Duration (CDD)                                | 3-13    |
| Compute Time Duration (CTD)                                | 3-16    |
| Compute Timestamp Duration (CTSD)                          | 3-19    |
| Convert Date (CVTD)  | 3-22    |
| Convert Time (CVTT)  | 3-25    |
| Convert Timestamp (CVTTS)                                  | 3-28    |

|   |      |
|---|------|
| Decrement Date (DECD)   | 3-31 |
| Decrement Time (DECT)   | 3-35 |
| Decrement Timestamp (DECTS)                                       | 3-38 |
| Increment Date (INCD)   | 3-42 |
| Increment Time (INCT)   | 3-46 |
| Increment Timestamp (INCTS)                                       | 3-49 |
| <b>Chapter 4. Pointer/Name Resolution Addressing Instructions</b> | 4-1  |
| Compare Pointer for Object Addressability (CMPPTRA)               | 4-3  |
| Compare Pointer for Space Addressability (CMPPSPAD)               | 4-5  |
| Compare Pointers for Equality (CMPPTRE)                           | 4-7  |
| Compare Pointer Type (CMPPTRT)                                    | 4-9  |
| Copy Bytes with Pointers (CPYBWP)                                 | 4-12 |
| Resolve Data Pointer (RSLVDP)                                     | 4-14 |
| Resolve System Pointer (RSLVSP)                                   | 4-17 |
| Set Space Pointer from Pointer (SETSPFP)                          | 4-22 |
| Set System Pointer from Pointer (SETSPFP)                         | 4-24 |
| <b>Chapter 5. Space Addressing Instructions</b>                   | 5-1  |
| Add Space Pointer (ADDSP)   | 5-3  |
| Compare Space Addressability (CMPSPAD)                            | 5-5  |
| Set Data Pointer (SETDP)  | 5-7  |
| Set Data Pointer Addressability (SETDPADR)                        | 5-9  |
| Set Data Pointer Attributes (SETDPAT)                             | 5-11 |
| Set Space Pointer (SETSP)   | 5-14 |
| Set Space Pointer with Displacement (SETSPPD)                     | 5-16 |
| Set Space Pointer Offset (SETSPPO)                                | 5-18 |
| Store Space Pointer Offset (STSPPO)                               | 5-20 |
| Subtract Space Pointer Offset (SUBSP)                             | 5-22 |
| Subtract Space Pointers For Offset (SUBSPFO)                      | 5-24 |
| <b>Chapter 6. Space Management Instructions</b>                   | 6-1  |
| Create Space (CRTS)   | 6-3  |
| Materialize Space Attributes (MATS)                               | 6-11 |
| Modify Space Attributes (MODS)                                    | 6-15 |
| <b>Chapter 7. Heap Management Instructions</b>                    | 7-1  |
| Allocate Heap Space Storage (ALCHSS)                              | 7-3  |
| Create Heap Space (CRTHS)   | 7-6  |
| Destroy Heap Space (DESHS)  | 7-11 |
| Free Heap Space Storage (FRESHS)                                  | 7-13 |
| Free Heap Space Storage From Mark (FRESHSMK)                      | 7-15 |
| Materialize Heap Space Attributes (MATHSAT)                       | 7-17 |
| Reallocate Heap Space Storage (REALCHSS)                          | 7-22 |
| Set Heap Space Storage Mark (SETHSSMK)                            | 7-25 |
| <b>Chapter 8. Program Management Instructions</b>                 | 8-1  |
| Materialize Bound Program (MATBPGM)                               | 8-3  |
| Materialize Program (MATPG)                                       | 8-24 |
| <b>Chapter 9. Program Execution Instructions</b>                  | 9-1  |
| Activate Program (ACTPG)  | 9-3  |
| Call External (CALLX)   | 9-5  |
| Call Internal (CALLI)   | 9-9  |
| Clear Invocation Exit (CLRIEXIT)                                  | 9-11 |

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| Deactivate Program (DEACTPG)                             | 9-12  |
| End (END)  | 9-14  |
| Materialize Activation Attributes (MATACTAT)             | 9-15  |
| Materialize Activation Group Attributes (MATAGPAT)       | 9-19  |
| Modify Automatic Storage Allocation (MODASA)             | 9-23  |
| Return External (RTX)                                    | 9-25  |
| Set Argument List Length (SETALLEN)                      | 9-27  |
| Set Invocation Exit (SETIEXIT)                           | 9-29  |
| Store Parameter List Length (STPLLEN)                    | 9-31  |
| Transfer Control (XCTL)                                  | 9-33  |
| <b>Chapter 10. Program Creation Control Instructions</b> | 10-1  |
| No Operation (NOOP)                                      | 10-3  |
| No Operation and Skip (NOOPS)                            | 10-4  |
| Override Program Attributes (OVRPGATR)                   | 10-5  |
| <b>Chapter 11. Independent Index Instructions</b>        | 11-1  |
| Create Independent Index (CRTINX)                        | 11-3  |
| Destroy Independent Index (DESINX)                       | 11-10 |
| Find Independent Index Entry (FNDINXEN)                  | 11-12 |
| Insert Independent Index Entry (INSINXEN)                | 11-16 |
| Materialize Independent Index Attributes (MATINXAT)      | 11-19 |
| Modify Independent Index (MODINX)                        | 11-23 |
| Remove Independent Index Entry (RMVINXEN)                | 11-26 |
| <b>Chapter 12. Queue Management Instructions</b>         | 12-1  |
| Dequeue (DEQ)  | 12-3  |
| Enqueue (ENQ)  | 12-9  |
| Materialize Queue Attributes (MATQAT)                    | 12-12 |
| Materialize Queue Messages (MATQMSG)                     | 12-16 |
| <b>Chapter 13. Object Lock Management Instructions</b>   | 13-1  |
| Lock Object (LOCK)                                       | 13-3  |
| Lock Space Location (LOCKSL)                             | 13-8  |
| Materialize Data Space Record Locks (MATDRECL)           | 13-13 |
| Materialize Process Locks (MATPRLK)                      | 13-17 |
| Materialize Process Record Locks (MATPRECL)              | 13-20 |
| Materialize Selected Locks (MATSELLK)                    | 13-24 |
| Transfer Object Lock (XFRLOCK)                           | 13-27 |
| Unlock Object (UNLOCK)                                   | 13-30 |
| Unlock Space Location (UNLOCKSL)                         | 13-33 |
| <b>Chapter 14. Exception Management Instructions</b>     | 14-1  |
| Materialize Exception Description (MATEXCPD)             | 14-3  |
| Modify Exception Description (MODEXCPD)                  | 14-6  |
| Retrieve Exception Data (RETEXCPD)                       | 14-9  |
| Return From Exception (RTNEXCP)                          | 14-12 |
| Sense Exception Description (SNSEXCPD)                   | 14-15 |
| Signal Exception (SIGEXCP)                               | 14-19 |
| Test Exception (TESTEXCP)                                | 14-24 |
| <b>Chapter 15. Queue Space Management Instructions</b>   | 15-1  |
| Materialize Process Message (MATPRMSG)                   | 15-3  |

---

## Extended Function Instructions

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| <b>Chapter 16. Context Management Instructions</b>                  | 16-1  |
| Materialize Context (MATCTX)  | 16-3  |
| <b>Chapter 17. Authorization Management Instructions</b>            | 17-1  |
| Materialize Authority (MATAU)                                       | 17-3  |
| Materialize Authority List (MATAL)                                  | 17-7  |
| Materialize Authorized Objects (MATAUOBJ)                           | 17-12 |
| Materialize Authorized Users (MATAUU)                               | 17-20 |
| Materialize User Profile (MATUP)                                    | 17-25 |
| Test Authority (TESTAU)   | 17-29 |
| Test Extended Authorities (TESTEAU)                                 | 17-34 |
| <b>Chapter 18. Process Management Instructions</b>                  | 18-1  |
| Materialize Process Activation Groups (MATPRAGP)                    | 18-3  |
| Materialize Process Attributes (MATPRATR)                           | 18-5  |
| Wait On Time (WAITTIME)   | 18-18 |
| <b>Chapter 19. Resource Management Instructions</b>                 | 19-1  |
| Ensure Object (ENSOBJ)  | 19-3  |
| Materialize Access Group Attributes (MATAGAT)                       | 19-5  |
| Materialize Resource Management Data (MATRMD)                       | 19-9  |
| Set Access State (SETACST)  | 19-31 |
| <b>Chapter 20. Dump Space Management Instructions</b>               | 20-1  |
| Materialize Dump Space (MATDMPS)                                    | 20-3  |
| <b>Chapter 21. Machine Observation Instructions</b>                 | 21-1  |
| Find Relative Invocation Number (FNDRINVN)                          | 21-3  |
| Materialize Instruction Attributes (MATINAT)                        | 21-8  |
| Materialize Invocation (MATINV)                                     | 21-14 |
| Materialize Invocation Attributes (MATINVAT)                        | 21-18 |
| Materialize Invocation Entry (MATINVE)                              | 21-28 |
| Materialize Invocation Stack (MATINVS)                              | 21-32 |
| Materialize Pointer (MATPTR)  | 21-37 |
| Materialize Pointer Locations (MATPTRL)                             | 21-46 |
| Materialize System Object (MATSOBJ)                                 | 21-48 |
| <b>Chapter 22. Machine Interface Support Functions Instructions</b> | 22-1  |
| Materialize Machine Attributes (MATMATR)                            | 22-4  |
| Materialize Machine Data (MATMDATA)                                 | 22-30 |

---

## Instruction support interfaces

|   |      |
|---|------|
| <b>Chapter 23. Exception Specifications</b> | 23-1 |
| Machine Interface Exception Data            | 23-2 |
| Exception List                              | 23-3 |
| <b>Appendix A. Instruction Summary</b>      | A-1  |
| Instruction Stream Syntax                   | A-3  |
| <b>Index</b>                                | X-1  |

---

## About This Manual

The information contained in *AS/400 Machine Interface Functional Reference* has not been submitted to any formal IBM test and is distributed on an 'as is' basis without any warranty either expressed or implied. This manual is written for release 3 of AS/400 Vertical Licensed Integrated Code (VLIC) and may not discuss all the functions available on your AS/400 system.

The *AS/400 Machine Interface Functional Reference* defines the AS/400 Machine Interface to instructions and exceptions.

This manual may refer to products that are announced but are not yet available.

---

## Who Should Use This Manual

This manual is intended for knowledgeable system programmers having substantial experience on AS/400 computer systems.

---

## What You Should Know

The reader should know one more high level languages, assembly languages of other computers, and understand instruction set architectures. The reader would do well to study capability-based computer architectures.

The reader should be familiar with AS/400 objects and their intended use.

---

## How This Manual Is Organized

The *AS/400 Machine Interface Functional Reference* is organized into three parts:

1. Basic Function Instructions

These instructions provide a basic set of functions commonly needed by most programs executing on the machine. Because of the basic nature of these instructions, they tend to experience less change in their operation in different machine implementations than the extended function instructions.

2. Extended Function Instructions

These instructions provide an extended set of functions which can be used to control and monitor the operation of the machine. Because of the more complicated nature of these instructions, they are more exposed to changes in their operation in different machine implementations than the basic function instructions.

3. Instruction Support Interfaces

This part of the document defines those portions of the Machine Interface which provide support for functions or data used pervasively on all instructions. It discusses the exceptions and program objects which can be operated on by instructions.







---

## Overview





## Chapter 1. Introduction

This chapter contains the following:

- Detailed descriptions of the AS/400 machine interface instruction fields and the formats of these fields
- A description of the format used in describing each instruction
- A list of the terms in the syntax that define the characteristics of the operands

You should read this chapter in its entirety before attempting to write instructions.

### Instruction Operands

Each instruction requires from zero to four operands. Each operand may consist of one or more fields that contain either a null operand specification, an immediate data value, or a reference to an ODT object. The size of the operand field depends on the version of the program template. If the version number is 0, the size of the operand field is 2 bytes. If the version number is 1, the size of the operand field is 3 bytes.

**Null Operands:** Certain instructions allow certain operands to be null. In general, a null operand means that some optional function of the instruction is not to be performed or that a default action is to be performed by the instruction.

**Immediate Operands:** The value of this type of operand is encoded in the instruction operand. Immediate operands may have the following values:

- Signed binary—representing a binary value of negative 4096 to positive 4095.
- Unsigned binary—representing a binary value of 0 to 8191.
- Byte string—representing a single byte value from hex 00 to hex FF.
- Absolute instruction number—representing an instruction number in the range of 1 to 8191.
- Relative instruction number—representing a displacement of an instruction relative to the instruction in which the operand occurs. This operand value may identify an instruction displacement of negative 4096 to positive 4095.

**ODT Object References:** This type of operand contains a reference (possibly qualified) to an object in the ODT. Operands that are ODT object references may be simple operands or compound operands.

**Simple Operands:** The value encoded in the operand refers to a specific object defined in the ODT. Simple operands consist of a single 2-byte operand entry.

**Compound Operands:** A compound operand consists of a primary (2-byte) operand and a series of one to three secondary (2-byte) operands. The primary operand is an ODT reference to a base object while the secondary operands serve as qualifiers to the base object.

A compound operand may have the following uses:

- Subscript references

An individual element of a data object array, a pointer array, or an instruction definition list may be referenced with a subscript compound operand. The operand consists of a primary reference to the array and a secondary operand to specify the index value to an element of the array.

- Substring references

A portion of a character scalar data object may be referenced as an instruction operand through a substring compound operand. The operand consists of a primary operand to reference the base string object and secondary references to specify the value of an index (position) and a value for the length of the substring.

The length secondary operand field can specify whether to allow or not allow for a null substring reference (a length value of zero).

- Explicit base references

An instruction operand may specify an explicit override for the base pointer for a based data object or a based addressing object. The operand consists of a primary operand reference to the based object and a secondary operand reference to the pointer on which to base the object for this operand. The override is in effect for the single operand. The displacement implicit in the ODT definition of the primary operand and the addressability contained in the explicit pointer are combined to provide an address for the operand.

The explicit base may be combined with either the subscript or the substring compound operands to provide a based subscript compound operand or a based substring compound operand.

---

## Instruction Format Conventions Used In This Manual

The user of this manual must be aware that not every instruction uses every field described in this section. Only the information pertaining to the fields that are used by an instruction is provided for each instruction.

In this manual, each instruction is formatted with the instruction name followed by its base mnemonic. Following this is the operation code (op code) in hexadecimal and the number of operands with their general meaning.

Example:

### ADD NUMERIC (ADDN)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1043          | Sum       | Addend 1  | Addend 2  |

This information is followed by the operands and their syntax. See "Definition of the Operand Syntax" later in this chapter for a detailed discussion of the syntax of instruction operands.

Example:

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar.

*Operand 3:* Numeric scalar.

### ILE access

A description of the parameters for Integrated Language Environment access to the instruction is given. See the corresponding ILE language reference manual for details as to how this information should be interpreted for a given language.

**Description:** A detailed description and a functional definition of the instruction is given.

The terms are defined or fields in a template are described, they are highlighted as follows: **term definition**. When a term is referenced or a value of a field is referred to, it is highlighted as follows: **term reference**.

Fields in a template are generally described in the same order as they are defined in the template. However, some fields are more appropriately described with other related field, so they may not appear in exact order.

**Authorization Required:** A list of the object authorization required for each of the operands in the instruction or for any objects subsequently referenced by the instruction is given.

**Lock Enforcement:** Describes the specification of the lock states that are to be enforced during execution of the instruction.

The following states of enforcement can be specified for an instruction:

- **Enforcement for materialization**  
Access to a system object is allowed if no other process is holding a locked exclusive no read (LENR) lock on the object. In general, this rule applies to instructions that access an object for materialization and retrieval.
- **Enforcement for modification**  
Access to a system object is allowed if no other process is holding a locked exclusive no read (LENR) or locked exclusive allow read (LEAR) lock. In general, this rule applies to instructions that modify or alter the contents of a system object.
- **Enforcement of object control**  
Access is prohibited if another process is holding any lock on the system object. In general, this rule applies to instructions that destroy or rename a system object.

**Limitations:** These are the limits that apply to the functions performed by the instruction.

**Resultant Conditions:** These are the conditions that can be set at the end of the standard operation in order to perform a conditional branch or set a conditional indicator.

**Exceptions:** The "exceptions" sections contain a list of exceptions that can be caused by the instruction. Exceptions related to specific operands are indicated for each exception by the exception under the heading operand. An entry under the word, other, indicates that the exception applies to the instruction but not to a particular operand.

A detailed description of exceptions is in Chapter 23, "Exception Specifications" on page 23-1.

---

## Definition of the operand syntax

Syntax consists of the allowable choices for each instruction operand. The following are the common terms used in the syntax and the meanings of those terms:

- **Numeric:** Numeric attribute of binary, packed decimal, zoned-decimal, or floating-point
- **Character:** character attribute
- **Scalar:**
  - Scalar data object that is not an array (see note 1)
  - Constant scalar object

- Immediate operand (signed or unsigned)
- Element of an array of scalars (see notes 1 and 2)
- Substring of a character scalar or a character scalar constant data object (see notes 1 and 3)
- *Data Pointer Defined Scalar*:
  - A scalar defined by a data pointer
  - Substring of a character scalar defined by a data pointer (see notes 1 and 3)
- *Pointer*:
  - Pointer data object that is not an array (see note 1)
  - Element of an array of pointers (see notes 1 and 2)
  - Space pointer machine object
- *Array*: An array of scalars or an array of pointers (see note 1)
- *Variable Scalar*: Same as scalar except constant scalar objects and immediate operand values are excluded.
- *Data Pointer*: A pointer data object that is to be used as a data pointer.
  - If the operand is a source operand, the pointer storage form must contain a data pointer when the instruction is executed.
  - If the operand is a receiver operand, a data pointer is constructed by the instruction in the specified area regardless of its current contents (see note 4).
- *Space Pointer*: A space pointer data object or a space pointer machine object.
- *Space Pointer Data Object*: A pointer data object that is to be used as a space pointer.
  - If the operand is a source operand, the pointer storage form must contain a space pointer when the instruction is executed.
  - If the operand is a receiver operand, a space pointer is constructed by the instruction in the specified area regardless of its current contents (see note 4).
- *System Pointer*: a pointer data object that is to be used as a system pointer.
  - If the operand is a source operand, the specified area must contain a system pointer when the instruction is executed.
  - If the operand is a receiver operand, a system pointer is constructed by the instruction in the specified area regardless of its current contents (see note 4).
- *Relative Instruction Number*: Signed immediate operand.
- *Instruction Number*: Unsigned immediate operand.
- *Instruction Pointer*: A pointer data object that is to be used as an instruction pointer.
  - If the operand is a source operand, the specified area must contain an instruction pointer when the instruction is executed.
  - If the operand is a receiver operand, an instruction pointer is constructed by the instruction in the specified area regardless of its current contents (see notes 4 and 5).
- *Instruction Definition List Element*: An entry in an instruction definition list that can be used as a branch target. A compound subscript operand form must always be used (see note 5).

**Notes:**

1. An instruction operand in which the primary operand is a scalar or a pointer may also have an operand form in which an explicit base pointer is specified.

See "ODT Object References" earlier in this chapter for more information on compound operands.

2. A compound subscript operand may be used to select a specific element from an array of scalars or from an array of pointers.

See "ODT Object references" earlier in this chapter for more information on compound operands.

3. A compound substring operand may be used to define a substring of a character scalar, or a character constant scalar object.

A compound substring operand that disallows a null substring reference (a length value of zero) may, unless precluded by the particular instruction, be specified for any operand syntactically defined as allowing a character scalar. A compound substring operand that allows a null substring reference may be specified for an operand syntactically defined as allowing a character scalar only if the instruction specifies that it is allowed. Whether a compound substring operand does or does not allow a null substring reference is controlled through the specification of the length secondary operand field.

See "ODT Object References" earlier in this chapter for more information on compound operands.

4. A compound subscript operand form may be used to select an element from an array of pointers to act as the operand for an instruction. See "ODT Object References" earlier in this chapter for more information on compound operands.

5. Compound subscript forms are not allowed on branch target operands that are used for conditional branching. Selection of elements of instruction pointer arrays and elements of instruction definition lists may, however, be referenced for branch operands by the branch instruction.

Alternate choices of operand types and the allowable variations within each choice are indicated in the syntax descriptions as shown in the following example.

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar.

*Operand 3:* Instruction number, branch point or instruction pointer..

Operand 1 must be variable scalar. Operands 1 and 2 must be numeric. Operand 3 can be an instruction number, branch point or instruction pointer.

When a length is specified in the syntax for the operand, character scalar operands must be at least the size specified. Any excess beyond that required by the instruction is ignored.

Scalar operands that are operated on by instructions requiring 1-byte operands, such as pad values or indicator operands, can be greater than 1 byte in length; however, only the first byte of the character string is used. The remaining bytes are ignored by the instruction.





---

## Basic Function Instructions

These instructions provide a basic set of functions commonly needed by most programs executing on the machine. Because of the basic nature of these instructions, they tend to experience less change in their operation in different machine implementations than the extended function instructions. Therefore, it is recommended that, where possible, programs be limited to using just these basic function instructions to minimize the impacts which can arise in moving to different machine implementations.



## Chapter 2. Computation and Branching Instructions

This chapter describes all the instructions used for computation and branching. These instructions are arranged in alphabetic order. For an alphabetic summary of all the instructions, see Appendix A, "Instruction Summary."

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| Add Logical Character (ADDLC)                              | 2-3   |
| Add Numeric (ADDN)   | 2-6   |
| And (AND)  | 2-10  |
| Branch (B)   | 2-13  |
| Clear Bit in String (CLRBTS)                               | 2-15  |
| Compare Bytes Left-Adjusted (CMPBLA)                       | 2-17  |
| Compare Bytes Left-Adjusted with Pad (CMPBLAP)             | 2-19  |
| Compare Bytes Right-Adjusted (CMPBRA)                      | 2-21  |
| Compare Bytes Right-Adjusted with Pad (CMPBRAP)            | 2-23  |
| Compare Numeric Value (CMPNV)                              | 2-25  |
| Compress Data (CPRDATA)                                    | 2-28  |
| Compute Array Index (CAI)                                  | 2-30  |
| Compute Math Function Using One Input Value (CMF1)         | 2-32  |
| Compute Math Function Using Two Input Values (CMF2)        | 2-41  |
| Concatenate (CAT)  | 2-46  |
| Convert BSC to Character (CVTBC)                           | 2-48  |
| Convert Character to BSC (CVTCB)                           | 2-52  |
| Convert Character to Hex (CVTCH)                           | 2-55  |
| Convert Character to MRJE (CVTCM)                          | 2-57  |
| Convert Character to Numeric (CVTCN)                       | 2-62  |
| Convert Character to SNA (CVTCS)                           | 2-65  |
| Convert Decimal Form to Floating-Point (CVTDFFP)           | 2-74  |
| Convert External Form to Numeric Value (CVTEFN)            | 2-76  |
| Convert Floating-Point to Decimal Form (CVTFPDF)           | 2-79  |
| Convert Hex to Character (CVTHC)                           | 2-82  |
| Convert MRJE to Character (CVTMC)                          | 2-84  |
| Convert Numeric to Character (CVTNC)                       | 2-88  |
| Convert SNA to Character (CVTSC)                           | 2-90  |
| Copy Bits Arithmetic (CPYBTA)                              | 2-100 |
| Copy Bits Logical (CPYBTL)                                 | 2-102 |
| Copy Bits with Left Logical Shift (CPYBTLLS)               | 2-104 |
| Copy Bits with Right Arithmetic Shift (CPYBTRAS)           | 2-106 |
| Copy Bits with Right Logical Shift (CPYBTRLS)              | 2-108 |
| Copy Bytes Left-Adjusted (CPYBLA)                          | 2-110 |
| Copy Bytes Left-Adjusted with Pad (CPYBLAP)                | 2-112 |
| Copy Bytes Overlap Left-Adjusted (CPYBOLA)                 | 2-114 |
| Copy Bytes Overlap Left-Adjusted with Pad (CPYBOLAP)       | 2-116 |
| Copy Bytes Repeatedly (CPYBREP)                            | 2-118 |
| Copy Bytes Right-Adjusted (CPYBRA)                         | 2-120 |
| Copy Bytes Right-Adjusted with Pad (CPYBRAP)               | 2-122 |
| Copy Bytes to Bits Arithmetic (CPYBBTA)                    | 2-124 |
| Copy Bytes to Bits Logical (CPYBBTL)                       | 2-126 |
| Copy Extended Characters Left-Adjusted With Pad (CPYECLAP) | 2-128 |

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| Copy Hex Digit Numeric to Numeric (CPYHEXNN)  | 2-132 |
| Copy Hex Digit Numeric to Zone (CPYHEXNZ)     | 2-134 |
| Copy Hex Digit Zone To Numeric (CPYHEXZN)     | 2-136 |
| Copy Hex Digit Zone To Zone (CPYHEXZZ)        | 2-138 |
| Copy Numeric Value (CPYNV)                    | 2-140 |
| Decompress Data (DCPDATA)                     | 2-143 |
| Divide (DIV)                                  | 2-146 |
| Divide with Remainder (DIVREM)                | 2-150 |
| Edit (EDIT)                                   | 2-154 |
| Exchange Bytes (EXCHBY)                       | 2-162 |
| Exclusive Or (XOR)                            | 2-164 |
| Extended Character Scan (ECSCAN)              | 2-167 |
| Extract Exponent (EXTREXP)                    | 2-171 |
| Extract Magnitude (EXTRMAG)                   | 2-174 |
| Multiply (MULT)                               | 2-177 |
| Negate (NEG)                                  | 2-181 |
| Not (NOT)                                     | 2-184 |
| Or (OR)                                       | 2-187 |
| Remainder (REM)                               | 2-190 |
| Scale (SCALE)                                 | 2-194 |
| Scan (SCAN)                                   | 2-198 |
| Scan with Control (SCANWC)                    | 2-201 |
| Search (SEARCH)                               | 2-209 |
| Set Bit in String (SETBTS)                    | 2-212 |
| Set Instruction Pointer (SETIP)               | 2-214 |
| Store and Set Computational Attributes (SSCA) | 2-216 |
| Subtract Logical Character (SUBLC)            | 2-220 |
| Subtract Numeric (SUBN)                       | 2-223 |
| Test and Replace Characters (TSTRPLC)         | 2-227 |
| Test Bit in String (TSTBTS)                   | 2-229 |
| Test Bits Under Mask (TSTBUM)                 | 2-231 |
| Translate (XLATE)                             | 2-233 |
| Translate with Table (XLATEWT)                | 2-235 |
| Translate with Table and DBCS Skip (XLATWTDS) | 2-237 |
| Trim Length (TRIML)                           | 2-240 |
| Verify (VERIFY)                               | 2-242 |

**Add Logical Character (ADDLC)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br><b>ADDLC</b><br>1023 | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Sum | Operand 2<br>Addend 1 | Operand 3<br>Addend 2 | Operand [4-7]     |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------|------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| <b>ADDLCI</b><br>1823                 | Indicator options | Sum              | Addend 1              | Addend 2              | Indicator targets |
| <b>ADDLCB</b><br>1C23                 | Branch options    | Sum              | Addend 1              | Addend 2              | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar (fixed-length).

*Operand 2:* Character scalar (fixed-length).

*Operand 3:* Character scalar (fixed-length).

*Operand 4-7:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Short forms**

| Op Code (Hex)<br><b>ADDLC</b><br>1123 | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Sum/Addend 1 | Operand 2<br>Addend 2 | Operand [3-6]     |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| <b>ADDLCIS</b><br>1923                | Indicator options | Sum/Addend 1              | Addend 2              | Indicator targets |
| <b>ADDLCBS</b><br>1D23                | Branch options    | Sum/Addend 1              | Addend 2              | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar (fixed-length).

*Operand 2:* Character scalar (fixed-length).

*Operand 3-6:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** The unsigned binary value of the addend 1 operand is added to the unsigned binary value of the addend 2 operand and the result is placed in the sum operand.

Operands 1, 2, and 3 must be the same length; otherwise, the Create Program instruction signals an *invalid operand length* (hex 2A0A) exception. The length can be a maximum of 256 bytes.

The addition operation is performed according to the rules of algebra. The result value is then placed (left-adjusted) in the receiver operand with truncating or padding taking place on the right. The pad value used in this instruction is a byte value of hex 00.

If operands overlap but do not share all of the same bytes, results of operations performed on these operands are not predictable. If overlapped operands share all of the same bytes, the results are predictable when direct addressing is used. If indirect addressing is used (that is, based operands, parameters, strings with variable lengths, and arrays with variable subscripts), the results are not always predictable.

**Resultant Conditions:** The logical sum of the character scalar operands is:

- zero with no carry out of the leftmost bit position
- not-zero with no carry
- zero with carry
- not-zero with carry.

## Exceptions

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                             |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Spacing addressing violation        | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment                  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Range                               | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          | X        | X | X | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 Invalid branch target               |          |   |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |

Exception

Operands  
1      2      3      Other

36      Space management  
         01 space extension/truncation

X



**Add Numeric (ADDN)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br>ADDN<br>1043 | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Sum | Operand 2<br>Addend | Operand 3<br>Augend | Operand [4-7]     |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|------------------|---------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| <b>ADDNR</b><br>1243          |                   | Sum              | Addend              | Augend              |                   |
| <b>ADDNI</b><br>1843          | Indicator options | Sum              | Addend              | Augend              | Indicator targets |
| <b>ADDNIR</b><br>1A43         | Indicator options | Sum              | Addend              | Augend              | Indicator targets |
| <b>ADDNB</b><br>1C43          | Branch options    | Sum              | Addend              | Augend              | Branch targets    |
| <b>ADDNBR</b><br>1E43         | Branch options    | Sum              | Addend              | Augend              | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar

*Operand 3:* Numeric scalar

*Operand 4-7:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Short forms**

| Op Code (Hex)<br>ADDNS<br>1143 | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Sum/Addend | Operand 2<br>Augend | Operand [3-6]     |
|--------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| <b>ADDNSR</b><br>1343          |                   | Sum/Addend              | Augend              |                   |
| <b>ADDNIR</b><br>1943          | Indicator options | Sum/Addend              | Augend              | Indicator targets |
| <b>ADDNISR</b><br>1B43         | Indicator options | Sum/Addend              | Augend              | Indicator targets |
| <b>ADDNBS</b><br>1D43          | Branch options    | Sum/Addend              | Augend              | Branch targets    |
| <b>ADDNBSR</b><br>1F43         | Branch options    | Sum/Addend              | Augend              | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar

*Operand 3-6:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Caution:** If operands overlap but do not share all of the same bytes, results of operations performed on these operands are not predictable. If overlapped operands share all of the same bytes, the results are predictable when direct addressing is used. If indirect addressing is used (that is, based operands, parameters, strings with variable lengths, and arrays with variable subscripts), the results are not always predictable.

**Description:** The Sum is the result of adding the Addend and Augend.

Operands can have floating-point, packed or zoned decimal, signed or unsigned binary type.

Source operands are the Addend and Augend. The receiver operand is the Sum.

If operands are not of the same type, addends are converted according to the following rules:

1. If any one of the operands has floating point type, addends are converted to floating point type.
2. Otherwise, if any one of the operands has zoned or packed decimal type, addends are converted to packed decimal.
3. Otherwise, the binary operands are converted to a like type. Note: unsigned binary(2) scalars are logically treated as signed binary(4) scalars.

Addend and Augend are added according to their type. Floating point operands are added using floating point addition. Packed decimal addends are added using packed decimal addition. Unsigned binary addition is used with unsigned addends. Signed binary addends are added using two's complement binary addition.

Better performance can be obtained if all operands have the same type. Signed and unsigned binary additions execute faster than either packed decimal or floating point additions.

Decimal operands used in floating-point operations cannot contain more than 15 total digit positions.

For a decimal operation, alignment of the assumed decimal point takes place by padding with 0's on the right end of the addend with lesser precision.

Floating-point addition uses exponent comparison and significand addition. Alignment of the binary point is performed, if necessary, by shifting the significand of the value with the smaller exponent to the right. The exponent is increased by one for each binary digit shifted until the two exponents agree.

The operation uses the lengths and the precision of the source and receiver operands to calculate accurate results. Operations performed in decimal are limited to 31 decimal digits in the intermediate result.

The addition operation is performed according to the rules of algebra.

The result of the operation is copied into the sum operand. If this operand is not the same type as that used in performing the operation, the resultant value is converted to its type. If necessary, the resultant value is adjusted to the length of the sum, aligned at the assumed decimal point of the sum operand, or both before being copied. If nonzero digits are truncated on the left end of the resultant value, a size (hex 0C0A) exception is signaled.

When the target of the instruction is signed or unsigned binary size, exceptions can be suppressed.

For the optional round form of the instruction, specification of a floating-point receiver operand is invalid.

For fixed-point operations, if nonzero digits are truncated off the left end of the resultant value, a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception is signaled.

For floating-point operations involving a fixed-point receiver field, if nonzero digits would be truncated off the left end of the resultant value, an *invalid floating-point conversion* (hex 0C0C) exception is signaled.

For a floating-point sum, if the exponent of the resultant value is either too large or too small to be represented in the sum field, the *floating-point overflow* (hex 0C06) and *floating-point underflow* (hex 0C07) exceptions are signaled, respectively.

If a decimal to binary conversion causes a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception to be signaled, the binary value contains the correct truncated result only if the decimal value contains 15 or fewer significant nonfractional digits.

### Resultant Conditions

- Positive - The algebraic value of the numeric scalar sum operand is positive.
- Negative - The algebraic value of the numeric scalar sum operand is negative.
- Zero - The algebraic value of the numeric scalar sum operand is zero.
- Unordered - The value assigned a floating-point sum operand is NaN.

### Exceptions

| Exception                            | Operands |   |   | Other |
|--------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                                      | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing                        |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation      | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment                | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                             | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid  | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation     | X        | X | X |       |
| 0C Computation                       |          |   |   |       |
| 02 Decimal data                      |          | X | X |       |
| 03 Decimal point alignment           |          | X | X |       |
| 06 Floating-point overflow           | X        |   |   |       |
| 07 Floating-point underflow          | X        |   |   |       |
| 09 Floating-point invalid operand    |          | X | X | X     |
| 0A Size                              | X        |   |   |       |
| 0C Invalid floating-point conversion | X        |   |   |       |
| 0D Floating-point inexact result     | X        |   |   |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                |          |   |   |       |
| 04 System object damage state        | X        | X | X | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 Invalid branch target               |          |   |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |

**And (AND)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br><b>AND</b><br>1093 | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Receiver | Operand 2<br>Source 1 | Operand 3<br>Source 2 | Operand [4-5]     |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| <b>ANDI</b><br>1893                 | Indicator options | Receiver              | Source 1              | Source 2              | Indicator targets |
| <b>ANDB</b><br>1C93                 | Branch options    | Receiver              | Source 1              | Source 2              | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar or numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar or numeric scalar.

*Operand 3:* Character scalar or numeric scalar.

*Operand 4-5:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Short forms**

| Op Code (Hex)<br><b>ANDS</b><br>1193 | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Receiver/Source 1 | Operand 2<br>Source 2 | Operand [3-4]     |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| <b>ANDIS</b><br>1993                 | Indicator options | Receiver/Source 1              | Source 2              | Indicator targets |
| <b>ANDBS</b><br>1D93                 | Branch options    | Receiver/Source 1              | Source 2              | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar or numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar or numeric scalar.

*Operand 3-4:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** The Boolean AND operation is performed on the string values in the source operands. The resulting string is placed in the receiver operand. The operands may be character or numeric scalars. They are both interpreted as bit strings. Substringing is supported for both character and numeric operands.

The length of the operation is equal to the length of the longer of the two source operands. The shorter of the two operands is logically padded on the right with hex 00 values. This assigns hex 00 values to the results for those bytes that correspond to the excess bytes of the longer operand.

The bit values of the result are determined as follows:

| Source 1 Bit | Source 2 Bit | Result Bit |
|--------------|--------------|------------|
| 0            | 0            | 0          |
| 0            | 1            | 0          |
| 1            | 0            | 0          |
| 1            | 1            | 1          |

The result value is then placed (left-adjusted) in the receiver operand with truncating or padding taking place on the right. The pad value used in this instruction is a byte value of hex 00.

If operands overlap but do not share all of the same bytes, results of operations performed on these operands are not predictable. If overlapped operands share all of the same bytes, the results are predictable when direct addressing is used. If indirect addressing is used (that is, based operands, parameters, strings with variable lengths, and arrays with variable subscripts), the results are not always predictable.

Substring operand references that allow for a null substring reference (a length value of zero) may be specified for operands 1, 2, and 3. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for either or both of the source operands is that the result is all zero and instruction's resultant condition is *zero*. When a null substring reference is specified for the receiver, a result is not set and the instruction's resultant condition is *zero* regardless of the values of the source operands.

When the receiver operand is a numeric variable scalar, it is possible that the result produced will not be a valid value for the numeric type. This can occur due to padding with hex 00, due to truncation, or due to the resultant bit string produced by the instruction. The instruction completes normally and signals no exceptions for these conditions.

### Resultant Conditions

- Zero - The bit value for the bits of the scalar receiver operand is either all zero or a null substring reference is specified for the receiver.
- Not zero - The bit value for the bits of the scalar receiver operand is not all zero.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |   |       |
| 04 System object damage state       | X        | X | X | X     |
| 44 Partial system object damage     | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception      |          |   |   |       |
| 03 Machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                  |          |   |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 Invalid branch target               |          |   |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |

## Branch (B)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1     |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1011          | Branch target |

*Operand 1:* Instruction number, relative instruction number, branch point, instruction pointer, or instruction definition list element.

**Description:** Control is unconditionally transferred to the instruction indicated in the branch target operand. The instruction number indicated by the branch target operand must be within the instruction stream containing the branch instruction.

The branch target may be an element of an array of instruction pointers or an element of an instruction definition list. The specific element can be identified by using a compound subscript operand.

## Exceptions

| Exception |                                   | Operand |       |
|-----------|-----------------------------------|---------|-------|
|           |                                   | 1       | Other |
| 06        | Addressing                        |         |       |
|           | 01 Spacing addressing violation   | X       |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment violation   | X       |       |
|           | 03 Range                          | X       |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                |         |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation  | X       |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                |         |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state     | X       | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage   | X       | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception       |         |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded |         | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                   |         |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                  |         | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                 |         | X     |
| 22        | Object access                     |         |       |
|           | 01 Object not found               | X       |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed               | X       |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended               | X       |       |
|           | 08 object compressed              |         | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification             |         |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist         | X       |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid           | X       |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                 |         |       |
|           | 04 Invalid branch target          | X       |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit            |         |       |





## Clear Bit in String (CLRBTS)

**Op Code (Hex)**  
102E

**Operand 1**  
Receiver

**Operand 2**  
Offset

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar (fixed length) or numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Binary scalar.

**Description:** Clears the bit of the receiver operand as indicated by the bit offset operand.

The selected bit from the receiver operand is set to a value of binary 0.

The receiver operand can be character or numeric. The leftmost bytes of the receiver operand are used in the operation. The receiver operand is interpreted as a bit string with the bits numbered left to right from 0 to the total number of bits in the string minus 1.

The receiver cannot be a variable substring.

The offset operand indicates which bit of the receiver operand is to be cleared, with a offset of zero indicating the leftmost bit of the leftmost byte of the receiver operand.

If a offset value less than zero or beyond the length of the string is specified, a *scalar value invalid* (hex 3203) exception is signaled.

### Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment violation     | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 Range                            | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                  |          |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state       |          |   | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage     |          |   | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception         |          |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                     |          |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                    |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                   |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                       |          |   |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                 | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                 | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                |          |   | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2A        | Program creation                       |          |   |       |
|           | 06 Invalid operand type                | X        | X |       |
|           | 07 Invalid operand attribute           | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 Invalid operand value range         | X        | X |       |
|           | 0A Invalid operand length              | X        | X |       |
|           | 0C Invalid operand odt reference       | X        | X |       |
|           | 0D Reserved bits are not zero          | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Scalar type invalid                 | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 Scalar value invalid                |          | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |

**Compare Bytes Left-Adjusted (CMPBLA)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br><b>CMPBLAB</b><br>1CC2 | Extender<br>Branch options | Operand 1<br>Compare<br>operand 1 | Operand 2<br>Compare<br>operand 2 | Operand 3 [4, 5]<br>Branch targets |
|---|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>CMPBLAI</b><br>18C2                  | Indicator options          | Compare<br>operand 1              | Compare<br>operand 2              | Indicator targets                  |

*Operand 1:* Numeric scalar or character scalar.

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar or character scalar.

*Operand 3 [4, 5]:*

- *Branch Form*-Instruction number, relative instruction number, branch point, or instruction pointer.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** This instruction compares the logical string values of two left-adjusted compare operands. The logical string value of the first compare operand is compared with the logical string value of the second compare operand (no padding done). Based on the comparison, the resulting condition is used with the extender field to:

- Transfer control conditionally to the instruction indicated in one of the branch target operands (branch form).
- Assign a value to each of the indicator operands (indicator form).

The compare operands can be either character or numeric. Any numeric operands are interpreted as logical character strings.

The compare operands are compared byte by byte, from left to right with no numeric conversions performed. The length of the operation is equal to the length of the shorter of the two compare operands. The comparison begins with the leftmost byte of each of the compare operands and proceeds until all bytes of the shorter compare operand have been compared or until the first unequal pair of bytes is encountered.

Substring operand references that allow for a null substring reference (a length value of zero) may be specified for operands 1 and 2. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for either or both compare operands is that the instruction's resultant condition is *equal*.

**Resultant Conditions:** The scalar first compare operand's string value is one of the following as compared to the second compare operand.

- higher
- lower
- equal

**Exceptions**

| Exception |                                 | Operands |   |          | Other |
|-----------|---------------------------------|----------|---|----------|-------|
|           |                                 | 1        | 2 | 3 [4, 5] |       |
| 06        | Addressing                      |          |   |          |       |
|           | 01 Spacing addressing violation | X        | X | X        |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment           | X        | X | X        |       |

## Compare Bytes Left-Adjusted (CMPBLA)

| Exception |  | Operands |   |          | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|----------|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 [4, 5] |       |
|           | 03 Range                               | X        | X | X        |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X | X        |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                     |          |   |          |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X        |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |          |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          | X        | X | X        | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        | X        | X | X        | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |          |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |          | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |          |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |          | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |          | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |          |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X        |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X        |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X        |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |          | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |          |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X        |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X        |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |          |       |
|           | 04 Branch target invalid               |          |   |          | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |          |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |          | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |          |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |          | X     |

**Compare Bytes Left-Adjusted with Pad (CMPBLAP)**

| Op Code (Hex)           | Extender          | Operand 1         | Operand 2         | Operand 3 | Operand 4 [5, 6]  |
|-------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-----------|-------------------|
| <b>CMPBLAPB</b><br>1CC3 | Branch options    | Compare operand 1 | Compare operand 2 | Pad       | Branch targets    |
| <b>CMPBLAPI</b><br>18C3 | Indicator options | Compare operand 1 | Compare operand 2 | Pad       | Indicator targets |

*Operand 1:* Numeric scalar or character scalar.

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar or character scalar.

*Operand 3:* Numeric scalar or character scalar.

*Operand 4 [5, 6]:*

- *Branch Form*-Instruction number, relative instruction number, branch point, or instruction pointer.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** This instruction compares the logical string values of two left-adjusted compare operands (padded if needed). The logical string value of the first compare operand is compared with the logical string value of the second compare operand. Based on the comparison, the resulting condition is used with the extender field to:

- Transfer control conditionally to the instruction indicated in one of the branch target operands (branch form).
- Assign a value to each of the indicator operands (indicator form).

The compare operands can be either character or numeric. Any numeric operands are interpreted as logical character strings.

The compare operands are compared byte by byte, from left to right with no numeric conversions being performed.

The length of the operation is equal to the length of the longer of the two compare operands. The shorter of the two compare operands is logically padded on the right with the 1-byte value indicated in the pad operand. If the pad operand is more than 1 byte in length, only its leftmost byte is used. The comparison begins with the leftmost byte of each of the compare operands and proceeds until all the bytes of the longer of the two compare operands have been compared or until the first unequal pair of bytes is encountered. All excess bytes in the longer of the two compare operands are compared to the pad value.

Substring operand references that allow for a null substring reference (a length value of zero) may be specified for operands 1 and 2. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for one of the compare operands is that the other compare operand is compared with an equal length string of pad character values. When a null substring reference is specified for both compare operands, the resultant condition is *equal*.

Substring operand references that allow for a null substring reference (a length value of zero) may not be specified for operand 3.

**Resultant Conditions:** The scalar first compare operand's string value is one of the following as compared to the second compare operand.

- higher
- lower
- equal

## Exceptions

| Exception                              | Operands |   |   |          | Other |
|--|----------|---|---|----------|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 [5, 6] |       |
| 06 Addressing                          |          |   |   |          |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation        | X        | X | X | X        |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment                  | X        | X | X | X        |       |
| 03 Range                               | X        | X | X | X        |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X | X | X        |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                  |          |   |   |          |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X | X        |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                  |          |   |   |          |       |
| 04 System object damage state          | X        | X | X | X        | X     |
| 44 Partial system object damage        | X        | X | X | X        | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception         |          |   |   |          |       |
| 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   |          | X     |
| 20 Machine support                     |          |   |   |          |       |
| 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   |          | X     |
| 03 Function check                      |          |   |   |          | X     |
| 22 Object access                       |          |   |   |          |       |
| 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X | X        |       |
| 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X | X        |       |
| 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X | X        |       |
| 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   |          | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification               |          |   |   |          |       |
| 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X | X        |       |
| 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X | X        |       |
| 2C Program execution                   |          |   |   |          |       |
| 04 Branch target invalid               |          |   |   |          | X     |
| 2E Resource control limit              |          |   |   |          |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   |          | X     |
| 36 Space management                    |          |   |   |          |       |
| 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   |          | X     |

**Compare Bytes Right-Adjusted (CMPBRA)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br><b>CMPBRAB</b><br>1CC6 | Extender<br>Branch options | Operand 1<br>Compare<br>operand 1 | Operand 2<br>Compare<br>operand 2 | Operand 3 [4, 5]<br>Branch targets |
|---|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>CMPBRAI</b><br>18C6                  | Indicator options          | Compare<br>operand 1              | Compare<br>operand 2              | Indicator targets                  |

*Operand 1:* Numeric scalar or character scalar.

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar or character scalar.

*Operand 3 [4, 5]:*

- *Branch Form*-Instruction number, relative instruction number, branch point, or instruction pointer.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** This instruction compares the logical string values of two right-adjusted compare operands. The logical string value of the first compare operand is compared with the logical string value of the second compare operand (no padding done). Based on the comparison, the resulting condition is used with the extender field to:

- Transfer control conditionally to the instruction indicated in one of the branch target operands (branch form).
- Assign a value to each of the indicator operands (indicator form).

The compare operands can be either string or numeric. Any numeric operands are interpreted as logical character strings.

The compare operands are compared byte by byte, from left to right with no numeric conversions performed. The length of the operation is equal to the length of the shorter of the two compare operands. The comparison begins with the leftmost byte of each of the compare operands and proceeds until all bytes of the shorter compare operand have been compared or until the first unequal pair of bytes is encountered.

Substring operand references that allow for a null substring reference (a length value of zero) may be specified for operands 1 and 2. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for either or both compare operands is that the instruction's resultant condition is *equal*.

**Resultant Conditions:** The scalar first compare operand's string value is one of the following as compared to the second compare operand.

- higher
- lower
- equal

**Exceptions**

| Exception                       | Operands |   |          | Other |
|---------------------------------|----------|---|----------|-------|
|                                 | 1        | 2 | 3 [4, 5] |       |
| 06 Addressing                   |          |   |          |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation | X        | X | X        |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment violation | X        | X | X        |       |



| Exception |  | Operands |   |          | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|----------|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 [4, 5] |       |
|           | 03 Range                               | X        | X | X        |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X | X        |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                     |          |   |          |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X        |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |          |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          | X        | X | X        | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        | X        | X | X        | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |          |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |          | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |          |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |          | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |          | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |          |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X        |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X        |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X        |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |          | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |          |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X        |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X        |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |          |       |
|           | 04 Branch target invalid               |          |   | X        | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |          |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |          | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |          |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |          | X     |

**Compare Bytes Right-Adjusted with Pad (CMPBRAP)**

| Op Code (Hex)            | Extender          | Operand 1         | Operand 2         | Operand 3 | Operand 4 [5, 6]  |
|--------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-----------|-------------------|
| <b>CMPBRAPB</b><br>1CC7  | Branch options    | Compare operand 1 | Compare operand 2 | Pad       | Branch targets    |
| <b>CMPBRAP I</b><br>18C7 | Indicator options | Compare operand 1 | Compare operand 2 | Pad       | Indicator targets |

*Operand 1:* Numeric scalar or character scalar.

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar or character scalar.

*Operand 3:* Numeric scalar or character scalar.

*Operand 4 [5, 6]:*

- *Branch Form*-Instruction number, relative instruction number, branch point, or instruction pointer.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** This instruction compares the logical string values of the right-adjusted compare operands (padded if needed). The logical string value of the first compare operand is compared with the logical string value of the second compare operand. Based on the comparison, the resulting condition is used with the extender field to:

- Transfer control conditionally to the instruction indicated in one of the branch target operands (branch form).
- Assign a value to each of the indicator operands (indicator form).

The compare operands can be either character or numeric. Any numeric operands are interpreted as logical character strings.

The compare operands are compared byte by byte, from left to right with no numeric conversions performed.

The length of the operation is equal to the length of the longer of the two compare operands. The shorter of the two compare operands is logically padded on the left with the 1-byte value indicated in the pad operand. If the pad operand is more than 1 byte in length, only its leftmost byte is used. The comparison begins with the leftmost byte of the longer of the compare operands. Any excess bytes (on the left) in the longer compare operand are compared with the pad value. All other bytes are compared with the corresponding bytes in the other compare operand. The operation proceeds until all bytes in the longer operand are compared or until the first unequal pair of bytes is encountered.

Substring operand references that allow for a null substring reference (a length value of zero) may be specified for operands 1 and 2. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for one of the compare operands is that the other compare operand is compared with an equal length string of pad character values. When a null substring reference is specified for both compare operands, the resultant condition is *equal*.

Substring operand references that allow for a null substring reference (a length value of zero) may not be specified for operand 3.

**Resultant Conditions:** The scalar first compare operand's string value is one of the following as compared to the second compare operand.

- higher
- lower
- equal

## Exceptions

| Exception                              | Operands |   |   |          | Other |
|--|----------|---|---|----------|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 [5, 6] |       |
| 06 Addressing                          |          |   |   |          |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation        | X        | X | X | X        |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment                  | X        | X | X | X        |       |
| 03 Range                               | X        | X | X | X        |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X | X | X        |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                  |          |   |   |          |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X | X        |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                  |          |   |   |          |       |
| 04 System object damage state          | X        | X | X | X        | X     |
| 44 Partial system object damage        | X        | X | X | X        | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception         |          |   |   |          |       |
| 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   |          | X     |
| 20 Machine support                     |          |   |   |          |       |
| 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   |          | X     |
| 03 Function check                      |          |   |   |          | X     |
| 22 Object access                       |          |   |   |          |       |
| 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X | X        |       |
| 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X | X        |       |
| 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X | X        |       |
| 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   |          | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification               |          |   |   |          |       |
| 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X | X        |       |
| 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X | X        |       |
| 2C Program execution                   |          |   |   |          |       |
| 04 Branch target invalid               |          |   | X | X        |       |
| 2E Resource control limit              |          |   |   |          |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   |          | X     |
| 36 Space management                    |          |   |   |          |       |
| 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   |          | X     |

## Compare Numeric Value (CMPNV)

| Op Code (Hex)<br>CMPNVB<br>1C46 | Extender<br>Branch options | Operand 1<br>Compare<br>operand 1 | Operand 2<br>Compare<br>operand 2 | Operand 3 [4-6]<br>Branch targets |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| CMPNVI<br>1846                  | Indicator options          | Compare<br>operand 1              | Compare<br>operand 2              | Indicator targets                 |

*Operand 1:* Numeric scalar.

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar.

*Operand 3 [4-6]:*

- *Branch Form*-Instruction number, relative instruction number, branch point, or instruction pointer.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** The numeric value of the first compare operand is compared with the signed or unsigned numeric value of the second compare operand. Based on the comparison, the resulting condition is used with the extender field to:

- Transfer control conditionally to the instruction indicated in one of the branch target operands (branch form).
- Assign a value to each of the indicator operands (indicator form).

For a decimal operation, alignment of the assumed decimal point takes place by padding with 0's on the right end of the compare operand with lesser precision.

Decimal operands used in floating-point operations cannot contain more than 15 total digit positions.

When both operands are signed numeric or both are unsigned numeric, the length of the operation is equal to the length of the longer of the two compare operands.

When one operand is signed numeric and the other operand unsigned numeric, the unsigned operand is converted to a signed value with more precision than its current size. The length of the operation is equal to the length of the longer of the two compare operands. A negative signed numeric value will always be less than a positive unsigned value.

Floating-point comparisons use exponent comparison and significand comparison. For a denormalized floating-point number, the comparison is performed as if the denormalized number had first been normalized.

For floating-point, two values compare unordered when at least one comparand is NaN. Every NaN compares unordered with everything including another NaN value.

Floating-point comparisons ignore the sign of zero. Positive zero always compares equal with negative zero.

A *floating-point invalid operand* (hex 0C09) exception is signaled when two floating-point values compare unordered and no branch or indicator option exists for any of the unordered, negation of unordered equal, or negation of equal resultant conditions.

When a comparison is made between a floating-point compare operand and a fixed-point decimal compare operand that contains fractional digit positions, a *floating-point inexact result* (hex 0C0D) exception may be signaled because of the implicit conversion from decimal to floating-point.

**Resultant Conditions**

- High-The first compare operand has a higher numeric value than the second compare operand.
- Low-The first compare operand has a lower numeric value than the second compare operand.
- Equal-The first compare operand has a equal numeric value than the second compare operand.
- Unordered-The first compare operand is unordered compared to the second compare operand.

**Exceptions**

| Exception                           | Operands |   |         |       |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---------|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 [4-6] | Other |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |         |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        | X | X       |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X | X       |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X | X       |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X       |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |         |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X       |       |
| 0C Computation                      |          |   |         |       |
| 02 Decimal data                     | X        | X |         |       |
| 03 Decimal point alignment          | X        | X |         |       |
| 09 Floating-point invalid operand   |          | X |         | X     |
| 0D Floating-point inexact result    |          |   |         | X     |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |         |       |
| 04 System object damage state       | X        | X | X       | X     |
| 44 Partial system object damage     | X        | X | X       | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception      |          |   |         |       |
| 03 Machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   |         | X     |
| 20 Machine support                  |          |   |         |       |
| 02 Machine check                    |          |   |         | X     |
| 03 Function check                   |          |   |         | X     |
| 22 Object access                    |          |   |         |       |
| 01 Object not found                 | X        | X | X       |       |
| 02 Object destroyed                 | X        | X | X       |       |
| 03 Object suspended                 | X        | X | X       |       |
| 08 object compressed                |          |   |         | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification            |          |   |         |       |
| 01 Pointer does not exist           | X        | X | X       |       |
| 02 Pointer type invalid             | X        | X | X       |       |
| 2C Program execution                |          |   |         |       |
| 04 Branch target invalid            |          |   | X       |       |
| 2E Resource control limit           |          |   |         |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   |       | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 | [4-6] |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   |       | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   |       | X     |

## Compress Data (CPRDATA)

|                      |                           |
|----------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>Op Code (Hex)</b> | <b>Operand 1</b>          |
| 1041                 | Compress Data<br>template |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

### ILE access

```
CPRDATA (
    compress_data_template : space pointer
)
```

**Description:** The instruction compresses user data of a specified length. Operand 1 identifies a template which identifies the data to be compressed. The template also identifies the result space to receive the compressed data.

The Compress Data template must be aligned on a 16-byte boundary. The format is as follows:

- |                            |               |
|----------------------------|---------------|
| • Source length            | Bin(4)        |
| • Result area length       | Bin(4)        |
| • Actual result length     | Bin(4)*       |
| • Compression algorithm    | Bin(2)        |
| 1 = Simple TERSE algorithm |               |
| 2 = IBM LZ1 algorithm      |               |
| • Reserved (binary 0)      | Char(18)      |
| • Source space pointer     | Space pointer |
| • Result space pointer     | Space pointer |

**Note:** The input value associated with template entries annotated with an asterisk (\*) are ignored by the instruction; these fields are updated by the instruction to return information about instruction execution.

The data at the location specified by the **source space pointer** for the length specified by the **source length** is compressed and stored at the location specified by the **result space pointer**. The **actual result length** is set to the number of bytes in the compressed result. The source data is not modified.

The value of both the *source length* field and *result area length* field must be greater than zero. If the compressed result is longer than the result area (as specified by the **result area length**), the compression is stopped and only *result area length* bytes are stored.

The **compression algorithm** field specifies the algorithm used to compress the data. The *IBM LZ1 algorithm* tends to produce better compression on shorter input strings than the *simple TERSE algorithm*. The algorithm choice is stored in the compressed output data so the Decompress Data instruction will automatically select the correct decompression algorithm.

Only scalar (non-pointer) data is compressed, so any pointers in the data to be compressed are destroyed in the output of the Decompress Data instruction.

**Authorization Required**

- None

**Lock Enforcement**

- None

**Exceptions**

| Exception |  | Operands |       |
|-----------|--|----------|-------|
|           |  | 1        | Other |
| 06        | Addressing                             |          |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation          | X        | X     |
|           | 02 boundary alignment                  | X        |       |
|           | 03 range                               | X        |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid    | X        |       |
| 08        | Argument/Parameter                     |          |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation       | X        |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |       |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        | X        | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X     |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X     |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          | X        | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                 |          |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid              | X        |       |
| 44        | Domain                                 |          |       |
|           | 01 object domain error                 | X        |       |



## Compute Array Index (CAI)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1   | Operand 2   | Operand 3   | Operand 4 |
|---------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-----------|
| 1044          | Array index | Subscript A | Subscript B | Dimension |

*Operand 1:* Binary(2) variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Binary(2) scalar.

*Operand 3:* Binary(2) scalar.

*Operand 4:* Binary(2) constant scalar object or immediate operand.

**Description:** This instruction provides the ability to reduce multidimensional array subscript values into a single index value which can then be used in referencing the single-dimensional arrays of the system. This index value is computed by performing the following arithmetic operation on the indicated operands.

$$\text{Array Index} = \text{Subscript A} + ((\text{Subscript B} - 1) \times \text{Dimension})$$

The numeric value of the subscript B operand is decreased by 1 and multiplied by the numeric value of the dimension operand. The result of this multiplication is added to the subscript A operand and the sum is placed in the array index operand.

All the operands must be binary with any implicit conversions occurring according to the rules of arithmetic operations. The usual rules of algebra are observed concerning the subtraction, addition, and multiplication of operands.

This instruction provides for mapping multidimensional arrays to single-dimensional arrays. The elements of an array with the dimensions (d1, d2, d3, ..., dn) can be defined as a single-dimensional array with  $d1 \times d2 \times d3 \times \dots \times dn$  elements. To reference a specific element of the multidimensional array with subscripts (s1, s2, s3, ..., sn), it is necessary to convert the multiple subscripts to a single subscript for use in the single-dimensional AS/400 array. This single subscript can be computed using the following:

$$s1 + ((s2 - 1) \times d1) + ((s3 - 1) \times d1 \times d2) + \dots + ((sn - 1) \times d1 \times d2 \times d3 \times \dots \times dm)$$

where  $m = n - 1$

The CAI instruction is used to form a single index value from two subscript values. To reduce N subscript values into a single index value, N-1 uses of this instruction are necessary.

Assume that S1, S2, and S3 are three subscript values and that D1 is the size of one dimension, D2 is the size of the second dimension, and the D1D2 is the product of D1 and D2. The following two uses of this instruction reduce the three subscripts to a single subscript.

CAI INDEX, S1, S2, D1      Calculates  $s1 + (s2 - 1) \times d1$   
 CAI INDEX, INDEX, S3, D1D2      Calculates  $s1 + (s2 - 1) \times d1 + (s3 - 1) \times d2 \times d1$

## Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                     |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 0C        | Computation                            |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 0A size                                | X        |   |   |   |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          | X        | X | X | X | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   |   | X     |

## Compute Math Function Using One Input Value (CMF1)

| Op Code (Hex) | Extender          | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3 | Operand [4-5]     |
|---------------|-------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-------------------|
| CMF1<br>100B  |                   | Receiver  | Controls  | Source    |                   |
| CMF1B<br>1C0B | Branch options    | Receiver  | Controls  | Source    | Branch targets    |
| CMF1I<br>180B | Indicator options | Receiver  | Controls  | Source    | Indicator targets |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character(2) scalar (fixed length).

*Operand 3:* Numeric scalar.

*Operand 4-5:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** The mathematical function, indicated by the controls operand, is performed on the source operand value and the result is placed in the receiver operand.

The calculation is always done in floating-point.

The result of the operation is copied into the receiver operand.

The controls operand must be a character scalar that specifies which mathematical function is to be performed. It must be at least 2 bytes in length and has the following format:

- Controls operand Char(2)
  - Hex 0001 = Sine
  - Hex 0002 = Arc sine
  - Hex 0003 = Cosine
  - Hex 0004 = Arc cosine
  - Hex 0005 = Tangent
  - Hex 0006 = Arc tangent
  - Hex 0007 = Cotangent
  - Hex 0010 = Exponential function
  - Hex 0011 = Logarithm based e (natural logarithm)
  - Hex 0012 = Sine hyperbolic
  - Hex 0013 = Cosine hyperbolic
  - Hex 0014 = Tangent hyperbolic
  - Hex 0015 = Arc tangent hyperbolic
  - Hex 0020 = Square root
  - All other values are reserved

The controls operand mathematical functions are as follows:

- Hex 0001-Sine

The sine of the numeric value of the source operand, whose value is considered to be in radians, is computed and placed in the receiver operand.

The result is in the range:

$$-1 \leq \text{SIN}(x) \leq 1$$

- Hex 0002-Arc sine

The arc sine of the numeric value of the source operand is computed and the result (in radians) is placed in the receiver operand.

The result is in the range:

$$-\pi/2 \leq \text{ASIN}(x) \leq +\pi/2$$

- Hex 0003-Cosine

The cosine of the numeric value of the source operand, whose value is considered to be in radians, is computed and placed in the receiver operand.

The result is in the range:

$$-1 \leq \text{COS}(x) \leq 1$$

- Hex 0004-Arc cosine

The arc cosine of the numeric value of the source operand is computed and the result (in radians) is placed in the receiver operand.

The result is in the range:

$$0 \leq \text{ACOS}(x) \leq \pi$$

- Hex 0005-Tangent

The tangent of the source operand, whose value is considered to be in radians, is computed and the result is placed in the receiver operand.

The result is in the range:

$$-\infty \leq \text{TAN}(x) \leq +\infty$$

- Hex 0006-Arc tangent

The arc tangent of the source operand is computed and the result (in radians) is placed in the receiver operand.

The result is in the range:

$$-\pi/2 \leq \text{ATAN}(x) \leq \pi/2$$

- Hex 0007-Cotangent

The cotangent of the source operand, whose value is considered to be in radians, is computed and the result is placed in the receiver operand.

The result is in the range:

$$-\infty \leq \text{COT}(x) \leq +\infty$$

- Hex 0010-Exponential function

The computation e power (source operand) is performed and the result is placed in the receiver operand.

The result is in the range:

$$0 \leq \text{EXP}(x) \leq +\infty$$

- Hex 0011-Logarithm based e (natural logarithm)

The natural logarithm of the source operand is computed and the result is placed in the receiver operand.

The result is in the range:

$$-\infty \leq \text{LN}(x) \leq +\infty$$

- Hex 0012-Sine hyperbolic

The sine hyperbolic of the numeric value of the source operand is computed and the result (in radians) is placed in the receiver operand.

The result is in the range:

$$-\text{infinity} \leq \text{SINH}(x) \leq +\text{infinity}$$

- Hex 0013-Cosine hyperbolic

The cosine hyperbolic of the numeric value of the source operand is computed and the result (in radians) is placed in the receiver operand.

The result is in the range:

$$+1 \leq \text{COSH}(x) \leq +\text{infinity}$$

- Hex 0014-Tangent hyperbolic

The tangent hyperbolic of the numeric value of the source operand is computed and the result (in radians) is placed in the receiver operand.

The result is in the range:

$$-1 \leq \text{TANH}(x) \leq +1$$

- Hex 0015-Arc tangent hyperbolic

The inverse of the tangent hyperbolic of the numeric value of the source operand is computed and the result (in radians) is placed in the receiver operand.

The result is in the range:

$$-\text{infinity} \leq \text{ATANH}(x) \leq +\text{infinity}$$

- Hex 0020-Square root

The square root of the numeric value of the source operand is computed and placed in the receiver operand.

The result is in the range:

$$0 \leq \text{SQRT}(x) \leq +\text{infinity}$$

The following chart shows some special cases for certain arguments (X) of the different mathematical functions.

| Function               | X | Masked NaN | Unmasked NaN | + infinity | -infinity | + 0    | -0     | Maximum Value | Minimum Value | Other  |
|------------------------|---|------------|--------------|------------|-----------|--------|--------|---------------|---------------|--------|
| Sine                   |   | g          | A(e)         | A(f)       | A(f)      | + 0    | -0     | A(1,f)        | A(1,f)        | B(3)   |
| Arc sine               |   | g          | A(e)         | A(f)       | A(f)      | + 0    | -0     | A(6,f)        | A(6,f)        | -      |
| Cosine                 |   | g          | A(e)         | A(f)       | A(f)      | + 1    | + 1    | A(1,f)        | A(1,f)        | B(3)   |
| Arc cosine             |   | g          | A(e)         | A(f)       | A(f)      | + pi/2 | + pi/2 | A(6,f)        | A(6,f)        | -      |
| Tangent                |   | g          | A(e)         | A(f)       | A(f)      | + 0    | -0     | A(1,f)        | A(1,f)        | B(3)   |
| Arc tangent            |   | g          | A(e)         | + pi/2     | -pi/2     | + 0    | -0     | -             | -             | -      |
| Cotangent              |   | g          | A(e)         | A(f)       | A(f)      | + inf  | -inf   | A(1,f)        | A(1,f)        | B(3)   |
| Exponent               |   | g          | A(e)         | + inf      | + 0       | + 1    | + 1    | C(4,a)        | D(5,b)        | -      |
| Logarithm              |   | g          | A(e)         | + inf      | A(f)      | -inf   | -inf   | -             | -             | A(2,f) |
| Sine hyperbolic        |   | g          | A(e)         | + inf      | -inf      | + 0    | -0     | -             | -             | -      |
| Cosine hyperbolic      |   | g          | A(e)         | + inf      | + inf     | + 1    | + 1    | -             | -             | -      |
| Tangent hyperbolic     |   | g          | A(e)         | + 1        | -1        | + 0    | -0     | -             | -             | -      |
| Arc tangent hyperbolic |   | g          | A(e)         | A(f)       | A(f)      | + 0    | -0     | A(6,f)        | A(6,f)        | -      |
| Square root            |   | g          | A(e)         | + inf      | A(f)      | + 0    | -0     | -             | -             | A(2,f) |

Figure 2-1. Special cases for arguments of CMF1 mathematical functions.

Capital letters in the chart indicate the exceptions, small letters indicate the returned results, and Arabic numerals indicate the limits of the arguments (X) as defined in the following lists:

**A** = Floating-point invalid operand (hex 0C09) exception (no result stored if unmasked; if masked, occurrence bit is set)

**B** = Floating-point inexact result (hex 0C0D) exception (result is stored whether or not exception is masked)

**C** = Floating-point overflow (hex 0C06) exception (no result is stored if unmasked; if masked, occurrence bit is set)

**D** = Floating-point underflow (hex 0C07) exception (no result is stored if unmasked; occurrence bit is always set)

**a** = Result follows the rules that depend on round mode

**b** = Result is +0 or a denormalized value

**c** = Result is +infinity

**d** = Result is -infinity

**e** = Result is the masked form of the input NaN

**f** = Result is the system default masked NaN

**g** = Result is the input NaN

**inf** = Result is infinity

- 1 =  $|\pi * 2^{50}| = \text{Hex } 432921\text{FB}54442\text{D}18$
- 2 = Argument is in the range:  $-\infty < x < -0$
- 3 =  $|\pi * 2^{26}| = \text{Hex } 41\text{A}921\text{FB}54442\text{D}18$
- 4 =  $\ln(2^{1023})$  Hex  $40862\text{E}42\text{FEFA}39\text{EF}$
- 5 =  $\ln(2^{-1021.4555}) = \text{Hex } \text{C}086200000000000$
- 6 = Argument is in the range:  $-1 \leq x \leq +1$

The following chart provides accuracy data for the mathematical functions that can be invoked by this instruction.

# Compute Math Function Using One Input Value (CMF1)

| Function Name          | Sample Selection |                             |   | Accuracy Data      |                   |                    |                   |
|------------------------|------------------|-----------------------------|---|--------------------|-------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
|                        |                  |                             |   | Relative Error (e) |                   | Absolute Error (E) |                   |
|                        | A                | Range of x                  | D | MAX(e)             | SD(e)             | MAX(E)             | SD(E)             |
| Arc cosine             | 9                | $0 \leq x \leq 3.14$        | U |                    |                   | $8.26 * 10^{-14}$  | $2.11 * 10^{-15}$ |
| Arc sine               | 10               | $-1.57 \leq x \leq 1.57$    | U | $1.02 * 10^{-13}$  | $2.66 * 10^{-15}$ |                    |                   |
| Arc tangent            | 1                | $-\pi/2 < x < \pi/2$        | 1 |                    |                   | $3.33 * 10^{-16}$  | $9.57 * 10^{-17}$ |
| Arc tangent hyperbolic | 14               | $-3 \leq x \leq 3$          | U |                    |                   | $1.06 * 10^{-14}$  | $1.79 * 10^{-15}$ |
| Cosine                 |                  | (See Sine below)            |   |                    |                   |                    |                   |
| Cosine hyperbolic      |                  | (See Sine Hyperbolic below) |   |                    |                   |                    |                   |
| Cotangent              | 11               | $-10 \leq x \leq 100$       | U | $4.83 * 10^{-16}$  | $1.48 * 10^{-16}$ |                    |                   |
|                        |                  | $.000001 \leq x \leq .001$  | U | $4.36 * 10^{-16}$  | $1.49 * 10^{-16}$ |                    |                   |
|                        |                  | $4000 \leq x \leq 4000000$  | U | $5.72 * 10^{-16}$  | $1.46 * 10^{-16}$ |                    |                   |
| Exponential            | 2                | $-100 \leq x \leq 300$      | U | $5.70 * 10^{-14}$  | $1.13 * 10^{-14}$ |                    |                   |
| Natural                | 3                | $0.5 \leq x \leq 1.5$       | U |                    |                   | $2.77 * 10^{-16}$  | $8.01 * 10^{-17}$ |
| logarithm              | 4                | $-100 \leq x \leq 700$      | E | $2.17 * 10^{-16}$  | $7.37 * 10^{-17}$ |                    |                   |
| Sine cosine            | 5                | $-10 \leq x \leq 100$       | U |                    |                   | $2.22 * 10^{-16}$  | $1.31 * 10^{-16}$ |
|                        |                  | $.000001 \leq x \leq .001$  | U |                    |                   | $2.22 * 10^{-16}$  | $1.56 * 10^{-16}$ |
|                        |                  | $4000 \leq x \leq 4000000$  | U |                    |                   | $2.22 * 10^{-16}$  | $1.28 * 10^{-16}$ |
|                        | 6                | $-10 \leq x \leq 100$       | U |                    |                   | $3.33 * 10^{-16}$  | $8.39 * 10^{-17}$ |
|                        |                  | $.000001 \leq x \leq .001$  | U |                    |                   | $4.33 * 10^{-19}$  | $1.28 * 10^{-19}$ |
|                        |                  | $4000 \leq x \leq 4000000$  | U |                    |                   | $3.33 * 10^{-16}$  | $8.17 * 10^{-17}$ |
| Sine/cosine hyperbolic | 12               | $-100 \leq x \leq 300$      | U | $6.31 * 10^{-16}$  | $1.97 * 10^{-16}$ |                    |                   |
| Square root            | 7                | $-100 \leq x \leq 700$      | E | $4.13 * 10^{-16}$  | $1.27 * 10^{-16}$ |                    |                   |
| Tangent                | 8                | $-10 \leq x \leq 100$       | U | $4.59 * 10^{-16}$  | $1.54 * 10^{-16}$ |                    |                   |
|                        |                  | $.000001 \leq x \leq .001$  | U | $4.42 * 10^{-16}$  | $1.44 * 10^{-16}$ | $3.25 * 10^{-19}$  | $8.06 * 10^{-20}$ |
|                        |                  | $4000 \leq x \leq 4000000$  | U | $4.77 * 10^{-16}$  | $1.43 * 10^{-16}$ |                    |                   |
| Tangent hyperbolic     | 13               | $-100 \leq x \leq 300$      | U | $8.35 * 10^{-16}$  | $3.87 * 10^{-17}$ | $2.22 * 10^{-16}$  | $3.17 * 10^{-17}$ |

Figure 2-2 (Part 1 of 2). Accuracy data for CMF1 mathematical functions.



**Algorithm Notes:**

1.  $f(x) = x$ , and  $g(x) = \text{ATAN}(\text{TAN}(x))$ .
2.  $f(x) = e^{**}x$ , and  $g(x) = e^{**}(\ln(e^{**}x))$ .
3.  $f(x) = \ln(x)$ , and  $g(x) = \ln(e^{**}(\ln(x)))$ .
4.  $f(x) = x$ , and  $g(x) = \ln(e^{**}x)$ .
5. Sum of squares algorithm.  $f(x) = 1$ , and  $g(x) = \text{SIN}(x)**2 + (\text{COS}(x))**2$ .
6. Double angle algorithm.  $f(x) = \text{SIN}(2x)$ , and  $g(x) = 2*(\text{SIN}(x)*\text{COS}(x))$ .
7.  $f(x) = e^{**}x$ , and  $g(x) = (\text{SQR}(e^{**}x))**2$ .
8.  $f(x) = \text{TAN}(x)$ , and  $g(x) = \text{SIN}(x) / \text{COS}(x)$ .
9.  $f(x) = x$ , and  $g(x) = \text{ACOS}(\text{COS}(x))$ .
10.  $f(x) = x$ , and  $g(x) = \text{ASIN}(\text{SIN}(x))$ .
11.  $f(x) = \text{COT}(x)$ , and  $g(x) = \text{COS}(x) / \text{SIN}(x)$ .
12.  $f(x) = \text{SINH}(2x)$ , and  $g(x) = 2*(\text{SINH}(x)*\text{COSH}(x))$ .
13.  $f(x) = \text{TANH}(x)$ , and  $g(x) = \text{SINH}(x) / \text{COSH}(x)$ .
14.  $f(x) = x$ , and  $g(x) = \text{ATANH}(\text{TANH}(x))$ .

**Distribution Note:** The sample input arguments were tangents of numbers,  $x$ , uniformly distributed between  $-\pi/2$  and  $+\pi/2$ .

Figure 2-2 (Part 2 of 2). Accuracy data for CMF1 mathematical functions.

The vertical columns in the accuracy data chart have the following meanings:

- **Function Name:** This column identifies the principal mathematical functions evaluated with entries arranged in alphabetical order by function name.
- **Sample Selection:** This column identifies the selection of samples taken for a particular math function through the following subcolumns:
  - **A:** identifies the algorithm used against the argument,  $x$ , to gather the accuracy samples. The numbers in this column refer to notes describing the functions,  $f(x)$  and  $g(x)$ , which were calculated to test for the anticipated relation where  $f(x)$  should equal  $g(x)$ . An accuracy sample then, is an evaluation of the degree to which this relation held true. The algorithm used to sample the arctangent function, for example, defines  $g(x)$  to first calculate the tangent of  $x$  to provide an appropriate distribution of input arguments for the arctangent function. Since  $f(x)$  is defined simply as the value of  $x$ , the relation to be evaluated is then  $x = \text{ARCTAN}(\text{TAN}(x))$ . This type of algorithm, where a function and its inverse are used in tandem, is the usual type employed to provide the appropriate comparison values for the evaluation.
  - **"Range of  $x$ ":** gives the range of  $x$  used to obtain the accuracy samples. The test values for  $x$  are uniformly distributed over this range. It should be noted that  $x$  is not always the direct input argument to the function being tested; it is sometimes desirable to distribute the input arguments in a nonuniform fashion to provide a more complete test of the function (see column D below). For each function, accuracy data is given for one or more segments within the valid range of  $x$ . In each case, the numbers given are the most meaningful to the function and range under consideration.
  - **D:** identifies the distribution of arguments input to the particular function being sampled. The letter E indicates an exponential distribution. The letter U indicates a uniform distribution. A number refers to a note providing detailed information regarding the distribution.
- **Accuracy Data:** The maximum relative error and standard deviation of the relative error are generally useful and revealing statistics; however, they are useless for the range of a function where its value becomes zero. This is because the slightest error in the argument can cause an unpredictable fluctuation in the magnitude of the answer. When a small argument error would have this effect, the maximum absolute error and standard deviation of the absolute error are given for the range.

- **Relative Error (e):** The maximum relative error and standard deviation (root mean square) of the relative error are defined:

$$MAX(e) = MAX( ABS((f(x) - g(x)) / f(x)) )$$

where: MAX selects the largest of its arguments and ABS takes the absolute value of its argument.

$$SD(e) = SQR( (1/N) SUMSQ((f(x) - g(x)) / f(x)) )$$

where: SQR takes the square root of its argument and SUMSQ takes the summation of the squares of its arguments over all of the test cases.

- **Absolute Error (E):** The maximum absolute error produced during the testing and the standard deviation (root mean square) of the absolute error are:

$$MAX(E) = MAX( ABS( f(x) - g(x) ) )$$

where: the operators are those defined above.

$$SD(E) = SQR( (1/N) SUMSQ( f(x) - g(x) ) )$$

where: the operators are those defined above.

**Limitations:** The following are limits that apply to the functions performed by this instruction.

The source and receiver operands must both be specified as floating-point with the same length (4 bytes for short format or 8 bytes for long format).

#### Resultant Conditions

- Positive-The algebraic value of the receiver operand is positive.
- Negative-The algebraic value of the receiver operand is negative.
- Zero-The algebraic value of the receiver operand is zero.
- Unordered-The value assigned to the floating-point result is NaN.

#### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   |       |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 | Other |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment violation     | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X |       |
| 0C Computation                      |          |   |   |       |
| 06 Floating-point overflow          | X        |   |   |       |
| 07 Floating-point underflow         | X        |   |   |       |
| 09 Floating-point invalid operand   |          |   | X |       |
| 0D Floating-point inexact result    | X        |   |   |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |   |       |
| 04 System object damage state       |          |   |   | X     |

## Compute Math Function Using One Input Value (CMF1)

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        |          |   |   | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 Invalid branch target               |          |   |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 02 Process storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Scalar value invalid                |          | X |   |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |

## Compute Math Function Using Two Input Values (CMF2)

| Op Code<br>(Hex)     | Extender             | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3 | Operand 4 | Operand [5-8]        |
|----------------------|----------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|----------------------|
| <b>CMF2</b><br>100C  |                      | Receiver  | Controls  | Source 1  | Source 2  |                      |
| <b>CMF2B</b><br>1C0C | Branch<br>options    | Receiver  | Controls  | Source 1  | Source 2  | Branch<br>targets    |
| <b>CMF2I</b><br>180C | Indicator<br>options | Receiver  | Controls  | Source 1  | Source 2  | Indicator<br>targets |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character(2) scalar (fixed length)

*Operand 3:* Numeric scalar.

*Operand 4:* Numeric scalar.

*Operand 5-8:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** The mathematical function, indicated by the controls operand, is performed on the source operand values and the result is placed in the receiver operand.

The calculation is always done in floating-point.

The controls operand must be a character scalar that specifies which mathematical function is to be performed. It must be at least 2 bytes in length and have the following format:

- Controls operand Char(2)
  - Hex 0001 = Power (x to the y)
  - All other values are reserved

The computation  $x$  power  $y$ , where  $x$  is the first source operand and  $y$  is the second source operand, is performed and the result is placed in the receiver operand.

The following chart shows some special cases for certain arguments of the power function ( $x^{**}y$ ). Within the chart, the capitalized letters  $X$  and  $Y$  refer to the absolute value of the arguments  $x$  and  $y$ ; that is,  $X = |x|$  and  $Y = |y|$ .

|               | y | -inf<br>y=2n+1 | y<0,<br>y=2n         | y<0<br>real          | y<0                  | -1             | -1/2                        | +0<br>or<br>-0 | +1/2    | +1   | y>0<br>y=2n+1 | y>0<br>y=2n | y>0<br>real | +inf | M-<br>NaN | UnM-<br>NaN |
|---------------|---|----------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------|-----------------------------|----------------|---------|------|---------------|-------------|-------------|------|-----------|-------------|
| x             |   |                |                      |                      |                      |                |                             |                |         |      |               |             |             |      |           |             |
| +inf          |   | +0             | +0                   | +0                   | +0                   | +0             | +1                          | +inf           | +inf    | +inf | +inf          | +inf        | +inf        | b    | A(c)      |             |
| x>1           |   | +0             | $\frac{+1}{x^{**}y}$ | $\frac{+1}{x^{**}y}$ | $\frac{+1}{x^{**}y}$ | $\frac{+1}{x}$ | $\frac{+1}{\text{SQRT}(x)}$ | +1             | SQRT(x) | x    | $x^{**}y$     | $x^{**}y$   | $x^{**}y$   | +inf | b         | A(c)        |
| x=+1          |   | +1             | +1                   | +1                   | +1                   | +1             | +1                          | +1             | +1      | +1   | +1            | +1          | +1          | +1   | b         | A(c)        |
| 0<x<1         |   | +inf           | $\frac{+1}{x^{**}y}$ | $\frac{+1}{x^{**}y}$ | $\frac{+1}{x^{**}y}$ | $\frac{+1}{x}$ | $\frac{+1}{\text{SQRT}(x)}$ | +1             | SQRT(x) | x    | $x^{**}y$     | $x^{**}y$   | $x^{**}y$   | +0   | b         | A(c)        |
| x=+0          |   | E(f)           | E(f)                 | E(f)                 | E(f)                 | E(f)           | E(f)                        | +1             | +0      | +0   | +0            | +0          | +0          | +0   | b         | A(c)        |
| x=-0          |   | E(f)           | E(g)                 | E(f)                 | E(f)                 | E(g)           | E(g)                        | +1             | -0      | -0   | -0            | +0          | +0          | +0   | b         | A(c)        |
| 0>x>-1        |   | A(a)           | $\frac{-1}{x^{**}y}$ | $\frac{+1}{x^{**}y}$ | A(a)                 | $\frac{-1}{x}$ | A(a)                        | +1             | A(a)    | x    | $-x^{**}y$    | $x^{**}y$   | A(a)        | A(a) | b         | A(c)        |
| x=-1          |   | A(a)           | -1                   | +1                   | A(a)                 | -1             | A(a)                        | +1             | A(a)    | -1   | -1            | +1          | A(a)        | A(a) | b         | A(c)        |
| x<-1          |   | A(a)           | $\frac{-1}{x^{**}y}$ | $\frac{+1}{x^{**}y}$ | A(a)                 | $\frac{-1}{x}$ | A(a)                        | +1             | A(a)    | x    | $-x^{**}y$    | $x^{**}y$   | A(a)        | A(a) | b         | A(c)        |
| x=-inf        |   | A(a)           | -0                   | +0                   | A(a)                 | -0             | A(a)                        | +1             | A(a)    | -inf | -inf          | +inf        | A(a)        | A(a) | b         | A(c)        |
| Masked NaN    |   | b              | b                    | b                    | b                    | b              | b                           | b              | b       | b    | b             | b           | b           | b    | d         | A(e)        |
| Un-masked NaN |   | A(c)           | A(c)                 | A(c)                 | A(c)                 | A(c)           | A(c)                        | A(c)           | A(c)    | A(c) | A(c)          | A(c)        | A(c)        | A(c) | A(e)      | A(e)        |

Figure 2-3. Special cases of the power function ( $x^{**}y$ )

Capital letters in the chart indicate the exceptions and small letters indicate the returned results as defined in the following list:

- A Floating-point invalid operand (hex 0C09) exception
- E Divide by zero (hex 0C0E) exception
- a Result is the system default masked NaN
- b Result is the same NaN
- c Result is the same NaN masked
- d Result is the larger NaN
- e Result is the larger NaN masked
- f Result is +infinity
- g Result is -infinity

The following chart provides accuracy data for the mathematical function that can be invoked by this instruction.

| Function Name | Sample Selection |                    | Accuracy Data  |                |
|---------------|------------------|--------------------|----------------|----------------|
|               | x                | y                  | MAX(e)         | SD(e)          |
| Power         | 1/3              | -345 <= y <= 330   | 4.99 * 10**-16 | 1.90 * 10**-16 |
|               | .75              | -1320 <= y <= 1320 | 2.96 * 10**-16 | 2.39 * 10**-16 |
|               | .9               | -3605 <= y <= 3605 | 1.23 * 10**-16 | 1.02 * 10**-16 |
|               | 10               | -165 <= y <= 165   | 7.10 * 10**-16 | 3.18 * 10**-16 |
|               | 712              | -57 <= y <= 57     | 1.75 * 10**-15 | 7.24 * 10**-16 |

Figure 2-4. Accuracy data for CMF2 mathematical functions.

The vertical columns in the accuracy data chart have the following meanings:

- **Function Name:** This column identifies the mathematical function.
- **Sample Selection:** This column identifies the selection of samples taken for the power function. The algorithm used against the arguments, x and y, to gather the accuracy samples was a test for the anticipated relation where  $f(x)$  should equal  $g(x,y)$ :

where:

$$f(x) = x$$

$$g(x,y) = (x**y)**(1/y)$$

An accuracy sample then, is an evaluation of the degree to which this relation held true.

The range of argument values for x and y were selected such that x was held constant at a particular value and y was uniformly varied throughout a range of values which avoided overflowing or underflowing the result field. The particular values selected are indicated in the subcolumns entitled x and y.

- **Accuracy Data:** The maximum relative error and standard deviation (root mean square) of the relative error are generally useful and revealing statistics. These statistics for the relative error, (e), are provided in the following subcolumns:

$$MAX(e) = MAX(ABS((f(x) - g(x)) / f(x)))$$

where: MAX selects the largest of its arguments and ABS takes the absolute value of its argument.

$$SD(e) = SQR((1/N) SUMSQ((f(x) - g(x)) / f(x)))$$

where: SQR takes the square root of its argument and SUMSQ takes the summation of the squares of its arguments over all of the test cases.

**Limitations:** The following are limits that apply to the functions performed by this instruction.

The source and receiver operands must both be specified as floating-point with the same length (4 bytes for short format or 8 bytes for long format).

#### Resultant Conditions

- **Positive-**The algebraic value of the receiver operand is positive.
- **Negative-**The algebraic value of the receiver operand is negative.
- **Zero-**The algebraic value of the receiver operand is zero.
- **Unordered-**The value assigned to the floating-point result is NaN.

## Exceptions

| Exception                              | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 06 Addressing                          |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation          | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment violation        | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 range                               | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                  |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 0C Computation                         |          |   |   |   |       |
| 06 floating-point overflow             | X        |   |   |   |       |
| 07 floating-point underflow            | X        |   |   |   |       |
| 09 floating-point invalid operand      |          |   | X | X |       |
| 0C invalid floating-point conversion   | X        |   |   |   |       |
| 0D floating-point inexact result       | X        |   |   |   |       |
| 0E floating-point zero divide          | X        |   |   |   |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                  |          |   |   |   |       |
| 04 System object damage state          |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage        |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception         |          |   |   |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                     |          |   |   |   |       |
| 02 machine check                       |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 03 function check                      |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22 Object access                       |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 object not found                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 object suspended                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification               |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 2C Program execution                   |          |   |   |   |       |
| 04 invalid branch target               |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 2E Resource control limit              |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 02 process storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 32 Scalar specification                |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X | X |       |

## Compute Math Function Using Two Input Values (CMF2)

### Exception

- 03 scalar value invalid
- 36 Space management
  - 01 space extension/truncation

### Operands

| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | Other |
|---|---|---|---|-------|
|   | X |   |   |       |

|  |  |  |  |   |
|--|--|--|--|---|
|  |  |  |  | X |
|--|--|--|--|---|



## Concatenate (CAT)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 10F3          | Receiver  | Source 1  | Source 2  |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar.

*Operand 3:* Character scalar.

**Description:** The character string value of the second source operand is joined to the right end of the character string value of the first source operand. The resulting string value is placed (left-adjusted) in the receiver operand.

The length of the operation is equal to the length of the receiver operand with the resulting string truncated or is logically padded on the right end accordingly. The pad value for this instruction is hex 40.

Substring operand references that allow for a null substring reference (a length value of zero) may be specified for operands 1, 2, and 3. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for one source operand is that the other source operand is used as the result of the concatenation. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for both source operands is that the bytes of the receiver are each set with a value of hex 40. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for the receiver is that a result is not set regardless of the value of the source operands.

## Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 range                            | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation    |          |   |   | X     |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state       | X        | X | X | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage     | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception      |          |   |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                  |          |   |   |       |
| 02 machine check                    |          |   |   | X     |
| 03 function check                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 22 Object access                    |          |   |   |       |
| 01 object not found                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 object destroyed                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 object suspended                 | X        | X | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |

**Convert BSC to Character (CVTBC)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br>CVTBC<br>10AF | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Receiver | Operand 2<br>Controls | Operand 3<br>Source | Operand [4-6]     |
|--------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| <b>CVTBCB</b><br>1CAF          | Branch options    | Receiver              | Controls              | Source              | Branch targets    |
| <b>CVTBCI</b><br>18AF          | Indicator options | Receiver              | Controls              | Source              | Indicator targets |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character(3) variable scalar (fixed-length).

*Operand 3:* Character scalar.

*Operand 4-6:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**ILE access**

```
CVTBC (
  var receiver      : aggregate;
  receiver_length   : unsigned binary;
  var controls      : aggregate;
  var source        : aggregate;
  source_length     : unsigned binary;
  var return_code   : signed binary
)
```

The return\_code will be set as follows:

| Return_Code | Meaning           |
|-------------|-------------------|
| -1          | Completed Record. |
| 0           | Source Exhausted. |
| 1           | Truncated Record. |

**Description:** This instruction converts a string value from the BSC (binary synchronous communications) compressed format to a character string. The operation converts the source (operand 3) from the BSC compressed format to character under control of the controls (operand 2) and places the result into the receiver (operand 1).

The source and receiver operands must both be character strings.

The controls operand must be a character scalar that specifies additional information to be used to control the conversion operation. It must be at least 3 bytes in length and have the following format:

- Controls operand Char(3)
- Source offset Bin(2)

— Record separator

Char(1)

The **source offset** specifies the offset where bytes are to be accessed from the source operand. If the *source offset* is equal to or greater than the length specified for the source operand (it identifies a byte beyond the end of the source operand), a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception is signaled. As output from the instruction, the *source offset* is set to specify the offset that indicates how much of the source is processed when the instruction ends.

The **record separator**, if specified with a value other than hex 01, contains the value used to separate converted records in the source operand. A value of hex 01 specifies that record separators do not occur in the converted records in the source.

Only the first 3 bytes of the controls operand are used. Any excess bytes are ignored.

The operation begins by accessing the bytes of the source operand located at the offset specified in the source offset. This is assumed to be the start of a record. The bytes of the record in the source operand are converted into the receiver record according to the following algorithm.

The strings to be built in the receiver are contained in the source as blank compression entries and strings of consecutive nonblank characters.

The format of the blank compression entries occurring in the source are as follows:

- Blank compression entry Char(2)
  - Interchange group separator Char(1)
  - Count of compressed blanks Char(1)

The **interchange group separator** has a fixed value of hex 1D.

The **count of compressed blanks** provides for describing up to 63 compressed blanks. The count of the number of blanks (up to 63) to be decompressed is formed by subtracting hex 40 from the value of the count field. The count field can vary from a value of hex 41 to hex 7F. If the count field contains a value outside of this range, a *conversion* (hex 0C01) exception is signaled.

Strings of blanks described by blank compression entries in the source are repeated in the receiver the number of times specified by the blank compression count.

Nonblank strings in the source are copied into the receiver intact with no alteration.

If the receiver record is filled with converted data without encountering the end of the source operand, the instruction ends with a resultant condition of *completed record*. This can occur in two ways. If a *record separator* was not specified, the instruction ends when enough bytes have been converted from the source to fill the receiver. If a *record separator* was specified, the instruction ends when a source byte is encountered with that value prior to or just after filling the receiver record. The *source offset* value locates the byte following the last source record (including the *record separator*) for which conversion was completed. When the *record separator* value is encountered, any remaining bytes in the receiver are padded with blanks.

If the end of the source operand is encountered (whether or not in conjunction with a *record separator* or the filling of the receiver), the instruction ends with a resultant condition of *source exhausted*. The *source offset* value locates the byte following the last byte of the source operand. The remaining bytes in the receiver after the converted record are padded with blanks.

If the converted form of a record cannot be completely contained in the receiver, the instruction ends with a resultant condition of *truncated record*. The offset value for the source locates the byte following the last source byte for which conversion was performed, unless a blank compression entry

was being processed. In this case, the source offset is set to locate the byte after the blank compression entry. If the source does not contain record separators, this condition can only occur for the case in which a blank compression entry was being converted when the receiver record became full.

Any form of overlap between the operands on this instruction yields unpredictable results in the receiver operand.

### Resultant Conditions

- Completed record-The receiver record has been completely filled with converted data from a source record.
- Source exhausted-All of the bytes in the source operand have been converted into the receiver operand.
- Truncated record-The receiver record cannot contain all of the converted data from the source record.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment violation     | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 range                            | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X |       |
| 0C Computation                      |          |   |   |       |
| 01 conversion                       |          |   | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |   |       |
| 04 System object damage state       |          |   |   | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage     |          |   |   | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception      |          |   |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                  |          |   |   |       |
| 02 machine check                    |          |   |   | X     |
| 03 function check                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 22 Object access                    |          |   |   |       |
| 01 object not found                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 object destroyed                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 object suspended                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 object compressed                |          |   |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification            |          |   |   |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist           | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 pointer type invalid             | X        | X | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 invalid branch target               |          |   |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid              |          | X |   |       |

**Convert Character to BSC (CVTCB)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br>CVTCB<br>108F | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Receiver | Operand 2<br>Controls | Operand 3<br>Source | Operand [4-5]     |
|--------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| CVTCBB<br>1C8F                 | Branch options    | Receiver              | Controls              | Source              | Branch targets    |
| CVTCB<br>188F                  | Indicator options | Receiver              | Controls              | Source              | Indicator targets |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character(3) variable scalar (fixed-length).

*Operand 3:* Character scalar.

*Operand 4-5:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**ILE access**

```
CVTCB (
  var receiver      : aggregate;
  receiver_length   : unsigned binary;
  var controls      : aggregate;
  var source        : aggregate;
  source_length     : unsigned binary;
  var return_code   : signed binary
)
```

The return\_code will be set as follows:

| Return_Code | Meaning           |
|-------------|-------------------|
| -1          | Receiver Overrun. |
| 0           | Source Exhausted. |

**Description:** This instruction converts a string value from character to BSC (binary synchronous communications) compressed format. The operation converts the source (operand 3) from character to the BSC compressed format under control of the controls (operand 2) and places the result into the receiver (operand 1).

The source and receiver operands must both be character strings.

The controls operand must be a character scalar that specifies additional information to be used to control the conversion operation. It must be at least 3 bytes in length and have the following format:

- Controls operand
 

|                    |         |
|--------------------|---------|
| — Receiver offset  | Char(3) |
| — Record separator | Bin(2)  |
|                    | Char(1) |

The **receiver offset** specifies the offset where bytes are to be placed into the receiver operand. If the *receiver offset* is equal to or greater than the length specified for the receiver operand (it identifies a byte beyond the end of the receiver), a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception is signaled. As output from the instruction, the *receiver offset* is set to specify the offset that indicates how much of the receiver has been filled when the instruction ends.

The **record separator**, if specified with a value other than hex 01, contains the value used to separate converted records in the receiver operand. A value of hex 01 specifies that record separators are not to be placed into the receiver to separate converted records.

Only the first 3 bytes of the controls operand are used. Any excess bytes are ignored.

The source operand is assumed to be one record. The bytes of the record in the source operand are converted into the receiver operand at the location specified in the *receiver offset* according to the following algorithm.

The bytes of the source record are interrogated to identify the strings of consecutive blank (hex 40) characters and the strings of consecutive nonblank characters which occur in the source record. Only three or more blank characters are treated as a blank string for purposes of conversion into the receiver.

As the blank and nonblank strings are encountered in the source, they are packaged into the receiver.

Blank strings are reflected in the receiver as one or more blank compression entries. The format of the blank compression entries built into the receiver are as follows:

- |                               |         |
|-------------------------------|---------|
| • Blank compression entry     | Char(2) |
| — Interchange group separator | Char(1) |
| — Count of compressed blanks  | Char(1) |

The **interchange group separator** has a fixed value of hex 1D.

The **count of compressed blanks** provides for compressing up to 63 blanks. The value of the count field is formed by adding hex 40 to the actual number of blanks (up to 63) to be compressed. The count field can vary from a value of hex 43 to hex 7F.

Nonblank strings are copied into the receiver intact with no alteration or additional control information.

When the end of the source record is encountered, the *record separator* value if specified is placed into the receiver and the instruction ends with a resultant condition of *source exhausted*. The *receiver offset* value locates the byte following the converted record in the receiver. The value of the remaining bytes in the receiver after the converted record is unpredictable.

If the converted form of a record cannot be completely contained in the receiver (including the *record separator* if specified), the instruction ends with a resultant condition of *receiver overrun*. The *receiver offset* remains unchanged. The remaining bytes in the receiver, starting with the byte located by the receiver offset, are unpredictable.

Any form of overlap between the operands on this instruction yields unpredictable results in the receiver operand.

### Resultant Conditions

- Source exhausted—All of the bytes in the source operand have been converted into the receiver operand.
- Receiver overrun—An overrun condition in the receiver operand was detected before all of the bytes in the source operand were processed.



**Exceptions**

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                             |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation          | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment violation        | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 range                               | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        |          |   |   | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 invalid branch target               |          |   |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid              |          | X |   |       |

## Convert Character to Hex (CVTCH)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|
| 1082          | Receiver  | Source    |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character variable scalar.

**Description:** Each character (8-bit value) of the string value in the source operand is converted to a hex digit (4-bit value) and placed in the receiver operand. The source operand characters must relate to valid hex digits or a *conversion* (hex 0C01) exception is signaled.

| Characters    | Hex Digits  |
|---------------|-------------|
| Hex F0-hex F9 | Hex 0-hex 9 |
| Hex C1-hex C6 | Hex A-hex F |

The operation begins with the two operands left-adjusted and proceeds left to right until all the hex digits of the receiver operand have been filled. If the source operand is too small, it is logically padded on the right with zero characters (hex F0). If the source operand is too large, a *length conformance* (hex 0C08) or an *invalid operand length* (hex 2A0A) exception is signaled.

Substring operand references that allow for a null substring reference (a length value of zero) may be specified for operands 1 and 2. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for the source is that the bytes of the receiver are each set with a value of hex 00. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for the receiver is that no result is set.

### Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 range                            | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X |       |
| 0C        | Computation                         |          |   |       |
|           | 01 conversion                       |          | X |       |
|           | 08 length conformance               | X        |   |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                  |          |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage             | X        | X | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage     | X        | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception         |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                     |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                    |          |   | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |

**Convert Character to MRJE (CVTCM)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br>CVTCM<br>108B | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Receiver | Operand 2<br>Controls | Operand 3<br>Source | Operand [4-5]     |
|--------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| <b>CVTCMB</b><br>1C8B          | Branch options    | Receiver              | Controls              | Source              | Branch targets    |
| <b>CVTCMI</b><br>188B          | Indicator options | Receiver              | Controls              | Source              | Indicator targets |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character(13) variable scalar (fixed-length).

*Operand 3:* Character scalar.

*Operand 4-5:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**ILE access**

```
CVTCM (
  var receiver      : aggregate;
  receiver_length  : unsigned binary;
  var controls      : aggregate;
  var source        : aggregate;
  source_length    : unsigned binary;
  var return_code   : signed binary
)
```

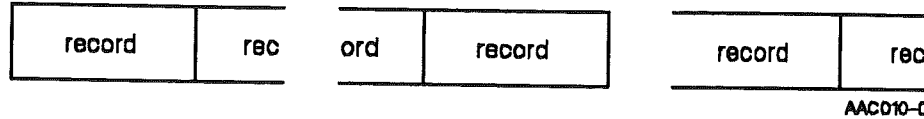
The return\_code will be set as follows:

| Return_Code | Meaning           |
|-------------|-------------------|
| -1          | Receiver Overrun. |
| 0           | Source Exhausted. |

**Description:** This instruction converts a string of characters to MRJE (MULTI-LEAVING remote job entry) compressed format. The operation converts the source (operand 3) from character to the MRJE compressed format under control of the controls (operand 2) and places the results in the receiver (operand 1).

The source and receiver operands must both be character strings. The source operand cannot be specified as either a signed or unsigned immediate value.

The source operand can be described through the controls operand as being composed of one or more fixed length data fields, which may be separated by fixed length gaps of characters to be ignored during the conversion operation. Additionally, the controls operand specifies the amount of data to be processed from the source to produce a converted record in the receiver. This may be a different value than the length of the data fields in the source. The following diagram shows this structure for the source operand.

**Actual Source Operand Bytes****Data Processed as Source Records**

The controls operand must be a character scalar that specifies additional information to be used to control the conversion operation. It must be at least 13 bytes in length and have the following format:

- Controls operand
  - Receiver offset Char(13)
  - Source offset Bin(2)
  - Algorithm modifier Bin(2)
  - Source record length Char(1)
  - Data field length Char(1)
  - Gap offset Bin(2)
  - Gap length Bin(2)
  - Record control block (RCB) value Bin(2)

As input to the instruction, the **source offset** and **iver offset** fields specify the offsets where bytes of the source and receiver operands are to be processed. If an offset is equal to or greater than the length specified for the operand it corresponds to (i.e. it identifies a byte beyond the end of the operand), a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception is signaled. As output from the instruction, the *source offset* and *receiver offset* fields specify offsets that indicate how much of the operation is complete when the instruction ends.

The **algorithm modifier** has the following valid values:

- Hex 00 = Perform full compression.
- Hex 01 = Perform only truncation of trailing blanks.

The **source record length** value specifies the amount of data from the source to be processed. If a *source record length* of 0 is specified, a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception is signaled.

The **data field length** value specifies the length of the data fields in the source. Data fields occurring in the source may be separated by gaps of characters, which are to be ignored during the conversion operation. Specification of a *data field length* of 0 indicates that the source operand is one data field. In this case, the *gap length* and *gap offset* values have no meaning and are ignored.

The **gap offset** value specifies the offset to the next gap in the source. This value is both input to and output from the instruction. This is relative to the current byte to be processed in the source as located by the *source offset* field. No validation is done for this offset. It is assumed to be valid relative to the source operand. The *gap offset* value is ignored if the *data field length* is specified with a value of 0.

The **gap length** value specifies the amount of data occurring between data fields in the source operand which is to be ignored during the conversion operation. The *gap length* value is ignored if the *data field length* is specified with a value of 0.

The **record control block (RCB) value** field specifies the RCB value that is to precede the converted form of each record in the receiver. It can have any value.

Only the first 13 bytes of the controls operand are used. Any excess bytes are ignored.

The operation begins by accessing the bytes of the source operand at the location specified by the *source offset*. This is assumed to be the start of a source record. Only the bytes of the data fields in the source are accessed for conversion purposes. Gaps between data fields are ignored, causing the access of data field bytes to occur as if the data fields were contiguous with one another. Bytes accessed from the source for the source record length are considered a source record for the conversion operation. They are converted into the receiver operand at the location specified by the *receiver offset* according to the following algorithm.

The *RCB value* is placed into the first byte of the receiver record.

An SRCB (sub record control byte) value of hex 80 is placed into the second byte of the receiver record.

If the *algorithm modifier* specifies *full compression* (a value of hex 00) then:

The bytes of the source record are interrogated to locate the blank character strings (2 or more consecutive blanks), identical character strings (3 or more consecutive identical characters), and nonidentical character strings occurring in the source. A blank character string occurring at the end of the record is treated as a special case (see following information on trailing blanks).

If the *algorithm modifier* specifies *blank truncation* (a value of hex 01) then:

The bytes of the source record are interrogated to determine if a blank character string exists at the end of the source record. If one exists, it is treated as a string of trailing blanks. All characters prior to it in the record are treated as one string of nonidentical characters.

The strings encountered (blank, identical, or nonidentical) are reflected in the receiver by building one or more SCBs (string control bytes) in the receiver to describe them.

The format of the SCBs built into the receiver is:

- SCB format is o k l j j j j j

The bit meanings are:

| Bit         | Value | Meaning   |
|-------------|-------|---|
| o           | 0     | End of record; the EOR SCB is hex 00.   |
|             | 1     | All other SCBs.   |
| k           | 0     | The string is compressed.   |
|             | 1     | The string is not compressed.   |
| l           |       | For k = 0:  |
|             | 0     | Blanks (hex 40s) have been deleted.   |
|             | 1     | Nonblank characters have been deleted. The next character in the data stream is the specimen character.   |
| j j j j j   |       | For k = 1:  |
|             |       | This bit is part of the length field for length of uncompressed data.   |
|             |       | Number of characters that have been deleted if k = 0. The value can be 2-31.  |
| l j j j j j |       | Number of characters to the next SCB (no compression) if k = 1. The value can be 1-63. The uncompressed (nonidentical bytes) follow the SCB in the data stream. |

When the end of a source record is encountered, an EOR (end of record) SCB (hex 00) is built into the receiver. Trailing blanks in a record including a record of all blanks are represented in the receiver by an EOR character. However, a record of all blanks is reflected in the compressed result by an RCB, an SRCB, a compression entry describing an 'unlike string' of one blank character, and an EOR character.

Additionally, the *receiver offset*, the *source offset*, and the *gap offset* are updated in the controls operand.

If the end of the source operand is not encountered, the operation then continues by reapplying the above algorithm to the next record in the source operand.

If the end of the source operand is encountered (whether or not in conjunction with a record boundary), the instruction ends with a resultant condition of *source exhausted*. The *source offset* locates the byte following the last source record for which conversion was completed. The *gap offset* value indicates the offset to the next gap relative to the source offset value set for this condition. The *gap offset* value has no meaning and is not set when the *data field length* is 0. The *receiver offset* locates the byte following the last fully converted record in the receiver. The value of the remaining bytes in the receiver after the last converted record is unpredictable.

If the converted form of a record cannot be completely contained in the receiver, the instruction ends with a resultant condition of *receiver overrun*. The *source offset* locates the byte following the last source record for which conversion was completed. The *gap offset* value indicates the offset to the next gap relative to the source offset value set for this condition. The *gap offset* value has no meaning and is not set when the *data field length* is 0. The *receiver offset* locates the byte following the last fully converted record in the receiver. The value of the remaining bytes in the receiver after the last converted record is unpredictable.

Any form of overlap between the operands of this instruction yields unpredictable results in the receiver operand.

### Resultant Conditions

- Source exhausted-All complete records in the source operand have been converted into the receiver operand.
- Receiver overrun-An overrun condition in the receiver operand was detected prior to processing all of the bytes in the source operand.

If *source exhausted* and *receiver overrun* occur at the same time, the *source exhausted* condition is recognized first. When *source exhausted* is the resultant condition, the receiver may also be full. In this case, the *receiver offset* may contain a value equal to the length specified for the receiver, and this condition will cause an exception on the next invocation of the instruction. The processing performed for the *source exhausted* condition provides for this case when the instruction is invoked multiple times with the same controls operand template. When the *receiver overrun* condition is the resultant condition, the source always contains data that can be converted.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   |       |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 | Other |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment violation     | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 range                            | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        |          |   |   | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 invalid branch target               |          |   |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid              |          |   | X |       |



## Convert Character to Numeric (CVTCN)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3  |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| 1083          | Receiver  | Source    | Attributes |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar or data-pointer-defined numeric scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar or data-pointer-defined character scalar.

*Operand 3:* Character(7) scalar or data-pointer-defined character scalar.

**Description:** The character scalar specified by operand 2 is treated as though it were a numeric scalar with the attributes specified by operand 3. The character string source operand is converted to the numeric forms of the receiver operand and moved to the receiver operand. The value of operand 2, when viewed in this manner, is converted to the type, length, and precision of the numeric receiver, operand 1, following the rules for the Copy Numeric Value instruction.

The length of operand 2 must be large enough to contain the numeric value described by operand 3. If it is not large enough, a *scalar value invalid* (hex 3203) exception is signaled. If it is larger than needed, its leftmost bytes are used as the value, and the rightmost bytes are ignored.

Normal rules of arithmetic conversion apply except for the following. If operand 2 is interpreted as a zoned decimal value, a value of hex 40 in the rightmost byte referenced in the conversion is treated as a positive sign and a zero digit.

If a decimal to binary conversion causes a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception to be signaled, the binary value contains the correct truncated result only if the decimal value contains 15 or fewer significant nonfractional digits.

The format of the attribute operand specified by operand 3 is as follows:

- Scalar attributes
  - Scalar type
    - Hex 00 = Signed binary
    - Hex 01 = Floating-point
    - Hex 02 = Zoned decimal
    - Hex 03 = Packed decimal
    - Hex 0A = Unsigned binary
  - Scalar length
    - If binary:
      - Length (L) (where L = 2 or 4)
    - If floating-point:
      - Length (L) (where L = 4 or 8)
    - If zoned decimal or packed decimal:
      - Fractional digits (F)
      - Total digits (T)
      - (where  $1 \leq T \leq 31$  and  $0 \leq F \leq T$ )
    - Reserved (binary 0)

Char(7)

Char(1)

Bin(2)

Bits 0-15

Bits 0-15

Bits 0-7

Bits 8-15

Bin(4)

### Exceptions

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                             |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation          | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment                  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 range                               | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 04 external data object not found      | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 0C        | Computation                            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 decimal data                        |          | X | X |       |
|           | 06 floating-point overflow             | X        |   |   |       |
|           | 07 floating-point underflow            | X        |   |   |       |
|           | 09 floating-point invalid operand      |          | X |   |       |
|           | 0A size                                | X        |   |   |       |
|           | 0C floating-point conversion           | X        |   |   |       |
|           | 0D floating-point inexact result       | X        |   |   |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state          | X        | X | X | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 scalar attribute invalid            |          |   | X |       |
|           | 03 scalar value invalid                |          |   | X |       |

## Convert Character to Numeric (CVTCN)

| Exception | Operands                      |   |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------|---|---|-------|
|           | 1                             | 2 | 3 |       |
| 36        | Space management              |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation |   |   | X     |

**Convert Character to SNA (CVTCS)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br>CVTCS<br>10CB | Extender             | Operand 1<br>Receiver | Operand 2<br>Controls | Operand 3<br>Source | Operand [4-5]     |
|--------------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| <b>CVTCSB</b><br>1CCB          | Branch options       | Receiver              | Controls              | Source              | Branch targets    |
| <b>CVTCSI</b><br>18CB          | Indicator<br>options | Receiver              | Controls              | Source              | Indicator targets |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character(15) variable scalar (fixed length).

*Operand 3:* Character scalar.

*Operand 4-5:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**ILE access**

```
CVTCS (
  var receiver      : aggregate;
  receiver_length   : unsigned binary;
  var controls      : aggregate;
  var source        : aggregate;
  source_length     : unsigned binary;
  var return_code    : signed binary
)
```

The return\_code will be set as follows:

| Return_Code | Meaning           |
|-------------|-------------------|
| -1          | Receiver Overrun. |
| 0           | Source Exhausted. |

**Description:** This instruction converts the source (operand 3) from character to SNA (systems network architecture) format under control of the controls (operand 2) and places the result into the receiver (operand 1).

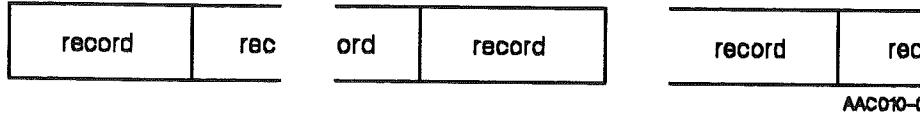
The source and receiver operands must both be character strings. The source operand may not be specified as an immediate operand.

The source operand can be described by the controls operand as being one or more fixed-length data fields that may be separated by fixed-length gaps of characters to be ignored during the conversion operation. Additionally, the controls operand specifies the amount of data to be processed from the source to produce a converted record in the receiver. This may be a different value than the length of the data fields in the source. The following diagram shows this structure for the source operand.

## Actual Source Operand Bytes



## Data Processed as Source Records



The controls operand must be a character scalar that specifies additional information to be used to control the conversion operation. The operand must be at least 15 bytes in length and has the following format:

|                                   |          |
|-----------------------------------|----------|
| • Controls operand                | Char(15) |
| — Receiver offset                 | Bin(2)   |
| — Source offset                   | Bin(2)   |
| — Algorithm modifier              | Char(1)  |
| — Source record length            | Char(1)  |
| — Data field length               | Bin(2)   |
| — Gap offset                      | Bin(2)   |
| — Gap length                      | Bin(2)   |
| — Record separator character      | Char(1)  |
| — Prime compression character     | Char(1)  |
| — Unconverted source record bytes | Char(1)  |

As input to the instruction, the **source offset** and **receiver offset** fields specify the offsets where the bytes of the source and receiver operands are to be processed. If an offset is equal to or greater than the length specified for the operand, the offset identifies a byte beyond the end of the operand and a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception is signaled. When the *source offset* and the *receiver offset* field are output from the instruction, they specify offsets that indicate how much of the operation is complete when the instruction ends.

The **algorithm modifier** specifies the optional functions to be performed. Any combination of functions can be specified as indicated by the bit meanings in the following chart. At least one of the functions must be specified. If all of the *algorithm modifier* bits are zero, a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception is signaled. The *algorithm modifier* bit meanings are:

| Bits | Meaning  |
|------|--|
| 0    | 0 = Do not perform compression.<br>1 = Perform compression.  |
| 1-2  | 00 = Do not use record separators and no blank truncation. Do not perform data transparency conversion.<br>01 = Reserved.<br>10 = Use record separators and perform blank truncation. Do not perform data transparency conversion.<br>11 = Use record separators and perform blank truncation. Perform data transparency conversion. |
| 3    | 0 = Do not perform record spanning.<br>1 = Perform record spanning. (allowed only when bit 1 = 1)  |
| 4-7  | (Reserved)   |

The **source record length** value specifies the amount of data from the source to be processed to produce a converted record in the receiver. Specification of a *source record length* of zero results in a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception.

The **data field length** value specifies the length of the data fields in the source. Data fields occurring in the source may be separated by gaps of characters that are to be ignored during the conversion operation. Specification of a *data field length* of zero indicates that the source operand is one data field. In this case, the *gap length* and *gap offset* values have no meaning and are ignored.

The **gap offset** value specifies the offset to the next gap in the source. This value is both input to and output from the instruction. This is relative to the current byte to be processed in the source as located by the source offset value. No validation is done for this offset. It is assumed to be valid relative to the source operand. The *gap offset* value is ignored if the *data field length* is specified with a value of zero.

The **gap length** value specifies the amount of data that is to be ignored between data fields in the source operand during the conversion operation. The *gap length* value is ignored if the *data field length* is zero.

The **record separator character** value specifies the character that precedes the converted form of each record in the receiver. It also serves as a delimiter when the previous record is truncating trailing blanks. The Convert SNA to Character instruction recognizes any value that is less than hex 40. The *record separator* value is ignored if *record separators are not used* as specified in the *algorithm modifier*.

The **prime compression character** value specifies the character to be used as the prime compression character when performing compression of the source data to SNA format. It may have any value. The *prime compression character* value is ignored if the *perform compression* function is not specified in the *algorithm modifier*.

The **unconverted source record bytes** value specifies the number of bytes remaining in the current source record that are yet to be converted.

When the *record spanning* function is specified in the *algorithm modifier*, the *unconverted source record bytes* field is both input to and output from the instruction. On input, a value of hex 00 means it is the start of a new record and the initial conversion step is yet to be performed. That is, a *record separator character* has not yet been placed in the receiver. On input, a nonzero value less than or equal to the *source record length* specifies the number of bytes remaining in the current source record that are yet to be converted into the receiver. This value is assumed to be the valid count of unconverted source record bytes relative to the current byte to be processed in the source as located by the *source offset* value. As such, it is used to determine the location of the next record boundary in the source operand. This value must be less than or equal to the *source record length* value; otherwise, a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception is signaled. On output this field is set with a value as defined above that describes the number of bytes of the current source record that have not yet been converted.

When the *record spanning* function is not specified in the *algorithm modifier*, the *unconverted source record bytes* value is ignored.

Only the first 15 bytes of the controls operand are used. Any excess bytes are ignored.

The description of the conversion process is presented as a series of separately performed steps that may be selected in allowable combinations to accomplish the conversion function. It is presented this way to allow for describing these functions separately. However, in the actual execution of the instruction, these functions may be performed in conjunction with one another or separately depending upon which technique is determined to provide the best implementation.

The operation is performed either on a record-by-record basis (record processing) or on a nonrecord basis (string processing). This is determined by the functions selected in the *algorithm modifier*. Specifying the *use record separators* and *perform blank truncation* function indicates **record processing** is to be performed. If this is not specified, in which case *compression* must be specified, it indicates that **string processing** is to be performed.

The operation begins by accessing the bytes of the source operand at the location specified by the *source offset*.

When *record processing* is specified, the *source offset* may locate the start of a full or partial record.

When the *record spanning* function has not been specified in the *algorithm modifier*, the *source offset* is assumed to locate the start of a record.

When the *record spanning* function has been specified in the *algorithm modifier*, the *source offset* is assumed to locate a point at which processing of a possible partially converted record is to be resumed. In this case, the *unconverted source record bytes* value contains the length of the remaining portion of the source record to be converted. The conversion process in this case is started by completing the conversion of the current source record before processing the next full source record.

When *string processing* is specified, the *source offset* locates the start of the source string to be converted.

Only the bytes of the data fields in the source are accessed for conversion purposes. Gaps between data fields are ignored causing the access of data field bytes to occur as if the data fields were contiguous. A string of bytes accessed from the source for a length equal to the *source record length* is considered to be a record for the conversion operation.

When during the conversion process, the end of the source operation is encountered, the instruction ends with a resultant condition of *source exhausted*.

When *record processing* is specified in the *algorithm modifier*, this check is performed at the start of conversion for each record. If the source operand does not contain a full record, the *source exhausted* condition is recognized. The instruction is terminated with status in the controls operand describing the last completely converted record. For *source exhausted*, partial conversion of a source record is not performed.

When *string processing* is specified in the *algorithm modifier*, then *compression* must be specified and the compression function described below defines the detection of *source exhausted*.

If the converted form of the source cannot be completely contained in the receiver, the instruction ends with a resultant condition of *receiver overrun*. See the description of this condition in the conversion process described below to determine the status of the controls operand values and the converted bytes in the receiver for each case.

When *string processing* is specified, the bytes accessed from the source are converted on a string basis into the receiver operand at the location specified by the *receiver offset*. In this case, the *compression* function must be specified and the conversion process proceeds with the compression function defined below.

When *record processing* is specified, the bytes accessed from the source are converted one record at a time into the receiver operand at the location specified by the *receiver offset* performing the functions specified in the *algorithm modifier* in the sequence defined by the following algorithm.

**The first function performed is trailing blank truncation.** A truncated record is built by logically appending the record data to the *record separator* value specified in the controls operand and removing all blank characters after the last nonblank character in the record. If a record has no trailing blanks, then no actual truncation takes place. A null record, a record consisting entirely of blanks, will be converted as just the *record separator character* with no other data following it. The truncated record then consists of the *record separator* character followed by the truncated record data, the full record data, or no data from the record.

If either the *data transparency conversion* or the *compression* function is specified in the *algorithm modifier*, the conversion process continues for this record with the next specified function.

If not, the conversion process for this record is completed by placing the truncated record into the receiver. If the truncated record cannot be completely contained in the receiver, the instruction ends with a resultant condition of *receiver overrun*. When the *record spanning* function is specified in the *algorithm modifier*, as much of the truncated record as will fit is placed into the receiver and the controls operand is updated to describe how much of the source record was successfully converted into the receiver. When the *record spanning* function is not specified in the *algorithm modifier*, the controls operand is updated to describe only the last fully converted record in the receiver and the value of the remaining bytes in the receiver is unpredictable.

**The second function performed is data transparency conversion.** *Data transparency conversion* is performed if the function is specified in the *algorithm modifier*. This provides for making the data in a record transparent to the Convert SNA to Character instruction in the area of its scanning for record separator values. Transparent data is built by preceding the data with 2 bytes of **transparency control information**. The first byte has a fixed value of hex 35 and is referred to as the TRN (transparency) control character. The second byte is a 1-byte hexadecimal count, a value ranging from 1 to 255 decimal, of the number of bytes of data that follow and is referred to as the **TRN count**. This contains the length of the data and does not include the TRN control information length.

*Transparency conversion* can be specified only in conjunction with *record processing* and, as such, is performed on the truncated form of the source record. The transparent record is built by preceding the data that follows the *record separator* in the truncated record with the *TRN control information*. The *TRN count* in this case contains the length of just the truncated data for the record and does not include the *record separator* character. For the special case of a null record, no *TRN control information* is placed after the *record separator* character because there is no record data to be made transparent.

If the *compression* function is specified in the *algorithm modifier*, the conversion process continues for this record with the compression function.

If not, the conversion process for this record is completed by placing the transparent record into the receiver. If the transparent record cannot be completely contained in the receiver, the instruction ends with a resultant condition of *receiver overrun*.

When the *record spanning* function is specified in the *algorithm modifier*, as much of the transparent record as will fit is placed into the receiver and the controls operand is updated to describe how much of the source record was successfully converted into the receiver. The *TRN count* is also adjusted to describe the length of the data successfully converted into the receiver; thus, the transparent data for the record is not spanned out of the receiver. The remaining bytes of the transparent record, if any, will be processed as a partial source record on the next invocation of the instruction and will be preceded by the appropriate *TRN control information*. For the special case where only 1 to 3 bytes are available at the end of the receiver, (not enough room for the *record separator*, the transparency control, and a byte of data) then just the *record separator* is placed in the receiver for the record being converted. This can cause up to 2 bytes of unused space at the end of the receiver. The value of these unused bytes is unpredictable.



When the *record spanning* function is not specified in the *algorithm modifier*, the controls operand is updated to describe only the last fully converted record in the receiver and the value of the remaining bytes in the receiver is unpredictable.

**The third function performed is compression.** *Compression* is performed if the function is specified in the *algorithm modifier*. This provides for reducing the size of strings of duplicate characters in the source data. The source data to be compressed may have assumed a partially converted form at this point as a result of processing for functions specified in the *algorithm modifier*. Compressed data is built by concatenating one or more compression strings together to describe the bytes that make up the converted form of the source data prior to the compression step. The bytes of the converted source data are interrogated to locate the prime compression character strings (two or more consecutive prime compression characters), duplicate character strings (three or more duplicate nonprime characters) and nonduplicate character strings occurring in the source.

The character strings encountered (prime, duplicate and nonduplicate) are reflected in the compressed data by building one or more compression strings to describe them. Compression strings are comprised of an SCB (string control byte) possibly followed by one or more bytes of data related to the character string to be described.

The format of an SCB and the description of the data that may follow it are:

- SCB Char(1)
  - Control Bits 0-1
    - 00 = n nonduplicate characters are between this SCB and the next one; where n is the value of the count field (1-63).
    - 01 = Reserved
    - 10 = This SCB represents n deleted prime compression characters; where n is the value of the count field (2-63). The next byte is the next SCB.
    - 11 = This SCB represents n deleted duplicate characters; where n is the value of the count field (3-63). The next byte contains a specimen of the deleted characters. The byte following the specimen character contains the next SCB.
  - Count Bits 2-7

This contains the number of characters that have been deleted for a prime or duplicate string, or the number of characters to the next SCB for a nonduplicate string. A count value of zero cannot be produced.

When *record processing* is specified, the compression is performed as follows.

The compression function is performed on just the converted form of the current source record including the *record separator* character. The converted form of the source record prior to the compression step may be a truncated record or a transparent record as described above, depending upon the functions selected in the *algorithm modifier*. The *record separator* and *TRN control information* is always converted as a nonduplicate compression entry to provide for length adjustment of the *TRN count*, if necessary.

The conversion process for this record is completed by placing the compressed record into the receiver. If the compressed record cannot be completely contained in the receiver, the instruction ends with a resultant condition of *receiver overrun*.

When the *record spanning* function is specified in the *algorithm modifier*, as much of the compressed record as will fit is placed into the receiver and the controls operand is updated to describe how much of the source record was successfully converted into the receiver. The last compression entry placed into the receiver may be adjusted if necessary to a length that provides for filling out the receiver. This length adjustment applies only to compression entries for nonduplicate strings. Compression entries for duplicate strings are placed in the receiver only if they fit with no adjustment. For the

special case where data transparency conversion is specified, the transparent data being described is not spanned out of the receiver. This is provided for by performing length adjustment on the *TRN count* of a transparent record, which may be included in the compressed data so that it describes only the source data that was successfully converted into the receiver. For the special case where only 2 to 5 bytes are available at the end of the receiver, not enough room for the compression entry for a non-duplicate string containing the *record separator* and the TRN control, and up to a 2-byte compression entry for some of the transparent data, the nonduplicate compression entry is adjusted to describe only the *record separator*. By doing this, no more than 3 bytes of unused space will remain in the receiver. The value of these unused bytes is unpredictable. Unconverted source record bytes, if any, will be processed as a partial source record on the next invocation of the instruction and will be preceded by the appropriate *TRN control information* when performing transparency conversion.

When the *record spanning* function is not specified in the *algorithm modifier*, the controls operand is updated to describe only the last fully converted record in the receiver. The value of the remaining bytes in the receiver is unpredictable.

When *string processing* is specified, the compression is performed as follows.

The compression function is performed on the data for the entire source operand on a compression string basis. In this case, the fields in the controls operand related to record processing are ignored.

The conversion process for the source operand is completed by placing the compressed data into the receiver.

When the compressed data cannot be completely contained in the receiver, the instruction ends with a resultant condition of *receiver overrun*. As much of the compressed data as will fit is placed into the receiver and the controls operand is updated to describe how much of the source data was successfully converted into the receiver. The last compression entry placed into the receiver may be adjusted if necessary to a length that provides for filling out the receiver. This length adjustment applies only to compression entries for nonduplicate strings. Compression entries for duplicate strings are placed in the receiver only if they fit with no adjustment. By doing this, no more than 1 byte of unused space will remain in the receiver.

When the compressed data can be completely contained in the receiver, the instruction ends with a resultant condition of *source exhausted*. The compressed data is placed into the receiver and the controls operand is updated to indicate that all of the source data was successfully converted into the receiver.

At this point, either conversion of a source record has been completed or conversion has been interrupted due to detection of the *source exhausted* or *receiver overrun* conditions. For record processing, if neither of the above conditions has been detected either during conversion of or at completion of conversion for the current record, the conversion process continues on the next source record with the blank truncation step described above.

At completion of the instruction, the *receiver offset* locates the byte following the last converted byte in the receiver. The value of the remaining bytes in the receiver after the last converted byte are unpredictable. The *source offset* locates the byte following the last source byte for which conversion was completed. When the *record spanning* function is specified in the *algorithm modifier*, the *unconverted source record bytes* field specifies the length of the remaining source record bytes yet to be converted. When the *record spanning* function is not specified in the *algorithm modifier*, the *unconverted source record bytes* field has no meaning and is not set. The *gap offset* value indicates the offset to the next gap relative to the source offset value set for this condition. The *gap offset* value has no meaning and is not set when the *data field length* is zero.

**Limitations:** The following are limits that apply to the functions performed by this instruction.

Any form of overlap between the operands on this instruction yields unpredictable results in the receiver operand.

Substring operand references that allow for a null substring reference (a length value of zero) may not be specified for this instruction.

### Resultant Conditions

- Source exhausted - All bytes in the source operand have been converted into the receiver operand.
- Receiver overrun - An overrun condition in the receiver operand was detected before all of the bytes in the source operand were processed.

### Programming Notes:

If the source operand does not end on a record boundary, in which case the last record is spanned out of the source, this instruction performs conversion only up to the start of that partial record. In this case, the user of the instruction must move this partial record to combine it with the rest of the record in the source operand to provide for its being processed correctly upon the next invocation of the instruction. If full records are provided, the instruction performs its conversions out to the end of the source operand and no special processing is required.

For the special case of a tie between the *source exhausted* and *receiver overrun* conditions, the *source exhausted* condition is recognized first. That is, when *source exhausted* is the resultant condition, the receiver may also be full. In this case, the *receive offset* may contain a value equal to the length specified for the receiver, which would cause an exception to be detected on the next invocation of the instruction. The processing performed for the *source exhausted* condition should provide for this case if the instruction is to be invoked multiple times with the same controls operand template. When the *receiver overrun* condition is the resultant condition, the source will always contain data that can be converted.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment violation     | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |   |       |
| 04 System object damage state       |          |   |   | X     |
| 44 Partial system object damage     |          |   |   | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception      |          |   |   |       |
| 03 Machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                  |          |   |   |       |
| 02 Machine check                    |          |   |   | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 Invalid branch target               |          |   |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Template value invalid              |          | X |   |       |

---

## Convert Decimal Form to Floating-Point (CVTDFFP)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2        | Operand 3              |
|---------------|-----------|------------------|------------------------|
| 107F          | Receiver  | Decimal exponent | Decimal<br>significand |

*Operand 1:* Floating-point variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Packed scalar or zoned scalar.

*Operand 3:* Packed scalar or zoned scalar.

**Description:** This instruction converts the decimal form of a floating-point value specified by a decimal exponent and a decimal significand to binary floating-point format, and places the result in the receiver operand. The decimal exponent (operand 2) and decimal significand (operand 3) are considered to specify a decimal form of a floating-point number. The value of this number is considered to be as follows:

$$\text{Value} = S * (10^{**}E)$$

where:

- S = The value of the decimal significand operand.
- E = The value of the decimal exponent operand.
- \* Denotes multiplication.
- \*\* Denotes exponentiation.

The decimal exponent must be specified as a decimal integer value; no fractional digit positions may be specified in its definition. The decimal exponent is a signed integer value specifying a power of 10 which gives the floating-point value its magnitude. A decimal exponent value too large or too small to be represented in the receiver will result in the signaling of the appropriate *floating-point overflow* (hex 0C06) or *floating-point underflow* (hex 0C07) exception.

The decimal significand must be specified as a decimal value with a single integer digit position and optional fractional digit positions. The decimal significand is a signed decimal value specifying decimal digits which give the floating-point value its precision. The significant digits of the decimal significand are considered to start with the leftmost nonzero decimal digit and continue to the right to the end of the decimal significand value. Significant digits beyond 7 for a short float receiver, and beyond 15 for a long float receiver exceed the precision provided for in the binary floating-point receiver. These excess digits do participate in the conversion to provide for uniqueness of the conversion as well as for proper rounding.

The decimal form floating-point value specified by the decimal exponent and decimal significand operands is converted to a binary floating-point number and rounded to the precision of the result field as follows:

Source values which, in magnitude M, are in the range where  $(10^{**31-1}) * 10^{**31} \leq M \leq (10^{**31-1}) * 10^{**+31}$  are converted subject to the normal rounding error defined for the floating-point rounding modes.

Source values which, in magnitude M, are in the range where  $(10^{**31-1}) * 10^{**31} > M > (10^{**31-1}) * 10^{**+31}$  are converted such that the rounding error incurred on the conversion may exceed that defined above. For round to nearest, this error will not exceed by more than .47 units in the least significant digit position of the result in relation to the error that would be incurred for normal rounding. For the other floating-point rounding modes, this error will not exceed 1.47 units in the least significant digit position of the result.

The converted and rounded value is then assigned to the floating-point receiver.

**Exceptions**

| Exception                              | Operands |   |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing                          |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation        | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment violation        | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                               | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                  |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 0C Computation                         |          |   |   |       |
| 02 Decimal data                        |          | X | X |       |
| 06 Floating-point overflow             | X        |   |   |       |
| 07 Floating-point underflow            | X        |   |   |       |
| 0D Floating-point inexact result       | X        |   |   |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                  |          |   |   |       |
| 04 System object damage state          |          |   |   | X     |
| 44 Partial system object damage        |          |   |   | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception         |          |   |   |       |
| 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                     |          |   |   |       |
| 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
| 02 Function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22 Object access                       |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2E Resource control limit              |          |   |   |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32 Scalar specification                |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 36 Space management                    |          |   |   |       |
| 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |

## Convert External Form to Numeric Value (CVTEFN)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1087          | Receiver  | Source    | Mask      |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar or data-pointer-defined numeric scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar or data-pointer-defined character scalar.

*Operand 3:* Character(3) scalar, null, or data-pointer-defined character(3) scalar.

### ILE access

```
CVTEFN (
  var receiver          : any numeric type;
  var receiver_attributes : aggregate;
  var source             : aggregate;
  var source_length      : unsigned binary;
  var mask               : aggregate
)
```

**Description:** This instruction scans a character string for a valid decimal number in display format, removes the display character, and places the results in the receiver operand. The operation begins by scanning the character string value in the source operand to make sure it is a valid decimal number in display format.

The character string defined by operand 2 consists of the following optional entries:

- **Currency symbol** - This value is optional and, if present, must precede any sign and digit values. The valid symbol is determined by operand 3. The currency symbol may be preceded in the field by blank (hex 40) characters.
- **Sign symbol** - This value is optional and, if present, may precede any digit values (a leading sign) or may follow the digit values (a trailing sign). Valid signs are positive (hex 4E) and negative (hex 60). The sign symbol, if it is a leading sign, may be preceded by blank characters. If the sign symbol is a trailing sign, it must be the rightmost character in the field. Only one sign symbol is allowed.
- **Decimal digits** - Up to 31 decimal digits may be specified. Valid decimal digits are in the range of hex F0 through hex F9 (0-9). The first decimal digit may be preceded by blank characters (hex 40), but hex 40 values located to the right of the leftmost decimal digit are invalid.

The decimal digits may be divided into two parts by the decimal point symbol: an integer part and a fractional part. Digits to the left of the decimal point are interpreted as integer values. Digits to the right are interpreted as a fractional values. If no decimal point symbol is included, the value is interpreted as an integer value. The valid decimal point symbol is determined by operand 3. If the decimal point symbol precedes the leftmost decimal digit, the digit value is interpreted as a fractional value, and the leftmost decimal digit must be adjacent to the decimal point symbol. If the decimal point follows the rightmost decimal digit, the digit value is interpreted as an integer value, and the rightmost decimal digit must be adjacent to the decimal point.

Decimal digits in the integer portion may optionally have comma symbols separating groups of three digits. The leftmost group may contain one, two, or three decimal digits, and each succeeding group must be preceded by the comma symbol and contain three digits. The comma symbol must be adjacent to a decimal digit on either side. The valid comma symbol is determined by operand 3.

Decimal digits in the fractional portion may not be separated by commas and must be adjacent to one another.

Examples of external formats follow. The following symbols are used.

\$ currency symbol  
 . decimal point  
 , comma  
 D digit (hex F0-F9)  
 blank (hex 40)  
 + positive sign  
 - negative sign

| Format     | Comments   |
|------------|--|
| \$+DDDD.DD | Currency symbol, leading sign, no comma separators |
| DD,DDD-    | Comma symbol, no fraction, trailing sign           |
| -.DDD      | No integer, leading sign                           |
| \$DDD,DDD- | No fraction, comma symbol, trailing sign           |
| \$ + DD.DD | Embedded blanks before digits                      |

Operand 3 must be a 3-byte character scalar. Byte 1 of the string indicates the byte value that is to be used for the currency symbol. Byte 2 of the string indicates the byte value to be used for the comma symbol. Byte 3 of the string indicates the byte value to be used for the decimal point symbol. If operand 3 is null, the currency symbol (hex 5B), comma (hex 6B), and decimal point (hex 4B) are used.

If the syntax rules are violated, a *conversion* (hex 0C01) exception is signaled. If not, a zoned decimal value is formed from the digits of the display format character string. This number is placed in the receiver operand following the rules of a normal arithmetic conversion.

If a decimal to binary conversion causes a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception to be signaled, the binary value contains the correct truncated result only if the decimal value contains 15 or fewer significant nonfractional digits.

## Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X |       |
| 0C Computation                      |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Conversion                       |          | X |   |       |
| 0A Size                             | X        |   |   |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |   |       |
| 04 System object damage             | X        | X | X | X     |
| 44 Partial system object damage     | X        | X | X | X     |



| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Scalar attribute invalid            |          |   | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |

## Convert Floating-Point to Decimal Form (CVTFPDF)

| Op Code (Hex)    | Operand 1        | Operand 2              | Operand 3 |
|------------------|------------------|------------------------|-----------|
| CVTFPDF<br>10BF  | Decimal exponent | Decimal<br>significand | Source    |
| CVTFPDFR<br>12BF | Decimal exponent | Decimal<br>significand | Source    |

*Operand 1:* Packed variable scalar or zoned variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Packed variable scalar or zoned variable scalar.

*Operand 3:* Floating-point scalar.

**Description:** This instruction converts a binary floating-point value to a decimal form of a floating-point value specified by a decimal exponent and a decimal significand, and places the result in the decimal exponent and decimal significand operands.

The value of this number is considered to be as follows:

$$\text{Value} = S * (10^{**}E)$$

where:

S = The value of the decimal significand operand.

E = The value of the decimal exponent operand.

\* Denotes multiplication.

\*\* Denotes exponentiation.

The decimal exponent must be specified as a decimal integer value. No fractional digit positions are allowed. It must be specified with at least five digit positions. The decimal exponent provides for containing a signed integer value specifying a power of 10 which gives the floating-point value its magnitude.

The decimal significand must be specified as a decimal value with a single integer digit position and optional fractional digit positions. The decimal significand provides for containing a signed decimal value specifying decimal digit is which give the floating-point value its precision. The decimal significand is formed as a normalized value, that is, the leftmost digit position is nonzero for a nonzero source value.

When the source contains a representation of a normalized binary floating-point number with decimal significand digits beyond the leftmost 7 digits for a short floating-point source or beyond the leftmost 15 digits for a long floating-point source, the precision allowed for the binary floating-point source is exceeded.

When the source contains a representation of a denormalized binary floating-point number, it may provide less precision than the precision of a normalized binary floating-point number, depending on the particular source value. Decimal significand digits exceeding the precision of the source are set as a result of the conversion to provide for uniqueness of conversion and are correct, except for rounding errors. These digits are only as precise as the floating-point calculations that produced the source value. The *floating-point inexact result* (hex 0C0D) exception provides a means of detecting loss of precision in floating-point calculations.

The binary floating-point source is converted to a decimal form floating-point value and rounded to the precision of the decimal significand operand as follows:

- The decimal significand is formed as a normalized value and the decimal exponent is set accordingly.
- For the nonround form of the instruction, the value to be assigned to the decimal significand is adjusted to the precision of the decimal significand, if necessary, according to the current float rounding mode in effect for the process. For the optional round form of the instruction, the decimal round algorithm is used for the precision adjustment of the decimal significand. The decimal round algorithm overrides the current floating-point rounding mode that is in effect for the process.
- Source values which, in magnitude  $M$ , are in the range where  $(10^{31}-1) * 10^{-31} \leq M \leq (10^{31}-1) * 10^{+31}$  are converted subject to the normal rounding error defined for the floating-point rounding modes and the optional round form of the instruction.
- Source values which, in magnitude  $M$ , are in the range where  $(10^{31}-1) * 10^{-31} > M > (10^{31}-1) * 10^{+31}$  are converted such that the rounding error incurred on the conversion may exceed that defined above. For round to nearest and the optional round form of the instruction, this error will not exceed by more than .47 units in the least significant digit position of the result, the error that would be incurred for a correctly rounded result. For the other floating-point rounding modes, this error will not exceed 1.47 units in the least significant digit position of the result.
- If necessary, the decimal exponent value is adjusted to compensate for rounding.
- The converted and rounded value is then assigned to the decimal exponent and decimal significand operands.

A size (hex 0C0A) exception cannot occur on the assignment of the decimal exponent or the decimal significand values.

**Limitations:** The following are limits that apply to the functions performed by this instruction.

The result of the operation is unpredictable for any type of overlap between the decimal exponent and decimal significand operands.

## Exceptions

| Exception                            | Operands |   |   |  | Other |
|--------------------------------------|----------|---|---|--|-------|
|                                      | 1        | 2 | 3 |  |       |
| 06 Addressing                        |          |   |   |  |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation      | X        | X | X |  |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment violation      | X        | X | X |  |       |
| 03 Range                             | X        | X | X |  |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid  | X        | X | X |  |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                |          |   |   |  |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation     | X        | X | X |  |       |
| 0C Computation                       |          |   |   |  |       |
| 0C Invalid floating-point conversion | X        | X |   |  |       |
| 0D Floating-point inexact result     |          | X |   |  |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                |          |   |   |  |       |
| 04 System object damage state        |          |   |   |  | X     |
| 44 Partial system object damage      |          |   |   |  | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception       |          |   |   |  |       |
| 03 Machine storage limit exceeded    |          |   |   |  | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 Scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |

## Convert Hex to Character (CVTHC)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|
| 1086          | Receiver  | Source    |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character variable scalar.

**Description:** Each hex digit (4-bit value) of the string value in the source operand is converted to a character (8-bit value) and placed in the receiver operand.

| Hex Digits | Characters |
|------------|------------|
| Hex 0-9 =  | Hex F0-F9  |
| Hex A-F =  | Hex C1-C6  |

The operation begins with the two operands left-adjusted and proceeds left to right until all the characters of the receiver operand have been filled. If the source operand contains fewer hex digits than needed to fill the receiver, the excess characters are assigned a value of hex F0. If the source operand is too large, a *length conformance* (hex 0C08) or an *invalid operand length* (hex 2A0A) exception is signaled.

Substring operand references that allow for a null substring reference (a length value of zero) may be specified for operands 1 and 2. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for the source is that the bytes of the receiver are each set with a value of hex F0. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for the receiver is that no result is set.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |       |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | Other |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X |       |
| 0C Computation                      |          |   |       |
| 08 Length conformance               |          | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |       |
| 04 System object damage state       | X        | X | X     |
| 44 Partial system object damage     | X        | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception      |          |   |       |
| 03 Machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                  |          |   |       |
| 02 Machine check                    |          |   | X     |
| 02 Function check                   |          |   | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |

**Convert MRJE to Character (CVTMC)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br>CVTMC<br>10AB | Extender             | Operand 1<br>Receiver | Operand 2<br>Controls | Operand 3<br>Source | Operand [4-5]     |
|--------------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| CVTMCB<br>1CAB                 | Branch options       | Receiver              | Controls              | Source              | Branch targets    |
| CVTMCI<br>18AB                 | Indicator<br>options | Receiver              | Controls              | Source              | Indicator targets |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character(6) variable scalar (fixed-length).

*Operand 3:* Character scalar.

*Operand 4-5:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**ILE access**

```
CVTMC (
  var receiver      : aggregate;
  receiver_length  : unsigned binary;
  var controls      : aggregate;
  var source        : aggregate;
  source_length    : unsigned binary;
  var return_code   : signed binary
)
```

The return\_code will be set as follows:

| Return_Code | Meaning           |
|-------------|-------------------|
| -1          | Receiver Overrun. |
| 0           | Source Exhausted. |

**Description:** This instruction converts a character string from the MRJE (MULTI-LEAVING remote job entry) compressed format to character format. The operation converts the source (operand 3) from the MRJE compressed format to character format under control of the controls (operand 2) and places the results in the receiver (operand 1).

The source and receiver operands must both be character strings. The source operand cannot be specified as either a signed or unsigned immediate value.

The controls operand must be a character scalar that specifies additional information to be used to control the conversion operation. It must be at least 6 bytes in length and have the following format:

- |                    |         |
|--------------------|---------|
| • Controls operand | Char(6) |
| — Receiver offset  | Bin(2)  |
| — Source offset    | Bin(2)  |

- Algorithm modifier Char(1)
- Receiver record length Char(1)

As input to the instruction, the **source offset** and **receiver offset** fields specify the offsets where bytes of the source and receiver operands are to be processed. If an offset is equal to or greater than the length specified for the operand it corresponds to (it identifies a byte beyond the end of the operand), a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception is signaled. As output from the instruction, the *source offset* and *receiver offset* fields specify offsets that indicate how much of the operation is complete when the instruction ends.

The **algorithm modifier** has the following valid values:

- Hex 00 = Do not move SRCBs (sub record control bytes) from the source into the receiver.
- Hex 01 = Move SRCBs from the source into the receiver.

The **receiver record length** value specifies the record length to be used to convert source records into the receiver operand. This length applies to only the string portion of the receiver record and does not include the optional SRCB field. If a *receiver record length* of 0 is specified, a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception is signaled.

Only the first 6 bytes of the controls operand are used. Any excess bytes are ignored.

The operation begins by accessing the bytes of the source operand at the location specified by the *source offset*. This is assumed to be the start of a record. The bytes of the records in the source operand are converted into the receiver operand at the location specified by the *receiver offset* according to the following algorithm.

The first byte of the source record is considered to be an RCB (record control byte) that is to be ignored during conversion.

The second byte of the source record is considered to be an SRCB. If an *algorithm modifier* of value hex 00 was specified, the SRCB is ignored. If an *algorithm modifier* of value hex 01 was specified, the SRCB is copied into the receiver.

The strings to be built in the receiver record are described in the source after the SRCB by one or more SCBs (string control bytes).

The format of the SCBs in the source are as follows:

o k l j j j j

The bit meanings are:

| Bit | Value | Meaning   |
|-----|-------|---|
| o   | 0     | End of record; the EOR SCB is hex 00.   |
|     | 1     | All other SCBs.   |
| k   | 0     | The string is compressed.   |
|     | 1     | The string is not compressed.   |
| l   |       | For k = 0:  |
|     | 0     | Blanks (hex 40s) have been deleted.   |
|     | 1     | Nonblank characters have been deleted. The next character in the data stream is the specimen character. |
|     |       | For k = 1:  |
|     |       | This bit is part of the length field for length of uncompressed data.                                   |



| Bit   | Value | Meaning   |
|-------|-------|---|
| iiii  |       | Number of characters that have been deleted if $k = 0$ . The value can be 1-31.           |
| ljjjj |       | Number of characters to the next SCB (no compression) if $k = 1$ . The value can be 1-63. |
|       |       | The uncompressed (nonidentical bytes) follow the SCB in the data stream.                  |

A length of 0 encountered in an SCB results in the signaling of a *conversion* (hex 0C01) exception.

Strings of blanks or nonblank identical characters described in the source record are repeated in the receiver the number of times indicated by the SCB count value.

Strings of nonidentical characters described in the source record are moved into the receiver for the length indicated by the SCB count value.

When an EOR (end of record) SCB (hex 00) is encountered in the source, the receiver is padded with blanks out to the end of the current record.

If the converted form of a source record is larger than the *receiver record length*, the instruction is terminated by signaling a *length conformance* (hex 0C08) exception.

If the end of the source operand is not encountered, the operation then continues by reapplying the above algorithm to the next record in the source operand.

If the end of the source operand is encountered (whether or not in conjunction with a record boundary, EOR SCB in the source), the instruction ends with a resultant condition of *source exhausted*. The *receiver offset* locates the byte following the last fully converted record in the receiver. The *source offset* locates the byte following the last source record for which conversion is complete. The value of the remaining bytes in the receiver after the last converted record are unpredictable.

If the converted form of a record cannot be completely contained in the receiver, the instruction ends with a resultant condition of *receiver overrun*. The *receiver offset* locates the byte following the last fully converted record in the receiver. The *source offset* locates the byte following the last source record for which conversion is complete. The value of the remaining bytes in the receiver after the last converted record is unpredictable.

If the *source exhausted* and the *receiver overrun* conditions occur at the same time, the *source exhausted* condition is recognized first. In this case, the *receiver offset* may contain a value equal to the length specified for the receiver which causes an exception to be signaled on the next invocation of the instruction. The processing performed for the *source exhausted* condition provides for this case if the instruction is invoked multiple times with the same controls operand template. When the *receiver overrun* condition is the resultant condition, the source always contains data that can be converted.

**Limitations:** The following are limits that apply to the functions performed by this instruction.

Any form of overlap between the operands on this instruction yields unpredictable results in the receiver operand.

#### Resultant Conditions

- Source exhausted - All full records in the source operand have been converted into the receiver operand.
- Receiver overrun - An overrun condition in the receiver operand was detected prior to processing all of the bytes in the source operand.

**Exceptions**

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                             |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Spacing addressing violation        | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment violation        | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Range                               | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 0C        | Computation                            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Conversion                          |          |   | X |       |
|           | 08 Length conformance                  | X        |   |   |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        |          |   |   | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 Invalid branch target               |          |   |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Template value invalid              |          | X |   |       |

## Convert Numeric to Character (CVTNC)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3  |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| 10A3          | Receiver  | Source    | Attributes |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar or data-pointer-defined character scalar.

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar or data-pointer-defined numeric scalar.

*Operand 3:* Character(7) scalar or data-pointer-defined character(7) scalar.

**Description:** The source numeric value (operand 2) is converted and copied to the receiver character string (operand 1). The receiver operand is treated as though it had the attributes supplied by operand 3. Operand 1, when viewed in this manner, receives the numeric value of operand 2 following the rules of the Copy Numeric Value instruction.

The format of operand 3 is as follows:

- Scalar attributes
  - Scalar type
    - Hex 00 = Signed binary
    - Hex 01 = Floating-point
    - Hex 02 = Zoned decimal
    - Hex 03 = Packed decimal
    - Hex 0A = Unsigned binary
  - Scalar length
    - If binary:
      - Length (L) (where L = 2 or 4)
    - If floating-point:
      - Length (where L = 4 or 8)
    - If zoned decimal or packed decimal:
      - Fractional digits (F)
      - Total digits (T)
      - (where  $1 \leq T \leq 31$  and  $0 \leq F \leq T$ )
  - Reserved (binary 0)

Char(7)

Char(1)

Bin(2)

Bits 0-15

Bits 0-15

Bits 0-7

Bits 8-15

Bin(4)

The byte length of operand 1 must be large enough to contain the numeric value described by operand 3. If it is not large enough, a *scalar value invalid* (hex 3203) exception is signaled. If it is larger than needed, the numeric value is placed in the leftmost bytes and the unneeded rightmost bytes are unchanged by the instruction.

If a decimal to binary conversion causes a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception to be signaled, the binary value contains the correct truncated result only if the decimal value contains 15 or fewer significant nonfractional digits.

## Exceptions

| Exception     | Operands |   |   | Other |
|---------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|               | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing |          |   |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|           | 01 Spacing addressing violation        | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment                  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Range                               | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 04 External data object not found      | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 0C        | Computation                            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Decimal data                        |          | X |   |       |
|           | 06 Floating-point overflow             | X        |   |   |       |
|           | 07 Floating-point underflow            | X        |   |   |       |
|           | 09 Floating-point invalid operand      |          | X |   |       |
|           | 0A Size                                | X        |   |   |       |
|           | 0C Invalid floating-point conversion   | X        |   |   |       |
|           | 0D Floating-point inexact result       | X        |   |   |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          | X        | X | X | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Scalar attribute invalid            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 Scalar value invalid                |          |   | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |

**Convert SNA to Character (CVTSC)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br>CVTSC<br>10DB | Extender             | Operand 1<br>Receiver | Operand 2<br>Controls | Operand 3<br>Source | Operand [4-6]     |
|--------------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| CVTSCB<br>1CDB                 | Branch options       | Receiver              | Controls              | Source              | Branch targets    |
| CVTSCI<br>18DB                 | Indicator<br>options | Receiver              | Controls              | Source              | Indicator targets |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character(14) variable scalar (fixed length).

*Operand 3:* Character scalar.

*Operand 4-6:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**ILE access**

```
CVTSC (
  var receiver      : aggregate;
  receiver_length   : unsigned binary;
  var controls      : aggregate;
  var source        : aggregate;
  source_length     : unsigned binary;
  var return_code    : signed binary
)
```

The return\_code will be set as follows:

| Return_Code | Meaning                 |
|-------------|-------------------------|
| -1          | Receiver Overrun.       |
| 0           | Source Exhausted.       |
| 1           | Escape Code Encountered |

**Description:** This instruction converts a string value from SNA (systems network architecture) format to character. The operation converts the source (operand 3) from SNA format to character under control of the controls (operand 2) and places the result into the receiver (operand 1).

The source and receiver operands must both be character strings. The source operand may not be specified as an immediate operand.

The controls operand must be a character scalar that specifies additional information to be used to control the conversion operation. It must be at least 14 bytes in length and have the following format:

- Controls operand base template
 

|                   |
|-------------------|
| Char(14)          |
| — Receiver offset |
| Bin(2)            |

|  |          |
|--|----------|
| – Source offset                                | Bin(2)   |
| – Algorithm modifier                           | Char(1)  |
| – Receiver record length                       | Char(1)  |
| – Record separator                             | Char(1)  |
| – Prime compression                            | Char(1)  |
| – Unconverted receiver record bytes            | Char(1)  |
| – Conversion status                            | Char(2)  |
| – Unconverted transparency string bytes        | Char(1)  |
| – Offset into template to translate table      | Bin(2)   |
| • Controls operand optional template extension | Char(64) |
| – Record separator translate table             | Char(64) |

Upon input to the instruction, the **source offset** and **receiver offset** fields specify the offsets where bytes of the source and receiver operands are to be processed. If an offset is equal to or greater than the length specified for the operand it corresponds to (it identifies a byte beyond the end of the operand), a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception is signaled. As output from the instruction, the *source offset* and *receiver offset* are set to specify offsets that indicate how much of the operation is complete when the instruction ends.

The **algorithm modifier** specifies the optional functions to be performed. Any combination of functions not precluded by the bit definitions below is valid except that at least one of the functions must be specified. All *algorithm modifier* bits cannot be zero. Specification of an invalid *algorithm modifier* value results in a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception. The meaning of the bits in the algorithm modifier is the following:

| Bits | Meaning  |
|------|--|
| 0    | 0 = Do not perform decompression. Interpret a source character value of hex 00 as null.<br>1 = Perform decompression. Interpret a source character value of hex 00 as a record separator.  |
| 1-2  | 00 = No record separators in source, no blank padding. Do not perform data transparency conversion.<br>01 = Reserved.<br>10 = Record separators in source, perform blank padding. Do not perform data transparency conversion.<br>11 = Record separators in source, perform blank padding. Perform data transparency conversion. |
| 3-4  | 00 = Do not put record separators into receiver.<br>01 = Move record separators from source to receiver (allowed only when bit 1 = 1)<br>10 = Translate record separators from source to receiver (allowed only when bit 1 = 1)<br>11 = Move record separator from controls to receiver.   |
| 5-7  | Reserved   |

The **receiver record length** value specifies the record length to be used to convert source records into the receiver operand. This length applies only to the data portion of the receiver record and does not include the optional record separator. Specification of a *receiver record length* of zero results in a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception. The *receiver record length* value is ignored if no *record separator processing* is requested in the *algorithm modifier*.

The **record separator value** specifies the character that is to precede the converted form of each record in the receiver. The *record separator character* specified in the controls operand is used only for the case where the *move record separator from controls to receiver* function is specified in the *algorithm modifier* or where a missing record separator in the source is detected.

The **prime compression** value specifies the character to be used as the prime compression character when performing decompression of the SNA format source data to character. It may have any value. The *prime compression* value is ignored if the *perform decompression* function is not specified in the *algorithm modifier*.

The **unconverted receiver record bytes** value specifies the number of bytes remaining in the current receiver record that are yet to be set with converted bytes from the source.

When *record separator processing* is specified in the *algorithm modifier*, this value is both input to and output from the instruction. On input, a value of hex 00 means it is the start of processing for a new record, and the initial conversion step is yet to be performed. This indicates that for the case where a function for putting record separators into the receiver is specified in the *algorithm modifier*, a *record separator character* has yet to be placed in the receiver. On input, a nonzero value less than or equal to the *receiver record length* specifies the number of bytes remaining in the current receiver record that are yet to be set with converted bytes from the source. This value is assumed to be the valid count of unconverted receiver record bytes relative to the current byte to be processed in the receiver as located by the *receiver offset* field. As such, it is used to determine the location of the next record boundary in the receiver operand. This value must be less than or equal to the *receiver record length* value; otherwise, a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception is signaled. On output, this field is set with a value as defined above which describes the number of bytes of the current receiver record not yet containing converted data.

When *record separator processing* is not specified in the *algorithm modifier*, this value is ignored.

The **conversion status** field specifies status information for the operation to be performed. The meaning of the bits in the conversion status is the following:

| Bits | Meaning   |
|------|---|
| 0    | 0 = No transparency string active.<br>1 = Transparency string active. Unconverted transparency string bytes value contains the remaining string length. |
| 1-15 | Reserved  |

This field is both input to and output from the instruction. It provides for checkpointing the conversion status over successive executions of the instruction.

If the *conversion status* indicates *transparency string active*, but the *algorithm modifier* does not specify *perform data transparency conversion*, a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception is signaled.

The **unconverted transparency string bytes** field specifies the number of bytes remaining to be converted for a partially processed transparency string in the source.

When *perform data transparency conversion* is specified in the *algorithm modifier*, the *unconverted transparency string bytes* field can be both input to and output from the instruction.

On input, when the *no transparency string active* status is specified in the *conversion status*, this value is ignored.

On input, when *transparency string active* status is specified in the *conversion status*, this value contains a count for the remaining bytes to be converted for a transparency string in the source. A value of hex 00 means the count field for a transparency string is the first byte of data to be processed from the source operand. A value of hex 01 through hex FF specifies the count of the remaining bytes to be converted for a transparency string. This value is assumed to be the valid count of unconverted transparency string bytes relative to the current byte to be processed in the source as located by the *source offset* field.

On output, this value is set if necessary along with the *transparency string active* status to describe a partially converted transparency string. A value of hex 00 will be set if the count field is the next byte to be processed for a transparency string. A value of hex 01 through hex FF specifying the number of remaining bytes to be converted for a transparency string, will be set if the count field has already been processed.

When *do not perform data transparency conversion* is specified in the *algorithm modifier*, the *unconverted transparency string bytes* value is ignored.

The **offset into template to translate table** value specifies the offset from the beginning of the template to the *record separator translate table*. This value is ignored unless the *translate record separators from source to receiver* function is specified in the *algorithm modifier*.

The **record separator translate table** value specifies the translate table to be used in translating record separators specified in the source to the record separator value to be placed into the receiver. It is assumed to be 64 bytes in length, providing for translation of record separator values of from hex 00 to hex 3F. This translate table is used only when the *translate record separators from source to receiver* function is specified in the *algorithm modifier*. See the record separator conversion function under the conversion process described below for more detail on the usage of the translate table.

Only the first 14 bytes of the controls operand base template and the optional 64-byte extension area specified for the record separator translate table are used. Any excess bytes are ignored.

The description of the conversion process is presented as a series of separately performed steps, which may be selected in allowable combinations to accomplish the conversion function. It is presented this way to allow for describing these functions separately. However, in the actual execution of the instruction, these functions may be performed in conjunction with one another or separately, depending upon which technique is determined to provide the best implementation.

The operation is performed either on a record-by-record basis, record processing, or on a nonrecord basis, string processing. This is determined by the functions selected in the *algorithm modifier*. Specifying the *record separators in source*, *perform blank padding* or *move record separator from controls to receiver* indicates **record processing** is to be performed. If neither of these functions is specified, in which case *decompression* must be specified, it indicates that **string processing** is to be performed.

The operation begins by accessing the bytes of the source operand at the location specified by the *source offset*.

When *record processing* is specified, the *source offset* may locate a point at which processing of a partially converted record is to be resumed or processing for a full record is to be started. The *unconverted receiver record bytes* field indicates whether conversion processing is to be started with a partial or a full record. Additionally, the *transparency string active* indicator in the *conversion status* field indicates whether conversion of a transparency string is active for the case of resumption of processing for a partially converted record. The conversion process is started by completing the conversion of a partial source record if necessary before processing the first full source record.

When *string processing* is specified, the *source offset* is assumed to locate the start of a compression entry.

When during the conversion process the end of the receiver operand is encountered, the instruction ends with a *resultant condition* or *receiver overrun*.

When *record processing* is specified in the *algorithm modifier*, this check is performed at the start of conversion for each record. A *source exhausted* condition would be detected before a *receiver overrun* condition if there is no source data to convert. If the receiver operand does not have room for a full record, the *receiver overrun* condition is recognized. The instruction is terminated with status in the



controls operand describing the last completely converted record. For *receiver overrun*, partial conversion of a source record is not performed.

When *string processing* is specified in the *algorithm modifier*, then decompression must be specified and the decompression function described below defines the detection of *receiver overrun*.

When during the conversion process the end of the source operand is encountered, the instruction ends with a resultant condition of *source exhausted*. See the description of this condition in the conversion process described below to determine the status of the controls operand values and the converted bytes in the receiver for each case.

When *string processing* is specified, the bytes accessed from the source are converted on a string basis into the receiver operand at the location specified by the *receiver offset*. In this case, the *decompression* function must be specified and the conversion process is accomplished with just the decompression function defined below.

When *record processing* is specified, the bytes accessed from the source are converted one record at a time into the receiver operand at the location specified by the *receiver offset* performing the functions specified in the *algorithm modifier* in the sequence defined by the following algorithm.

*Record separator conversion* is performed as requested in the *algorithm modifier* during the initial record separator processing performed as each record is being converted. This provides for controlling the setting of the *record separator* value in the receiver.

When the *record separators in source* option is specified, the following algorithm is used to locate them. A record separator is recognized in the source when a character value less than hex 40 is encountered. When *do not perform decompression* is specified, a source character value of hex 00 is recognized as a null value rather than as a record separator. In this case, the processing of the current record continues with the next source byte and the receiver is not updated. When *perform data transparency conversion* is specified, a character value of hex 35 is recognized as the start of a transparency string rather than as a record separator.

If the *do not put record separators into the receiver* function is specified, the record separator, if any, from the source record being processed is removed from the converted form of the source record and will not be placed in the receiver.

If the *move record separators from the source to the receiver* function is specified, the record separator from the source record being processed is left as is in the converted form of the source record and will be placed in the receiver.

If the *translate record separators from the source to the receiver* function is specified, the record separator from the source record being processed is translated using the specified translate table, replaced with its translated value in the converted form of the source record and, will be placed in the receiver. The translation is performed as in the translate instruction with the *record separator* value serving as the source byte to be translated. It is used as an index into the specified translate table to select the byte in the translate table that contains the value to which the record separator is to be set. If the selected translate table byte is equal to hex FF, it is recognized as an escape code. The instruction ends with a resultant condition of *escape code* encountered, and the controls operand is set to describe the *conversion status* as of the processing completed just prior to the conversion step for the record separator. If the selected translate table byte is not equal to hex FF, the record separator in the converted form of the record is set to its value.

If the *move record separator from controls to receiver* function is specified, the controls *record separator* value is used in the converted form of the source record and will be placed into the receiver.

When the *record separators in source do blank padding* function is requested, an assumed record separator will be used if a record separator is missing in the source data. In this case, the controls *record separator character* is used as the record separator to precede the converted record if record separators are to be placed in the receiver. The conversion process continues, bypassing the record separator conversion step that would normally be performed. The condition of a missing record separator is detected when during initial processing for a full record, the first byte of data is not a record separator character.

*Decompression* is performed if the function is specified in the *algorithm modifier*. This provides for converting strings of duplicate characters in compressed format in the source back to their full size in the receiver. Decompression of the source data is accomplished by concatenating together character strings described by the compression strings occurring in the source. The *source offset* value is assumed to locate the start of a compression string. Processing of a partial decompressed record is performed if necessary.

The character strings to be built into the receiver are described in the source by one or more compression strings. Compression strings are comprised of an SCB (string control byte) possibly followed by one or more bytes of data related to the character string to be built into the receiver.

The format of an SCB and the description of the data that may follow it is as follows:

- SCB Char(1)
  - Control Bits 0-1
    - 00 = n nonduplicate characters are between this SCB and the next one; where n is the value of the count field (1-63).
    - 01 = Reserved.
    - 10 = This SCB represents n deleted prime compression characters; where n is the value of the count field (1-63). The next byte is the next SCB.
    - 11 = This SCB represents n deleted duplicate characters; where n is the value of the count field (1-63). The next byte contains a specimen of the deleted characters. The byte following the specimen character contains the next SCB.
  - Count Bits 2-7
    - This contains the number of characters that have been deleted for a prime or duplicate string, or the number of characters to the next SCB for a nonduplicate string. A count value of zero is invalid and results in the signaling of a *conversion* (hex 0C01) exception.

Strings of prime compression characters or duplicate characters described in the source are repeated in the decompressed character string the number of times indicated by the *SCB count* value.

Strings of nonduplicate characters described in the source record are formed into a decompressed character string for the length indicated by the *SCB count* value.

If the end of the source is encountered prior to the end of a compression string, a *conversion* (hex 0C01) exception is signaled.

When *record processing* is specified, decompression is performed one record at a time. In this case, a *conversion* (hex 0C01) exception is signaled if a compression string describes a character string that would span a record boundary in the receiver. If the source contains record separators, the case of a missing record separator in the source is detected as defined under the initial description of the conversion process. *Record separator conversion*, as requested in the *algorithm modifier*, is performed as the initial step in the building of the decompressed record. A record separator to be placed into the receiver is in addition to the data to be converted into receiver for the length specified in the *receiver record length* field. The decompression of compression strings from the source continues until a *record separator character* for the next record is recognized when the source contains record separators, or until the decompressed data required to fill the receiver record has been processed or the end

of the source is encountered whether record separators are in the source or not. Transparency strings encountered in the decompressed character string are not scanned for a record separator value. If the end of the source is encountered, the data decompressed to that point appended to the optional record separator for this record forms a partial decompressed record. Otherwise, the decompressed character strings appended to the optional record separator for this record form the decompressed record. The conversion process then continues for this record with the next specified function.

When *string processing* is specified, decompression is performed on a compression string basis with no record oriented processing implied. The conversion process for each compression string from the source is completed by placing the decompressed character string into the receiver. The conversion process continues decompressing compression strings from the source until the end of the source or the receiver is encountered. When the end of the source operand is encountered, the instruction ends with a resultant condition of *source exhausted*. When a character string cannot be completely contained in the receiver, the instruction ends with a resultant condition of *receiver overrun*. For either of the above ending conditions, the controls operand is updated to describe the status of the conversion operation as of the last completely converted compression entry. Partial conversion of a compression entry is not performed.

- Data transparency conversion is performed if *perform data transparency conversion* is specified in the *algorithm modifier*. This provides for correctly identifying record separators in the source even if the data for a record contains value that could be interpreted as record separator values. Processing of active transparency strings is performed if necessary.

A nontransparent record is built by appending the nontransparent and transparent data converted from the record to the record separator for the record. The nontransparent record may be produced from either a partial record from the source or a full record from the source. This is accomplished by first accessing the record separator for a full record. The case of a missing record separator in the source is detected as defined under the initial description of the conversion process. Record separator conversion as requested in the algorithm modifier is performed if it has not already been performed by a prior step; the rest of the source record is scanned for values of less than hex 40.

A value greater than or equal to hex 40 is considered nontransparent data and is concatenated onto the record being built as is.

A value equal to hex 35 identifies the start of a transparency string. A transparency string is comprised of 2 bytes of transparency control information followed by the data to be made transparent to scanning for record separators. The first byte has a fixed value of hex 35 and is referred to as the TRN (transparency) control character. The second byte is a 1-byte hexadecimal count, a value remaining from 1 to 255 decimal, of the number of bytes of data that follow and is referred to as the **TRN count**. A *TRN count* of zero is invalid and causes a *conversion* (hex 0C01) exception. This contains the length of the transparent data and does not include the TRN control information length. The transparent data is concatenated to the nontransparent record being built and is not scanned for record separator characters.

A value equal to hex 00 is recognized as the record separator for the next record only when perform decompression is specified in the algorithm modifier. In this case, the nontransparent record is complete. When do not perform decompression is specified in the algorithm modifier, a value equal to hex 00 is ignored and is not included as part of the nontransparent data built for the current record.

A value less than hex 40 but not equal to hex 35 is considered to be the record separator for the next record, and the forming of the nontransparent record is complete.

The building of the nontransparent record is completed when the length of the data converted into the receiver equals the receiver record length if the record separator for the next record is not encountered prior to that point.

If the end of the source is encountered prior to completion of building the nontransparent record, the nontransparent record built up to this point is placed in the receiver and the instruction ends with a resultant condition of *source exhausted*. The controls operand is updated to describe the status for the partially converted record. This includes describing a partially converted transparency string, if necessary, by setting the *active transparency string status* and the *unconverted transparency string bytes* field.

If the building of the nontransparent record is completed prior to encountering the end of the source, the conversion process continues with the blank padding function described below.

*k padding* is performed if the function is specified in the *algorithm modifier*. This provides for expanding out to the size specified by the *receiver record length* the source records for which trailing blanks have been truncated. The padded record may be produced from either a partial record from the source or a full record from the source.

The record separator for this record is accessed. The case of a missing record separator in the source is detected as defined under the initial description of the conversion process. *Record separator conversion* as requested in the *algorithm modifier*, is performed if it has not already been performed by a prior step.

The nontruncated data, if any, for the record is appended to the optional record separator for the record. The nontruncated data is determined by scanning the source record for the record separator for the next record. This scan is concluded after processing enough data to completely fill the receiver record or upon encountering the record separator for the next record. The data processed prior to concluding the scan is considered the nontruncated data for the record.

The blanks, if any, required to pad the record out to the nontruncated data for the record, concluding the forming of the padded record.

If the end of the source is encountered during the forming of the padded record, the data processed up to that point, appended to the optional record separator for the record, is placed into the receiver and the instruction ends with a resultant condition of *source exhausted*. The controls operand is updated to describe the status of the partially converted record.

If the forming of the padded record is concluded prior to encountering the end of the source, the conversion of the record is completed by placing the converted form of the record into the receiver.

At this point, either conversion of a source record has been completed or conversion has been interrupted due to detection of the *source exhausted* or *receiver overrun* condition. For *record processing*, if neither of the above conditions has been detected either during conversion of or at completion of conversion for the current record, the conversion process continues on the next source record with the decompression function described above.

At completion of the instruction, the *receiver offset* locates the byte following the last converted byte in the receiver. The value of the remaining bytes in the receiver after the last converted byte are unpredictable. The *source offset* locates the byte following the last source byte for which conversion was completed. When record processing is specified, the *unconverted receiver record bytes* field specifies the length of the receiver record bytes not yet containing converted data. When *perform data transparency conversion* is specified in the *algorithm modifier*, the *conversion status* indicates whether conversion of a transparency string was active and the *unconverted transparency string bytes* field specifies the length of the remaining bytes to be processed for an active transparency string.

This instruction does not provide support for compression entries in the source describing data that would span records in the receiver. SNA data from some systems may violate this restriction and as such be incompatible with the instruction. A provision can be made to avoid this incompatibility by performing the conversion of the SNA data through two invocations of this instruction. The first invoca-

tion would specify *decompression* with *no record separator processing*. The second invocation would specify *record separator processing* with *no decompression*. This technique provides for separating the decompression step from record separator processing; thus, the incompatibility is avoided.

This instruction can end with the *escape code encountered* condition. In this case, it is expected that the user of the instruction will want to do some special processing for the record separator causing the condition. In order to resume execution of the instruction, the user will have to set the appropriate value for the *record separator* into the receiver and update the controls operand *source offset* and *receiver offset* fields correctly to provide for restarting processing at the right points in the receiver and source operands.

For the special case of a tie between the *source exhausted* and *receiver overrun* conditions, the *source exhausted* condition is recognized first. That is, when *source exhausted* is the resultant condition, the receiver may also be full. In this case, the *receiver offset* may contain a value equal to the length specified for the receiver, which would cause an exception to be detected on the next invocation of the instruction. The processing performed for the *source exhausted* condition should provide for this case if the instruction is to be invoked multiple times with the same controls operand template. When the *receiver overrun* condition is the resultant condition, the source will always contain data that can be converted.

This instruction will, in certain cases, ignore what would normally have been interpreted as a record separator value of hex 00. This applies (hex 00 is ignored) for the special case when *do not perform decompression* and *record separators in source* are specified in the *algorithm modifier*. Note that this does not apply when *perform decompression* is specified, or when *do not perform decompression* and *no record separators in source* and *move record separator from controls to receiver* are specified in the *algorithm modifier*.

**Limitations:** The following are limits that apply to the functions performed by this instruction.

Any form of overlap between the operands on this instruction yields unpredictable results in the receiver operand.

### Resultant Conditions

- Source exhausted-The end of the source operand is encountered and no more bytes from the source can be converted.
- Receiver overrun-An overrun condition in the receiver operand is detected before all of the bytes in the source operand have been processed.
- Escape code encountered-A record separator character is encountered in the source operand that is to be treated as an escape code.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment violation     | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 0C        | Computation                            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Conversion                          |          |   | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        |          |   |   | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 Invalid branch target               |          |   |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Template value invalid              |          | X |   |       |

## Copy Bits Arithmetic (CPYBTA)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3 | Operand 4 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 102C          | Receiver  | Source    | Offset    | Length    |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar (fixed length) or numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character variable scalar (fixed length) or numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 3:* Signed or unsigned binary immediate.

*Operand 4:* Signed or unsigned binary immediate.

**Description:** This instruction copies the signed bit string source operand starting at the specified offset for a specified length right adjusted to the receiver and pads on the left with the sign of the bit string source.

The selected bits from the source operand are treated as an signed bit string and copied to the receiver value.

The source operand can be character or numeric. The leftmost bytes of the source operand are used in the operation. The source operand is interpreted as a bit string with the bits numbered left to right from 0 to the total number of bits in the string minus 1.

The offset operand indicates which bit of the source operand is to be copied, with a offset of zero indicating the leftmost bit of the leftmost byte of the source operand.

The length operand indicates the number of bits that are to be copied.

If the sum of the offset plus the length exceed the length of the source an *invalid operand length* (hex 2A0A) exception will be raised.

**Limitations:** The length of the receiver cannot exceed four bytes.

The offset must have a non-negative value.

The length operand must be an immediate value between 1 and 32.

### Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   |   |   |       |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 | Other |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        | X |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment violation     | X        | X |   |   |       |
|           | 03 Range                            | X        | X |   |   |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |   |   |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X |   |   |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state       |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage     |          |   |   |   | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X |   |   |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X |   |   |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X |   |   |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   |   | X     |



## Copy Bits Logical (CPYBTL)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3 | Operand 4 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 101C          | Receiver  | Source    | Offset    | Length    |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar (fixed length) or numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character variable scalar (fixed length) or numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 3:* Signed or unsigned binary immediate.

*Operand 4:* Signed or unsigned binary immediate.

**Description:** Copies the unsigned bit string source operand starting at the specified offset for a specified length to the receiver.

If the receiver is shorter than the length, the left most bits are removed to make the source bit string conform to the length of the receiver. No exceptions are generated when truncation occurs.

The selected bits from the source operand are treated as an unsigned bit string and copied right adjusted to the receiver and padded on the left with binary zeros.

The source operand can be character or numeric. The leftmost bytes of the source operand are used in the operation. The source operand is interpreted as a bit string with the bits numbered left to right from 0 to the total number of bits in the string minus 1.

The offset operand indicates which bit of the source operand is to be copied, with a offset of zero indicating the leftmost bit of the leftmost byte of the source operand.

The length operand indicates the number of bits that are to be copied.

If the sum of the offset plus the length exceed the length of the source an *invalid operand length* (hex 2A0A) exception will be signaled.

**Limitations:** The length of the receiver cannot exceed four bytes.

The offset must have a non-negative value.

The length operand must be an immediate value between 1 and 32.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   |   |       |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 | Other |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        | X |   |   |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment violation     | X        | X |   |   |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X |   |   |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |   |   |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |   |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X |   |   |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X |   |   |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X |   |   |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   |   | X     |

## Copy Bits with Left Logical Shift (CPYBTLLS)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3     |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|---------------|
| 102F          | Receiver  | Source    | Shift control |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar or numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar or numeric scalar.

*Operand 3:* Character(2) scalar (fixed length) or unsigned binary(2) scalar.

**Description:** This instruction copies the bit string value of the source operand to the bit string defined by the receiver operand with a left logical shift of the source bit string value under control of the shift control operand.

The operation results in copying the shifted bit string value of the source to the bit string of the receiver while padding the receiver with bit values of 0 and truncating bit values of the source as is appropriate for the specific operation.

No indication is given of truncation of bit values from the shifted source value. This is true whether the values truncated are 0 or 1.

The operation is performed such that the bit string of the source is considered to be extended on the left and right by an unlimited number of bit string positions of value 0. Additionally, a receiver bit string view (window) with the attributes of the receiver is considered to overlay this conceptual bit string value of the source starting at the leftmost bit position of the original source value. A left logical shift of the conceptual bit string value of the source is then performed relative to the receiver bit string view according to the shift criteria specified in the shift control operand. After the shift, the bit string value then contained within the receiver bit string view is copied to the receiver.

The source and the receiver can be either character or numeric. Any numeric operands are interpreted as logical character strings. Due to the operation being treated as a character string operation, the source operand may not be specified as a signed immediate operand. Additionally, for a source operand specified as an unsigned immediate value, only a 1-byte immediate value may be specified.

The shift control operand may be specified as an immediate operand, as a character(2) scalar, or as an unsigned binary(2) scalar. It provides an unsigned binary value indicating the number of bit positions for which the left logical shift of the source bit string value is to be performed. A zero value specifies no shift.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment violation     | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        |          |   |   | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |

---

## Copy Bits with Right Arithmetic Shift (CPYBTRAS)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3     |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|---------------|
| 101B          | Receiver  | Source    | Shift Control |

*Operand 1:* Character variable or numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar or numeric scalar.

*Operand 3:* Character(2) scalar (fixed length) or unsigned binary(2) scalar.

**Description:** The instruction copies the bit string value of the source operand to the bit string defined by the receiver operand with a right arithmetic shift of the source bit string value under control of the shift control operand.

The operation results in copying the shifted bit string value of the source to the bit string of the receiver while padding the receiver with bit values of 0 or 1 depending on the high order bit value of the source, and truncating bit values of the source as is appropriate for the specific operation.

No indication is given of truncation of bit values from the shifted source value. This is true whether the values truncated are 0 or 1.

The operation is performed such that the bit string of the source is considered a signed numeric binary value, with the value of the sign bit of the source conceptually extended on the left an unlimited number of bit string positions. A right arithmetic shift of the conceptual bit string value of the source is then performed according to the shift criteria specified in the shift control operand. No indication is given of truncation of bit values from the shifted conceptual source value. This is true whether the values truncated are 0 or 1. After the shift, the conceptual bit string value is then copied to the receiver, right aligned.

Viewing the bit string value of the source and the bit string value copied to the receiver as signed numeric, the sign of the value copied to the receiver will be the same as the sign of the source.

A right shift of one bit position is equivalent to dividing the signed numeric bit string value of the source by 2 with rounding downward, and assigning a signed numeric bit string equivalent to that result to the receiver. For example, if the signed numeric view of the source bit string is +9, shifting one bit position right yields +4. However if the signed numeric view of the source bit string is -9, shifting one bit position right yields -5.

If all the significant bits of the conceptual source bit string are shifted out of the field, the resulting conceptual bit string value will be all zero bits for positive numbers, and all one bits for negative numbers.

The source and the receiver can be either character or numeric. Any numeric operands are interpreted as logical character strings. Due to the operation being treated as a character string operation, the source operand may not be specified as a signed immediate operand. Additionally, for a source operand specified as an unsigned immediate value, only a 1-byte immediate value may be specified.

The shift control operand may be specified as an immediate operand, as a character(2) scalar, or as a unsigned binary(2) scalar. It provides an unsigned binary value indicating the number of bit positions for which the right logical shift of the source bit string value is to be performed. A zero value specifies no shift.

### Exceptions

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                             |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Spacing addressing violation        | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment violation        | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Range                               | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        |          |   |   | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |

## Copy Bits with Right Logical Shift (CPYBTRLS)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3     |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|---------------|
| 103F          | Receiver  | Source    | Shift control |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar or numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar or numeric scalar.

*Operand 3:* Character(2) scalar (fixed length) or unsigned binary(2) scalar.

**Description:** This instruction copies the bit string value of the source operand to the bit string defined by the receiver operand with a right logical shift of the source bit string value under control of the shift control operand.

The operation results in copying the shifted bit string value of the source to the bit string of the receiver while padding the receiver with bit values of 0 and truncating bit values of the source as is appropriate for the specific operation.

No indication is given of truncation of bit values from the shifted source value. This is true whether the values truncated are 0 or 1.

The operation is performed such that the bit string of the source is considered to be extended on the left and right by an unlimited number of bit string positions of value 0. Additionally, a receiver bit string view (window) with the attributes of the receiver is considered to overlay this conceptual bit string value of the source starting at the leftmost bit position of the original source value. A right logical shift of the conceptual bit string value of the source is then performed relative to the receiver bit string view according to the shift criteria specified in the shift control operand. After the shift, the bit string value then contained within the receiver bit string view is copied to the receiver.

The source and the receiver can be either character or numeric. Any numeric operands are interpreted as logical character strings. Due to the operation being treated as a character string operation, the source operand may not be specified as a signed immediate operand. Additionally, for a source operand specified as an unsigned immediate value, only a 1-byte immediate value may be specified.

The shift control operand may be specified as an immediate operand, as a character(2) scalar, or as an unsigned binary(2) scalar. It provides an unsigned binary value indicating the number of bit positions for which the right logical shift of the source bit string value is to be performed. A zero value specifies no shift.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment violation     | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        |          |   |   | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |



## Copy Bytes Left-Adjusted (CPYBLA)

|                              |                              |                            |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>Op Code (Hex)</b><br>10B2 | <b>Operand 1</b><br>Receiver | <b>Operand 2</b><br>Source |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar, numeric variable scalar, data-pointer-defined character scalar, or data-pointer-defined numeric scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar, numeric scalar, data-pointer-defined character scalar, or data-pointer-defined numeric scalar.

**Description:** The logical string value of the source operand is copied to the logical string value of the receiver operand (no padding done). The operands can be either character or numeric. Any numeric operands are interpreted as logical character strings.

The length of the operation is equal to the length of the shorter of the two operands. The copying begins with the two operands left-adjusted and proceeds until the shorter operand has been copied.

Substring operand references that allow for a null substring reference (a length value of zero) may be specified for operands 1 and 2. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for either operand is that no result is set.

If either operand is a character variable scalar, it may have a length as great as 16776191 bytes.

### Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 Range                            | X        | X |       |
|           | 04 External data object not found   | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                  |          |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state       | X        | X | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage     | X        | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception         |          |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                     |          |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                    |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                   |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                 | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                 | X        | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Scalar type invalid                 | X        | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |

## Copy Bytes Left-Adjusted with Pad (CPYBLAP)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 10B3          | Receiver  | Source    | Pad       |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar or numeric variable scalar, data-pointer-defined character scalar, or data-pointer-defined numeric scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar, numeric scalar, data-pointer-defined character scalar, or data-pointer-defined numeric scalar.

*Operand 3:* Character scalar or numeric scalar.

**Description:** The logical string value of the source operand is copied to the logical string value of the receiver operand (padded if needed).

The operands can be either character or numeric. Any numeric operands are interpreted as logical character strings.

The length of the operation is equal to the length of the receiver operand. If the source operand is shorter than the receiver operand, the source operand is copied to the leftmost bytes of the receiver operand, and each excess byte of the receiver operand is assigned the single byte value in the pad operand. If the pad operand is more than 1 byte in length, only its leftmost byte is used. If the source operand is longer than the receiver operand, the leftmost bytes of the source operand (equal in length to the receiver operand) are copied to the receiver operand.

Substring operand references that allow for a null substring reference (a length value of zero) may be specified for operands 1 and 2. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for the source is that the bytes of the receiver are each set with the single byte value of the pad operand. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for the receiver is that no result is set.

If either of the first two operands is a character variable scalar, it may have a length as great as 16776191.

### Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Range                            | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 04 External data object not found   | X        | X |   |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state       | X        | X | X | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage     | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception         |          |   |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Scalar type invalid                 | X        | X |   |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |

## Copy Bytes Overlap Left-Adjusted (CPYBOLA)

|                      |                  |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|------------------|
| <b>Op Code (Hex)</b> | <b>Operand 1</b> | <b>Operand 2</b> |
| 10BA                 | Receiver         | Source           |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar or numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character variable scalar or numeric variable scalar.

**Description:** The logical string value of the source operand is copied to the logical string value of the receiver operand (no padding done). The operands can be either character or numeric. Any numeric operands are interpreted as logical character strings.

The length of the operation is equal to the length of the shorter of the two operands. The copying begins with the two operands left-adjusted and proceeds until the shorter operand has been copied. The excess bytes in the longer operand are not included in the operation.

Predictable results occur even if two operands overlap because the source operand is, in effect, first copied to an intermediate result.

Substring operand references that allow for a null substring reference (a length value of zero) may be specified for operands 1 and 2. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for either operand is that no result is set.

### Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 Range                            | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                  |          |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state       | X        | X | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage     | X        | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception         |          |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                     |          |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                    |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                   |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                 | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                 | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                 | X        | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Scalar type invalid                 | X        | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |

**Copy Bytes Overlap Left-Adjusted with Pad (CPYBOLAP)**

|                              |                              |                            |                         |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>Op Code (Hex)</b><br>10BB | <b>Operand 1</b><br>Receiver | <b>Operand 2</b><br>Source | <b>Operand 3</b><br>Pad |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar or numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character variable scalar or numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 3:* Character scalar or numeric scalar.

**Description:** The logical string value of the source operand is copied to the logical string value of the receiver operand.

The operands can be either character or numeric. Any numeric operands are interpreted as logical character strings.

The length of the operation is equal to the length of the receiver operand. If the source operand is shorter than the receiver operand, the source operand is copied to the leftmost bytes of the receiver operand and each excess byte of the receiver operand is assigned the single byte value in the pad operand. If the pad operand is more than 1 byte in length, only its leftmost byte is used. If the source operand is longer than the receiver operand, the leftmost bytes of the source operand (equal in length to the receiver operand) are copied to the receiver operand.

Predictable results occur even if two operands overlap because the source operand is, in effect, first copied to an intermediate result.

Substring operand references that allow for a null substring reference (a length value of zero) may be specified for operands 1 and 2. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for the source is that the bytes of the receiver are each set with the single byte value of the pad operand. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for the receiver is that no result is set.

**Exceptions**

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |   |       |
| 04 System object damage state       | X        | X | X | X     |
| 44 Partial system object damage     | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception      |          |   |   |       |
| 03 Machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   | X | X     |
| 20 Machine support                  |          |   |   |       |
| 02 Machine check                    |          |   |   | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |



## Copy Bytes Repeatedly (CPYBREP)

|                              |                              |                            |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>Op Code (Hex)</b><br>10BE | <b>Operand 1</b><br>Receiver | <b>Operand 2</b><br>Source |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar (fixed-length).

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar or character scalar (fixed length).

**Description:** The logical string value of the source operand is repeatedly copied to the receiver operand until the receiver is filled. The operands can be either character or numeric. Any numeric operands are interpreted as logical character strings.

The operation begins with the two operands left-adjusted and continues until the receiver operand is completely filled. If the source operand is shorter than the receiver, it is repeatedly copied from left to right (all or in part) until the receiver operand is completely filled. If the source operand is longer than the receiver operand, the leftmost bytes of the source operand (equal in length to the receiver operand) are copied to the receiver operand.

Substring operand references that allow for a null substring reference (a length value of zero) may be specified for operands 1 and 2. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for either operand is that no result is set.

If either operand is a character variable scalar, it may have a length as great as 16776191.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |       |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | Other |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |       |
| 04 System object damage state       | X        | X | X     |
| 44 Partial system object damage     | X        | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception      |          |   |       |
| 03 Machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                  |          |   |       |
| 02 Machine check                    |          |   | X     |
| 03 Function check                   |          |   | X     |
| 22 Object access                    |          |   |       |
| 01 Object not found                 | X        | X |       |
| 02 Object destroyed                 | X        | X |       |
| 03 Object suspended                 | X        | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |

## Copy Bytes Right-Adjusted (CPYBRA)

**Op Code (Hex)**  
10B6

**Operand 1**  
Receiver

**Operand 2**  
Source

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar, numeric variable scalar, data-pointer-defined character scalar, or data-pointer-defined numeric scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar, numeric scalar, data-pointer-defined character scalar, or data-pointer-defined numeric scalar.

**Description:** The logical string value of the source operand is copied to the logical string value of the receiver operand (no padding done). The operands can be either character or numeric. Any numeric operands are interpreted as logical character strings.

The length of the operation is equal to the length of the shorter of the two operands. The rightmost bytes (equal to the length of the shorter of the two operands) of the source operand are copied to the rightmost bytes of the receiver operand. The excess bytes in the longer operand are not included in the operation.

Substring operand references that allow for a null substring reference (a length value of zero) may be specified for operands 1 and 2. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for either operand is that no result is set.

### Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 Range                            | X        | X |       |
|           | 04 External data object not found   | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                  |          |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state       | X        | X | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage     | X        | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception         |          |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                     |          |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                    |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                   |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                 | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                 | X        | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Scalar type invalid                 | X        | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |

## Copy Bytes Right-Adjusted with Pad (CPYBRAP)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 10B7          | Receiver  | Source    | Pad       |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar, numeric variable scalar, data-pointer-defined character scalar, or data-pointer-defined numeric scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar, numeric scalar, data-pointer-defined character scalar, or data-pointer-defined numeric scalar.

*Operand 3:* Character scalar or numeric scalar.

**Description:** The logical string value of the source operand is copied to the logical string value of the receiver operand (padded if needed). The operands can be either character or numeric. Any numeric operands are interpreted as logical character strings.

The length of the operation is equal to the length of the receiver operand. If the source operand is shorter than the receiver operand, the source operand is copied to the rightmost bytes of receiver operand, and each excess byte is assigned the single byte value in the pad operand. If the pad operand is more than 1 byte in length, only its leftmost byte is used. If the source operand is longer than the receiver operand, the rightmost bytes of the source operand (equal in length to the receiver operand) are copied to the receiver operand.

Substring operand references that allow for a null substring reference (a length value of zero) may be specified for operands 1 and 2. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for the source is that the bytes of the receiver are each set with the single byte value of the pad operand. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for the receiver is that no result is set.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   |       |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 | Other |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X | X |       |
| 04 External data object not found   | X        | X |   |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |   |       |
| 04 System object damage state       | X        | X | X | X     |
| 44 Partial system object damage     | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception      |          |   |   |       |
| 03 Machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                  |          |   |   |       |
| 02 Machine check                    |          |   |   | X     |
| 03 Function check                   |          |   |   | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Scalar type invalid                 | X        | X |   |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |

## Copy Bytes to Bits Arithmetic (CPYBBTA)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3 | Operand 4 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 104C          | Receiver  | Offset    | Length    | Source    |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar (fixed length) or numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Signed binary immediate or unsigned binary immediate.

*Operand 3:* Signed binary immediate or unsigned binary immediate.

*Operand 4:* Character variable scalar (fixed length) or numeric variable scalar.

**Description:** This instruction copies a byte string from the source operand to a bit string in the receiver operand.

The source operand is interpreted as a signed binary value and may be sign extended or truncated on the left to fit into the bit string in the receiver operand. No indication is given when truncation occurs.

The location of the bit string in the receiver operand is specified by the offset operand. The value of the offset operand specifies the bit offset from the start of the receiver operand to the start of the bit string. Thus, an offset operand value of 0 specifies that the bit string starts at the leftmost bit position of the receiver operand.

The length of the bit string in the receiver operand is specified by the length operand. The value of the length operand specifies the length of the bit string in bits.

**Limitations:** The following are limits that apply to the functions performed by this instruction.

If the source operand and the bit string in the receiver operand overlap, the results are unpredictable.

A source operand longer than 4 bytes may not be specified.

If the offset operand is signed binary immediate, a negative value may not be specified.

A length operand with a value less than 1 or greater than 32 may not be specified.

The bit string specified by the offset operand and the length operand may not extend outside the receiver operand.

### Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   |   |   |       |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 | Other |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        |   |   | X |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment violation     | X        |   |   | X |       |
|           | 03 Range                            | X        |   |   | X |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        |   |   | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        |   |   | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                  |          |   |   |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        |   |   | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        |   |   | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        |   |   | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        |   |   | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   |   | X     |



## Copy Bytes to Bits Logical (CPYBBTL)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3 | Operand 4 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 103C          | Receiver  | Offset    | Length    | Source    |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar (fixed length) or numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Signed binary immediate or unsigned binary immediate.

*Operand 3:* Signed binary immediate or unsigned binary immediate.

*Operand 4:* Character variable scalar (fixed length) or numeric variable scalar.

**Description:** This instruction copies a byte string from the source operand to a bit string in the receiver operand.

The source operand is interpreted as an unsigned binary value and may be padded on the left with 0's or truncated on the left to fit into the bit string in the receiver operand. No indication is given when truncation occurs.

The location of the bit string in the receiver operand is specified by the offset operand. The value of the offset operand specifies the bit offset from the start of the receiver operand to the start of the bit string. Thus, an offset operand value of 0 specifies that the bit string starts at the leftmost bit position of the receiver operand.

The length of the bit string in the receiver operand is specified by the length operand. The value of the length operand specifies the length of the bit string in bits.

**Limitations:** The following are limits that apply to the functions performed by this instruction.

If the source operand and the bit string in the receiver operand overlap, the results are unpredictable.

A source operand longer than 4 bytes may not be specified.

If the offset operand is signed binary immediate, a negative value may not be specified.

A length operand with a value less than 1 or greater than 32 may not be specified.

The bit string specified by the offset operand and the length operand may not extend outside the receiver operand.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   |   |       |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 | Other |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        |   |   | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment violation     | X        |   |   | X |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        |   |   | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        |   |   | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        |   |   | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |   |   |       |

| Exception                              | Operands |   |   |   |       |
|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 | Other |
| 04 System object damage state          |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 44 Partial system object damage        |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception         |          |   |   |   |       |
| 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                     |          |   |   |   |       |
| 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 03 Function check                      |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22 Object access                       |          |   |   |   |       |
| 02 Object destroyed                    | X        |   |   | X |       |
| 03 Object suspended                    | X        |   |   | X |       |
| 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification               |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        |   |   | X |       |
| 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        |   |   | X |       |
| 2E Resource control limit              |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 36 Space management                    |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   |   | X     |

## Copy Extended Characters Left-Adjusted With Pad (CPYECLAP)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1053          | Receiver  | Source    | Pad       |

*Operand 1:* Data-pointer-defined character scalar.

*Operand 2:* Data-pointer-defined character scalar.

*Operand 3:* Character(3) scalar or null.

**Description:** The extended character string value of the source operand is copied to the receiver operand.

The operation is performed at the length of the receiver operand. If the source operand is shorter than the receiver, the source operand is copied to the leftmost bytes of the receiver and the excess bytes of the receiver are assigned the appropriate value from the pad operand.

The pad operand, operand 3, is three bytes in length and has the following format:

- Pad operand
  - Single byte pad value Char(1)
  - Double byte pad value Char(2)

If the **pad operand** is more than three bytes in length, only its leftmost three bytes are used. Specifying a null *pad operand* results in default pad values of hex 40, for single byte, and hex 4040, for double byte, being used. The **single byte pad value** and the first byte of the **double byte pad value** cannot be either a shift out control character (SO = hex 0E) value or a shift in control character (SI = hex 0F) value. Specification of such an invalid value results in the signaling of the *scalar value invalid* (hex 3203) exception.

Operands 1 and 2 must be specified as Data Pointers which define either a simple (single byte) character data field or one of the extended (double byte) character data fields.

Support for usage of a Data Pointer defining an extended character scalar value is limited to this instruction. Usage of such a data pointer defined value on any other instruction is not supported and results in the signaling of the *scalar type invalid* (hex 3201) exception.

For more information on support for extended character data fields, refer to the Set Data Pointer Attributes, Materialize Pointer, and Create Cursor instructions.

Four data types are supported for data pointer definition of extended (double byte) character fields, OPEN, EITHER, ONLYNS and ONLYS. Except for ONLYNS, the double byte character data must be surrounded by a shift out control character (SO hex 0E) and a shift in control character (SI = hex 0F).

- The ONLYNS field only contains double byte data with no SO, SI delimiters surrounding it.
- The ONLYS field can only contain double byte character data within a SO..SI pair.
- The EITHER field can consist of double byte character or single byte character data but only one type at a time. If double byte character data is present it must be surrounded by an SO .. SI pair.
- The OPEN field can consist of a mixture of double byte character and single byte character data. If double byte character data is present it must be surrounded by an SO .. SI pair.

Specifying an extended character value which violates the above restrictions results in the signaling of the *invalid extended character data* (hex 0C12) exception.

The valid copy operations which can be specified on this instruction are the following:

|   |        | Op 1   |       |      |        |
|---|--------|--------|-------|------|--------|
|   |        | Onlyns | Onlys | Open | Either |
| 0 | Onlyns | yes    | yes   | yes  | yes    |
| p | Onlys  | yes    | yes   | yes  | yes    |
|   | Open   | no     | no    | yes  | no     |
| 2 | Either | no     | no    | yes  | yes    |

Figure 2-5. Valid copy operations for CPYECLAP

Specifying a copy operation other than the valid operations defined above results in the signaling of the *invalid extended character operation* (hex 0C13) exception.

When the copy operation is for a source of type ONLYNS (no SO/SI delimiters) being copied to a receiver which is not ONLYNS, SO and SI delimiters are implicitly added around the source value as part of the copy operation.

When the source value is longer than can be contained in the receiver, truncation is necessary and the following truncation rules apply:

1. Truncation is on the right (like simple character copy operations).
2. When the string to be truncated is a single byte character string, or an extended character string when the receiver is ONLYNS, bytes beyond those that fit into the receiver are truncated with no further processing needed.
3. When the string to be truncated is an extended character string and the receiver is not ONLYNS, the bytes that fall at the end of the receiver are truncated as follows:
  - a. When the last byte that would fit in the receiver is the first byte of an extended character, that byte is truncated and replaced with an SI character.
  - b. When the last byte that would fit in the receiver is the second byte of an extended character, both bytes of that extended character are truncated and replaced with a SI character followed by a *single byte pad value*. This type of truncation can only occur when converting to an OPEN field.

When the source value is shorter than that which can be contained in the receiver, padding is necessary. One of three types of padding is performed:

1. Double byte (DB) - the source value is padded on the right with *double byte pad values* out to the length of the receiver.
2. Double byte concatenated with a SI value (DB||SI) - the source double byte value is padded on the right with *double byte pad values* out to the second to last byte of the receiver and an SI delimiter is placed in the last byte of the receiver.
3. Single byte (SB) - the source value is padded on the right with *single byte pad values* out to the length of the receiver.

The type of padding performed is determined by the type of operands involved in the operation:

1. If the receiver is ONLYNS, DB padding is performed.
2. If the receiver is ONLYS, DB||SI padding will be performed.
3. If the receiver is EITHER and the source contained a double byte value, DB||SI padding is performed.
4. If the receiver is EITHER and the source contained a single byte value, SB padding is performed.

5. If the receiver is OPEN, SB padding is performed.

The above padding rules cover all the operand combinations which are allowed on the instruction. A complete understanding of the operand combinations allowed (prior diagram), and the values which can be contained in the different operand types is necessary to appreciate that these rules do cover all the valid combinations.

## Exceptions

| Exception                               | Operands |   |   |       |
|---|----------|---|---|-------|
|   | 1        | 2 | 3 | Other |
| 06 Addressing                           |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation         | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment                   | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                                | X        | X | X |       |
| 04 External data object not found       | X        | X |   |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid     | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                   |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation        | X        | X | X |       |
| 0C Computation                          |          |   |   |       |
| 12 Invalid extended character data      |          | X |   |       |
| 13 Invalid extended character operation |          |   |   | X     |
| 10 Damage encountered                   |          |   |   |       |
| 04 System object damage state           | X        | X | X | X     |
| 44 Partial system object damage         | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception          |          |   |   |       |
| 03 Machine storage limit exceeded       |          |   |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                      |          |   |   |       |
| 02 Machine check                        |          |   |   | X     |
| 03 Function check                       |          |   |   | X     |
| 22 Object access                        |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Object not found                     | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Object destroyed                     | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 Object suspended                     | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 object compressed                    |          |   |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification                |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Pointer does not exist               | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Pointer type invalid                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 2E Resource control limit               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded  |          |   |   | X     |
| 32 Scalar specification                 |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Scalar type invalid                  | X        | X |   |       |
| 01 Scalar value invalid                 |          |   | X |       |

| Exception |                               | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |                               | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 36        | Space management              |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation |          |   |   | X     |

## Copy Hex Digit Numeric to Numeric (CPYHEXNN)

|                      |                  |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|------------------|
| <b>Op Code (Hex)</b> | <b>Operand 1</b> | <b>Operand 2</b> |
| 1092                 | Receiver         | Source           |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar (fixed-length).

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar or character scalar (fixed-length).

**Description:** The numeric hex digit value (rightmost 4 bits) of the leftmost byte referred to by the source operand is copied to the numeric hex digit value (rightmost 4 bits) of the leftmost byte referred to by the receiver operand. The operands can be either character strings or numeric. Any numeric operands are interpreted as logical character strings.

### Exceptions

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                             |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Spacing addressing violation        | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment                  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 Range                               | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                     |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation       | X        | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          | X        | X | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        | X        | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |

**Exception**

01 space extension/truncation

**Operands**

|   |   |       |
|---|---|-------|
| 1 | 2 | Other |
|   |   | X     |



## Copy Hex Digit Numeric to Zone (CPYHEXNZ)

|                      |                  |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|------------------|
| <b>Op Code (Hex)</b> | <b>Operand 1</b> | <b>Operand 2</b> |
| 1096                 | Receiver         | Source           |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar (fixed-length).

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar or character scalar (fixed-length).

**Description:** The numeric hex digit value (rightmost 4 bits) of the leftmost byte referred to by the source operand is copied to the numeric hex digit value (rightmost 4 bits) of the leftmost byte referred to by the receiver operand. The operands can be either character strings or numeric. Any numeric operands are interpreted as logical character strings.

### Exceptions

| Exception                              | Operands |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06 Addressing                          |          |   |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation        | X        | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment                  | X        | X |       |
| 03 Range                               | X        | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                  |          |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation       | X        | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                  |          |   |       |
| 04 System object damage state          | X        | X | X     |
| 44 Partial system object damage        | X        | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception         |          |   |       |
| 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                     |          |   |       |
| 02 Machine check                       |          |   | X     |
| 03 Function check                      |          |   | X     |
| 22 Object access                       |          |   |       |
| 01 Object not found                    | X        | X |       |
| 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X |       |
| 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X |       |
| 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification               |          |   |       |
| 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
| 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2E Resource control limit              |          |   |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 36 Space management                    |          |   |       |

**Exception**

01 space extension/truncation

**Operands**

|   |   |              |
|---|---|--------------|
| 1 | 2 | <b>Other</b> |
|   |   | X            |

## Copy Hex Digit Zone To Numeric (CPYHEXZN)

|                      |                  |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|------------------|
| <b>Op Code (Hex)</b> | <b>Operand 1</b> | <b>Operand 2</b> |
| 109A                 | Receiver         | Source           |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar (fixed-length).

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar or character scalar (fixed-length).

**Description:** The zone hex digit value (leftmost 4 bits) of the leftmost byte referred to by the source operand is copied to the numeric hex digit value (rightmost 4 bits) of the leftmost byte referred to by the receiver operand.

The operands can be either character strings or numeric. Any numeric operands are interpreted as logical character strings.

### Exceptions

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                             |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Spacing addressing violation        | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment                  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 Range                               | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                     |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation       | X        | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          | X        | X | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        | X        | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |

**Exception**

36 Space management  
01 space extension/truncation

**Operands**

| 1 | 2 | Other |
|---|---|-------|
|   |   | X     |

**Copy Hex Digit Zone To Zone (CPYHEXZZ)**

|                      |                  |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|------------------|
| <b>Op Code (Hex)</b> | <b>Operand 1</b> | <b>Operand 2</b> |
| 109E                 | Receiver         | Source           |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar (fixed-length).

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar or character scalar (fixed-length).

**Description:** The zone hex digit value (leftmost 4 bits) of the leftmost byte referred to by the source operand is copied to the zone hex digit value (leftmost 4 bits) of the leftmost byte referred to by the receiver operand.

The operands can be either character strings or numeric. Any numeric operands are interpreted as logical character strings.

**Exceptions**

| Exception                              | Operands |   |       |
|--|----------|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | Other |
| 06 Addressing                          |          |   |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation        | X        | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment                  | X        | X |       |
| 03 Range                               | X        | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                  |          |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation       | X        | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                  |          |   |       |
| 04 System object damage state          | X        | X | X     |
| 44 Partial system object damage        | X        | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception         |          |   |       |
| 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                     |          |   |       |
| 02 Machine check                       |          |   | X     |
| 03 Function check                      |          |   | X     |
| 22 Object access                       |          |   |       |
| 01 Object not found                    | X        | X |       |
| 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X |       |
| 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X |       |
| 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification               |          |   |       |
| 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
| 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2E Resource control limit              |          |   |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |

**Exception**

36 Space management  
01 space extension/truncation

| Operands |   | Other |
|----------|---|-------|
| 1        | 2 |       |
|          |   | X     |

**Copy Numeric Value (CPYNV)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br>CPYNV<br>1042 | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Receiver | Operand 2<br>Source | Operand [3-6]     |
|--------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| CPYNV<br>1242                  |                   | Receiver              | Source              |                   |
| CPYNVB<br>1C42                 | Branch options    | Receiver              | Source              | Branch targets    |
| CPYNVBR<br>1E42                | Branch options    | Receiver              | Source              | Branch targets    |
| CPY NVI<br>1842                | Indicator options | Receiver              | Source              | Indicator targets |
| CPY NVIR<br>1A42               | Indicator options | Receiver              | Source              | Indicator targets |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar or data-pointer-defined numeric scalar.

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar or data pointer-defined-numeric scalar.

*Operand 3-6:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**ILE access**

```
LBCPYNV (
  var receiver          : any numeric type;
  var receiver_attributes : aggregate;
  var source            : any numeric type;
  var source_attributes  : aggregate;
)
```

**Description:** The numeric value of the source operand is copied to the numeric receiver operand.

Both operands must be numeric. If necessary, the source operand is converted to the same type as the receiver operand before being copied to the receiver operand. The source value is adjusted to the length of the receiver operand, aligned at the assumed decimal point of the receiver operand, or both before being copied to it. If significant digits are truncated on the left end of the source value, a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception is signaled. When the receiver is binary, this *size* (hex 0C0A) exception may be suppressed by using the *suppress binary size exception program attribute* on the Create Program (CRTPG) instruction.

If a decimal to binary conversion causes a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception to be signaled or if the *size* (hex 0C0A) exception is suppressed, the binary value contains the correct truncated result only if the decimal value contains 15 or fewer significant nonfractional digits.

Conversions between floating-point integers and integer formats (binary or decimal with no fractional digits) is exact, except when an exception is signaled.

An *invalid floating-point conversion* (hex 0C0C) exception is signaled when an attempt is made to convert from floating-point to binary or decimal and the result would represent infinity or NaN, or nonzero digits would be truncated from the left end of the resultant value.

For the optional round form of the instruction, a floating-point receiver operand is invalid.

For a fixed-point operation, if significant digits are truncated from the left end of the source value, a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception is signaled. When the receiver is binary, this *size* (hex 0C0A) exception may be suppressed by using the *suppress binary size exception program attribute* on the Create Program (CRTPG) instruction.

For a floating-point receiver, if the exponent of the resultant value is too large or too small to be represented in the receiver field, the *floating-point overflow* (hex 0C06) and *floating-point underflow* (hex 0C07) exceptions are signaled, respectively.

### Resultant Conditions

- Positive-The algebraic value of the numeric scalar receiver operand is positive.
- Negative-The algebraic value of the numeric scalar receiver operand is negative.
- Zero-The algebraic value of the numeric scalar receiver operand is zero.
- Unordered-The value assigned a floating-point receiver operand is NaN.

### Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 Range                            | X        | X |       |
|           | 04 External data object not found   | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X |       |
| 0C        | Computation                         |          |   |       |
|           | 02 Decimal data                     |          | X |       |
|           | 06 Floating-point overflow          | X        |   |       |
|           | 07 Floating-point underflow         | X        |   |       |
|           | 09 Floating-point invalid operand   | X        |   | X     |
|           | 0A Size                             | X        |   |       |
|           | 0C Invalid floatin-point conversion | X        |   |       |
|           | 0A Floating-point inexact result    | X        |   |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                  |          |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state       | X        | X | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage     | X        | X | X     |



| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X     |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X     |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X     |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |       |
|           | 04 Invalid branch target               |          |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Scalar type invalid                 |          | X | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |

## Decompress Data (DCPDATA)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1                   |
|---------------|-----------------------------|
| 1051          | Decompress Data<br>template |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

### ILE access

```
DCPDATA (
    decompress_data_template : space pointer
)
```

**Description:** The instruction decompresses user data. Operand 1 identifies a template which identifies the data to be decompressed. The template also identifies the result space to receive the decompressed data.

The Decompress Data template must be aligned on a 16-byte boundary. The format is as follows:

- |                        |               |
|------------------------|---------------|
| • Reserved (binary 0)  | Char(4)       |
| • Result area length   | Bin(4)        |
| • Actual result length | Bin(4)*       |
| • Reserved (binary 0)  | Char(20)      |
| • Source space pointer | Space pointer |
| • Result space pointer | Space pointer |

**Note:** The input value associated with template entries annotated with an asterisk (\*) are ignored by the instruction; these fields are updated by the instruction to return information about instruction execution.

The data at the location specified by the **source space pointer** is decompressed and stored at the location specified by the **result space pointer**. The **actual result length** is set to the number of bytes in the decompressed result. The Source data is not modified.

The **result area length** field value must be greater than zero. The length of the source data is not supplied in the template because this length is contained within the compressed data.

If the decompressed result data will not fit in the result area (as specified by the *result area length*), the decompression is stopped and only as many decompressed bytes as will fit in the result area are stored. The *actual result length* is always set to the full length of the result, which may be larger than the *result area length*.

The compressed data (previously compressed with CPRDATA) contains a **signature** which is checked by DCPDATA. The *signature* indicates which compression algorithm was used to compress the data. If the *signature* is invalid, an *invalid compressed data* (hex 0C14) exception is signaled. It is possible that the *signature* appears valid even though the compressed data has been corrupted. In almost all cases, the DCPDATA instruction will signal the *invalid compressed data* (hex 0C14) exception. Data corruption will not be detected only in the case when the decompression algorithm applied to the corrupted data produces the correct number of decompressed bytes.

It is not possible to corrupt the compressed data in such a way that the DCPDATA instruction would fail (that is, function check) or fail to terminate (that is, loop).

**Authorization Required**

- None

**Lock Enforcement**

- None

**Exceptions**

| Exception |  | Operands |       |
|-----------|--|----------|-------|
|           |  | 1        | Other |
| 06        | Addressing                             |          |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation          | X        | X     |
|           | 02 boundary alignment                  | X        |       |
|           | 03 range                               | X        |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid    | X        |       |
| 08        | Argument/Parameter                     |          |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation       | X        |       |
| 0C        | Computation                            |          |       |
|           | 14 invalid compressed data             |          | X     |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |       |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        | X        | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X     |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X     |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X     |
|           | 03 pointer addressing invalid object   | X        | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          | X        | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                 |          |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid              | X        |       |

**Exception****44****Domain****01 object domain error****Operands****1      Other****X**

**Divide (DIV)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br>DIV<br>104F | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Quotient | Operand 2<br>Dividend | Operand 3<br>Divisor | Operand [4-7]     |
|------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| DIVR<br>124F                 |                   | Quotient              | Dividend              | Divisor              |                   |
| DIVI<br>184F                 | Indicator options | Quotient              | Dividend              | Divisor              | Indicator targets |
| DIVIR<br>1A4F                | Indicator options | Quotient              | Dividend              | Divisor              | Indicator targets |
| DIVB<br>1C4F                 | Branch options    | Quotient              | Dividend              | Divisor              | Branch targets    |
| DIVBR<br>1E4F                | Branch options    | Quotient              | Dividend              | Divisor              | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar.

*Operand 3:* Numeric scalar.

*Operand 4-7:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Short forms**

| Op Code (Hex)<br>DIVS<br>114F | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Quotient/Dividend | Operand 2<br>Divisor | Operand [3-6]     |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| DIVSR<br>134F                 |                   | Quotient/Dividend              | Divisor              |                   |
| DIVIS<br>194F                 | Indicator options | Quotient/Dividend              | Divisor              | Indicator targets |
| DIVISR<br>1B4F                | Indicator options | Quotient/Dividend              | Divisor              | Indicator targets |
| DIVBS<br>1D4F                 | Branch options    | Quotient/Dividend              | Divisor              | Branch targets    |
| DIVBSR<br>1F4F                | Branch options    | Quotient/Dividend              | Divisor              | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar.

*Operand 3-6:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** The Quotient is the result of dividing the Dividend by the Divisor.

Operands can have floating-point, packed or zoned decimal, signed or unsigned binary type.

Source operands are the Dividend and Divisor. The receiver operand is the Quotient.

If operands are not of the same type, source operands are converted according to the following rules:

1. If any one of the operands has floating point type, source operands are converted to floating point type.
2. Otherwise, if any one of the operands has zoned or packed decimal type, source operands are converted to packed decimal.
3. Otherwise, the binary operands are converted to a like type. Note: unsigned binary(2) scalars are logically treated as signed binary(4) scalars.

Source operands are divided according to their type. Floating point operands are divided using floating point division. Packed decimal operands are divided using packed decimal division. Unsigned binary division is used with unsigned source operands. Signed binary operands are divided using two's complement binary division.

Better performance can be obtained if all operands have the same type. Signed and unsigned binary division execute faster than either packed decimal or floating point division.

Decimal operands used in floating-point operations cannot contain more than 15 total digit positions.

If the divisor has a numeric value of zero, a *zero divide* (hex 0C0B) or *floating-point zero divide* (hex 0C0E) exception is signaled respectively for fixed-point versus floating-point operations. If the dividend has a value of zero, the result of the division is a zero quotient value.

If the divisor has a numeric value of 0, a *zero divide* (hex 0C0B) exception is signaled. If the dividend has a value of 0, the result of the division is a zero value quotient.

For a decimal operation, the precision of the result of the divide operation is determined by the number of fractional digit positions specified for the quotient. In other words, the divide operation will be performed so as to calculate a resultant quotient of the same precision as that specified for the quotient operand. If necessary, internal alignment of the assumed decimal point for the dividend and divisor operands is performed to ensure the correct precision for the resultant quotient value. These internal alignments are not subject to detection of the decimal point alignment exception. An internal quotient value will be calculated for any combination of decimal attributes which may be specified for the instruction's operands. However, the assignment of the result to the quotient operand is subject to detection of the *size* (hex 0C0A) exception thereby limiting the assignment to, at most, the rightmost 31 digits of the calculated result.

Floating-point division uses exponent subtraction and significand division.

If the dividend operand is shorter than the divisor operand, it is logically adjusted to the length of the divisor operand.

For fixed-point computations and for the significant division of a floating-point computation, the division operation is performed according to the rules of algebra. Unsigned binary is treated as a positive number for the algebra.

For a floating-point computation, the operation is performed as if to infinite precision.

The result of the operation is copied into the quotient operand. If this operand is not the same type as that used in performing the operation, the resultant value is converted to its type. If necessary, the resultant value is adjusted to the length of the quotient operand, aligned at the assumed decimal point of the quotient operand, or both before being copied to it. If significant digits are truncated on the left end of the resultant value, a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception is signaled.

If a decimal to binary conversion causes a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception to be signaled, the binary value contains the correct truncated result only if the decimal value contains 15 or fewer significant nonfractional digits.

For the optional round form of the instruction, specification of a floating-point receiver operand is invalid.

For fixed-point operations in programs that request to be notified of *size* (hex 0C0A) exceptions, if nonzero digits are truncated from the left end of the resultant value, a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception is signaled.

For floating-point operations that involve a fixed-point receiver field, if nonzero digits would be truncated from the left end of the resultant value, an *invalid floating-point conversion* (hex 0C0C) exception is signaled.

For a floating-point quotient operand, if the exponent of the resultant value is either too large or too small to be represented in the quotient field, the *floating-point overflow* (hex 0C06) and *floating-point underflow* (hex 0C07) exceptions are signaled, respectively.

### Resultant Conditions

- Positive-The algebraic value of the numeric scalar quotient is positive.
- Negative-The algebraic value of the numeric scalar quotient is negative.
- Zero-The algebraic value of the numeric scalar quotient is or zero.
- Unordered-The value assigned a floating-point quotient operand is NaN.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X |       |
| 0C Computation                      |          |   |   |       |
| 02 Decimal data                     |          | X | X |       |
| 06 Floating-point overflow          | X        |   |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|           | 07 Floating-point underlow             | X        |   |   |       |
|           | 09 Floating-point invalid operand      |          | X | X | X     |
|           | 0A Size                                | X        |   |   |       |
|           | 0B Zero divide                         |          | X |   |       |
|           | 0C Invalid floatin-point conversion    | X        |   |   |       |
|           | 0D Floating-point inexact result       | X        |   |   |       |
|           | 0E Floating-point divide by zero       |          |   | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          | X        | X | X | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 Invalid branch target               |          |   |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |



**Divide with Remainder (DIVREM)**

| Op Code<br>(Hex)<br><b>DIVREM</b><br>1074 | Extender             | Operand 1<br>Quotient | Operand 2<br>Dividend | Operand 3<br>Divisor | Operand 4<br>Remainder | Operand [5-7]        |
|---|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>DIVREMR</b><br>1274                    |                      | Quotient              | Dividend              | Divisor              | Remainder              |                      |
| <b>DIVREMI</b><br>1874                    | Indicator<br>options | Quotient              | Dividend              | Divisor              | Remainder              | Indicator<br>targets |
| <b>DIVREMIR</b><br>1A74                   | Indicator<br>options | Quotient              | Dividend              | Divisor              | Remainder              | Indicator<br>targets |
| <b>DIVREMB</b><br>1C74                    | Branch<br>options    | Quotient              | Dividend              | Divisor              | Remainder              | Branch<br>targets    |
| <b>DIVREMBR</b><br>1E74                   | Branch<br>options    | Quotient              | Dividend              | Divisor              | Remainder              | Branch<br>targets    |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar.

*Operand 3:* Numeric scalar.

*Operand 4:* Numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 5-7:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

| Op Code (Hex)<br><b>DIVREMS</b><br>1174 | Extender             | Operand 1<br>Quotient/Dividend | Operand 2<br>Divisor | Operand 3<br>Remainder | Operand [4-6]     |
|---|----------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>DIVREMSR</b><br>1374                 |                      | Quotient/Dividend              | Divisor              | Remainder              |                   |
| <b>DIVREMIS</b><br>1974                 | Indicator<br>options | Quotient/Dividend              | Divisor              | Remainder              | Indicator targets |
| <b>DIVREMISR</b><br>1B74                | Indicator<br>options | Quotient/Dividend              | Divisor              | Remainder              | Indicator targets |
| <b>DIVREMB S</b><br>1D74                | Branch options       | Quotient/Dividend              | Divisor              | Remainder              | Branch targets    |
| <b>DIVREMBSR</b><br>1F74                | Branch options       | Quotient/Dividend              | Divisor              | Remainder              | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar.

*Operand 3:* Numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 4-6:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** The Quotient is the result of dividing the Dividend by the Divisor. The Remainder is the Dividend minus the product of the Divisor and Quotient.

Operands can have packed or zoned decimal, signed or unsigned binary type.

Source operands are the Dividend and Divisor. The receiver operands are the Quotient and Remainder.

If operands are not of the same type, source operands are converted according to the following rules:

1. If any one of the operands has zoned or packed decimal type, source operands are converted to packed decimal.
2. Otherwise, the binary operands are converted to a like type. Note: unsigned binary(2) scalars are logically treated as signed binary(4) scalars.

Source operands are divided according to their type. Packed decimal operands are divided using packed decimal division. Unsigned binary division is used with unsigned source operands. Signed binary operands are divided using two's complement binary division.

Better performance can be obtained if all operands have the same type. Signed and unsigned binary division execute faster than packed decimal division.

Floating-point is not supported for this instruction.

If the divisor operand has a numeric value of 0, a *zero divide* (hex 0C0B) exception is signaled. If the dividend operand has a value of 0, the result of the division is a zero value quotient and remainder.

For a decimal operation, the precision of the result of the divide operation is determined by the number of fractional digit positions specified for the quotient. In other words, the divide operation will be performed so as to calculate a resultant quotient of the same precision as that specified for the quotient operand. If necessary, internal alignment of the assumed decimal point for the dividend and divisor operands is performed to ensure the correct precision for the resultant quotient value. These internal alignments are not subject to detection of the decimal point alignment exception. An internal quotient value will be calculated for any combination of decimal attributes which may be specified for the instruction's operands. However, the assignment of the result to the quotient operand is subject to detection of the size exception thereby limiting the assignment to, at most, the rightmost 31 digits of the calculated result.

If the dividend operand is shorter than the divisor operand, it is logically adjusted to the length of the divisor operand.

The division operation is performed according to the rules of algebra. Unsigned binary is treated as a positive number for the algebra. The quotient result of the operation is copied into the quotient operand. If this operand is not the same type as that used in performing the operation, the resultant value is converted to its type. If necessary, the resultant value is adjusted to the length of the quotient operand, aligned at the assumed decimal point of the quotient operand, or both before being copied to

it. If significant digits are truncated on the left end of the resultant value, a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception is signaled.

After the quotient numeric value has been determined, the numeric value of the remainder operand is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Remainder} = \text{Dividend} - (\text{Quotient} * \text{Divisor})$$

If the optional round form of this instruction is being used, the rounding applies to the quotient but not the remainder. The quotient value used to calculate the remainder is the resultant value of the division. The resultant value of the calculation is copied into the remainder operand. The sign of the remainder is the same as that of the dividend operand unless the remainder has a value of 0, in which case its sign is positive. If the remainder operand is not the same type as that used in performing the operation, the resultant value is converted to its type. If necessary, the resultant value is adjusted to the length of the remainder operand, aligned at the assumed decimal point of the remainder operand, or both before being copied to it. If significant digits are truncated off the left end of the resultant value, a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception is signaled.

If a decimal to binary conversion causes a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception to be signaled (in programs that request size exceptions to be signaled), the binary value contains the correct truncated result only if the decimal value contains 15 or fewer significant nonfractional digits.

**Resultant Conditions:** The algebraic value of the numeric scalar quotient is

- positive
- negative
- zero

## Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 0C Computation                      |          |   |   |   |       |
| 02 Decimal data                     |          | X | X |   |       |
| 0A Size                             | X        |   |   | X |       |
| 0B Zero divide                      |          |   | X |   |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |   |   |       |
| 04 System object damage state       | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 44 Partial system object damage     | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception      |          |   |   |   |       |
| 03 Machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                  |          |   |   |   |       |

| Exception                              | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 03 Function check                      |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22 Object access                       |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification               |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 2C Program execution                   |          |   |   |   |       |
| 04 Invalid branch target               |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 2E Resource control limit              |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 36 Space management                    |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   |   | X     |

**Edit (EDIT)**

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 10E3          | Receiver  | Source    | Edit Mask |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar or data-pointer-defined character scalar.

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar or data-pointer-defined numeric scalar.

*Operand 3:* Character variable scalar or data-pointer-defined character scalar.

**ILE access**

```
LBEDIT (
  var receiver      : aggregate;
  var receiver_length : unsigned binary;
  var source        : signed binary; OR
                   : unsigned binary; OR
                   : packed decimal;
  var source_attributes : aggregate;
  var mask            : aggregate;
  var mask_length     : unsigned binary
)
```

OR

```
EDITPD (
  var receiver      : aggregate;
  receiver_length : unsigned binary;
  var source        : packed decimal;
  source_length    : unsigned binary;
  var mask          : aggregate;
  mask_length      : unsigned binary
)
```

**Description:** The value of a numeric scalar is transformed from its internal form to character form suitable for display at a source/sink device. The following general editing functions can be performed during transforming of the source operand to the receiver operand:

- Unconditional insertion of a source value digit with a zone as a function of the source value's algebraic sign
- Unconditional insertion of a mask operand character string
- Conditional insertion of one of two possible mask operand character strings as a function of the source value's algebraic sign
- Conditional insertion of a source value digit or a mask operand replacement character as a function of source value leading zero suppression
- Conditional insertion of either a mask operand character string or a series of replacement characters as a function of source value leading zero suppression
- Conditional floating insertion of one of two possible mask operand character strings as a function of both the algebraic sign of the source value and leading zero suppression

The operation is performed by transforming the source (operand 2) under control of the edit mask (operand 3) and placing the result in the receiver (operand 1).

The mask operand (operand 3) is limited to no more than 256 bytes.

**Mask Syntax:** The source field is converted to packed decimal format. The edit mask contains both control character and data character strings. Both the edit mask and the source fields are processed left to right, and the edited result is placed in the result field from left to right. If the number of digits in the source field is even, the four high-order bits of the source field are ignored and not checked for validity. All other source digits as well as the sign are checked for validity, and a *decimal data* (hex 0C02) exception is signaled when one is invalid. Overlapping of any of these fields gives unpredictable results.

Nine fixed value control characters can be in the edit mask, hex AA through hex AD and hex AF through hex B3. Four of these control characters specify strings of characters to be inserted into the result field under certain conditions; and the other five indicate that a digit from the source field should be checked and the appropriate action taken.

One variable value control character can be in the edit mask. This control character indicates the end of a string of characters. The value of the end-of-string character can vary with each execution of the instruction and is determined by the value of the first character in the edit mask. If the first character of the edit mask is a value less than hex 40, then that value is used as the end-of-string character. If the first character of the edit mask is a value equal to or greater than hex 40, then hex AE is used as the end-of-string character.

A significance indicator is set to the off state at the start of the execution of this instruction. It remains in this state until a nonzero source digit is encountered in the source field or until one of the four unconditional digits (hex AA through hex AD) or an unconditional string (hex B3) is encountered in the edit mask.

When significance is detected, the selected floating string is overlaid into the result field immediately before (to the left of) the first significant result character.

When the significance indicator is set to the on state, the first significant result character has been reached. The state of the significance indicator determines whether the fill character or a digit from the source field is to be inserted into the result field for conditional digits and characters in conditional strings specified in the edit mask field. The fill character is a hex 40 until it is replaced by the first character following the floating string specification control character (hex B1).

When the significance indicator is in the off state:

- A conditional digit control character in the edit mask causes the fill character to be moved to the result field.
- A character in a conditional string in the edit mask causes the fill character to be moved to the result field.

When the significance indicator is in the on state:

- A conditional digit control character in the edit mask causes a source digit to be moved to the result field.
- A character in a conditional string in the edit mask is moved to the result field.

The following control characters are found in the edit mask field.

**End-of-String Character:** One of these control characters (a value less than hex 40 or hex AE) indicates the end of a character string and must be present even if the string is null.

**Static Field Character:**

Hex AF This control character indicates the start of a static field. A static field is used to indicate that one of two mask character strings immediately following this character is to be inserted into the result field, depending upon the algebraic sign of the source field. If the sign is positive, the first string is to be inserted into the result field; if the sign is negative, the second string is to be inserted.

Static field format:

<Hex AF> <positive string>...<less than hex 40> <negative string>...<hex AE>

OR

<Hex AF> <positive string>...<hex AE> <negative string>...<hex AE>

### ***Floating String Specification Field Character:***

Hex B1 This control character indicates the start of a floating string specification field. The first character of the field is used as the fill character; following the fill character are two strings delimited by the end-of-string control character. If the algebraic sign of the source field is positive, the first string is to be overlaid into the result field; if the sign is negative, the second string is to be overlaid.

The string selected to be overlaid into the result field, called a floating string, appears immediately to the left of the first significant result character. If significance is never set, neither string is placed in the result field.

Conditional source digit positions (hex B2 control characters) must be provided in the edit mask immediately following the hex B1 field to accommodate the longer of the two floating strings; otherwise, a length conformance exception is signaled. For each of these B2 strings, the fill character is inserted into the result field, and source digits are not consumed. This ensures that the floating string never overlays bytes preceding the receiver operand.

Floating string specification field format:

<Hex B1> <fill character> <positive string>... <end-of-string character> <negative string>...<end-of-string character>

followed by

<Hex B2>...

### ***Conditional String Character:***

Hex B0 This control character indicates the start of a conditional string, which consists of any characters delimited by the end-of-string control character. Depending on the state of the significance indicator, this string or fill characters replacing it is inserted into the result field. If the significance indicator is off, a fill character for every character in the conditional string is placed in the result field. If the indicator is on, the characters in the conditional string are placed in the result field.

Conditional string format:

<Hex B0> <conditional string>...<end-of-string character>

### ***Unconditional String Character:***

Hex B3 This control character turns on the significance indicator and indicates the start of an unconditional string that consists of any characters delimited by the end-of-string control character. This string is unconditionally inserted into the result field regardless of the state of the significance indicator. If the indicator is off when a B3 control character is encountered, the appropriate floating string is overlaid into the result field before (to the left of) the B3 unconditional string (or to the left of where the unconditional string would have been if it were not null).

Unconditional string format:

<Hex B3> <unconditional string>...<end-of-string character>

### **Control Characters That Correspond to Digits in the Source Field:**

**Hex B2** This control character specifies that either the corresponding source field digit or the floating string (hex B1) fill character is inserted into the result field, depending on the state of the significance indicator. If the significance indicator is off, the fill character is placed in the result field; if the indicator is on, the source digit is placed. When a source digit is moved to the result field, the zone supplied is hex F. When significance (that is, a nonzero source digit) is detected, the floating string is overlaid to the left of the first significant character.

Control characters hex AA, hex AB, hex AC, and hex AD turn on the significance indicator. If the indicator is off when one of these control characters is encountered, the appropriate floating string is overlaid into the result field before (to the left of) the result digit.

**Hex AA** This control character specifies that the corresponding source field digit is unconditionally placed in the 4 low-order bits of the result field with the zone set to a hex F.

**Hex AB** This control character specifies that the corresponding source field digit is unconditionally placed in the result field. If the sign of the source field is positive, the zoned portion of the digit is set to hex F (the preferred positive sign); if the sign is negative, the zone portion is set to hex D (the preferred negative sign).

**Hex AC** This control character specifies that the corresponding source field digit is unconditionally placed in the result field. If the algebraic sign of the source field is positive, the zone portion of the result is set to hex F (the preferred positive sign); otherwise, the source sign field is moved to the result zone field.

**Hex AD** This control character specifies that the corresponding source field digit is unconditionally placed in the result field. If the algebraic sign of the source field is negative, the zone is set to hex D (the preferred negative sign); otherwise, the source field sign is moved to the zone position of the result byte.

The following table provides an overview of the results obtained with the valid edit conditions and sequences.

*Table 2-1 (Page 1 of 3). Valid Edit Conditions and Results*

| <b>Mask Character</b> | <b>Previous Significance Indicator</b> | <b>Source Digit</b> | <b>Source Sign</b> | <b>Result Character(s)</b>                             | <b>Resulting Significance Indicator</b> |
|-----------------------|--|---------------------|--------------------|--|---|
| AF                    | Off/On                                 | Any                 | Positive           | Positive string inserted                               | No Change                               |
|                       | Off/On                                 | Any                 | Negative           | Negative string inserted                               | No Change                               |
| AA                    | Off                                    | 0-9                 | Positive           | Positive floating string overlaid; hex F, source digit | On                                      |
|                       | Off                                    | 0-9                 | Negative           | Negative floating string overlaid; hex F, source digit | On                                      |
|                       | On                                     | 0-9                 | Any                | Hex F, source digit                                    | On                                      |
| AB                    | Off                                    | 0-9                 | Positive           | Positive floating string overlaid; hex F, source digit | On                                      |
|                       | Off                                    | 0-9                 | Negative           | Negative floating string overlaid; hex D, source digit | On                                      |



Table 2-1 (Page 2 of 3). Valid Edit Conditions and Results

| Mask Character               | Previous Significance Indicator | Source Digit | Source Sign | Result Character(s)   | Resulting Significance Indicator |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------|-------------|---|----------------------------------|
| AC                           | On                              | 0-9          | Positive    | Hex F, source digit   | On                               |
|                              | On                              | 0-9          | Negative    | Hex D, source digit   | On                               |
|                              | Off                             | 0-9          | Positive    | Positive floating string overlaid; hex F, source digit  |                                  |
|                              | Off                             | 0-9          | Negative    | Negative floating string overlaid; source sign and digit  | On                               |
|                              | On                              | 0-9          | Positive    | Hex F, source digit   | On                               |
|                              | On                              | 0-9          | Negative    | Source sign and digit   | On                               |
| AD                           | Off                             | 0-9          | Positive    | Positive floating string overlaid; source sign and digit  | On                               |
|                              | Off                             | 0-9          | Negative    | Negative floating string overlaid; hex D, source digit  | On                               |
|                              | On                              | 0-9          | Positive    | Source sign and digit   | On                               |
|                              | On                              | 0-9          | Negative    | Hex D, source digit   | On                               |
|                              | Off                             | Any          | Any         | Insert fill character for each B0 string character  | Off                              |
|                              | On                              | Any          | Any         | Insert B0 character string  | On                               |
| B1 (including necessary B2s) | Off                             | Any          | Any         | Insert the fill character for each B2 character that corresponds to a character in the longer of the two floating strings | No Change                        |
| B2 (not for a B1 field)      | Off                             | 0            | Any         | Insert fill character   | Off                              |
|                              | Off                             | 1-9          | Positive    | Overlay positive floating string and insert hex F, source digit   | On                               |
|                              | Off                             | 1-9          | Negative    | Overlay negative floating string and insert hex F, source digit   | On                               |
|                              | On                              | 0-9          | Any         | Hex F, source digit   |                                  |
| B3                           | Off                             | Any          | Positive    | Overlay positive floating string and insert B3 character string   | On                               |



The following steps are performed when the editing is done:

- Convert Source Value to Packed Decimal
  - The numeric value in the source operand is converted to a packed decimal intermediate value before the editing is done. If the source operand is binary, then the attributes of the intermediate packed field before the edit are calculated as follows:
    - Binary(2) = packed (5,0) or
    - Binary(4) = packed (10,0)
- Edit
  - The editing of the source digits and mask insertion characters into the receiver operand is done from left to right.
- Insert Floating String into Receiver Field
  - If a floating string is to be inserted into the receiver field, this is done after the other editing.

**Edit Digit Count Exception:** An *edit digit count* (hex 0C04) exception is signaled when:

- The end of the source field is reached and there are more control characters that correspond to digits in the edit mask field.
- The end of the edit mask field is reached and there are more digit positions in the source field.

**Edit Mask Syntax Exception:** An *edit mask syntax* (hex 0C05) exception is signaled when an invalid edit mask control character is encountered or when a sequence rule is violated.

**Length Conformance Exception:** A *length conformance* (hex 0C08) exception is signaled when:

- The end of the edit mask field is reached and there are more character positions in the result field.
- The end of the result field is reached and more positions remain in the edit mask field.
- The number of B2s following a B1 field cannot accommodate the longer of the two floating strings.

**Limitations:** The following are limits that apply to the functions performed by this instruction.

## Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Range                            | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 04 External data object not found   | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X |       |
| 0C        | Computation                         |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Decimal data                     |          | X |   |       |
|           | 04 Edit digit count                 |          | X |   |       |
|           | 05 Edit mask syntax                 |          |   | X |       |
|           | 08 Length conformance               | X        |   |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          | X        | X | X | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Scalar attributes invalid           |          |   | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |

**Exchange Bytes (EXCHBY)**

|                      |                  |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|------------------|
| <b>Op Code (Hex)</b> | <b>Operand 1</b> | <b>Operand 2</b> |
| 10CE                 | Source 1         | Source 2         |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar (fixed-length) or numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character variable scalar (fixed-length) or numeric variable scalar.

**Description:** The logical character string values of the two source operands are exchanged. The value of the second source operand is placed in the first source operand and the value of the first source operand is placed in the second operand.

The operands can be either character or numeric. Any numeric operands are interpreted as logical character strings. Both operands must have the same length.

**Exceptions**

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                             |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Spacing addressing violation        | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment                  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 Range                               | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                     |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation       | X        | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          | X        | X | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        | X        | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |

**Exception**

36 Space management  
01 space extension/truncation

**Operands**

1 2 Other

X

**Exclusive Or (XOR)**

| Op Code (Hex)       | Extender          | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3 | Operand [4-5]     |
|---------------------|-------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-------------------|
| <b>XOR</b><br>109B  |                   | Receiver  | Source 1  | Source 2  |                   |
| <b>XORI</b><br>189B | Indicator options | Receiver  | Source 1  | Source 2  | Indicator targets |
| <b>XORB</b><br>1C9B | Branch options    | Receiver  | Source 1  | Source 2  | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar or numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar or numeric scalar.

*Operand 3:* Character scalar or numeric scalar.

*Operand 4-5:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Short forms**

| Op Code (Hex)        | Extender          | Operand 1         | Operand 2 | Operand [3-4]     |
|----------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-----------|-------------------|
| <b>XORS</b><br>119B  |                   | Receiver/Source 1 | Source 2  |                   |
| <b>XORIS</b><br>199B | Indicator options | Receiver/Source 1 | Source 2  | Indicator targets |
| <b>XORBS</b><br>1D9B | Branch options    | Receiver/Source 1 | Source 2  | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar or numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar or numeric scalar.

*Operand 3-4:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** The Boolean EXCLUSIVE OR operation is performed on the string values in the source operands. The resulting string is placed in the receiver operand.

The operands may be character or numeric scalars. They are both interpreted as bit strings. Substringing is supported for both character and numeric operands.

The length of the operation is equal to the length of the longer of the two source operands. The shorter of the two operands is padded on the right. The operation begins with the two source operands left-adjusted and continues bit by bit until they are completed.

The bit values of the result are determined as follows:

| Source 1 Bit | Source 2 Bit | Result Bit |
|--------------|--------------|------------|
| 0            | 0            | 0          |
| 0            | 1            | 1          |
| 1            | 0            | 1          |
| 1            | 1            | 0          |

The result value is then placed (left-adjusted) in the receiver operand with truncating or padding taking place on the right.

The pad value used in this instruction is a hex 00.

Substring operand references that allow for a null substring reference (a length value of zero) may be specified for operands 1, 2, and 3. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for one source operand is that the other source operand is EXCLUSIVE ORed with an equal length string of all hex 00s. When a null substring reference is specified for both source operands, the result is all zero and the instruction's resultant condition is zero. When a null substring reference is specified for the receiver, a result is not set and the instruction's resultant condition is zero regardless of the values of the source operands.

If operands overlap but do not share all of the same bytes, results of operations performed on these operands are not predictable. If overlapped operands share all of the same bytes, the results are predictable when direct addressing is used. If indirect addressing is used (that is, based operands, parameters, strings with variable lengths, and arrays with variable subscripts), the results are not always predictable.

When the receiver operand is a numeric variable scalar, it is possible that the result produced will not be a valid value for the numeric type. This can occur due to padding with hex 00, due to truncation, or due to the resultant bit string produced by the instruction. The instruction completes normally and signals no exceptions for these conditions.

#### Resultant Conditions

- Zero-The bit value for the bits of the scalar receiver operand is either all zero or a null substring reference is specified for the receiver.
- Not zero-The bit value for the bits of the scalar receiver operand is not all zero.

#### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 range                            | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state       | X        | X | X | X     |



| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 invalid branch target               |          |   |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |

**Extended Character Scan (ECSCAN)**

| Op Code<br>(Hex)       | Extender             | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3          | Operand 4       | Operand [5-7]        |
|------------------------|----------------------|-----------|-----------|--------------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| <b>ECSCAN</b><br>10D4  |                      | Receiver  | Base      | Compare<br>operand | Mode<br>operand |                      |
| <b>ECSCANB</b><br>1CD4 | Branch<br>options    | Receiver  | Base      | Compare<br>operand | Mode<br>operand | Branch<br>targets    |
| <b>ECSCANI</b><br>18D4 | Indicator<br>options | Receiver  | Base      | Compare<br>operand | Mode<br>operand | Indicator<br>targets |

*Operand 1:* Binary variable scalar or binary array.

*Operand 2:* Character variable scalar.

*Operand 3:* Character scalar.

*Operand 4:* Character(1) scalar.

*Operand 5-7:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** This instruction scans the string value of the base operand for occurrences of the string value of the compare operand and indicates the relative locations of these occurrences in the receiver operand. The character string value of the base operand is scanned for occurrences of the character string value of the compare operand under control of the mode operand and mode control characters embedded in the base string.

The base and compare operands must both be character strings. The length of the compare operand must not be greater than that of the base string. The base and compare operand are interpreted as containing a mixture of 1-byte (simple) and 2-byte (extended) character codes. The mode, simple or extended, with which the string is to be interpreted, is controlled initially by the mode operand and thereafter by mode control characters embedded in the strings. The mode control characters are as follows:

- Hex 0E = Shift out of simple character mode to extended mode.
- Hex 0F = Shift into simple character mode from extended mode. This is recognized only if it occurs in the first byte position of an extended character code.

The format of the mode operand is as follows:

- Mode operand
 

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Operand 2 initial mode indicator</li> <li>0 = Operand starts in simple character mode.</li> <li>1 = Operand starts in extended character mode.</li> <li>— Operand 3 initial mode indicator</li> <li>0 = Operand starts in simple character mode.</li> <li>1 = Operand starts in extended character mode.</li> <li>— Reserved (binary 0)</li> </ul> | Char(1)<br>Bit 0<br><br><br>Bit 1<br><br><br>Bits 2-7 |
|---|---|

The operation begins at the left end of the base string and continues character by character, left to right. When the base string is interpreted in *simple character mode*, the operation moves through the base string 1 byte at a time. When the base string is interpreted in *extended character mode*, the operation moves through the base string 2 bytes at a time.

The compare operand value is the entire byte string specified for the compare operand. The **mode operand** determines the initial mode of the compare operand. The first character of the compare operand value is assumed to be a valid character for the initial mode of the compare operand and not a mode control character. Mode control characters in the compare operand value participate in comparisons performed during the scan function except that a mode control character as the first character of the compare operand causes unpredictable results.

The base string is scanned until the mode of the characters being processed is the same as the initial mode of the compare operand value. The operation continues comparing the characters of the base string with those of the compare operand value. The starting character of the characters being compared in the base string is always a valid character for the initial mode of the compare operand value. A mode control character encountered in the base string that changed the base string mode to match the initial mode of the compare operand value does not participate in the comparison. The length of the comparison is equal to the length of the compare operand value and the comparison is performed the same as performed by the Compare Bytes Left Adjusted instruction.

If a set of bytes that matches the compare operand value is found, the binary value for the relative location of the leftmost base string character of the set of bytes is placed in the receiver operand.

If the receiver operand is a scalar, only the first occurrence of the compare operand is noted. If the receiver operand is an array, as many occurrences as there are elements in the array are noted.

If a mode change is encountered in the base string, the base string is again scanned until the mode of the characters being processed is the same as the initial mode of the compare operand value, and then the comparisons are resumed.

The operation continues until no more occurrences of the compare operand value can be noted in the receiver operand or until the number of bytes remaining to be scanned in the base string is less than the length of the compare operand value. When the second condition occurs, the receiver value is set to zero. If the receiver operand is an array, all its remaining elements are also set to zero.

If the *escape code encountered* result condition is specified (through a branch or indicator option), verifications are performed on the base string as it is scanned. Each byte of the base string is checked for a value less than hex 40. When a value less than hex 40 is encountered, it is then determined if it is a valid mode control character.

If a byte value of less than hex 40 is not a valid mode control character, it is considered to be an escape code. The binary value for the relative location of the character (simple or extended) being interrogated is placed in the receiver operand, and the appropriate action (indicator or branch) is performed according to the specification of the escape code encountered result condition. If the receiver operand is an array, the next array element after any elements set with locations or prior occurrences of the compare operand, is set with the location of the character containing the escape code and all the remaining array elements are set to zero.

If the *escape encountered* result condition is not specified, verifications of the character codes in the base string are not performed.

**Resultant Conditions**

- **Positive**-The numeric value(s) of the receiver operand is positive.
- **Zero**-The numeric value(s) of the receiver operand is zero. In the case where the receiver operand is an array, the resultant condition is zero if all elements are zero.
- **Escape code encountered**-An escape character code value was encountered during the scanning of the base string.

**Exceptions**

| Exception                              | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 06 Addressing                          |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation          | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment violation        | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 range                               | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                  |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 0C Computation                         |          |   |   |   |       |
| 08 length conformance                  |          | X | X | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                  |          |   |   |   |       |
| 04 System object damage state          |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage        |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception         |          |   |   |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                     |          |   |   |   |       |
| 02 machine check                       |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 03 function check                      |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22 Object access                       |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 object not found                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 object suspended                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification               |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 2C Program execution                   |          |   |   |   |       |
| 04 invalid branch target               |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 2E Resource control limit              |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 32 Scalar specification                |          |   |   |   |       |

| Exception                     | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|                               | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 01 scalar type invalid        | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 scalar value invalid       |          |   |   | X |       |
| 36 Space management           |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 space extension/truncation |          |   |   |   | X     |

## Extract Exponent (EXTREXP)

| Op Code (Hex)<br>EXTREXP<br>1072 | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Receiver | Operand 2<br>Source | Operand [3-6]     |
|----------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| EXTREXPB<br>1C72                 | Branch options    | Receiver              | Source              | Branch targets    |
| EXTREXPI<br>1872                 | Indicator options | Receiver              | Source              | Indicator targets |

*Operand 1:* Binary variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Floating-point scalar.

*Operand 3-6:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** This instruction extracts the exponent portion of a floating-point scalar source operand and places it into the receiver operand as a binary variable scalar.

The operands must be the numeric types indicated because no conversions are performed.

The source floating-point field is interrogated to determine the binary floating-point value represented and either a signed exponent, for number values, or a special identifier, for infinity and NaN values, is placed in the binary variable scalar receiver operand.

The value to be assigned to the receiver, is dependent upon the floating-point value represented in the source operand as described below. It is a signed binary integer value and a numeric assignment of the value is made to the receiver.

When the source represents a normalized number, the biased exponent contained in the exponent field of the source is converted to the corresponding signed exponent by subtracting the bias of 127 for short or 1023 for long to determine the value to be returned. The resulting value ranges from -126 to +127 for short format, -1022 to +1023 for long format. When the receiver is unsigned binary, a negative exponent will result in a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception unless size exceptions are suppressed by using the *suppress binary size exception* program attribute on the Create Program (CRTPG) instruction.

When the source represents a denormalized number, the value to be returned is determined by adjusting the signed exponent of the denormalized number. The signed exponent of a denormalized number is a fixed value of -126 for the short format and -1022 for the long format. It is adjusted to the value the signed exponent would be if the source value was adjusted to a normalized number. The resulting value ranges from -127 to -149 for short format, -1023 to -1074 for long format.

When the source represents a value of zero, the value returned is zero.

When the source represents infinity, the value returned is +32767.

When the source represents a not-a-number, the value returned is -32768 for a signed binary receiver. For an unsigned binary(2) a value of 32768 is returned, and for a unsigned binary(4) a value of 4294934528 is returned.

**Resultant Conditions**

- Normalized-The source operand value represents a normalized binary floating-point number. The signed exponent is stored in the receiver.
- Denormalized-The source operand value represents a denormalized binary floating-point number. An adjusted signed exponent is stored in the receiver.
- Infinity-The source operand value represents infinity. The receiver is set with a value of +32767.
- NaN-The source operand value represents a not-a-number. The receiver is set with a value of -32768 when signed binary, with a value of 32768 when unsigned binary(2), and with a value of 4294934528 when unsigned binary(4).

**Exceptions**

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                             |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation          | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment violation        | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 range                               | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                     |          |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation       | X        | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          |          |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        |          |   | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |       |
|           | 04 invalid branch target               |          |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |       |

| Exception |                               | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|           |                               | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid        | X        | X |       |
| 36        | Space management              |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation |          |   | X     |



**Extract Magnitude (EXTRMAG)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br>EXTRMAG<br>1052 | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Receiver | Operand 2<br>Source | Operand [3-6]     |
|----------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| EXTRMAGI<br>1852                 | Indicator options | Receiver              | Source              | Indicator targets |
| EXTRMAGB<br>1C52                 | Branch options    | Receiver              | Source              | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar.

*Operand 3-6:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Short forms**

| Op Code (Hex)<br>EXTRMAGS<br>1152 | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Receiver/Source | Operand [2-5]     |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------------|-------------------|
| EXTRMAGIS<br>1952                 | Indicator options | Receiver/Source              | Indicator targets |
| EXTRMAGBS<br>1D52                 | Branch options    | Receiver/Source              | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2-5:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** The numeric value of the source operand is converted to its absolute value and placed in the numeric variable scalar receiver operand.

The absolute value is formed from the source operand as follows:

- Signed binary
  - Extract the numeric value and form twos complement if the source operand is negative.
- Unsigned signed binary
  - Extract the numeric value.
- Packed/Zoned
  - Extract the numeric value and force the source operand's sign to positive.

- Floating-point
  - Extract the numeric value and force the significand sign to positive.

The result of the operation is copied into the receiver operand according to the rules of the Copy Numeric Value instruction. If this operand is not the same type as that used in performing the operation, the resultant value is converted to its type. If necessary, the resultant value is adjusted to the length of the receiver operand, or aligned at the assumed decimal point of the receiver operand, or both before being copied to it. If significant digits are truncated on the left end of the resultant value, a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception is signaled. An attempt to extract the magnitude of a maximum negative binary value to a binary scalar of the same size also results in a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception.

When the source floating-point operand represents not-a-number, the sign field of the source is not forced to positive and this value is not altered in the receiver.

If a decimal to binary conversion causes a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception to be signaled, the binary value contains the correct truncated result only if the decimal value contains 15 or fewer significant nonfractional digits.

For a fixed-point operation, if significant digits are truncated from the left end of the resultant value, a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception is signaled. An attempt to extract the absolute value of a maximum negative binary value into a binary scalar of the same size also results in a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception.

For floating-point operations that involve a fixed-point receiver field, if nonzero digits would be truncated from the left end of the resultant value, an *invalid floating-point conversion* (0C0C) exception is signaled.

For a floating-point receiver operand, if the exponent of the resultant value is either too large or too small to be represented in the receiver field, the *floating-point overflow* (hex 0C06) or the *floating-point underflow* (hex 0C07) exception is signaled.

### Resultant Conditions

- Positive-The algebraic value of the receiver operand is positive.
- Zero-The algebraic value of the receiver operand is zero.
- Unordered-The value assigned a floating-point receiver operand is NaN.

## Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X |       |
| 03 range                            | X        | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X |       |
| 0C Computation                      |          |   |       |
| 02 decimal data                     |          | X |       |
| 06 floating-point overflow          | X        |   |       |
| 07 floating-point underflow         | X        |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 09 floating-point invalid operand      |          | X |       |
|           | 0A size                                | X        |   |       |
|           | 0C invalid floating point conversion   | X        |   |       |
|           | 0D floating-point inexact result       | X        |   |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage                | X        | X | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        | X        | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |       |
|           | 04 invalid branch target               |          |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |

**Multiply (MULT)**

| Op Code (Hex)         | Extender          | Operand 1 | Operand 2    | Operand 3  | Operand [4-7]     |
|-----------------------|-------------------|-----------|--------------|------------|-------------------|
| <b>MULT</b><br>104B   |                   | Product   | Multiplicand | Multiplier |                   |
| <b>MULTR</b><br>124B  |                   | Product   | Multiplicand | Multiplier |                   |
| <b>MULTI</b><br>184B  | Indicator options | Product   | Multiplicand | Multiplier | Indicator targets |
| <b>MULTIR</b><br>1A4B | Indicator options | Product   | Multiplicand | Multiplier | Indicator targets |
| <b>MULTB</b><br>1C4B  | Branch options    | Product   | Multiplicand | Multiplier | Branch targets    |
| <b>MULTBR</b><br>1E4B | Branch options    | Product   | Multiplicand | Multiplier | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar.

*Operand 3:* Numeric scalar.

*Operand 4-7:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Short forms**

| Op Code (Hex)          | Extender          | Operand 1            | Operand 2  | Operand [3-6]     |
|------------------------|-------------------|----------------------|------------|-------------------|
| <b>MULTS</b><br>104B   |                   | Product/Multiplicand | Multiplier |                   |
| <b>MULTSR</b><br>134B  |                   | Product/Multiplicand | Multiplier |                   |
| <b>MULTIS</b><br>194B  | Indicator options | Product/Multiplicand | Multiplier | Indicator targets |
| <b>MULTISR</b><br>1B4B | Indicator options | Product/Multiplicand | Multiplier | Indicator targets |
| <b>MULTBS</b><br>1D4B  | Branch options    | Product/Multiplicand | Multiplier | Branch targets    |
| <b>MULTBSR</b><br>1F4B | Branch options    | Product/Multiplicand | Multiplier | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar.

*Operand 3-6:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** The Product is the result of multiplying the Multiplicand and the Multiplier.

Operands can have floating-point, packed or zoned decimal, signed or unsigned binary type.

Source operands are the Multiplicand and Multiplier. The receiver operand is the Product.

If operands are not of the same type, source operands are converted according to the following rules:

1. If any one of the operands has floating point type, source operands are converted to floating point type.
2. Otherwise, if any one of the operands has zoned or packed decimal type, source operands are converted to packed decimal.
3. Otherwise, the binary operands are converted to a like type. Note: unsigned binary(2) scalars are logically treated as signed binary(4) scalars.

Source operands are multiplied according to their type. Floating point operands are multiplied using floating point multiplication. Packed decimal operands are multiplied using packed decimal multiplication. Unsigned binary multiplication is used with unsigned source operands. Signed binary operands are multiplied using two's complement binary multiplication.

Better performance can be obtained if all operands have the same type. Signed and unsigned binary multiplication execute faster than either packed decimal or floating point multiplication.

Decimal operands used in floating-point operations cannot contain more than 15 total digit positions.

If the multiplicand operand or the multiplier operand has a value of 0, the result of the multiplication is a zero product.

For a decimal operation, no alignment of the assumed decimal point is performed for the multiplier and multiplicand operands.

The operation occurs using the specified lengths of the multiplicand and multiplier operands with no logical zero padding on the left necessary.

Floating-point multiplication uses exponent addition and significand multiplication.

For nonfloating-point computations and for significand multiplication for floating-point operations, the multiplication operation is performed according to the rules of algebra. Unsigned binary operands are treated as positive numbers for the algebra.

The result of the operation is copied into the product operand. If this operand is not the same type as that used in performing the operation, the resultant value is converted to its type. If necessary, the resultant value is adjusted to the length of the product operand, aligned at the assumed decimal point of the product operand, or both before being copied to it.

For the optional round form of the instruction, specification of a floating-point receiver operand is invalid.

For fixed-point operations in programs that request to be notified of size exceptions, if nonzero digits are truncated from the left end of the resultant value, a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception is signaled.

For floating-point operations involving a fixed-point receiver field (if nonzero digits would be truncated from the left end of the resultant value), an *invalid floating-point conversion* (hex 0C0C) exception is signaled.

For a floating-point product operand, if the exponent of the resultant value is either too large or too small to be represented in the product field, the *floating-point overflow* (hex 0C06) or the *floating-point underflow* (hex 0C07) exception is signaled.

If operands overlap but do not share all of the same bytes, results of operations performed on these operands are not predictable. If overlapped operands share all of the same bytes, the results are predictable when direct addressing is used. If indirect addressing is used (that is, based operands, parameters, strings with variable lengths, and arrays with variable subscripts), the results are not always predictable.

If a decimal to binary conversion causes a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception to be signaled, the binary value contains the correct truncated result only if the decimal value contains 15 or fewer significant nonfractional digits.

### Resultant Conditions

- Positive-The algebraic value of the numeric scalar product is positive.
- Negative-The algebraic value of the numeric scalar product is negative.
- Zero-The algebraic value of the numeric scalar product is zero.
- Unordered-The value assigned a floating-point product operand is NaN.

### Exceptions

| Exception                            | Operands |   |          |       |
|--------------------------------------|----------|---|----------|-------|
|                                      | 1        | 2 | 3 [4, 5] | Other |
| 06 Addressing                        |          |   |          |       |
| 01 space addressing violation        | X        | X | X        |       |
| 02 boundary alignment                | X        | X | X        |       |
| 03 range                             | X        | X | X        |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid  | X        | X | X        |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                |          |   |          |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation     | X        | X | X        |       |
| 0C Computation                       |          |   |          |       |
| 02 decimal data                      |          | X | X        |       |
| 06 floating-point overflow           | X        |   |          |       |
| 07 floating-point underflow          | X        |   |          |       |
| 09 floating-point invalid operand    |          | X | X        | X     |
| 0A size                              | X        |   |          |       |
| 0C invalid floating-point conversion | X        |   |          |       |
| 0D floating-point inexact result     | X        |   |          |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                |          |   |          |       |
| 04 system object damage state        | X        | X | X        | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |          | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|----------|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 [4, 5] |       |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        | X        | X | X        | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |          |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |          | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |          |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   |          | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   |          | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |          |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X | X        |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X | X        |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X | X        |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |          | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |          |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X        |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X        |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |          |       |
|           | 04 invalid branch target               |          |   |          | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |          |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |          | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |          |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |          | X     |

**Negate (NEG)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br>NEG | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Receiver | Operand 2<br>Source | Operand [3-6]     |
|----------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1056                 |                   |                       |                     |                   |
| NEGI<br>1856         | Indicator options | Receiver              | Source              | Indicator targets |
| NEGB<br>1C56         | Branch options    | Receiver              | Source              | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar.

*Operand 3-6:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Short forms**

| Op Code (Hex)<br>NEGS | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Receiver/Source | Operand [2-5]     |
|-----------------------|-------------------|------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1156                  |                   |                              |                   |
| NEGIS<br>1956         | Indicator options | Receiver/Source              | Indicator targets |
| NEGBS<br>1D56         | Branch options    | Receiver/Source              | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2-5:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** The numeric value in the source operand is changed as if it had been multiplied by a negative one (-1). The result is placed in the receiver operand.

The sign changing of the source operand value (positive to negative and negative to positive) is performed as follows:

- Binary
  - Extract the numeric value and form the twos complement of it.
- Packed/Zoned
  - Extract the numeric value and force its sign to positive if it is negative or to negative if it is positive.
- Floating-point



- Extract the numeric value and force the significand sign to positive if it is negative or to negative if it is positive.

The result of the operation is copied into the receiver operand. If this operand is not the same type as that used in performing the operation, the resultant value is converted to its type. If necessary, the resultant value is adjusted to the length of the receiver operand, aligned at the assumed decimal point of the receiver operand, or both before being copied to it. If significant digits are truncated on the left end of the resultant value, a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception is signaled. An attempt to negate a maximum negative signed binary value to a signed binary scalar of the same size also results in a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception. When the receiver is binary the size exception may be suppressed by using the *suppress binary size exception* attribute on the Create Program (CRTPG) instruction. If a packed or zoned 0 is negated, the result is always positive 0.

When the source floating-point operand represents not-a-number, the sign field of the source is not forced to positive and this value is not altered in the receiver.

For a fixed-point operation, if significant digits are truncated from the left end of the resultant value, a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception is signaled. An attempt to negate a maximum negative binary value into a binary scalar of the same size also results in a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception.

For floating-point operations that involve a fixed-point receiver field, if nonzero digits would be truncated from the left end of the resultant value, an *invalid floating-point conversion* (hex 0C0C) exception is signaled.

For a floating-point receiver operand, if the exponent of the resultant value is either too large or too small to be represented in the receiver field, the *floating-point overflow* (hex 0C06) and the *floating-point underflow* (hex 0C07) exceptions are signaled.

If a decimal to binary conversion causes a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception to be signaled or if the size exception was suppressed, the binary value contains the correct truncated result only if the decimal value contains 15 or fewer significant nonfractional digits.

### Resultant Conditions

- Positive-The algebraic value of the receiver operand is positive.
- Negative-The algebraic value of the receiver operand is negative.
- Zero-The algebraic value of the receiver operand is zero.
- Unordered-The value assigned a floating-point receiver operand is NaN.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |       |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | Other |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X |       |
| 03 range                            | X        | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X |       |
| 0C Computation                      |          |   |       |
| 02 decimal data                     |          | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 06 floating-point overflow             | X        |   |       |
|           | 07 floating-point underflow            | X        |   |       |
|           | 09 floating-point invalid operand      |          | X | X     |
|           | 0A size                                | X        |   |       |
|           | 0C invalid floating-point conversion   | X        |   |       |
|           | 0D floating-point inexact result       | X        |   |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage                | X        | X | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        | X        | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |       |
|           | 04 invalid branch target               |          |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |

**Not (NOT)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br><b>NOT</b><br>108A | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Receiver | Operand 2<br>Source | Operand [3-4]     |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| <b>NOTI</b><br>188A                 | Indicator options | Receiver              | Source              | Indicator targets |
| <b>NOTB</b><br>1C8A                 | Branch options    | Receiver              | Source              | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar or numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character variable scalar or numeric variable

*Operand 3-4:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Short forms**

| Op Code (Hex)<br><b>NOTS</b><br>118A | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Receiver/Source | Operand [2-3]     |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>NOTIS</b><br>198A                 | Indicator options | Receiver/Source              | Indicator targets |
| <b>NOTBS</b><br>1D8A                 | Branch options    | Receiver/Source              | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar or numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2-3:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** The Boolean NOT operation is performed on the string value in the source operand. The resulting string is placed in the receiver operand.

The operands may be character or numeric scalars. They are both interpreted as bit strings. Substringing is supported for both character and numeric operands.

The length of the operation is equal to the length of the source operand.

The bit values of the result are determined as follows:

| Source Bit | Result Bit |
|------------|------------|
| 0          | 1          |
| 1          | 0          |

The result value is then placed (left-adjusted) in the receiver operand with truncating or padding taking place on the right. The pad value used in this instruction is a hex 00 byte.

Substring operand references that allow for a null substring reference (a length value of zero) may be specified for operands 1 and 2. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for the source operand is that the result is all zero and the instruction's resultant condition is zero. When a null substring reference is specified for the receiver, a result is not set and the instruction's resultant condition is zero regardless of the value of the source operand.

When the receiver operand is a numeric variable scalar, it is possible that the result produced will not be a valid value for the numeric type. This can occur due to padding with hex 00, due to truncation, or due to the resultant bit string produced by the instruction. The instruction completes normally and signals no exceptions for these conditions.

### Resultant Conditions

- Zero-The bit value for the bits of the scalar receiver operand is either all zero or a null substring reference is specified for the receiver.
- Not zero-The bit value for the bits of the scalar receiver operand is not all zero.

### Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 range                            | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                  |          |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state       | X        | X | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage     | X        | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception         |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                     |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                    |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                   |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                 | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                 | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                 | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification               |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist           | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid             | X        | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |       |
|           | 04 invalid branch target               |          |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |

**Or (OR)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br><b>OR</b><br>1097 | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Receiver | Operand 2<br>Source 1 | Operand 3<br>Source 2 | Operand [4-5]     |
|------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| <b>ORI</b><br>1897                 | Indicator options | Receiver              | Source 1              | Source 2              | Indicator targets |
| <b>ORB</b><br>1C97                 | Branch options    | Receiver              | Source 1              | Source 2              | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar or numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar or numeric scalar.

*Operand 3:* Character scalar or numeric scalar.

*Operand 4-5:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Short forms**

| Op Code (Hex)<br><b>ORS</b><br>1197 | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Receiver/Source 1 | Operand 2<br>Source 2 | Operand [3-4]     |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| <b>ORIS</b><br>1997                 | Indicator options | Receiver/Source 1              | Source 2              | Indicator targets |
| <b>ORBS</b><br>1D97                 | Branch options    | Receiver/Source 1              | Source 2              | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar or numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar or numeric scalar.

*Operand 3-4:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** The Boolean OR operation is performed on the string values in the source operands. The resulting string is placed in the receiver operand.

The operands may be character or numeric scalars. They are both interpreted as bit strings. Sub-stringing is supported for both character and numeric operands.

The length of the operation is equal to the length of the longer of the two source operands. The shorter of the two operands is logically padded on the right with hex 00. The excess bytes in the longer operand are assigned to the results.

The bit values of the result are determined as follows:

| Source 1 Bit | Source 2 Bit | Result Bit |
|--------------|--------------|------------|
| 0            | 0            | 0          |
| 0            | 1            | 1          |
| 1            | 0            | 1          |
| 1            | 1            | 1          |

The result value is then placed (left-adjusted) in the receiver operand with truncating or padding taking place on the right. The pad value used in this instruction is a hex 00.

Substring operand references that allow for a null substring reference (a length value of zero) may be specified for operands 1, 2, and 3. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for one source operand is that the other source operand is ORed with an equal length string of all hex 00s. This causes the value of the other operand to be assigned to the result. When a null substring reference is specified for both source operands, the result is all zero and the instruction's resultant condition is zero. When a null substring reference is specified for the receiver, a result is not set and the instruction's resultant condition is zero regardless of the values of the source operands.

If operands overlap but do not share all of the same bytes, results of operations performed on these operands are not predictable. If overlapped operands share all of the same bytes, the results are predictable when direct addressing is used. If indirect addressing is used (that is, based operands, parameters, strings with variable lengths, and arrays with variable subscripts), the results are not always predictable.

When the receiver operand is a numeric variable scalar, it is possible that the result produced will not be a valid value for the numeric type. This can occur due to padding with hex 00, due to truncation, or due to the resultant bit string produced by the instruction. The instruction completes normally and signals no exceptions for these conditions.

### Resultant Conditions

- Zero-The bit value for the bits of the scalar receiver operand is either all zero or a null substring reference is specified for the receiver.
- Not zero-The bit value for the bits of the scalar receiver operand is not all zero.

### Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 range                            | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state       | X        | X | X | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage     | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception         |          |   |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 invalid branch target               |          |   |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |



**Remainder (REM)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br>REM<br>1073 | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Remainder | Operand 2<br>Dividend | Operand 3<br>Divisor | Operand [4-6]     |
|------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| REMI<br>1873                 | Indicator options | Remainder              | Dividend              | Divisor              | Indicator targets |
| REMB<br>1C73                 | Branch options    | Remainder              | Dividend              | Divisor              | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar.

*Operand 3:* Numeric scalar.

*Operand 4-6:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Short forms**

| Op Code (Hex)<br>REMS<br>1173 | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Remainder/Dividend | Operand 2<br>Divisor | Operand [3-5]     |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| REMS<br>1973                  | Indicator options | Remainder/Dividend              | Divisor              | Indicator targets |
| REMSB<br>1D73                 | Branch options    | Remainder/Dividend              | Divisor              | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar.

*Operand 3-5:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** The Remainder is the result of dividing the Dividend by the Divisor and placing the remainder in operand 1.

Operands can have packed or zoned decimal, signed or unsigned binary type.

Source operands are the Dividend and Divisor. The receiver operand is the Remainder.

If operands are not of the same type, source operands are converted according to the following rules:

1. If any one of the operands has zoned or packed decimal type, source operands are converted to packed decimal.
2. Otherwise, the binary operands are converted to a like type. Note: unsigned binary(2) scalars are logically treated as signed binary(4) scalars.

Source operands are divided according to their type. Packed decimal operands are divided using packed decimal division. Unsigned binary division is used with unsigned source operands. Signed binary operands are divided using two's complement binary division.

Better performance can be obtained if all operands have the same type. Signed and unsigned binary division execute faster than packed decimal division.

Floating-point is not supported for this instruction.

If the divisor has a numeric value of 0, a *zero divide* (hex 0C0B) exception is signaled. If the dividend has a value of 0, the result of the division is a zero value remainder.

For a decimal operation, the internal quotient value produced by the divide operation is always calculated with a precision of zero fractional digit positions. If necessary, internal alignment of the assumed decimal point for the dividend and divisor operands is performed to insure the correct precision for the resultant quotient value. These internal alignments are not subject to detection of the decimal point alignment exception. An internal quotient and the corresponding remainder value will be calculated for any combination of decimal attributes which may be specified for the instruction's operands. However, as described below, the assignment of the remainder value is limited to that portion of the remainder value which fits in the remainder operand.

If the dividend is shorter than the divisor, it is logically adjusted to the length of the divisor.

The division operation is performed according to the rules of algebra. Unsigned binary is treated as a positive number for the algebra. Before the remainder is calculated, an intermediate quotient is calculated. The attributes of this quotient are derived from the attributes of the dividend and divisor operands as follows:

| <b>Dividend</b>           | <b>Divisor</b>            | <b>Intermediate Quotient</b> |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| IM,SIM or SBIN(2)         | IM,SIM or SBIN(2)         | SBIN(2)                      |
| IM,SIM or SBIN(2)         | SBIN(4)                   | SBIN(4)                      |
| IM,SIM,SBIN(2) or UBIN(2) | DECIMAL(P2,Q2)            | DECIMAL(5+Q2,0)              |
| IM,SIM,SBIN(2) or SBIN(4) | UBIN(2) or UBIN(4)        | UBIN(4)                      |
| UBIN(2) or UBIN(4)        | IM,SIM,SBIN(2) or SBIN(4) | UBIN(4)                      |
| UBIN(2) or UBIN(4)        | UBIN(2) or UBIN(4)        | UBIN(4)                      |
| SBIN(4)                   | IM,SIM or SBIN(2)         | SBIN(4)                      |
| SBIN(4) or UBIN(4)        | DECIMAL(P2,Q2)            | DECIMAL(10+Q2,0)             |
| DECIMAL(P1,Q1)            | IM,SIM,SBIN(2) or UBIN(2) | DECIMAL(P1,0)                |
| DECIMAL(P1,Q1)            | SBIN(4) or UBIN(4)        | DECIMAL(P1,0)                |
| DECIMAL(P1,Q1)            | DECIMAL(P2,Q2)            | DECIMAL(P1-Q1+Q,0)           |

Where Q = Larger of Q1 or Q2

IM = IMMEDIATE  
SIM = SIGNED IMMEDIATE  
SBIN = SIGNED BINARY

UBIN = UNSIGNED BINARY  
 DECIMAL = PACKED OR ZONED

After the intermediate quotient numeric value has been determined, the numeric value of the remainder operand is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Remainder} = \text{Dividend} - (\text{Quotient} * \text{Divisor})$$

When signed arithmetic is used, the sign of the remainder is the same as that of the dividend unless the remainder has a value of 0. When the remainder has a value of 0, the sign of the remainder is positive.

The resultant value of the calculation is copied into the remainder operand. If this operand is not the same type as that used in performing the operation, the resultant value is converted to its type. If necessary, the resultant value is adjusted to the length of the remainder operand, aligned at the assumed decimal point of the remainder operand, or both before being copied to it.

If significant digits are truncated on the left end of the resultant value, a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception is signaled for those programs that request to be notified of size exceptions.

If a decimal to binary conversion causes a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception to be signaled in programs that request to be notified of size exceptions, the binary value contains the correct truncated result only if the decimal value contains 15 or fewer significant nonfractional digits.

#### Resultant Conditions

- Positive-The algebraic value of the numeric scaler remainder is positive.
- Negative-The algebraic value of the numeric scaler remainder is negative.
- Zero-The algebraic value of the numeric scaler remainder is zero.

#### Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 range                            | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X |       |
| 0C        | Computation                         |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 decimal data                     |          | X | X |       |
|           | 0A size                             | X        |   |   |       |
|           | 0B zero divide                      |          |   | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state       | X        | X | X | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage     | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception         |          |   |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 invalid branch target               |          |   |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X |       |

**Scale (SCALE)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br><b>SCALE</b><br>1063 | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Receiver | Operand 2<br>Source | Operand 3<br>Scale factor | Operand [4-7]     |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>SCALEI</b><br>1863                 | Indicator options | Receiver              | Source              | Scale factor              | Indicator targets |
| <b>SCALEB</b><br>1C63                 | Branch options    | Receiver              | Source              | Scale factor              | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar.

*Operand 3:* Binary(2) scalar.

*Operand 4-7:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Short forms**

| Op Code (Hex)<br><b>SCALE</b><br>1163 | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Receiver/Source | Operand 2<br>Scale factor | Operand [3-6]     |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>SCALEIS</b><br>1963                | Indicator options | Receiver/Source              | Scale factor              | Indicator targets |
| <b>SCALEBS</b><br>1D63                | Branch options    | Receiver/Source              | Scale factor              | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Binary(2) scalar.

*Operand 3-6:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** The scale instruction performs numeric scaling of the source operand based on the scale factor and places the results in the receiver operand. The numeric operation is as follows:

$\text{Operand 1} = \text{Operand 2} * (B^{**}N)$

where:

N is the binary integer value of the scale operand. It can be positive, negative, or 0. If N is 0, then the operation simply copies the source operand value into the receiver operand.

B is the arithmetic base for the type of numeric value in the source operand.

| Base Type      | B  |
|----------------|----|
| Binary         | 2  |
| Packed/Zoned   | 10 |
| Floating-point | 2  |

The scale operation is a shift of N binary, packed, or zoned digits. The shift is to the left if N is positive, to the right if N is negative. For a floating-point source operand, the scale operation is performed as if the source operand is multiplied by a floating-point value of  $2^{**N}$ .

If the source and receiver operands have different attributes, the scaling operation is done in an intermediate field with the same attributes as the source operand. If a fixed-point scaling operation causes nonzero digits to be truncated on the left end of the intermediate field, a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception is signaled. For a floating-point scaling operation, the *floating-point overflow* (hex 0C06) and the *floating-point underflow* (hex 0C07) exceptions can be signaled during the calculation of the intermediate result.

The resultant value of the calculation is copied into the receiver operand. If this operand is not the same type as that used in performing the operation, the resultant value is converted to its type. If necessary, the resultant value is adjusted to the length of the receiver operand, aligned at the assumed decimal point of the receiver operand, or both before being copied to it. For fixed-point operations, if nonzero digits are truncated off the left end of the resultant value, a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception is signaled.

For floating-point operations involving fixed-point receiver fields, if nonzero digits would be truncated from the left end of the resultant value, an *invalid floating-point conversion* (hex 0C0C) exception is signaled.

For floating-point receiver fields, if the exponent of the resultant value is either too large or too small to be represented in the receiver field, the *floating-point overflow* (hex 0C06) or *floating-point underflow* (hex 0C07) exception is signaled.

A *scalar value invalid* (hex 3203) exception is signaled if the value of N is beyond the range of the particular type of the source operand as specified in the following table.

| Source Operand Type | Maximum Value of N   |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| Signed Binary(2)    | $-15 \leq N \leq 15$ |
| Unsigned Binary(2)  | $-16 \leq N \leq 16$ |
| Signed Binary(4)    | $-31 \leq N \leq 31$ |
| Unsigned Binary(4)  | $-32 \leq N \leq 32$ |
| Decimal(P,Q)        | $-31 \leq N \leq 31$ |

For a scale operation in floating-point, no limitations are placed on the values allowed for N other than the implicit limits imposed due to the floating-point overflow and underflow exceptions.

**Limitations:** The following are limits that apply to the functions performed by this instruction.

If a decimal to binary conversion causes a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception to be signaled, the binary value contains the correct truncated result only if the decimal value contains 15 or fewer significant nonfractional digits.

#### Resultant Condition

- Positive-The algebraic value of the receiver operand is positive.
- Negative-The algebraic value of the receiver operand is negative.
- Zero-The algebraic value of the receiver operand is zero.

- Unordered-The value assigned a floating-point receiver operand is NaN.

## Exceptions

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                             |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation          | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment                  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 range                               | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 0C        | Computation                            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 decimal data                        |          | X |   |       |
|           | 06 floating-point overflow             | X        |   |   |       |
|           | 07 floating-point underflow            | X        |   |   |       |
|           | 09 floating-point invalid operand      |          | X |   | X     |
|           | 0A size                                | X        |   |   |       |
|           | 0C invalid floating-point conversion   | X        |   |   |       |
|           | 0D floating-point inexact result       | X        |   |   |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state          | X        | X | X | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 invalid branch target               |          |   |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |

| Exception |                               | Operands |   |   |       |
|-----------|-------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |                               | 1        | 2 | 3 | Other |
| 32        | Scalar specification          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 scalar value invalid       |          |   | X |       |
| 36        | Space management              |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation |          |   |   | X     |



**Scan (SCAN)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br>SCAN<br>10D3 | Extender             | Operand 1<br>Receiver | Operand 2<br>Base | Operand 3<br>Compare<br>operand | Operand [4-5]     |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------|
| SCANB<br>1CD3                 | Branch options       | Receiver              | Base              | Compare<br>operand              | Branch targets    |
| SCANI<br>18D3                 | Indicator<br>options | Receiver              | Base              | Compare<br>operand              | Indicator targets |

*Operand 1:* Binary variable scalar or binary array.

*Operand 2:* Character variable scalar.

*Operand 3:* Character scalar.

*Operand 4-5:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** The character string value of the base operand is scanned for occurrences of the character string value of the compare operand.

The base and compare operands must both be character strings. The length of the compare operand must not be greater than that of the base string.

The operation begins at the left end of the base string and continues character by character, from left to right, comparing the characters of the base string with those of the compare operand. The length of the comparisons are equal to the length of the compare operand value and function as if they were being compared in the Compare Bytes Left-Adjusted instruction.

If a set of bytes that match the compare operand is found, the binary value for the ordinal position of its leftmost base string character is placed in the receiver operand.

If the receiver operand is a scalar, only the first occurrence of the compare operand is noted. If it is an array, as many occurrences as there are elements in the array are noted.

The operation continues until no more occurrences of the compare operand can be noted in the receiver operand or until the number of characters (bytes) remaining to be scanned in the base string is less than the length of the compare operand.

When the second condition occurs, the receiver value is set to 0. If the receiver operand is an array, all its remaining elements are also set to 0.

The base operand and the compare operand can be variable length substring compound operands.

Substring operand references that allow for a null substring reference (a length value of zero) may be specified for operands 2 and 3. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for the compare operand or both operands is that the receiver is set to zero (no match found) and the instruction's resultant condition is null compare operand. Specifying a null substring reference for just the base operand is not allowed due to the requirement that the length of the compare operand must not be greater than that of the base string.

**Resultant Conditions**

- Zero-The numeric value(s) of the receiver operand is zero. When the receiver operand is an array, the resultant condition is zero if all elements are zero. One of these two conditions will result when the compare operand is not a null substring reference.
- Positive-The numeric value(s) of the receiver operand is positive.
- Null compare operand-The compare operand is a null substring reference; therefore, the receiver has been set to zero which indicates that no occurrences were found.

**Exceptions**

| Exception                              | Operands |   |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing                          |          |   |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation          | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment                  | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 range                               | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                  |          |   |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 0C Computation                         |          |   |   |       |
| 08 length conformance                  |          | X | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                  |          |   |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state          | X        | X | X | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage        | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception         |          |   |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                     |          |   |   |       |
| 02 machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
| 03 function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22 Object access                       |          |   |   |       |
| 01 object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2C Program execution                   |          |   |   |       |
| 04 invalid branch target               |          |   |   | X     |
| 2E Resource control limit              |          |   |   |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 36 Space management                    |          |   |   |       |

**Exception**  
01 space extension/truncation

| Operands |   |   | Other |
|----------|---|---|-------|
| 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|          |   |   | X     |

## Scan with Control (SCANWC)

| Op Code<br>(Hex)       | Extender             | Operand 1       | Operand 2 | Operand 3 | Operand 4                   | Operand [5-8]        |
|------------------------|----------------------|-----------------|-----------|-----------|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>SCANWC</b><br>10E4  |                      | Base<br>locator | Controls  | Options   | Escape<br>target or<br>null |                      |
| <b>SCANWCB</b><br>1CE4 | Branch<br>options    | Base<br>locator | Controls  | Options   | Escape<br>target or<br>null | Branch<br>targets    |
| <b>SCANWCI</b><br>18E4 | Indicator<br>options | Base<br>locator | Controls  | Options   | Escape<br>target or<br>null | Indicator<br>targets |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* Character(8) variable scalar (fixed length)

*Operand 3:* Character(4) constant scalar (fixed length)

*Operand 4:* Instruction number, relative instruction number, branch point, instruction pointer, instruction definition list element, or null.

*Operand 5-8:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** The base string to be scanned is specified by the base locator and controls operands. The base locator addresses first character of the base string. The controls specifies the length of the base string in the base length field.

The scan operation begins at the left end of the base string and continues character by character, left-to-right. The scan operation can be performed on a base string which contains all simple (1-byte) or all extended (2-byte) character codes or a mixture of the two. When the base string is being interpreted in simple character mode, the operation moves through the base string one byte at a time. When the base string is being interpreted in extended character mode, the operation moves through the base string 2 bytes at a time. The character string value of the base operand is scanned for occurrences of a character value satisfying the criteria specified in the control and options operands.

The scan is completed by updating the base locator and controls operands with scan status when a character value being scanned for is found, the end of the base string is encountered, or an escape code is encountered when the escape target operand is specified. The base locator is set with addressability to the character (simple or extended) which caused the instruction to complete execution. The controls operand is set with information which identifies the mode (simple or extended) of the base string character addressed by the base locator and which provides for resumption of the scan operation with minimal overhead.

The controls and options operands specify the modes to be used in interpreting characters during the scan operation. Characters can be interpreted in one of two character modes: simple (1-byte) and extended (2-byte). Additionally, the base string can be scanned in one of two scan modes, mixed (base string may contain a mixture of both character modes) and nonmixed (base string contains one mode of characters).

When the mixed scan mode is specified in the options operand, the base string is interpreted as containing a mixture of simple and extended character codes. The mode, simple or extended, with which the string is to be interpreted, is controlled initially by the base mode indicator in the controls operand and thereafter by mode control characters imbedded in the base string. The mode control characters are as follows:

- Hex 0E = Shift out (SO) of simple character mode to extended mode.
- Hex 0F = Shift in (SI) to simple character mode from extended mode. This is only recognized if it occurs in the first byte position of an extended character code.

When the nonmixed scan mode is specified in the options operand, the base string is interpreted using only the character mode specified by the base mode indicator in the controls operand. Character mode shifting can not occur because no mode control characters are recognized when scanning in nonmixed mode.

The base locator operand is a space pointer which is both input to and output from the instruction. On input, it locates the first character of the base string to be processed. On output, it locates the character of the base string which caused the instruction to complete.

The controls operand must be a character scalar which specifies additional information to be used to control the scan operation. It must be at least 8 bytes long and have the following format:

- |                         |         |
|-------------------------|---------|
| • Controls operand      | Char(8) |
| — Control indicators    | Char(1) |
| — Reserved              | Char(1) |
| — Comparison characters | Char(2) |
| — Reserved              | Char(1) |
| — Base end              | Char(3) |
| - Instruction work area | Char(1) |
| - Base length           | Char(2) |

Only the first 8 bytes of the controls operand are used. Any excess bytes are ignored. Reserved fields must contain binary zeros. The **control indicators** field has the following format:

- |                             |         |
|-----------------------------|---------|
| • Control indicators        | Char(1) |
| — Base mode                 | Bit 0   |
| 0 = Simple                  |         |
| 1 = Extended                |         |
| — Comparison character mode | Bit 1   |
| 0 = Simple                  |         |
| 1 = Extended                |         |
| — Reserved (must be 0)      | Bit 2-6 |
| — Scan state                | Bit 7   |
| 0 = Resume scan             |         |
| 1 = Start scan              |         |

The **base mode** is both input to and output from the instruction. In either case, it specifies the mode of the character in the base string currently addressed by the base locator.

The **comparison character mode** is not changed by the instruction. It specifies the mode of the comparison character contained in the controls operand.

The **scan state** is both input to and output from the instruction. As input, it indicates whether the scan operation for the base string is being started or resumed. If it is being *started*, the instruction assumes that the *base length* value in the *base end* field of the controls operand specifies the length of the base string, and the instruction work area value is ignored. If it is being *resumed*, the instruction assumes the *base end* field has been set by a prior start scan execution of the instruction with an internal machine value identifying the end of the base string.

For a *start scan* execution of the instruction, the *scan state* field is reset to indicate resume scan to provide for subsequent resumption of the scan operation. Additionally, for a *start scan* execution of the instruction, the *base end* field is set with an internally optimized value which identifies the end of the base string being scanned. This value then overlays the values which were in the instruction work area and base length fields on input to the instruction. Predictable operation of the instruction on a *resume scan* execution depends upon this base end field being left intact with the value set by the start scan execution.

For a *resume scan* execution of the instruction, the *scan state* and *base end* fields are unchanged.

The **comparison character** is input to the instruction. It specifies a character code to be used in the comparisons performed during the scanning of the base string. The *comparison character mode* in the control indicators specifies the mode (simple or extended) of the comparison character. If it is a *simple* character, the first byte of the *comparison character* field is ignored and the *comparison character* is assumed to be specified in the second byte. If it is an *extended* character, the *comparison character* is specified as a 2-byte value in the *comparison character* field.

The **base end** field is both input to and output from the instruction. It contains data which identifies the end of the base string. Initially, for a start scan execution of the instruction, it contains the length of the base string in the **base length** field. Additionally, the *base end* field is used to retain information over multiple instruction executions which provides for minimizing the overhead required to resume the scan operation for a particular base string. This information is set on the initial *start scan* execution of the instruction and is used during subsequent *resume scan* executions of the instruction to determine the end of the base string to be scanned. If the end of the base string being scanned must be altered during iterative usage of this instruction, a *start scan* execution of the instruction must be performed to provide for correctly resetting the internally optimized value to be stored in the *base end* from the values specified in the base locator operand and *base length* field.

For the special case of a *start scan* execution where a length value of zero (no characters to scan) is specified in the *base length* field, the instruction results in a *not found* resultant condition. In this case, the base locator is not verified and the *scan state* indicator, the *base end* field, and the base locator are not changed.

The options operand must be a character scalar which specifies the options to be used to control the scan operation. It must be at least 4 bytes in length and has the following format:

- Options operand Char(4)
  - Options indicators Char(1)
  - Reserved Char(3)

The options operand must be specified as a constant character scalar.

Only the first 4 bytes of the options operand are used. Any excess bytes are ignored. Reserved fields must contain binary zeros. The **option indicators** field has the following format:

- Option indicators Char(1)
  - Reserved Bit 0
  - Scan mode Bit 1

- 0 = Mixed
- 1 = Nonmixed
- Reserved Bits 2-3
- Comparison relation Bits 4-6
  - Equal, (=) relation Bit 4
  - Less than, (<) relation Bit 5
  - Greater than, (>) relation Bit 6
  - 0 = No match on relation
  - 1 = Match on relation
- Reserved Bit 7

The **scan mode** specifies whether the base string contains a mixture of character modes, or contains all one mode of characters; that is, whether or not mode control characters should be recognized in the base string. *Mixed* specifies that there is a mixture of character modes and, therefore, mode control characters should be recognized. *Nonmixed* specifies that there is not a mixture of character modes and, therefore, mode control characters should not be recognized. Note that the *base mode* indicator in the controls operand specifies the character mode of the base string character addressed by the base locator.

The **comparison relation** specifies the relation or relations of the comparison character to characters of the base string which will satisfy the scan operation and cause completion of the instruction with one of the *high*, *low*, or *equal* resultant conditions. Multiple relations may be specified in conjunction with one another. Specifying all relations insures a match against any character in the base string which is of the same mode as the comparison character. Specifying no relation insures a *not found* resultant condition, in the absence of an escape due to verification, regardless of the values of the characters in the base string which match the mode of the comparison character.

An example of comparison scanning is a scan of simple mode characters for a value less than hex 40. This could be done by specifying a *comparison character* of hex 40 and a *comparison relation* of *greater* than in conjunction with a branch option for the resultant condition of *high*. This could also be done by specifying a *comparison character* of hex 3F and *comparison relations* of *equal* and *greater* than in conjunction with branch options for *equal* and *high*. The target of the branch options in either case would be the instructions to process the character less than hex 40 in value.

The escape target operand controls the verification of bytes of the base string for values less than hex 40. Verification, if requested, is always performed in conjunction with whatever comparison processing has been requested. That is, verification is performed even if no comparison relation is specified. This operand is discussed in more detail in the following material.

During the scan operation, the characters of the base string which are not of the same mode as the comparison character are skipped over until the mode of the characters being processed is the same as the mode of the comparison character. The operation then proceeds by comparing the comparison character with each of the characters of the base string. These comparisons behave as if the characters were being compared in the Compare Bytes Left Adjusted instruction.

If a base string character satisfying the criteria specified in the controls and options operands is found, the base locator is set to address the first byte of it, the *base mode* indicator is set to indicate the mode of the base string as of that character, and the instruction is completed with the appropriate resultant condition based on the *comparison relation* (*high*, *low*, or *equal*) of the *comparison character* to the base string character.

If a matching base string character is not found prior to encountering a mode change, the characters of the base string are again skipped over until the mode of the characters being processed is the same as the mode of the comparison character before comparisons are resumed.

If a matching base string character is not found prior to encountering the end of the base string, the base locator is set to address the first byte of the character encountered at the end of the base string, the *base mode* indicator is set to indicate the mode of the base string as of that character, and the instruction is completed with the *not found* resultant condition. A mode control string results in the changing of the base string mode, but the base locator is left addressing the mode control character.

If the escape target operand is specified (operand 4 is not null), verifications are performed on the characters of the base string prior to their being skipped or compared with the comparison character. Each byte of the base string is checked for a value less than hex 40. Additionally, for a *mixed* scan mode, when such a value is encountered, it is then determined if it is a valid mode control character.

- Hex 0E (S0) when the base string is being interpreted in simple character mode.
- Hex 0F (SI) in the left byte of the character code when the base string is being interpreted in extended character mode.

If a byte value of less than hex 40 is not a valid mode control character, it is considered to be an escape code. The base locator is set to address the first byte of the base string character (simple or extended) which contains the escape code, the *base mode* indicator is set to indicate the mode of the base string as of that character, and a branch is taken to the target specified by the escape target operand. When the escape target branch is performed, the value of any optional indicator operands is meaningless.

If the escape target operand is not specified (operand 4 is null), verifications of the character codes in the base string are not performed. However, for a *mixed* scan mode, mode control values are always processed as described previously under the discussion of the mixed scan mode.

If possible, use a Space Pointer Machine Object for the base locator, operand 1. Appreciably less overhead is incurred in accessing and storing the value of the base locator if this is done.

If possible, specify through its ODT definition, the controls operand on an 8-byte multiple (doubleword) boundary relative to the start of the space containing it. Appreciably less overhead is incurred in accessing and storing the value of the controls if this is done.

For the case where a base string is to be just scanned for byte values less than hex 40, two techniques can be used.

- A direct simple mode scan for a value less than hex 40 without usage of the escape target verification feature.
- A scan for any character with usage of the escape target verification feature.

The direct scan approach, the former, is the more efficient.

The following diagram defines the various conditions which can be encountered at the end of the base string and what the base locator addressability is in each case. The solid vertical line represents the end of the base string. The dashes represent the bytes before and after the base string end. The V is positioned over the byte addressed by the base locator in each case. These are the conditions which can be encountered when the base locator input to the instruction addresses a byte prior to the base string end. When the base length field specifies a value of zero for a start scan execution of the instruction, or the input base locator addresses a point beyond the end of the instruction, no processing is performed and the instruction is immediately completed with the *not found* resultant condition.



| Addressability | Ending Condition  | Instruction Response   |
|----------------|---|--|
| V              | (One byte code at string end)   |  |
|                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Simple character</li> <li>• Shift in/out encountered</li> <li>• Escape code in simple character</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appropriate resultant condition indicating found or not found</li> <li>• Mode shift performed, and not found resultant condition</li> <li>• Branch taken</li> </ul> |
| V              | (Extended character split across string end)  |  |
|                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Extended character</li> <li>• Escape code in extended character</li> </ul>                                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Not found resultant condition</li> <li>• Branch taken</li> </ul>  |
| V              | (Extended character at string end)  |  |
|                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Extended character</li> <li>• Escape code in extended character</li> </ul>                                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appropriate resultant condition indicating found or not found</li> <li>• Branch taken</li> </ul>  |

AAC012-0

An analysis of the diagram shows that normally, after appropriate processing for the particular *found*, *not found*, or *escape* condition, the scan can be restarted at the byte of data which would follow the base string end in the data stream being scanned. Any mode shift required by an ending mode control character will have been performed.

However, one ending condition may require subsequent resumption of the scan at the character encountered at the end of the base string. This is the case where the instruction completes with the *not found* resultant condition and the base string ends with an extended character split across string end. That is, the *base mode* indicator specifies *extended* mode, the base locator addresses the last byte of the base string, and that byte value is not a shift out, hex 0E character. In this case, complete verification of the extended character and relation comparison could not be performed. If this extended character is to be processed, it must be done through another execution of the Scan instruction where both bytes of the character can be input to the instruction within the confines of the base string.

### Resultant Conditions

- **Equal:** A character value was found in the base string which satisfies the criteria specified in the controls and options operands in that the comparison character is of equal string value to the base string character.
- **High:** A character value was found in the base string which satisfies the criteria specified in the controls and options operands in that the comparison character is of higher string value to the base string character.

- Low: A character value was found in the base string which satisfies the criteria specified in the controls and options operands in that the comparison character is of lower string value to the base string character.
- Not found: A character value was not found in the base string which satisfied the criteria specified in the controls and options operands.

## Exceptions

| Exception                              | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 06 Addressing                          |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation          | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment                  | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 range                               | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                  |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 0C Computation                         |          |   |   |   |       |
| 08 length conformance                  |          | X | X |   |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                  |          |   |   |   |       |
| 04 System object damage state          |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage        |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception         |          |   |   |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                     |          |   |   |   |       |
| 02 machine check                       |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 03 function check                      |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22 Object access                       |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 object not found                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 object suspended                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification               |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 2C Program execution                   |          |   |   |   |       |
| 04 invalid branch target               |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 2E Resource control limit              |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 32 Scalar specification                |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 scalar value invalid                |          | X | X |   |       |

**Exception**

36      Space management  
          01 space extension/truncation

**Operands**  
 1      2      3      4

**Other**

X

**Search (SEARCH)**

| Op Code<br>(Hex)       | Extender             | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3 | Operand 4 | Operand [5-6]        |
|------------------------|----------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|----------------------|
| <b>SEARCH</b><br>1084  |                      | Receiver  | Array     | Find      | Location  |                      |
| <b>SEARCHB</b><br>1C84 | Branch<br>options    | Receiver  | Array     | Find      | Location  | Branch<br>targets    |
| <b>SEARCHI</b><br>1884 | Indicator<br>options | Receiver  | Array     | Find      | Location  | Indicator<br>targets |

*Operand 1:* Binary variable scalar or binary variable array.

*Operand 2:* Character array or numeric array.

*Operand 3:* Character variable scalar or numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 4:* Binary scalar.

*Operand 5-6:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** The portions of the array operand indicated by the location operand are searched for occurrences of the value indicated in the find operand.

The operation begins with the first element of the array operand and continues element by element, comparing those characters of each element (beginning with the character indicated in the location operand) with the characters of the find operand. The location operand contains an integer value representing the relative location of the first character in each element to be used to begin the compare.

The integer value of the location operand must range from 1 to L, where L is the length of the array operand elements; otherwise, a *scalar value invalid* (hex 3203) exception is signaled. A value of 1 indicates the leftmost character of each element.

The array and find operands can be either character or numeric. Any numeric operands are interpreted as logical character strings. The compares between these operands are performed at the length of the find operand and function as if they were being compared in the Compare Bytes Left-Adjusted instruction.

The length of the find operand must not be so large that it exceeds the length of the array operand elements when used with the location operand value. The array element length used is the length of the array scalar elements and not the length of the entire array element, which can be larger in non-contiguous arrays.

As each occurrence of the find value is encountered, the integer value of the index for this array element is placed in the receiver operand. If the receiver operand is a scalar, only the first element containing the find value is noted. If the receiver operand is an array, as many occurrences as there are elements within the receiver array are noted.

If the value of the index for an array element containing an occurrence of the find value is too large to be contained in the receiver, a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception is signaled.

The operation continues until no more occurrences of elements containing the find value can be noted in the receiver operand or until the array operand has been completely searched. When the second condition occurs, the receiver value is set to LB-1, where LB is the value of the lower bound index of the array. If LB is the most negative 32-bit integer, then LB-1 is the most positive 32-bit integer; otherwise, LB-1 is 1 less than LB. If the receiver operand is an array, all its remaining elements are also set to LB-1. The find operand can be a variable length substring compound operand.

**Resultant Conditions ::** The numeric value(s) of the receiver operand is either LB-1 or in the range LB through UB, where UB is the value of the upper bound index of the array. When the receiver is LB-1, the resultant condition is *zero*. When the receiver is in the range LB through UB, the resultant condition is *positive*. When the receiver is an array, the resultant condition is *zero* if all elements are LB-1; otherwise, it is *positive*. The resultant condition is unpredictable when the *no binary size exception* program template option is used.

## Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 range                            | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 0C Computation                      |          |   |   |   |       |
| 08 length conformance               |          | X | X |   |       |
| 0A size                             | X        |   |   |   |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |   |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state       | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage     | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception      |          |   |   |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                  |          |   |   |   |       |
| 02 machine check                    |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 03 function check                   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22 Object access                    |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 object not found                 | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 object destroyed                 | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 object suspended                 | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 08 object compressed                |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification            |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist           | X        | X | X | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 04 invalid branch target               |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 03 scalar value invalid                |          |   |   | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   |   | X     |

## Set Bit in String (SETBTS)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|
| 101E          | Source    | Offset    |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar (fixed length) or numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Binary scalar.

**Description:** Sets the bit of the receiver operand as indicated by the bit offset operand.

The selected bit from the receiver operand is set to a value of binary 1.

The receiver operand can be a character or numeric variable. The leftmost bytes of the receiver operand are used in the operation. The receiver operand is interpreted as a bit string with the bits numbered left to right from 0 to the total number of bits in the string minus 1.

The offset operand indicates which bit of the receiver operand is to be set, with a offset of zero indicating the leftmost bit of the leftmost byte of the receiver operand. This value may be specified as a constant or any valid binary scalar variable.

If a offset value less than zero or beyond the length of the receiver is specified a *scalar value invalid* (hex 3203) exception is signaled.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment violation     | X        | X |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |       |
| 04 System object damage state       |          |   | X     |
| 44 Partial system object damage     |          |   | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception      |          |   |       |
| 03 Machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                  |          |   |       |
| 02 Machine check                    |          |   | X     |
| 03 Function check                   |          |   | X     |
| 22 Object access                    |          |   |       |
| 02 Object destroyed                 | X        | X |       |
| 03 Object suspended                 | X        | X |       |
| 08 object compressed                |          |   | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Scalar type invalid                 | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 Scalar value invalid                |          | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |



## Set Instruction Pointer (SETIP)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2     |
|---------------|-----------|---------------|
| 1022          | Receiver  | Branch target |

*Operand 1:* Instruction pointer.

*Operand 2:* Instruction number, relative instruction number, or branch point.

**Description:** The value of the branch target (operand 2) is used to set the value of the instruction pointer specified by operand 1. The instruction number indicated by the branch target must provide the address of an instruction within the program containing the Set Instruction Pointer instruction.

### Exceptions

| Exception                              | Operands |   |       |
|--|----------|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | Other |
| 06 Addressing                          |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation          | X        |   |       |
| 02 boundary alignment                  | X        |   |       |
| 03 range                               | X        |   |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid    | X        |   |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                  |          |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation       | X        |   |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                  |          |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state          | X        | X | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage        | X        | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception         |          |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                     |          |   |       |
| 02 machine check                       |          |   | X     |
| 03 function check                      |          |   | X     |
| 22 Object access                       |          |   |       |
| 01 object not found                    | X        |   |       |
| 02 object destroyed                    | X        |   |       |
| 03 object suspended                    | X        |   |       |
| 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification               |          |   |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist              | X        |   |       |
| 02 pointer type invalid                | X        |   |       |
| 2C Program execution                   |          |   |       |
| 04 branch target invalid               |          | X |       |
| 2E Resource control limit              |          |   |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |

Exception

36 Space management  
01 space extension/truncation

| Operands |   | Other |
|----------|---|-------|
| 1        | 2 |       |
|          |   | X     |

## Store and Set Computational Attributes (SSCA)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 107B          | Receiver  | Source    | Controls  |

*Operand 1:* Character(5) variable scalar (fixed length).

*Operand 2:* Character(5) scalar (fixed length) or null.

*Operand 3:* Character(5) scalar (fixed length) or null.

**Description:** This instruction stores and optionally sets the attributes for controlling computational operations for the process this instruction is executed in.

The receiver is assigned the values that each of the computational attributes had at the start of execution of the instruction. It has the same format and bit assignment as the source.

The source specifies new values for the computational attributes for the process. The particular computational attributes that are selected for modification are determined by the controls operand. The source operand has the following format:

- Floating-point exception masks Char(2)
  - 0 = Disabled (exception is masked)
  - 1 = Enabled (exception is unmasked)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 0-9
  - Floating-point overflow Bit 10
  - Floating-point underflow Bit 11
  - Floating-point zero divide Bit 12
  - Floating-point inexact result Bit 13
  - Floating-point invalid operand Bit 14
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 15
- Floating-point exception occurrence flags Char(2)
  - 0 = Exception has not occurred
  - 1 = Exception has occurred
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 0-9
  - Floating-point overflow Bit 10
  - Floating-point underflow Bit 11
  - Floating-point zero divide Bit 12
  - Floating-point inexact result Bit 13
  - Floating-point invalid operand Bit 14
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 15
- Modes Char(1)
  - Reserved Bit 0
  - Floating-point rounding mode Bits 1-2
    - 00 = Round toward positive infinity
    - 01 = Round toward negative infinity

10= Round toward zero  
 11= Round to nearest (default)

— Reserved

Bits 3-7

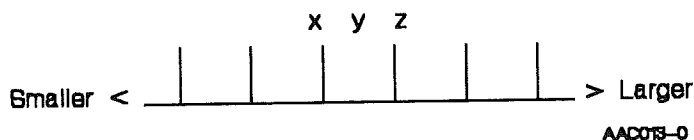
The controls operand is used to select those attributes that are to be set from the bit values of the source operand. The format of the controls is the same as that for the source. A value of one for a bit in controls indicates that the corresponding computational attribute for the process is to be set from the value of that bit of the source. A value of zero for a bit in controls indicates that the corresponding computational attribute for the process is not to be changed, and will retain the value it had prior to this instruction. For an attribute controlled by a multiple-bit field, such as the rounding modes, all of the bits in the field must be ones or all must be zeros. A mixture of ones and zeros in such a field results in a *scalar value invalid* (hex 3801) exception.

If the source and controls operands are both null, the instruction will just return the current computational attributes. If the source is specified, the computational attributes of the process are modified under control of the controls operand. If the source operand is specified and the controls operand is null, the instruction will change all of the computational attributes to the values specified in the source. If the source operand is null and the controls operand is specified, an *invalid operand type* (hex 2A06) exception is signaled on the Create Program instruction.

With the **floating-point exception masks** field, it is possible to unmask/mask the exception processing and handling for each of the five floating-point exceptions. If an exception that is unmasked occurs, then the corresponding *floating point exception occurrence* bit is set, and the exception is signaled. If an exception that is masked occurs, the exception is not signaled, but the *floating pointer exception occurrence* flag is still set to indicate the occurrence of the exception.

The **floating-point exception occurrence** flag for each exception may be set or cleared by this instruction from the source operand under control of the controls operand.

Unless specified otherwise by a particular instruction, or precluded due to implicit conversions, all floating-point operations are performed as if correct to infinite precision, and then rounded to fit in a destinations format while potentially signaling an exception that the result is inexact. To allow control of the floating-point rounding operations performed within a process, four **floating-point rounding modes** are supported. Assume  $y$  is the infinitely precise number that is to be rounded, bracketed most closely by  $x$  and  $z$ , where  $x$  is the largest representable value less than  $y$  and  $z$  is the smallest representable value greater than  $y$ . Note that  $x$  or  $z$  may be infinity. The following diagram shows this relationship of  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  on a scale of numerically progressing values where the vertical bars denote values representable in a floating-point format.



Given the above, if  $y$  is not exactly representable in the receiving field format, the rounding modes change  $y$  as follows:

*Round to nearest with round to even* in case of a tie is the default rounding mode in effect upon the initiation of a process. For this rounding mode,  $y$  is rounded to the closer of  $x$  or  $z$ . If they are equally close, the even one (the one whose least significant bit is a zero) is chosen. For the purposes of this mode of rounding, infinity is treated as if it was even. Except for the case of  $y$  being rounded to a value of infinity, the rounded result will differ from the infinitely precise result by at most half of the least significant digit position of the chosen value. This rounding mode differs slightly from the decimal round algorithm performed for the optional round form of an instruction. This rounding mode would round a value of 0.5 to 0, where the decimal round algorithm would round that value to 1.

*Round toward positive infinity* indicates directed rounding upward is to occur. For this mode, y is rounded to z.

*Round toward negative infinity* indicates directed rounding downward is to occur. For this mode, y is rounded to x.

*Round toward zero* indicates truncation is to occur. For this mode, y is rounded to the smaller (in magnitude) of x or z.

Arithmetic operations upon infinity are exact. Negative infinity is less than every finite value, which is less than positive infinity.

The computational attributes are set with a default value upon process initiation. The default attributes are as follows:

- The *floating-point inexact result* exception is masked. The other floating-point exceptions are unmasked.
- All *floating point occurrence bits* have a zero value.
- *Round to the nearest* rounding mode.

These attributes can be modified by a program executing this instruction. The new attributes are then in effect for the program executing this instruction and for programs invoked subsequent to it unless changed through another execution of this instruction. External exception handlers and invocation exit routines are invoked with the same attributes as were last in effect for the program invocation they are related to. Event handlers do not really relate to another invocation in the process. As such, they are invoked with the attributes that were in effect at the point the process was interrupted to handle the event.

Upon return to the invocation of a program from subsequent program invocations, the computational attributes, other than *floating point exception occurrence* attributes, are restored to those that were in effect when the program gave up control. The *floating point exception occurrence* attributes are left intact reflecting the occurrence of any floating-point exceptions during the execution of subsequent invocations.

Internal exception handlers execute under the invocation of the program containing them. As such, the above discussion of how computational attributes are restored upon returning from an external exception handler does not apply. The execution of an internal exception handler occurs in a manner similar to the execution of an internal subroutine invoked through the Call Internal instruction. If the internal exception handler modifies the attributes, the modification remains in effect for that invocation when the exception handler completes the exception.

## Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 range                            | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        |          |   |   | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 scalar value invalid                |          | X | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |

**Subtract Logical Character (SUBLC)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br>SUBLC<br>1027 | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Difference | Operand 2<br>Minuend | Operand 3<br>Subtrahend | Operand [4-6]     |
|--------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>SUBLCI</b><br>1827          | Indicator options | Difference              | Minuend              | Subtrahend              | Indicator targets |
| <b>SUBLCB</b><br>1C27          | Branch options    | Difference              | Minuend              | Subtrahend              | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar (fixed-length).

*Operand 2:* Character scalar (fixed-length).

*Operand 3:* Character scalar (fixed-length).

*Operand 4-6:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Short forms**

| Op Code (Hex)<br>SUBLCS<br>1127 | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Difference/Minuend | Operand 2<br>Subtrahend | Operand [3-5]     |
|---------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>SUBLCIS</b><br>1927          | Indicator options | Difference/Minuend              | Subtrahend              | Indicator targets |
| <b>SUBLCBS</b><br>1D27          | Branch options    | Difference/Minuend              | Subtrahend              | Branch targets    |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar (fixed-length).

*Operand 2:* Character scalar (fixed-length).

*Operand 3-5:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** The unsigned binary value of the subtrahend operand is subtracted from the unsigned binary value of the minuend operand, and the result is placed in the difference operand.

Operands 1, 2, and 3 must be the same length; otherwise, the Create Program instruction signals an *invalid length* (hex 2A0A) exception.

The subtraction operation is performed as though the ones complement of the second operand and a low-order 1-bit were added to the first operand.

The result value is then placed (left-adjusted) into the receiver operand with truncating or padding taking place on the right. The pad value used in this instruction is a byte value of hex 00.

If operands overlap but do not share all of the same bytes, results of operations performed on these operands are not predictable. If overlapped operands share all of the same bytes, the results are predictable when direct addressing is used. If indirect addressing is used (that is, based operands, parameters, strings with variable lengths, and arrays with variable subscripts), the results are not always predictable.

**Resultant Conditions:** The logical difference of the character scalar operands is:

- Zero with carry out of the high-order bit position
- Not-zero with carry
- Not-zero with no carry.

## Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Space addressing violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/Parameter               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X |       |
| 10 Damage Encountered               |          |   |   |       |
| 04 System object damage state       | X        | X | X | X     |
| 44 Partial system object damage     | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-Dependent Exception      |          |   |   |       |
| 03 Machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   |   | X     |
| 20 Machine Support                  |          |   |   |       |
| 02 Machine check                    |          |   |   | X     |
| 03 Function check                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 22 Object Access                    |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Object not found                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Object destroyed                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 Object suspended                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 object compressed                |          |   |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer Specification            |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Pointer does not exist           | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Pointer type invalid             | X        | X | X |       |
| 2C Program Execution                |          |   |   |       |
| 04 Invalid branch target            |          |   |   | X     |
| 2E Resource Control Limit           |          |   |   |       |



## Subtract Logical Character (SUBLC)

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|           | 01 User Profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar Specification                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Scalar attributes invalid           | X        | X | X |       |
| 36        | Space Management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Space Extension/Truncation          |          |   |   | X     |

**Subtract Numeric (SUBN)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br>SUBN<br>1047 | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Difference | Operand 2<br>Minuend | Operand 3<br>Subtrahend | Operand [4-7]     |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| SUBNR<br>1247                 |                   | Difference              | Minuend              | Subtrahend              |                   |
| SUBNB<br>1C47                 | Branch options    | Difference              | Minuend              | Subtrahend              | Branch targets    |
| SUBNBR<br>1E47                | Branch options    | Difference              | Minuend              | Subtrahend              | Branch targets    |
| SUBNI<br>1847                 | Indicator options | Difference              | Minuend              | Subtrahend              | Indicator targets |
| SUBNIR<br>1A47                | Indicator options | Difference              | Minuend              | Subtrahend              | Indicator targets |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Numeric scalar.

*Operand 3:* Numeric scalar.

*Operand 4-7:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Short forms**

| Op Code (Hex)<br>SUBNS<br>1147 | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Difference/Minuend | Operand 2<br>Subtrahend | Operand [3-6]     |
|--------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| SUBNSR<br>1347                 |                   | Difference/Minuend              | Subtrahend              |                   |
| SUBNBS<br>1D47                 | Branch options    | Difference/Minuend              | Subtrahend              | Branch targets    |
| SUBNBSR<br>1F47                | Branch options    | Difference/Minuend              | Subtrahend              | Branch targets    |
| SUBNIS<br>1947                 | Indicator options | Difference/Minuend              | Subtrahend              | Indicator targets |
| SUBNISR<br>1B47                | Indicator options | Difference/Minuend              | Subtrahend              | Indicator targets |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar.

**Operand 2:** Numeric scalar.

**Operand 3-6:**

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** The Difference is the result of subtracting the Subtrahend from the Minuend.

Operands can have floating-point, packed or zoned decimal, signed or unsigned binary type.

Source operands are the Minuend and Subtrahend. The receiver operand is the Difference.

If operands have different types, source operands, Minuend and Subtrahend, are converted according to the following rules:

1. If any one of the operands has floating point type, source operands are converted to floating point type.
2. Otherwise, if any one of the operands has zoned or packed decimal type, source operands are converted to packed decimal.
3. Otherwise, the binary operands are converted to a like type. Note: unsigned binary(2) scalars are logically treated as signed binary(4) scalars.

Minuend and Subtrahend are subtracted according to their type. Floating point operands are subtracted using floating point subtraction. Packed decimal operands are subtracted using packed decimal subtraction. Unsigned binary subtraction is used with unsigned binary operands. Signed binary operands are subtracted using two's complement binary subtraction.

Better performance can be obtained if all operands have the same type. Signed and unsigned binary subtractions execute faster than either packed decimal or floating point subtractions.

Decimal operands used in floating-point operations cannot contain more than 15 total digit positions.

For a decimal operation, alignment of the assumed decimal point takes place by padding with 0's on the right end of the source operand with lesser precision.

Floating-point subtraction uses exponent comparison and significand subtraction. Alignment of the binary point is performed, if necessary, by shifting the significand of the value with the smaller exponent to the right. The exponent is increased by one for each binary digit shifted until the two exponents agree.

The operation uses the length and the precision of the source and receiver operands to calculate accurate results. Operations performed in decimal are limited to 31 decimal digits in the intermediate result.

The subtract operation is performed according to the rules of algebra.

The result of the operation is copied into the difference operand. If this operand is not the same type as that used in performing the operation, the resultant value is converted to its type. If necessary, the resultant value is adjusted to the length of the difference operand, aligned at the assumed decimal point of the difference operand, or both before being copied to it. For fixed-point operation, if significant digits are truncated on the left end of the resultant value, a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception is signaled.

For the optional round form of the instruction, specification of a floating-point receiver operand is invalid.

For floating-point operations involving a fixed-point receiver field, if nonzero digits would be truncated off the left end of the resultant value, an *invalid floating-point conversion* (hex 0C0C) exception is signaled.

For a floating-point difference operand, if the exponent of the resultant value is either too large or too small to be represented in the difference field, the *floating-point overflow* (hex 0C06) or the *floating-point underflow* (hex 0C07) exception is signaled.

If a decimal to binary conversion causes a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception to be signaled, the binary value contains the correct truncated result only if the decimal value contains 15 or fewer significant nonfractional digits.

Size exceptions can be inhibited.

**Limitations:** The following are limits that apply to the functions performed by this instruction.

If operands overlap but do not share all of the same bytes, results of operations performed on these operands are not predictable. If overlapped operands share all of the same bytes, the results are predictable when direct addressing is used. If indirect addressing is used (that is, based operands, parameters, strings with variable lengths, and arrays with variable subscripts), the results are not always predictable.

#### Resultant Conditions

- Positive-The algebraic value of the numeric scalar difference is positive.
- Negative-The algebraic value of the numeric scalar difference is negative.
- Zero-The algebraic value of the numeric scalar difference is zero.
- Unordered-The value assigned a floating-point difference operand is NaN.

#### Exceptions

| Exception |                                      | Operands |   |          |       |
|-----------|--------------------------------------|----------|---|----------|-------|
|           |                                      | 1        | 2 | 3 [4, 5] | Other |
| 06        | Addressing                           |          |   |          |       |
|           | 01 Space addressing violation        | X        | X | X        |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment                | X        | X | X        |       |
|           | 03 Range                             | X        | X | X        |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid  | X        | X | X        |       |
| 08        | Argument/Parameter                   |          |   |          |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation     | X        | X | X        |       |
| 0C        | Computation                          |          |   |          |       |
|           | 02 Decimal data                      |          | X | X        |       |
|           | 03 Decimal point alignment           |          | X | X        |       |
|           | 06 Floating-point overflow           | X        |   |          |       |
|           | 07 Floating-point underflow          | X        |   |          |       |
|           | 09 Floating-point invalid operand    |          | X | X        | X     |
|           | 0A Size                              | X        |   |          |       |
|           | 0C Invalid floating-point conversion | X        |   |          |       |
|           | 0D Floating-point inexact result     | X        |   |          |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |          | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|----------|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 [4, 5] |       |
| 10        | Damage Encountered                     |          |   |          |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          | X        | X | X        | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        | X        | X | X        | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-Dependent Exception            |          |   |          |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |          | X     |
| 20        | Machine Support                        |          |   |          |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |          | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |          | X     |
| 22        | Object Access                          |          |   |          |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X        |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X        |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X        |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |          | X     |
| 24        | Pointer Specification                  |          |   |          |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X        |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X        |       |
| 2C        | Program Execution                      |          |   |          |       |
|           | 04 Invalid branch target               |          |   |          | X     |
| 2E        | Resource Control Limit                 |          |   |          |       |
|           | 01 User Profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |          | X     |
| 36        | Space Management                       |          |   |          |       |
|           | 01 Space Extension/Truncation          |          |   |          | X     |

## Test and Replace Characters (TSTRPLC)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2   |
|---------------|-----------|-------------|
| 10A2          | Receiver  | Replacement |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar.

**Description:** The character string value represented by operand 1 is tested byte by byte from left to right. Any byte to the left of the leftmost byte which has a value in the range of hex F1 to hex F9 is assigned a byte value equal to the leftmost byte of operand 2. Both operands must be character strings. Only the first character of the replacement string is used in the operation.

The operation stops when the first nonzero zoned decimal digit is found or when all characters of the receiver operand have been replaced.

### Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Space addressing violation       | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 Range                            | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/Parameter                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X |       |
| 10        | Damage Encountered                  |          |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state       | X        | X | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage     | X        | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-Dependent Exception         |          |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine Support                     |          |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                    |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                   |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object Access                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                 | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                 | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                 | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer Specification               |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist           | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid             | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource Control Limit              |          |   |       |

## Test and Replace Characters (TSTRPLC)

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 01 User Profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 36        | Space Management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Space Extension/Truncation          |          |   | X     |

## Test Bit in String (TSTBTS)

| Op Code (Hex)<br>TSTBTSB<br>1C0E | Extender<br>Branch options | Operand 1<br>Source | Operand 2<br>Offset | Operand 3 [4]<br>Branch targets |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| TSTBTSI<br>180E                  | Indicator options          | Source              | Offset              | Indicator targets               |

*Operand 1:* Character scalar (fixed length) or numeric scalar.

*Operand 2:* Binary scalar.

*Operand 3:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** Tests the bit of the source operand as indicated by the offset operand to determine if the bit is set or not set.

Based on the test, the resulting condition is used with the extender field to either

- Transfer control conditionally to the instruction indicated in one of the branch target operands (branch form).
- Assign a value to each of the indicator operands (indicator form).

The source operand can be character or numeric. The leftmost bytes of the source operand are used in the operation. The source operand is interpreted as a bit string with the bits numbered left to right from 0 to the total number of bits in the string minus one.

The offset operand indicates which bit of the source operand is to be tested, with a offset of zero indicating the leftmost bit of the leftmost byte of the source operand.

If an offset value less than zero or beyond the length of the string is specified a *scalar value invalid* (hex 3203) exception is signaled.

### Resultant Conditions

- Zero: The selected bit of the bit string source operand is zero.
- One: The selected bit of the bit string source operand is one.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |       |       |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 [4] | Other |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |       |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation     | X        | X | X     |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment violation     | X        | X | X     |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X | X     |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X     |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |       |       |



| Exception |  | Operands |   |       |       |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 [4] | Other |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X     |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |       |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          |          |   |       | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        |          |   |       | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |       |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |       | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |       |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |       | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |       | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |       |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X     |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X     |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |       | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X     |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X     |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |       | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |       |       |
|           | 01 Scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X     |       |
|           | 03 Scalar value invalid                |          | X |       |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |       | X     |

## Test Bits Under Mask (TSTBUM)

| Op Code (Hex)<br>TSTBUMB<br>1C2A | Extender<br>Branch options | Operand 1<br>Source | Operand 2<br>Mask | Operand 3 [4, 5]<br>Branch targets |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| TSTBUMI<br>182A                  | Indicator options          | Source              | Mask              | Indicator targets                  |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar or numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar or numeric scalar.

*Operand 3 [4, 5]*

- *Branch Form*-Instruction number, relative instruction number, branch point, or instruction pointer.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** Selected bits from the leftmost byte of the source operand are tested to determine their bit values.

Based on the test, the resulting condition is used with the extender field to:

- Transfer control conditionally to the instruction indicated in one of the branch target operands (branch form).
- Assign a value to each of the indicator operands (indicator form).

The source and the mask operands can be character or numeric. The leftmost byte of each of the operands is used in the operands. The operands are interpreted as bit strings. The testing is performed bit by bit with only those bits indicated by the mask operand being tested. A 1-bit in the mask operand specifies that the corresponding bit in the source value is to be tested. A 0-bit in the mask operand specifies that the corresponding bit in the source value is to be ignored.

**Resultant Conditions:** The selected bits of the bit string source operand are all zeros, all ones, or mixed ones and zeros. A mask operand of all zeros causes a zero resultant condition.

## Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |          |       |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|----------|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 [4, 5] | Other |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |          |       |
| 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X | X        |       |
| 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X | X        |       |
| 03 range                            | X        | X | X        |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X        |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |          |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X        |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |          |       |
| 04 system object damage state       | X        | X | X        | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage     | X        | X | X        | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception      |          |   |          |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |          | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|----------|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 [4, 5] |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |          | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |          |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   |          | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   |          | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |          |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X | X        |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X | X        |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X | X        |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |          | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |          |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X        |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X        |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |          |       |
|           | 04 branch target invalid               |          |   | X        |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |          |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |          | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |          |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |          | X     |

## Translate (XLATE)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3 | Operand 4   |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| 1094          | Receiver  | Source    | Position  | Replacement |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar.

*Operand 3:* Character scalar or null.

*Operand 4:* Character scalar.

**Description:** Selected characters in the string value of the source operand are translated into a different encoding and placed in the receiver operand. The characters selected for translation and the character values they are translated to are indicated by entries in the position and replacement strings. All the operands must be character strings. The source and receiver values must be of the same length. The position and replacement operands can differ in length. If operand 3 is null, a 256-character string is used, ranging in value from hex 00 to hex FF (EBCDIC collating sequence).

The operation begins with all the operands left-adjusted and proceeds character by character, from left to right until the character string value of the receiver operand is completed.

Each character of the source operand value is compared with the individual characters in the position operand. If a character of equal value does not exist in the position string, the source character is placed unchanged in the receiver operand. If a character of equal value is found in the position string, the corresponding character in the same relative location within the replacement string is placed in the receiver operand as the source character translated value. If the replacement string is shorter than the position string and a match of a source to position string character occurs for which there is no corresponding replacement character, the source character is placed unchanged in the receiver operand. If the replacement string is longer than the position string, the rightmost excess characters of the replacement string are not used in the translation operation because they have no corresponding position string characters. If a character in the position string is duplicated, the first occurrence (leftmost) is used.

If operands overlap but do not share all of the same bytes, results of operations performed on these operands are not predictable. If overlapped operands share all of the same bytes, the results are predictable when direct addressing is used. If indirect addressing is used (that is, based operands, parameters, strings with variable lengths, and arrays with variable subscripts), the results are not always predictable.

The receiver, source, position, and replacement operands can be variable length substring compound operands.

Substring operand references that allow for a null substring reference (a length value of zero) may be specified for all of the operands on this instruction. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for either the position or replacement operands is that the source operand is copied to the receiver with no change in value. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for both the receiver and the source operands (they must have the same length) is that no result is set.

## Exceptions

| Exception     | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|---------------|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|               | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 06 Addressing |          |   |   |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
|           | 01 Space addressing violation          | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment                  | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Range                               | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/Parameter                     |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 0C        | Computation                            |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 08 Length conformance                  | X        | X |   |   |       |
| 10        | Damage Encountered                     |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          | X        | X | X | X | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-Dependent Exception            |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine Support                        |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object Access                          |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer Specification                  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource Control Limit                 |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 User Profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 36        | Space Management                       |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Space Extension/Truncation          |          |   |   |   | X     |

---

## Translate with Table (XLATEWT)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 109F          | Receiver  | Source    | Table     |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar.

*Operand 3:* Character scalar.

**Description:** The source characters are translated under control of the translate table and placed in the receiver. The operation begins with the leftmost character of operand 2 and proceeds character-by-character, left-to-right.

Characters are translated as follows:

- The source character is used as an offset and added to the location of operand 3.
- The character contained in the offset location is the translated character. This character is copied to the receiver in the same relative position as the original character in the source string.

If operand 3 is less than 256 bytes long, the character in the source may specify an offset beyond the end of operand 3. If operand 2 is longer than operand 1, then only the leftmost portion of operand 2, equal to the length of operand 1, is translated. If operand 2 is shorter than operand 1, then only the leftmost portion of operand 1, equal to the length of operand 2, is changed. The remaining portion of operand 1 is unchanged.

If operand 1 overlaps with operand 2 and/or 3, the overlapped operands are updated for every character translated. The operation proceeds from left to right, one character at a time. The following example shows the results of an overlapped operands translate operation. Operands 1, 2, and 3 have the same coincident character string with a value of hex 050403020103.

Hex 050403020103-Initial value

Hex 030403020103-After the 1st character is translated

Hex 030103020103-After the 2nd character is translated

Hex 030102020103-After the 3rd character is translated

Hex 030102020103-After the 4th character is translated

Hex 030102020103-After the 5th character is translated

Hex 030102020102-After the 6th character, the final result

Note that the instruction does not use the length specified for the table operand to constrain access of the bytes addressed by the table operand.

If operand 3 is less than 256 characters long, and a source character specifies an offset beyond the end of operand 3, the result characters are obtained from byte locations in the space following operand 3. If that portion of the space is not currently allocated, a space addressing exception is signaled. If operand 3 is a constant with a length less than 256, source characters specifying offsets greater than or equal to the length of the constant are translated into unpredictable characters.

All of the operands support variable length substring compound scalars.

Substring operand references that allow for a null substring reference (a length value of zero) may be specified for all of the operands on this instruction. Specifying a null substring reference for the table operand does not affect the operation of the instruction. In this case, the bytes addressed by the table operand are still accessed as described above. This is due to the definition of the function of this instruction which does not use the length specified for the table operand to constrain access of the bytes addressed by the table operand. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for either or both of the receiver and the source operands is that no result is set.

## Exceptions

| Exception                              | Operands |   |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing                          |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Space addressing violation          | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment                  | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                               | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/Parameter                  |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 10 Damage Encountered                  |          |   |   |       |
| 44 Partial system object damage        |          |   |   | X     |
| 1C Machine-Dependent Exception         |          |   |   |       |
| 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20 Machine Support                     |          |   |   |       |
| 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
| 03 Function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22 Object Access                       |          |   |   |       |
| 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer Specification               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2E Resource Control Limit              |          |   |   |       |
| 01 User Profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32 Scalar Specification                |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 36 Space Management                    |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Space Extension/Truncation          |          |   |   | X     |

**Translate with Table and DBCS Skip (XLATWTDS)**

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1077          | Target    | Length    | Table     |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar (fixed length).

*Operand 2:* Binary(4) scalar.

*Operand 3:* Character scalar (fixed length).

**ILE access**

```

XLATWTDS (
  var target : aggregate;
  var length : unsigned binary;
  var table  : aggregate
)

```

**Description:** The simple (single byte) characters in the Target are translated under control of the translate table, for the length defined by Operand 2. The extended (double byte) character portions of the target are bypassed and not translated. The operation begins with the leftmost character of operand 1 and proceeds character-by-character, left-to-right, skipping over any Double byte character (DBCS) data portions.

The target, Operand 1, should have double byte character data surrounded by a shift out control character (SO = hex 0E) and a shift in control character (SI = hex 0F). Once a SO character is encountered, the translating of single byte characters halts. The operation will then proceed double byte character-by-double byte character until a SI character is encountered. This shift in character is then used to restart the translating of single byte characters.

The length operand, Operand 2, is the number of bytes and must contain a value between 1 and 32767. For length values outside this range a *scalar value invalid* (hex 3203) exception is signaled.

Single byte characters are translated as follows:

- The target character is used as an offset and added to the location of Operand 3.
- The character contained at the offset location of Operand 3 is the translated character. This character replaces the original character in the target.

The following example shows the step-by-step results of this translate operation. The translate table for this example has the following hex value: C3D406C5D504C1C2C4C5C6C7C8C9C1C6

Hex 05040ED2D2E1E10F03 - Initial target value

Hex 04040ED2D2E1E10F03 - After the 1st character is translated

Hex 04D50ED2D2E1E10F03 - After the 2nd character is translated

Hex 04D50ED2D2E1E10F03 - SO character encountered, skip the DBCS portion

Hex 04D50ED2D2E1E10F03 - Resume translating after SI control character

Hex 04D50ED2D2E1E10FC5 - Translate 9th character



Hex 04D50ED2D2E1E10FC5 - Final target value

The translate table, Operand 3, is assumed to be 256 bytes long. If the table is less than 256 characters long, and a target character specifies an offset beyond the end of the table, the resultant characters are obtained from byte locations in the space following translate table. If that portion of the space is not currently allocated, a *space addressing* (hex 0601) exception is signaled.

This operation only translates the target string and does not validate the Double byte portions of the target. For example, if a DBCS portion of the target string is preceded by the Shift Out control character, but missing the closing Shift In character, then an *invalid extended character data* (hex 0C12) exception will NOT be signaled. However, the Copy Extended Characters Left-Adjusted With Pad (CPYECLAP) instruction can be used to validate extended character data, if necessary.

## Exceptions

| Exception                              | Operands |   |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing                          |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Spacing addressing violation        | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment                  | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                               | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                  |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                  |          |   |   |       |
| 44 Partial system object damage        | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception         |          |   |   |       |
| 03 Machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                     |          |   |   |       |
| 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
| 03 Function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22 Object access                       |          |   |   |       |
| 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2E Resource control limit              |          |   |   |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32 Scalar specification                |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 Scalar value invalid                |          | X |   |       |
| 36 Space management                    |          |   |   |       |

**Exception**

01 space extension/truncation

**Operands**

|          |          |          |              |
|----------|----------|----------|--------------|
| <b>1</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Other</b> |
|          |          |          | X            |

## Trim Length (TRIML)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1       | Operand 2     | Operand 3      |
|---------------|-----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 10A7          | Receiver length | Source string | Trim character |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar.

*Operand 3:* Character(1) scalar.

**Description:** The operation determines the resultant length of operand 2 after the character specified by operand 3 has been trimmed from the end of operand 2. The resulting length is stored in operand 1. Operand 2 is trimmed from the end as follows: if the rightmost (last) character of operand 2 is equal to the character specified by operand 3, the length of the trimmed operand 2 string is reduced by 1. This operation continues until the rightmost character is no longer equal to operand 3 or the trimmed length is zero. If operand 3 is longer than one character, only the first (leftmost) character is used as the trim character.

Operands 2 and 3 are not changed by this instruction.

## Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Space addressing violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/Parameter               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X |       |
| 0C Computation                      |          |   |   |       |
| 0A Size                             | X        |   |   |       |
| 10 Damage Encountered               |          |   |   |       |
| 44 Partial system object damage     |          |   |   | X     |
| 1C Machine-Dependent Exception      |          |   |   |       |
| 03 Machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   |   | X     |
| 20 Machine Support                  |          |   |   |       |
| 02 Machine check                    |          |   |   | X     |
| 03 Function check                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 22 Object Access                    |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Object not found                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Object destroyed                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 Object suspended                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 object compressed                |          |   |   | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 24        | Pointer Specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource Control Limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 User Profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar Specification                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 36        | Space Management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Space Extension/Truncation          |          |   |   | X     |

**Verify (VERIFY)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br><b>VERIFY</b><br>10D7 | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Receiver | Operand 2<br>Source | Operand 3<br>Class | Operand [4-5]     |
|--|-------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| <b>VERIFYB</b><br>1CD7                 | Branch options    | Receiver              | Source              | Class              | Branch targets    |
| <b>VERIFYI</b><br>18D7                 | Indicator options | Receiver              | Source              | Class              | Indicator targets |

*Operand 1:* Binary variable scalar or binary array.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar.

*Operand 3:* Character scalar.

*Operand 4-5:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** Each character of the source operand character string value is checked to verify that it is among the valid characters indicated in the class operand.

The operation begins at the left end of the source string and continues character by character, from left to right. Each character of the source value is compared with the characters of the class operand. If a match for the source character exists in the class string, the next source character is verified. If a match for the source character does not exist in the class string, the binary value for the relative location of the character within the source string is placed in the receiver operand.

If the receiver operand is a scalar, only the first occurrence of an invalid character is noted. If the receiver operand is an array, as many occurrences as there are elements in the array are noted.

The operation continues until no more occurrences of invalid characters can be noted or until the end of the source string is encountered. When the second condition occurs, the current receiver value is set to 0. If the receiver operand is an array, all its remaining entries are set to 0's.

The source and class operands can be variable length substring compound operands.

Substring operand references that allow for a null substring reference (a length value of zero) may be specified for operands 2 and 3. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for the class operand when a nonnull string reference is specified for the source is that all of the characters of the source are considered invalid. In this case, the receiver is accordingly set with the offset(s) to the bytes of the source, and the instruction's resultant condition is positive. The effect of specifying a null substring reference for the source operand (no characters to verify) is that the receiver is set to zero and the instruction's resultant condition is zero regardless of what is specified for the class operand.

**Resultant Conditions:** The numeric value(s) of the receiver is either 0 or positive. When the receiver operand is an array, the resultant condition is 0 if all elements are 0.

**Exceptions**

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                             |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation          | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment                  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 range                               | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage                | X        | X | X | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 branch target invalid               |          |   |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |



---

## Chapter 3. Date/Time/Timestamp Instructions

This chapter describes all instructions used for date, time, and timestamp use. These instructions are in alphabetic order. For an alphabetic summary of all the instructions, see Appendix A, "Instruction Summary"

|                                    |      |
|------------------------------------|------|
| External Data Formats              | 3-3  |
| Date, Time, and Timestamp Concepts | 3-3  |
| Compute Date Duration (CDD)        | 3-13 |
| Compute Time Duration (CTD)        | 3-16 |
| Compute Timestamp Duration (CTSD)  | 3-19 |
| Convert Date (CVTD)                | 3-22 |
| Convert Time (CVTT)                | 3-25 |
| Convert Timestamp (CVTTS)          | 3-28 |
| Decrement Date (DECD)              | 3-31 |
| Decrement Time (DECT)              | 3-35 |
| Decrement Timestamp (DECTS)        | 3-38 |
| Increment Date (INCD)              | 3-42 |
| Increment Time (INCT)              | 3-46 |
| Increment Timestamp (INCTS)        | 3-49 |





---

## External Data Formats

For support of date, time, and timestamp, the external data format that is used is a character string. Associated with this character string will be a **data definitional attribute list** (DDAT) that describes all the attributes of the string.

The attributes that are associated with the character string are as follows:

- Calendar table.
- Era table.
- Format code.
- Date separator type.
- Time separator type.
- Time zone.
- Month definition.
- Year definition.
- Century.

---

## Date, Time, and Timestamp Concepts

### Data Definitions

**DATE.** *Date data type.* The internal format is a 4 byte binary value. The DDAT number must reference a DDAT with an internal DATE format code or be set to zero which implies internal format. The internal format is fixed length, trailing blanks are NOT allowed.

**TIME.** *Time data type.* The internal format is six numbers packed into a three byte value. There is no sign nibble. The DDAT number must reference a DDAT with an internal TIME format code or be set to zero which implies internal format. The internal format is fixed length, trailing blanks are NOT allowed.

**TIMESTAMP.** *Timestamp data type.* The internal format of a Timestamp is a ten byte composite value. The composite is two numbers one for date and time respectfully. The date and time numbers have the same encoding as the date and time data types, with an exception to the time number. The time number has an additional 3 bytes for a six packed digit microsecond value. The DDAT number must reference a DDAT with an internal Timestamp format code or be set to zero which implies internal format. The internal format is fixed length, trailing blanks are NOT allowed.

**PseudoDATE.** *Character data type with a DDAT referenced.* The DDAT number must reference a DDAT with a valid date format code. The character string format must match one of the supported formats, trailing blanks are allowed. The length is the number of bytes of the character string which can include trailing blanks.

**PseudoTIME.** *Character data type with a DDAT referenced.* The DDAT number must reference a DDAT with a valid time format code. The character string format must match one of the supported formats, trailing blanks are allowed. The length is the number of bytes of the character string which can include trailing blanks.

**PseudoTIMESTAMP.** *Character data type with a DDAT referenced.* The DDAT number must reference a DDAT with a valid timestamp format code. The character string format must match one of the sup-

ported formats, trailing blanks are allowed. The length is the number of bytes of the character string which can include trailing blanks.

**DATE DURATION.** *Packed decimal data type with a DDAT referenced.* The length must be 8,0. The DDAT number is set to reference a DDAT with a valid date duration format code.

**TIME DURATION.** *Packed decimal data type with a DDAT referenced.* The length must be 6,0. The DDAT number must reference a DDAT with a valid time duration format code.

**TIMESTAMP DURATION.** *Packed decimal data type with a DDAT referenced.* The length must be 20,6. The DDAT number must reference a DDAT with a valid timestamp duration format code.

**DATE LABEL DURATIONS.** *Packed decimal data type with a DDAT referenced.* The length must be 15,0. The DDAT number must reference a DDAT with a valid date label duration format code.

**TIME LABEL DURATIONS.** *Packed decimal data type with a DDAT referenced.* The length must be 15,0. The DDAT number must reference a DDAT with a valid time label duration format code.

**TIMESTAMP LABEL DURATIONS.** *Packed decimal data type with a DDAT referenced.* The length must be 15,0. The DDAT number must reference a DDAT with a valid timestamp label duration format code.

## Data Conversion

The following table describes the possible conversions for date/time data.

| Source Operand  | Result Operand               |
|-----------------|------------------------------|
| DATE            | DATE or PseudoDATE           |
| TIME            | TIME or PseudoTIME           |
| TIMESTAMP       | TIMESTAMP or PseudoTIMESTAMP |
| PseudoDATE      | DATE or PseudoDATE           |
| PseudoTIME      | TIME or PseudoTIME           |
| PseudoTIMESTAMP | TIMESTAMP or PseudoTIMESTAMP |

## Arithmetic

For all Date/Time arithmetic, Increment, Decrement, and Compute, there must be at least one non-zero DDAT number specified between operand 1, operand 2, and the result.

DDATs are equivalent when both DDAT numbers are 0 or both DDAT numbers are non-zero and the DDATs they reference are byte for byte identical.

End of month adjustment can only be specified in conjunction with Date and Timestamp arithmetic that involves the incrementing and decrementing of Dates or Timestamps.

When end of month adjustment is specified, there must be at least one non-internal format specified for operand 1, operand 2, or the result. When end of month adjustment is not specified all durations must reference a DDAT that specifies a year and month definition other than zero.

## Data Definitional Attribute Template

The following describes the Data Definitional Attribute Template (DDAT).

- Data definitional attribute template (optional) Char(112-n)  
(repeated for each operand/field that requires a template, one template can be used by multiple operands/fields that have the same attributes)
  - DDAT length (ignored) UBin(2)
  - Format code UBin(2)
  - Separator definition Char(2)
    - Date separator type Char(1)
    - Time separator type Char(1)
  - Time zone definition Char(4)
    - Hour zone UBin(2)
    - Minute zone UBin(2)
  - Duration definitions Char(4)
    - Month definition UBin(2)
    - Year definition UBin(2)
  - Century definition Char(8)
    - Current century UBin(4)
    - Century division UBin(4)
  - Calendar table offset UBin(4)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(6)
  - Era table template Char(50-n)
  - Calendar table template Char(18-n)

The following table describes the operand type and DDAT field associations.

| Operand Type                | Format Code | Date Separator | Time Separator | Time Zone | Month Definition | Year Definition | Century | Era Table | Calendar Table |
|-----------------------------|-------------|----------------|----------------|-----------|------------------|-----------------|---------|-----------|----------------|
| Date                        | REQ         | REQ            | INV            | INV       | INV              | INV             | REQ     | REQ       | REQ            |
| Time                        | REQ         | INV            | REQ            | REQ       | INV              | INV             | INV     | INV       | INV            |
| Timestamp                   | REQ         | REQ            | REQ            | REQ       | INV              | INV             | REQ     | REQ       | REQ            |
| Pseudo Date                 | REQ         | REQ            | INV            | INV       | INV              | INV             | REQ     | REQ       | REQ            |
| Pseudo Time                 | REQ         | INV            | REQ            | REQ       | INV              | INV             | INV     | INV       | INV            |
| Pseudo Timestamp            | REQ         | REQ            | REQ            | REQ       | INV              | INV             | REQ     | REQ       | REQ            |
| Date Duration               | REQ         | INV            | INV            | INV       | EMA              | EMA             | INV     | INV       | INV            |
| Time Duration               | REQ         | INV            | INV            | INV       | INV              | INV             | INV     | INV       | INV            |
| Timestamp Duration          | REQ         | INV            | INV            | INV       | EMA              | EMA             | INV     | INV       | INV            |
| Year Label Duration         | REQ         | INV            | INV            | INV       | EMA              | EMA             | INV     | INV       | INV            |
| Month Label Duration        | REQ         | INV            | INV            | INV       | EMA              | EMA             | INV     | INV       | INV            |
| Day Label Duration          | REQ         | INV            | INV            | INV       | EMA              | EMA             | INV     | INV       | INV            |
| Hour Label Duration         | REQ         | INV            | INV            | INV       | INV              | INV             | INV     | INV       | INV            |
| Minute Label Duration       | REQ         | INV            | INV            | INV       | INV              | INV             | INV     | INV       | INV            |
| Second Label Duration       | REQ         | INV            | INV            | INV       | INV              | INV             | INV     | INV       | INV            |
| Micro-second Label Duration | REQ         | INV            | INV            | INV       | INV              | INV             | INV     | INV       | INV            |

## Notes:

**REQ** The DDAT field is required and the value must be non-zero.

**INV** The DDAT field is invalid and the value must be zero.

**EMA** The DDAT field is required to have a zero value for end of month adjustment arithmetic. Otherwise the field value is required to be non-zero.

The **DDAT length** the length of the DDAT in bytes. This field is ignored by the instruction.

The following describes the **format code**. The formats are used to define the representation or interpretation of data across the MI. They also imply the length of the data.

| Format Type                  | Format Code | Minimum Input Length | Maximum Input Length | Minimum Output Length | Maximum Output Length |
|------------------------------|-------------|----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| USA date                     | Hex 0001    | 8                    | n                    | 10                    | n                     |
| USA time                     | Hex 0002    | 7                    | n                    | 8                     | n                     |
| ISO date                     | Hex 0003    | 8                    | n                    | 10                    | n                     |
| ISO time                     | Hex 0004    | 4                    | n                    | 8                     | n                     |
| EUR date                     | Hex 0005    | 8                    | n                    | 10                    | n                     |
| EUR time                     | Hex 0006    | 4                    | n                    | 8                     | n                     |
| JIS date                     | Hex 0007    | 8                    | n                    | 10                    | n                     |
| JIS time                     | Hex 0008    | 4                    | n                    | 8                     | n                     |
| SAA timestamp                | Hex 0009    | 16                   | n                    | 26                    | n                     |
| System internal date         | Hex 000A    | 4                    | 4/n #                | 4                     | 4/n #                 |
| System internal time         | Hex 000B    | 3                    | 3/n #                | 3                     | 3/n #                 |
| System internal timestamp    | Hex 000C    | 10                   | 10/n #               | 10                    | 10/n #                |
| Labeled duration YEAR        | Hex 000D    | 15,0                 | 15,0                 | 15,0                  | 15,0                  |
| Labeled duration MONTH       | Hex 000E    | 15,0                 | 15,0                 | 15,0                  | 15,0                  |
| Labeled duration DAY         | Hex 000F    | 15,0                 | 15,0                 | 15,0                  | 15,0                  |
| Labeled duration HOUR        | Hex 0010    | 15,0                 | 15,0                 | 15,0                  | 15,0                  |
| Labeled duration MINUTE      | Hex 0011    | 15,0                 | 15,0                 | 15,0                  | 15,0                  |
| Labeled duration SECOND      | Hex 0012    | 15,0                 | 15,0                 | 15,0                  | 15,0                  |
| Labeled duration MICROSECOND | Hex 0013    | 15,0                 | 15,0                 | 15,0                  | 15,0                  |
| Date duration                | Hex 0014    | 8,0                  | 8,0                  | 8,0                   | 8,0                   |
| Time duration                | Hex 0015    | 6,0                  | 6,0                  | 6,0                   | 6,0                   |
| Timestamp duration           | Hex 0016    | 20,6                 | 20,6                 | 20,6                  | 20,6                  |
| *MMDDYY                      | Hex 0017    | 6                    | n                    | 6                     | n                     |
| *DDMMYY                      | Hex 0018    | 6                    | n                    | 6                     | n                     |
| *YYMMDD                      | Hex 0019    | 6                    | n                    | 6                     | n                     |
| *YYDDD                       | Hex 001A    | 5                    | n                    | 5                     | n                     |
| *HHMMSS                      | Hex 001B    | 6                    | n                    | 6                     | n                     |
| IMPI clock                   | Hex 001C    | 8                    | 8                    | 8                     | 8                     |
| *YYYYDDD                     | Hex 001D    | 7                    | n                    | 7                     | n                     |
| *YYYYMMDDhhmmss              | Hex 001E    | 14                   | n                    | 14                    | n                     |
| *Unknown date                | Hex 001F    | 4                    | n                    | F                     | n                     |
| *Unknown time                | Hex 0020    | 3                    | n                    | F                     | n                     |
| *Unknown timestamp           | Hex 0021    | 10                   | n                    | F                     | n                     |

| Format Type                  | Format Code | Preferred Format | Search List | Character data type | Packed decimal data type |
|------------------------------|-------------|------------------|-------------|---------------------|--------------------------|
| USA date                     | Hex 0001    | Y                | Y           | Y                   | N                        |
| USA time                     | Hex 0002    | Y                | Y           | Y                   | N                        |
| ISO date                     | Hex 0003    | Y                | Y           | Y                   | N                        |
| ISO time                     | Hex 0004    | Y                | Y           | Y                   | N                        |
| EUR date                     | Hex 0005    | Y                | Y           | Y                   | N                        |
| EUR time                     | Hex 0006    | Y                | Y           | Y                   | N                        |
| JIS date                     | Hex 0007    | Y                | Y           | Y                   | N                        |
| JIS time                     | Hex 0008    | Y                | Y           | Y                   | N                        |
| SAA timestamp                | Hex 0009    | Y                | Y           | Y                   | N                        |
| System internal date         | Hex 000A    | Y                | N           | Y                   | N                        |
| System internal time         | Hex 000B    | Y                | N           | Y                   | N                        |
| System internal timestamp    | Hex 000C    | Y                | N           | Y                   | N                        |
| Labeled duration YEAR        | Hex 000D    |                  |             | N                   | Y                        |
| Labeled duration MONTH       | Hex 000E    |                  |             | N                   | Y                        |
| Labeled duration DAY         | Hex 000F    |                  |             | N                   | Y                        |
| Labeled duration HOUR        | Hex 0010    |                  |             | N                   | Y                        |
| Labeled duration MINUTE      | Hex 0011    |                  |             | N                   | Y                        |
| Labeled duration SECOND      | Hex 0012    |                  |             | N                   | Y                        |
| Labeled duration MICROSECOND | Hex 0013    |                  |             | N                   | Y                        |
| Date duration                | Hex 0014    |                  |             | N                   | Y                        |
| Time duration                | Hex 0015    |                  |             | N                   | Y                        |
| Timestamp duration           | Hex 0016    |                  |             | N                   | Y                        |
| *MMDDYY                      | Hex 0017    | Y                | N           | Y                   | N                        |
| *DDMMYY                      | Hex 0018    | Y                | N           | Y                   | N                        |
| *YYMMDD                      | Hex 0019    | Y                | N           | Y                   | N                        |
| *YYDDD                       | Hex 001A    | Y                | N           | Y                   | N                        |
| *HHMMSS                      | Hex 001B    | Y                | N           | Y                   | N                        |
| IMPI clock                   | Hex 001C    | Y                | N           | Y                   | N                        |
| *YYYYDDD                     | Hex 001D    | Y                | Y           | Y                   | N                        |
| *YYYYMMDDhhmmss              | Hex 001E    | Y                | Y           | Y                   | N                        |
| *Unknown date                | Hex 001F    |                  |             | Y                   | N                        |
| *Unknown time                | Hex 0020    |                  |             | Y                   | N                        |
| *Unknown timestamp           | Hex 0021    |                  |             | Y                   | N                        |

## Notes:

'n' - Any number which is greater than minimum length.

'Y' - Allowed.

'N' - Not allowed.

' ' - Not applicable.

'F' - Reference the formats for this value.

'#' - Date, time, and timestamp data types the length is fixed 4, 3, and 10 respectfully. For the character data type the length is variable.

For further information on the SAA formats reference the SAA CPI Database Reference. The following are the descriptions of the formats, D represents days, M represents months, Y represents years, h represents hours, m represents minutes, s represents seconds and u represents microseconds.

- USA
  - Date - MM/DD/YYYY, character string.
  - Time - hh:mm AM or PM, character string. 00:00 AM or 12:00 AM is midnight. 12:00 PM is noon. Between 'hh:mm' and 'AM' or 'PM' only one blank is allowed.
- ISO
  - Date - YYYY-MM-DD, character string.
  - Time - hh.mm.ss, character string.
- EUR
  - Date - DD.MM.YYYY, character string.
  - Time - hh.mm.ss, character string.
- JIS
  - Date - YYYY-MM-DD, character string.
  - Time - hh:mm:ss, character string.
- SAA timestamp
  - Timestamp - YYYY-MM-DD-hh.mm.ss.uuuuuu, character string. Leading zeros maybe omitted from the month, day, and hour part of the timestamp, and microseconds may be truncated or entirely omitted, (.10 = .100000).
- System internal format
  - Date - 4 byte binary Scaliger number
  - Time - 3 byte value with each byte containing two packed decimal digits having the encoding of hhmmss.
  - Timestamp - 10 byte composite number, the first part being a 4 byte internal date and the second part being a 3 byte internal time, plus microseconds, a 3 byte value with each byte containing two packed decimal digits having the encoding of uuuuuu.
- Labeled durations
  - They are a 15,0 packed decimal data value. The keywords; YEARS, MONTHS, DAYS, HOURS, MINUTES, SECONDS, and MICROSECONDS, or the singular form of the keywords; YEAR, MONTH, DAY, HOUR, MINUTE, SECOND, and MICROSECOND, are not part of the data.
- Date duration
  - Packed decimal (8,0) number having the encoding of YYYYMMDD, where YYYY has the range 0 - 9999, MM has the range 0 - 99, and DD has the range 0 - 99.
- Time duration
  - Packed decimal (6,0) number having the encoding of hhmmss, where hh has the range 0 - 99, mm has the range 0 - 99, and ss has the range 0 - 99.
- Timestamp duration



- Packed decimal (20,6) number having the encoding of YYYYMMDDhhmmssuuuuuu, where in addition to date and time, uuuuuu has the range 0 - 999999.
- \*MMDDYY
  - Date - MMDDYY, character string
- \*DDMMYY
  - Date - DDMMYY, character string
- \*YYMMDD
  - Date - YYMMDD, character string
- \*YYDDD
  - Date - YYDDD, character string
- \*HHMMSS
  - Time - hhmmss, character string
- IMPI clock
  - It is an 8 byte bit clock, which is used as a timestamp.
- \*YYYYDDD
  - Date - YYYYDDD, seven character string. Used on the DATE scalar function.
- \*YYYYMMDDhhmmss
  - Timestamp - YYYYMMDDhhmmss fourteen character string.
- \*Unknown
  - Used to reference unique SAA formats. This format is used only when the format is NOT known. This format tries to find a matching format. The formats that will be scanned for are; USA, ISO, EUR, JIS, dates and times, \*YYYYDDD (date), SAA timestamp, and \*YYYYMMDDhhmmss timestamp. When a valid match is not found either a data, format or value, exception will be signalled.

The following describes the **separator definitions** for date and time. The **separator type** is a one character field that contains the separator value, for example, :, ., /, or -. When the format has an implied separator, the implied separator is used. For example, an ISO date, the implied separator is '-'. When the format does not have an implied separator, the implied separator is null. For example, the format \*YYMMDD has an implied separator of null. A null separator means the units of time, year, month, day, etc..., are concatenated together. A implied separator is specified by using the value of hex '00'. A null separator is specified by using the value of hex 'FF'. A null separator is invalid for the SAA formats, USA, ISO, etc... Any other separator value overrides the implied value for the format code.

The following describes the **time zone definition**. The **hour zone** value is 0 to 24. GMT zone is 0. The zone to the east of zone 0 is zone 1. The zone to the east of zone 1 is zone 2, and so on. The value 24 specifies that the time is to be stored as local time and that the concept of time zones should be ignored. The value of 24 is required for storage purposes. For example, when inserting a time field into a database data space the hour zone value must be 24. A value other than 24 can be used for retrieval purposes.

The **minute zone** value is 0 to 60. GMT zone is 0. The zone to the west of zone 0 is zone 1. The zone to the west of zone 1 is zone 2, and so on. The value 60 specifies that the time is to be stored as local time and that the concept of time zones should be ignored. The value of 60 is required for storage purposes. For example, when inserting a time field into a database data space the minute zone value must be 60. A value other than 60 can be used for retrieval purposes.

The **month definition** is an integer number of days. For example 30, would specify that each month use in a duration would have a constant value of 30 days. The a value of zero specifies that the calendar definition of the month should be used.

The **year definition** is an integer number of days. For example 365, would specify that each year use in a duration would have a constant value of 365 days. The a value of zero specifies that the calendar definition of the year should be used.

When end of month adjustment arithmetic is being performed, the *month definition* and *year definition* must have zero values. When no end of month adjustment arithmetic is being performed, the *month definition* and *year definition* must have non-zero values. Otherwise a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be signaled.

The **century field** is used to define the century when a two digit year is specified for a date. The definition is two numbers, one for current century and the other is for the century division year. The current century is a century number. The century division is a year number. The valid values for the current century are 0 - 99. The valid values for the century division are 0 - 99. The century division is included in the current century. For example, a current century of 19 and a century division of 50 would result in two digit years 00 - 49, having the values 2000 - 2049 and 50 - 99 having values 1950 - 1999.

The **calendar table offset** is the number of bytes from the start of the DDAT to the start of the calendar table (described below).

## Era Table

The **era table** immediately follows the fixed portion of the DDAT.

The following describes the era table data.

- |                            |          |
|----------------------------|----------|
| • Number of table elements | UBin(2)  |
| • Era element (repeatable) | Char(48) |
| — Origin date              | UBin(4)  |
| — Era name                 | Char(32) |
| — Reserved (binary 0)      | Char(12) |

The *era table* is a list of elements that state what era should be used across the time line. The start of usage of a particular era is specified by the origin date. The end of usage of a particular era is terminated by the next table element. The last table element era is used until the end of the time line. The origin date is specified in the internal format. The era name is a character field. The maximum number of table entries allowed is 256.

The SAA *era table* has one entry. The SAA origin date is January 1, 0001, Gregorian for the start of the time line. The internal format would be 1721424. The SAA name is AD, anno Domini.

The SAA *era table* can have only one element and that element must have an effective date that falls in the time line specified in the SAA *calendar table*.

## Calendar Table

The following describes the calendar table data.

- Number of table elements UBin(2)
- Calendar change element (repeatable) Char(16)
  - Effective date UBin(4)
  - Calendar type UBin(2)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(10)

The *calendar table* is a list of elements that state what calendar type/algorithm should be used across the time line. The start of usage of a particular calendar is specified by the effective date. The effective date is specified using the internal format. This first table element represent the beginning of the time line. The end of usage of a particular calendar is terminated by the next table element. The last table element calendar must be null this indicates the end of the time line. The maximum number of table entries allowed is 256.

The SAA *calendar table* has 2 entries. The first entry has a calendar type of Gregorian. The effective date is January 1, 0001, Gregorian for the start of the time line. The internal format would be 1721424. The second entry has a calendar type of null. The effective date is January 1, 10000, Gregorian for the end of the time line. The internal format would be 5373485.

Multiple calendar table entries are only valid with DDATs specifying the internal date *format code*. The rest of *format codes* can only have two entries in the calendar table. The second entry must have a NULL *calendar type*.

The following describes the encoding of the calendar types.

| Calendar type | Calendar type value |
|---------------|---------------------|
| Null          | Hex 0000            |
| Gregorian     | Hex 0001            |
| Julian        | Hex 0002            |
| Muslim        | Hex 0003            |
| Hebrew        | Hex 0004            |

## Compute Date Duration (CDD)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1     | Operand 2 | Operand 3 | Operand 4            |
|---------------|---------------|-----------|-----------|----------------------|
| 0424          | Date duration | Date 1    | Date 2    | Instruction template |

*Operand 1:* Packed decimal variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar.

*Operand 3:* Character scalar.

*Operand 4:* Space pointer.

### ILE access

```
CDD (
  var date_duration      : packed decimal;
  var date1              : aggregate;
  var date2              : aggregate;
  instruction_template : space pointer
)
```

**Description:** The date specified by operand 3 is subtracted from the date specified by operand 2 and the value of the results a duration is place in operand 1. Operand 4 defines the data definitional attributes for operands 1 through 3.

A negative value will be returned when the first operand is less than the second operand.

The following describes the instruction template.

- Instruction template Char(\*)
  - Instruction template size UBin(4)
  - Operand 1 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Operand 2 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Operand 3 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(2)
  - Operand 2 length UBin(2)
  - Operand 3 length UBin(2)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(26)
  - Data definitional attribute template list Char(\*)
    - Size of the DDAT list UBin(4)
    - Number of DDATs UBin(2)
    - Reserved (binary 0) Char(10)
    - DDAT offset (repeated) UBin(4)
    - Data definitional attribute template (repeated) Char(\*)

A **data definitional attribute template (DDAT) number** is a number that corresponds to the relative position of a template in the **data definitional attribute template list**. For example the number 1 references the first template. The valid values for this field are 1, 2, and 3.

The DDAT for operand 1 must be valid for a date duration. The DDATs for operands 2 and 3 must be valid for a date and identical. Otherwise, a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be signaled.

**Operand 2 length** and **operand 3 length** are specified in number of bytes.

The **size of the DDAT list** is specified in bytes.

The **number of DDATs** is the count of DDATs specified for this instruction template. The maximum number of DDATs that can be specified is 3.

The **DDAT offset** is the number of bytes from the start of the DDAT list to the start of the specific DDAT. There should be as many *DDAT offsets* as there are DDATs specified.

A data definitional attribute template defines the presentation of the data. Each template describes the definitional attributes of the operands. The length of the character operands will be defined by the template. For a further description of the data definitional attribute template, see "Data Definitional Attribute Template" on page 3-5

### Authorization Required

- None.

### Lock Enforcement

- None.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Space addressing violation       | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/Parameter               |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 0C Computation                      |          |   |   |   |       |
| 15 Data boundary overflow           |          | X | X |   |       |
| 16 Data format                      |          | X | X |   |       |
| 17 Data value                       |          | X | X |   |       |
| 18 Date boundary underflow          |          | X | X |   |       |
| 10 Damage Encountered               |          |   |   |   |       |
| 04 System object damage state       | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 44 Partial system object damage     | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 20 Machine Support                  |          |   |   |   |       |
| 02 Machine check                    |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 03 Function check                   |          |   |   |   | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 22        | Object Access                          |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 24        | Pointer Specification                  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource Control Limit                 |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 User Profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar Specification                   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Scalar attributes invalid           |          | X |   | X |       |
|           | 03 Scalar value invalid                |          | X |   | X |       |
| 36        | Space Management                       |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Space Extension/Truncation          |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template Specification                 |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Template value invalid              |          |   |   | X |       |

## Compute Time Duration (CTD)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1     | Operand 2 | Operand 3 | Operand 4            |
|---------------|---------------|-----------|-----------|----------------------|
| 0454          | Time duration | Time 1    | Time 2    | Instruction template |

*Operand 1:* Packed decimal variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar.

*Operand 3:* Character scalar.

*Operand 4:* Space pointer.

### ILE access

```
CTD (
  var time_duration      : packed decimal;
  var time1              : aggregate;
  var time2              : aggregate;
  instruction_template : space pointer
)
```

**Description:** The time specified by operand 3 is subtracted from the time specified by operand 2 and the value of the results a duration is place in operand 1. Operand 4 defines the data definitional attributes for operands 1 through 3.

A negative value will be returned when the first operand is less than the second operand.

The following describes the instruction template.

- Instruction template
  - Instruction template size Char(\*)
  - Operand 1 data definitional attribute template number UBin(4)
  - Operand 2 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Operand 3 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Reserved (binary 0) UBin(2)
  - Operand 2 length Char(2)
  - Operand 3 length UBin(2)
  - Reserved (binary 0) UBin(2)
  - Data definitional attribute template list Char(26)
  - Size of the DDAT list Char(\*)
  - Number of DDATs UBin(4)
  - Reserved (binary 0) UBin(2)
  - DDAT offset (repeated) Char(10)
  - Data definitional attribute template (repeated) UBin(4)
  - Data definitional attribute template (repeated) Char(\*)

A **data definitional attribute template (DDAT) number** is a number that corresponds to the relative position of a template in the *data definitional attribute template list*. For example the number 1 references the first template. The valid values for this field are 1, 2, and 3.

The DDAT for operand 1 must be valid for a time duration. The DDATs for operands 2 and 3 must be valid for a time and identical. Otherwise, a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be signaled.

**Operand 2 length** and **operand 3 length** are specified in number of bytes.

The **size of the DDAT list** is specified in bytes.

The **number of DDATs** is the count of DDATs specified for this instruction template. The maximum number of DDATs that can be specified is 3.

The **DDAT offset** is the number of bytes from the start of the DDAT list to the start of the specific DDAT. There should be as many *DDAT offsets* as there are DDATs specified.

A data definitional attribute template defines the presentation of the data. Each template describes the definitional attributes of the operands. The length of the character operands will be defined by the template. For a further description of the data definitional attribute template, see "Data Definitional Attribute Template" on page 3-5

### Authorization Required

- None.

### Lock Enforcement

- None.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Space addressing violation       | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/Parameter               |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 0C Computation                      |          |   |   |   |       |
| 16 Data format                      |          | X | X |   |       |
| 17 Data value                       |          | X | X |   |       |
| 10 Damage Encountered               |          |   |   |   |       |
| 04 System object damage state       | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 44 Partial system object damage     | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 20 Machine Support                  |          |   |   |   |       |
| 02 Machine check                    |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 03 Function check                   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22 Object Access                    |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Object not found                 | X        | X | X | X |       |



| Exception                              | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 24 Pointer Specification               |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 2E Resource Control Limit              |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 User Profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 32 Scalar Specification                |          |   |   |   |       |
| 02 Scalar attributes invalid           |          | X |   | X |       |
| 03 Scalar value invalid                |          | X |   | X |       |
| 36 Space Management                    |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Space Extension/Truncation          |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 38 Template Specification              |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Template value invalid              |          |   |   | X |       |

## Compute Timestamp Duration (CTSD)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1          | Operand 2   | Operand 3   | Operand 4            |
|---------------|--------------------|-------------|-------------|----------------------|
| 043C          | Timestamp duration | Timestamp 1 | Timestamp 2 | Instruction template |

*Operand 1:* Packed decimal variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar.

*Operand 3:* Character scalar.

*Operand 4:* Space pointer.

### ILE access

```
CTSD (
  var timestamp_duration : packed decimal;
  var timestamp1         : aggregate;
  var timestamp2         : aggregate;
      instruction_template : space pointer
)
```

**Description:** The timestamp specified by operand 3 is subtracted from the timestamp specified by operand 2 and the value of the results a duration is place in operand 1. Operand 4 defines the data definitional attributes for operands 1 through 3.

A negative value will be returned when the first operand is less than the second operand.

The following describes the instruction template.

- Instruction template Char(\*)
  - Instruction template size Bin(4)
  - Operand 1 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Operand 2 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Operand 3 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(2)
  - Operand 2 length UBin(2)
  - Operand 3 length UBin(2)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(26)
  - Data definitional attribute template list Char(\*)
    - Size of the DDAT list UBin(4)
    - Number of DDATs UBin(2)
    - Reserved (binary 0) Char(10)
    - DDAT offset (repeated) UBin(4)
    - Data definitional attribute template (repeated) Char(\*)

A **data definitional attribute template (DDAT) number** is a number that corresponds to the relative position of a template in the *data definitional attribute template list*. For example the number 1 references the first template. The valid values for this field are 1, 2, and 3.

The DDAT for operand 1 must be valid for a timestamp duration. The DDATs for operands 2 and 3 must be valid for a timestamp and identical. Otherwise, a *emplate value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be signaled.

**Operand 2 length** and **operand 3 length** are specified in number of bytes.

The **size of the DDAT list** is specified in bytes.

The **number of DDATs** is the count of DDATs specified for this instruction template. The maximum number of DDATs that can be specified is 3.

The **DDAT offset** is the number of bytes from the start of the DDAT list to the start of the specific DDAT. There should be as many *DDAT offsets* as there are DDATs specified.

A data definitional attribute template defines the presentation of the data. Each template describes the definitional attributes of the operands. The length of the character operands will be defined by the template. For a further description of the data definitional attribute template, see :href=DDAT.

## Authorization Required

- None.

## Lock Enforcement

- None.

## Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Space addressing violation       | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/Parameter               |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 0C Computation                      |          |   |   |   |       |
| 15 Data boundary overflow           |          | X | X |   |       |
| 16 Data format                      |          | X | X |   |       |
| 17 Data value                       |          | X | X |   |       |
| 18 Date boundary underflow          |          | X | X |   |       |
| 10 Damage Encountered               |          |   |   |   |       |
| 04 System object damage state       | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 44 Partial system object damage     | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 20 Machine Support                  |          |   |   |   |       |

| Exception                              | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 03 Function check                      |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22 Object Access                       |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 24 Pointer Specification               |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 2E Resource Control Limit              |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 User Profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 32 Scalar Specification                |          |   |   |   |       |
| 02 Scalar attributes invalid           |          | X |   | X |       |
| 03 Scalar value invalid                |          | X |   | X |       |
| 36 Space Management                    |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Space Extension/Truncation          |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 38 Template Specification              |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Template value invalid              |          |   |   | X |       |

## Convert Date (CVTD)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1   | Operand 2   | Operand 3            |
|---------------|-------------|-------------|----------------------|
| 040F          | Result date | Source date | Instruction template |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar.

*Operand 3:* Space pointer.

### ILE access

```
CVTD (
  var result_date      : aggregate;
  var source_date      : aggregate;
  instruction_template : space pointer
)
```

**Description:** The date specified in operand 2 is converted to another calendar external or internal presentation and placed in operand 1. Operand 3 defines the data definitional attributes for operands 1 and 2.

The following describes the instruction template.

- Instruction template
  - Instruction template size Char(\*)
  - Instruction template size Bin(4)
  - Operand 1 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Operand 2 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(2)
  - Operand 1 length UBin(2)
  - Operand 2 length UBin(2)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(2)
  - Preferred/Found date format UBin(2)
  - Preferred/Found date separator Char(1)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(23)
  - Data definitional attribute template list Char(\*)
    - Size of the DDAT list UBin(4)
    - Number of DDATs UBin(2)
    - Reserved (binary 0) Char(10)
    - DDAT offset (repeated) UBin(4)
    - Data definitional attribute template (repeated) Char(\*)

A **data definitional attribute template number** is a number that corresponds to the relative position of a template in the **data definitional attribute template list**. For example the number 1 references the first template. The valid values for this field are 1 and 2.

The DDATs for operands 1 and 2 must be valid for a date. Otherwise, a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be signaled.

**Operand 1 length** and **operand 2 length** are specified in number of bytes.

If the *data definitional attribute template numbers* for operands 1 and 2 are the same, only data validation is performed. The validation will check for format and data value correctness.

A format of unknown date, time, or timestamp will indicate that operand 2 will be scanned for a valid format. For a list of formats that can be scanned, see "Data Definitional Attribute Template" on page 3-5. With an unknown format, the **preferred/found format** and **preferred/found separator** can be specified to select an additional non-scannable format. This *preferred format* and *preferred separator* will be used first to find a matching format before scanning operand 2. When the *preferred format* and *preferred separator* have a hex value of zero, only the scan occurs.

When a format of unknown date, time, or timestamp is specified, the *preferred/found format* and *preferred/found separator* fields will be set to the format and separator found.

The **size of the DDAT list** is specified in bytes.

The **number of DDATs** is the count of DDATs specified for this instruction template. The maximum number of DDATs that can be specified is 2.

The **DDAT offset** is the number of bytes from the start of the DDAT list to the start of the specific DDAT. There should be as many *DDAT offsets* as there are DDATs specified.

A data definitional attribute template defines the presentation of the data. Each template describes the definitional attributes of the operands. The length of the character operands will be defined by the templates. For a further description of the data definitional attribute template, see "Data Definitional Attribute Template" on page 3-5.

### Authorization Required

- None.

### Lock Enforcement

- None.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Space addressing violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/Parameter               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X |       |
| 0C Computation                      |          |   |   |       |
| 15 Data boundary overflow           |          | X | X |       |
| 16 Data format                      |          | X |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|           | 17 Data value                          |          | X |   |       |
|           | 18 Date boundary underflow             |          | X | X |       |
| 10        | Damage Encountered                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          | X        | X | X | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        | X        | X | X | X     |
| 20        | Machine Support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object Access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
| 24        | Pointer Specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource Control Limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 User Profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar Specification                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Scalar attributes invalid           |          | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Scalar value invalid                |          | X | X |       |
| 36        | Space Management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Space Extension/Truncation          |          |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template Specification                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Template value invalid              |          |   | X |       |

## Convert Time (CVTT)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1   | Operand 2   | Operand 3            |
|---------------|-------------|-------------|----------------------|
| 041F          | Result time | Source time | Instruction template |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar.

*Operand 3:* Space pointer.

### ILE access

```
CVTT (
  var result_time      : aggregate
  var source_time      : aggregate
  instruction_template : space pointer
)
```

**Description:** The time specified in operand 2 is converted to another external or internal presentation and placed in operand 1. Operand 3 defines the data definitional attributes for operands 1 and 2.

The following describes the instruction template.

- Instruction template Char(\*)
  - Instruction template size Bin(4)
  - Operand 1 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Operand 2 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(2)
  - Operand 1 length UBin(2)
  - Operand 2 length UBin(2)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(2)
  - Preferred/Found time format UBin(2)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(1)
  - Preferred/Found time separator Char(1)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(22)
  - Data definitional attribute template list Char(\*)
    - Size of the DDAT list UBin(4)
    - Number of DDATs UBin(2)
    - Reserved (binary 0) Char(10)
    - DDAT offset (repeated) UBin(4)
    - Data definitional attribute template (repeated) Char(\*)

A **data definitional attribute template number** is a number that corresponds to the relative position of a template in the **data definitional attribute template list**. For example the number 1 references the first template. The valid values for this field are 1 and 2.



The DDATs for operands 1 and 2 must be valid for a time. Otherwise, a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be signaled.

**Operand 1 length** and **operand 2 length** are specified in number of bytes.

If the *data definitional attribute template numbers* for operands 1 and 2 are the same, only data validation is performed. The validation will check for format and data value correctness.

A format of unknown date, time, or timestamp will indicate that operand 2 will be scanned for a valid format. For a list of formats that can be scanned, see "Data Definitional Attribute Template" on page 3-5. With an unknown format, the **preferred/found format** and **preferred/found separator** can be specified to select an additional non-scannable format. This *preferred format* and *preferred separator* will be used first to find a matching format before scanning operand 2. When the *preferred format* and *preferred separator* have a hex value of zero, only the scan occurs.

When a format of unknown date, time, or timestamp is specified, the *preferred/found format* and *preferred/found separator* fields will be set to the format and separator found.

The **size of the DDAT list** is specified in bytes.

The **number of DDATs** is the count of DDATs specified for this instruction template. The maximum number of DDATs that can be specified is 2.

The **DDAT offset** is the number of bytes from the start of the DDAT list to the start of the specific DDAT. There should be as many DDAT offsets as there are DDATs specified.

A data definitional attribute template defines the presentation of the data. Each template describes the definitional attributes of the operands. The length of the character operands will be defined by the templates. For a further description of the data definitional attribute template, see "Data Definitional Attribute Template" on page 3-5.

## Authorization Required

- None.

## Lock Enforcement

- None.

## Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Space addressing violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/Parameter               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X |       |
| 0C Computation                      |          |   |   |       |
| 16 Data format                      |          | X |   |       |
| 17 Data value                       |          | X |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 10        | Damage Encountered                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          | X        | X | X | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        | X        | X | X | X     |
| 20        | Machine Support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object Access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
| 24        | Pointer Specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource Control Limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 User Profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar Specification                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Scalar attributes invalid           |          | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Scalar value invalid                |          | X | X |       |
| 36        | Space Management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Space Extension/Truncation          |          |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template Specification                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Template value invalid              |          |   | X |       |

## Convert Timestamp (CVTTS)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1           | Operand 2       | Operand 3            |
|---------------|---------------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| 043F          | Converted timestamp | Input timestamp | Instruction template |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar.

*Operand 3:* Space pointer.

### ILE access

```
CVTTS (
  var result_timestamp      : aggregate
  var source_timestamp      : aggregate
    instruction_template : space pointer
)
```

**Description:** The timestamp specified in operand 2 is converted to another external or internal presentation and placed in operand 1. Operand 3 defines the data definitional attributes for operands 1 and 2.

The following describes the instruction template.

- Instruction template
  - Instruction template size Char(\*)
  - Instruction template size Bin(4)
  - Operand 1 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Operand 2 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(2)
  - Operand 1 length UBin(2)
  - Operand 2 length UBin(2)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(2)
  - Preferred/Found timestamp format UBin(2)
  - Preferred/Found date separator Char(1)
  - Preferred/Found time separator Char(1)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(22)
  - Data definitional attribute template list Char(\*)
    - Size of the DDAT list UBin(4)
    - Number of DDATs UBin(2)
    - Reserved (binary 0) Char(10)
    - DDAT offset (repeated) UBin(4)
    - Data definitional attribute template (repeated) Char(\*)

A **data definitional attribute template number** is a number that corresponds to the relative position of a template in the **data definitional attribute template list**. For example the number 1 references the first template. The valid values for this field are 1 and 2.

The DDATs for operands 1 and 2 must be valid for a timestamp. Otherwise, a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be issued.

**Operand 1 length** and **operand 2 length** are specified in number of bytes.

If the *data definitional attribute template numbers* for operands 1 and 2 are the same, only data validation is performed. The validation will check for format and data value correctness.

A format of unknown date, time, or timestamp will indicate that

A format of unknown date, time, or timestamp will indicate that operand 2 will be scanned for a valid format. For a list of formats that can be scanned, see "Data Definitional Attribute Template" on page 3-5. With an unknown format, the **preferred/found format** and **preferred/found separator** can be specified to select an additional non-scannable format. This *preferred format* and *preferred separator* will be used first to find a matching format before scanning operand 2. When the *preferred format* and *preferred separator* have a hex value of zero, only the scan occurs.

When a format of unknown date, time, or timestamp is specified, the *preferred/found format* and *preferred/found separator* fields will be set to the format and separator found.

The **size of the DDAT list** is specified in bytes.

The **number of DDATs** is the count of DDATs specified for this instruction template. The maximum number of DDATs that can be specified is 2.

The **DDAT offset** is the number of bytes from the start of the DDAT list to the start of the specific DDAT. There should be as many DDAT offsets as there are DDATs specified.

A data definitional attribute template defines the presentation of the data. Each template describes the definitional attributes of the operands. The length of the character operands will be defined by the templates. For a further description of the data definitional attribute template, see "Data Definitional Attribute Template" on page 3-5.

## Authorization Required

- None.

## Lock Enforcement

- None.

## Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Space addressing violation       | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Range                            | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/Parameter                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X |       |
| 0C        | Computation                         |          |   |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|           | 15 Data boundary overflow              |          | X |   |       |
|           | 16 Data format                         |          | X |   |       |
|           | 17 Data value                          |          | X |   |       |
|           | 18 Date boundary underflow             |          | X |   |       |
| 10        | Damage Encountered                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          | X        | X | X | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        | X        | X | X | X     |
| 20        | Machine Support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object Access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
| 24        | Pointer Specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource Control Limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 User Profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar Specification                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Scalar attributes invalid           |          | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Scalar value invalid                |          | X | X |       |
| 36        | Space Management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Space Extension/Truncation          |          |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template Specification                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Template value invalid              |          |   | X |       |

## Decrement Date (DECD)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1   | Operand 2   | Operand 3 | Operand 4            |
|---------------|-------------|-------------|-----------|----------------------|
| 0414          | Result date | Source date | Duration  | Instruction template |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar.

*Operand 3:* Packed decimal scalar.

*Operand 4:* Space pointer.

### ILE access

```
DECD (
  var result_date      : aggregate;
  var source_date      : aggregate;
  var duration         : packed decimal;
  instruction_template : space pointer
)
```

**Description:** The date specified by operand 2 is decremented by the date duration specified by operand 3. The resulting date from the operation is placed in operand 1. Operand 4 defines the data definitional attributes for operands 1 through 3.

The following describes the instruction template.

- Instruction template Char(\*)
  - Instruction template size Bin(4)
  - Operand 1 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Operand 2 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Operand 3 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Operand 1 length UBin(2)
  - Operand 2 length UBin(2)
  - Operand 3 length UBin(2)
    - Fractional number of digits Char(1)
    - Total number of digits Char(1)
  - Input indicators Char(2)
    - End of month adjustment Bit 0
      - 0 = No adjustment
      - 1 = Adjustment
    - Tolerate data decimal errors Bit 1
      - 0 = No toleration
      - 1 = Tolerate
    - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 2-15
  - Output indicators Char(2)

|   |          |
|---|----------|
| - End of month adjustment                         | Bit 0    |
| 0 = No adjustment                                 |          |
| 1 = Adjustment                                    |          |
| - Reserved (binary 0)                             | Bit 1-15 |
| - Reserved (binary 0)                             | Char(22) |
| - Data definitional attribute template list       | Char(*)  |
| - Size of the DDAT list                           | UBin(4)  |
| - Number of DDATs                                 | UBin(2)  |
| - Reserved (binary 0)                             | Char(10) |
| - DDAT offset (repeated)                          | UBin(4)  |
| - Data definitional attribute template (repeated) | Char(*)  |

A **data definitional attribute template (DDAT) number** is a number that corresponds to the relative position of a template in the **data definitional attribute template list**. For example the number 1 references the first template. The valid values for this field are 1, 2, and 3.

The DDATs for operands 1 and 2 must be valid for a date and identical. The DDAT for operand 3 must be valid for a date duration. Otherwise, a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be issued.

**Operand 1 length** and **operand 2 length** are specified in number of bytes.

The **input indicator, end of month adjustment**, is used to allow or disallow the occurrence of an end of month adjustment.

The input indicator, **tolerate decimal data errors**, is used to determine whether errors found in the packed data for the duration will generate exceptions or will be ignored. When the errors are to be *tolerated*, the following rules will apply:

1. An invalid sign nibble found in the packed data value will be changed to a hex F.
2. Any invalid decimal digits found in the packed data value will be forced to zero.
3. If all digits of a packed data value become zero, and no decimal overflow condition exists, the sign will be set to hex F. If all digits are zero and a decimal overflow condition exists, then the sign will not be changed, but its representation will be changed to the preferred sign code.

The **output indicator, end of month adjustment**, is used to indicate an end of month adjustment, when end of month adjustments are allowed.

End of month adjustment is the following concept. For SAA, the result of subtracting a 1 month duration from the Gregorian date 03/31/1989 is 02/28/1989. The days portion is adjusted to fit the month, 31 is changed to 28. When this happens, the *end of month adjustment output indicator* is set to *on*.

When *end of month adjustments are not allowed*, the month and year definitions in the data definition attribute template must have values greater than zero, otherwise a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be signalled. The result of subtracting a 1 month duration from the Gregorian date 03/31/1989 is 03/01/1989, when the definition of a month is 30 days.

The **size of the DDAT list** is specified in bytes.

The **number of DDATs** is the count of DDATs specified for this instruction template. The maximum number of DDATs that can be specified is 3.

The **DDAT offset** is the number of bytes from the start of the DDAT list to the start of the specific DDAT. There should be as many *DDAT offsets* as there are DDATs specified.

A data definitional attribute template defines the presentation of the data. Each template describes definitional attributes of the operands. The length of the date and date duration character operands will be defined by the template. For a further description of the data definitional attribute template, see "Data Definitional Attribute Template" on page 3-5.

### Authorization Required

- None.

### Lock Enforcement

- None.

### Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Space addressing violation       | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Range                            | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/Parameter                  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 0C        | Computation                         |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Decimal data                     |          |   | X |   |       |
|           | 15 Date boundary overflow           | X        | X |   |   |       |
|           | 16 Data format                      |          | X |   |   |       |
|           | 17 Data value                       |          | X |   |   |       |
|           | 18 Date boundary underflow          | X        | X |   |   |       |
| 10        | Damage Encountered                  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state       | X        | X | X | X | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage     | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 20        | Machine Support                     |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                    |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object Access                       |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                 | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                 | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                 | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 24        | Pointer Specification               |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist           | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid             | X        | X | X | X |       |



| Exception |  | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 2E        | Resource Control Limit                 |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 User Profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar Specification                   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Scalar attributes invalid           |          | X |   | X |       |
|           | 03 Scalar value invalid                |          | X |   | X |       |
| 36        | Space Management                       |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Space Extension/Truncation          |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template Specification                 |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Template value invalid              |          |   |   | X |       |

**Decrement Time (DECT)**

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1   | Operand 2   | Operand 3 | Operand 4            |
|---------------|-------------|-------------|-----------|----------------------|
| 0444          | Result time | Source time | Duration  | Instruction template |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar.

*Operand 3:* Packed decimal scalar.

*Operand 4:* Space pointer.

**ILE access**

```
DECT (
  var result_time      : aggregate;
  var source_time      : aggregate;
  var duration         : packed decimal;
  instruction_template : space pointer
)
```

**Description:** The time specified by operand 2 is decremented by the time duration specified by operand 3. The resulting time from the operation is placed in operand 1. Operand 4 defines the data definitional attributes for operands 1 through 3.

The following describes the instruction template.

- Instruction template
  - Instruction template size Char(\*)
  - Operand 1 data definitional attribute template number Bin(4)
  - Operand 2 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Operand 3 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Operand 1 length UBin(2)
  - Operand 2 length UBin(2)
  - Operand 3 length UBin(2)
    - Fractional number of digits Char(1)
    - Total number of digits Char(1)
  - Input indicators Char(2)
    - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 0
    - Tolerate data decimal errors Bit 1
      - 0 = No toleration
      - 1 = Tolerate
    - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 2-15
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(24)
  - Data definitional attribute template list Char(\*)
    - Size of the DDAT list UBin(4)

|   |          |
|---|----------|
| - Number of DDATs                                 | UBin(2)  |
| - Reserved (binary 0)                             | Char(10) |
| - DDAT offset (repeated)                          | UBin(4)  |
| - Data definitional attribute template (repeated) | Char(*)  |

A **data definitional attribute template (DDAT) number** is a number that corresponds to the relative position of a template in the **data definitional attribute template list**. For example the number 1 references the first template. The valid values for this field are 1, 2, and 3.

The DDATs for operands 1 and 2 must be valid for a time and identical. The DDAT for operand 3 must be valid for a time duration. Otherwise, a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be issued.

**Operand 1 length** and **operand 2 length** are specified in number of bytes.

The **input indicator, tolerate decimal data errors**, is used to determine whether errors found in the packed data for the duration will generate exceptions or will be ignored. When the errors are to be *tolerated*, the following rules will apply:

1. An invalid sign nibble found in the packed data value will be changed to a hex F.
2. Any invalid decimal digits found in the packed data value will be forced to zero.
3. If all digits of a packed data value become zero, and no decimal overflow condition exists, the sign will be set to hex F. If all digits are zero and a decimal overflow condition exists, then the sign will not be changed, but its representation will be changed to the preferred sign code.

The **size of the DDAT list** is specified in bytes.

The **number of DDATs** is the count of DDATs specified for this instruction template. The maximum number of DDATs that can be specified is 3.

The **DDAT offset** is the number of bytes from the start of the DDAT list to the start of the specific DDAT. There should be as many *DDAT offsets* as there are DDATs specified.

A data definitional attribute template defines the presentation of the data. Each template describes the definitional attributes of the operands. The length of the time and time duration character operands will be defined by the templates. For a further description of the data definitional attribute template, see "Data Definitional Attribute Template" on page 3-5.

## Authorization Required

- None.

## Lock Enforcement

- None.

## Exceptions

| Exception                     | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|                               | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 06 Addressing                 |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Space addressing violation | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment         | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                      | X        | X | X | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/Parameter                     |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 0C        | Computation                            |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Decimal data                        |          |   | X |   |       |
|           | 16 Data format                         |          | X |   |   |       |
|           | 17 Data value                          |          | X |   |   |       |
| 10        | Damage Encountered                     |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          | X        | X | X | X | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 20        | Machine Support                        |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object Access                          |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 24        | Pointer Specification                  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource Control Limit                 |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 User Profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar Specification                   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Scalar attributes invalid           |          | X |   | X |       |
|           | 03 Scalar value invalid                |          | X |   | X |       |
| 36        | Space Management                       |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Space Extension/Truncation          |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template Specification                 |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Template value invalid              |          |   |   | X |       |

**Decrement Timestamp (DECTS)**

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1        | Operand 2        | Operand 3 | Operand 4            |
|---------------|------------------|------------------|-----------|----------------------|
| 042C          | Result timestamp | Source timestamp | Duration  | Instruction template |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar.

*Operand 3:* Packed decimal scalar.

*Operand 4:* Space pointer.

**ILE access**

```

DECTS (
  var result_timestamp      : aggregate;
  var source_timestamp      : aggregate;
  var duration              : packed decimal;
  instruction_template : space pointer
)

```

**Description:** The timestamp specified by operand 2 is decremented by the date, time, or timestamp duration specified by operand 3. The resulting timestamp from the operation is placed in operand 1. Operand 4 defines the data definitional attributes for operands 1 through 3.

The following describes the instruction template.

- Instruction template
  - Instruction template size Char(\*)
  - Operand 1 data definitional attribute template number Bin(4)
  - Operand 2 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Operand 3 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Operand 1 length UBin(2)
  - Operand 2 length UBin(2)
  - Operand 3 length UBin(2)
    - Fractional number of digits Char(1)
    - Total number of digits Char(1)
  - Input indicators Char(2)
    - End of month adjustment Bit 0
      - 0 = No adjustment
      - 1 = Adjustment
    - Tolerate data decimal errors Bit 1
      - 0 = No toleration
      - 1 = Tolerate
    - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 2-15
  - Output indicators Char(2)

|   |          |
|---|----------|
| - End of month adjustment                         | Bit 0    |
| 0 = No adjustment                                 |          |
| 1 = Adjustment                                    |          |
| - Reserved (binary 0)                             | Bit 1-15 |
| - Reserved (binary 0)                             | Char(22) |
| - Data definitional attribute template list       | Char(*)  |
| - Size of the DDAT list                           | UBin(4)  |
| - Number of DDATs                                 | UBin(2)  |
| - Reserved (binary 0)                             | Char(10) |
| - DDAT offset (repeated)                          | UBin(4)  |
| - Data definitional attribute template (repeated) | Char(*)  |

A **data definitional attribute template (DDAT) number** is a number that corresponds to the relative position of a template in the **data definitional attribute template list**. For example the number 1 references the first template. The valid values for this field are 1, 2, and 3.

The DDATs for operands 1 and 2 must be valid for a timestamp and identical. The DDAT for operand 3 must be valid for a timestamp duration. Otherwise, a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be issued.

**Operand 1 length** and **operand 2 length** are specified in number of bytes.

The **input indicator, end of month adjustment**, is used to allow or disallow the occurrence of an end of month adjustment.

The input indicator, **tolerate decimal data errors**, is used to determine whether errors found in the packed data for the duration will generate exceptions or will be ignored. When the errors are to be *tolerated*, the following rules will apply:

1. An invalid sign nibble found in the packed data value will be changed to a hex F.
2. Any invalid decimal digits found in the packed data value will be forced to zero.
3. If all digits of a packed data value become zero, and no decimal overflow condition exists, the sign will be set to hex F. If all digits are zero and a decimal overflow condition exists, then the sign will not be changed, but its representation will be changed to the preferred sign code.

The **output indicator, end of month adjustment**, is used to indicate an end of month adjustment, when end of month adjustments are allowed.

End of month adjustment is the following concept. For SAA, the result of subtracting a 1 month duration from the date 03/31/1989 is 02/28/1989. The days portion is adjusted to fit the month, 31 is changed to 28. When this happens, the *end of month adjustment output indicator* is set to *on*.

When *end of month adjustments are not allowed*, the month and year definitions in the data definition attribute template must have values greater than zero, otherwise a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be signaled. The result of subtracting a 1 month duration from the Gregorian date 03/31/1989 is 03/01/1989, when the definition of a month is 30 days.

The **size of the DDAT list** is specified in bytes.

The **number of DDATs** is the count of DDATs specified for this instruction template. The maximum number of DDATs that can be specified is 3.

**The DDAT offset**

is the number of bytes from the start of the DDAT list to the start of the specific DDAT. There should be as many *DDAT offsets* as there are DDATs specified.

A data definitional attribute template defines the presentation of the data. Each template describes the definitional attributes of the operands. The length of the timestamp and duration character operands will be defined by the template. For a further description of the data definitional attribute template, see "Data Definitional Attribute Template" on page 3-5.

**Authorization Required**

- None.

**Lock Enforcement**

- None.

**Exceptions**

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Space addressing violation       | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Range                            | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/Parameter                  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 0C        | Computation                         |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Decimal data                     |          |   | X |   |       |
|           | 15 Date boundary overflow           | X        | X |   |   |       |
|           | 16 Data format                      |          | X |   |   |       |
|           | 17 Data value                       |          | X |   |   |       |
|           | 18 Date boundary underflow          | X        | X |   |   |       |
| 10        | Damage Encountered                  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state       | X        | X | X | X | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage     | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 20        | Machine Support                     |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                    |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object Access                       |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                 | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                 | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                 | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 24        | Pointer Specification               |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist           | X        | X | X | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource Control Limit                 |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 User Profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar Specification                   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Scalar attributes invalid           |          | X |   | X |       |
|           | 03 Scalar value invalid                |          | X |   | X |       |
| 36        | Space Management                       |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Space Extension/Truncation          |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template Specification                 |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Template value invalid              |          |   |   | X |       |



**Increment Date (INCD)**

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1   | Operand 2   | Operand 3 | Operand 4            |
|---------------|-------------|-------------|-----------|----------------------|
| 0404          | Result date | Source date | Duration  | Instruction template |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar.

*Operand 3:* Packed decimal scalar.

*Operand 4:* Space pointer.

**ILE access**

```
INCD (
  var result_date      : aggregate;
  var source_date      : aggregate;
  var duration         : packed decimal;
  instruction_template : space pointer
)
```

**Description:** The date specified by operand 2 is incremented by the date duration specified by operand 3. The resulting date from the operation is placed in operand 1. Operand 4 defines the data definitional attributes for operands 1 through 3.

The following describes the instruction template.

- Instruction template
  - Instruction template size Char(\*)
  - Operand 1 data definitional attribute template number Bin(4)
  - Operand 1 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Operand 2 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Operand 3 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Operand 1 length UBin(2)
  - Operand 2 length UBin(2)
  - Operand 3 length UBin(2)
    - Fractional number of digits Char(1)
    - Total number of digits Char(1)
  - Input indicators Char(2)
    - End of month adjustment Bit 0
      - 0 = No adjustment
      - 1 = Adjustment
    - Tolerate data decimal errors Bit 1
      - 0 = No toleration
      - 1 = Tolerate
    - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 2-15
  - Output indicators Char(2)

|   |          |
|---|----------|
| - End of month adjustment                         | Bit 0    |
| 0 = No adjustment                                 |          |
| 1 = Adjustment                                    |          |
| - Reserved (binary 0)                             | Bit 1-15 |
| - Reserved (binary 0)                             | Char(22) |
| - Data definitional attribute template list       | Char(*)  |
| - Size of the DDAT list                           | UBin(4)  |
| - Number of DDATs                                 | UBin(2)  |
| - Reserved (binary 0)                             | Char(10) |
| - DDAT offset (repeated)                          | UBin(4)  |
| - Data definitional attribute template (repeated) | Char(*)  |

A **data definitional attribute template (DDAT) number** is a number that corresponds to the relative position of a template in the **data definitional attribute template list**. For example the number 1 references the first template. The valid values for this field are 1, 2, and 3.

The DDATs for operands 1 and 2 must be valid for a date and identical. The DDAT for operand 3 must be valid for a date duration. Otherwise, a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be issued.

**Operand 1 length** and **operand 2 length** are specified in number of bytes.

The **input indicator, end of month adjustment**, is used to allow or disallow the occurrence of an end of month adjustment.

The input indicator, **tolerate decimal data errors**, is used to determine whether errors found in the packed data for the duration will generate exceptions or will be ignored. When the errors are to be *tolerated*, the following rules will apply:

1. An invalid sign nibble found in the packed data value will be changed to a hex F.
2. Any invalid decimal digits found in the packed data value will be forced to zero.
3. If all digits of a packed data value become zero, and no decimal overflow condition exists, the sign will be set to hex F. If all digits are zero and a decimal overflow condition exists, then the sign will not be changed, but its representation will be changed to the preferred sign code.

The **output indicator, end of month adjustment**, is used to indicate an end of month adjustment, when end of month adjustments are allowed.

End of month adjustment is the following concept. For SAA, the result of adding a 1 month duration to the date 01/31/1989 is 02/28/1989. The days portion is adjusted to fit the month, 31 is changed to 28. When this happens, the *end of month adjustment output indicator* is set to *on*.

When *end of month adjustments are not allowed*, the month and year definitions in the data definition attribute template must have values greater than zero, otherwise a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be signaled. The result of adding a 1 month duration to the Gregorian date 01/31/1989 is 03/02/1989, when the definition of a month is 30 days.

The **size of the DDAT list** is specified in bytes.

The **number of DDATs** is the count of DDATs specified for this instruction template. The maximum number of DDATs that can be specified is 3.

The **DDAT offset** is the number of bytes from the start of the DDAT list to the start of the specific DDAT. There should be as many *DDAT offsets* as there are DDATs specified.

A data definitional attribute template defines the presentation of the data. Each template describes definitional attributes of the operands. The length of the date and date duration character operands will be defined by the template. For a further description of the data definitional attribute template, see "Data Definitional Attribute Template" on page 3-5.

### Authorization Required

- None.

### Lock Enforcement

- None.

### Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Space addressing violation       | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Range                            | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/Parameter                  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 0C        | Computation                         |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Decimal data                     |          |   | X |   |       |
|           | 15 Date boundary overflow           | X        | X |   |   |       |
|           | 16 Data format                      |          | X |   |   |       |
|           | 17 Data value                       |          | X |   |   |       |
|           | 18 Date boundary underflow          | X        | X |   |   |       |
| 10        | Damage Encountered                  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state       | X        | X | X | X | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage     | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 20        | Machine Support                     |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                    |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object Access                       |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                 | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                 | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                 | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 24        | Pointer Specification               |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist           | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid             | X        | X | X | X |       |

|           |  | Operands |   |   |   |       |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
| Exception |  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 | Other |
| 2E        | Resource Control Limit                 |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 User Profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar Specification                   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Scalar attributes invalid           |          | X |   | X |       |
|           | 03 Scalar value invalid                |          | X |   | X |       |
| 36        | Space Management                       |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Space Extension/Truncation          |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template Specification                 |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Template value invalid              |          |   |   | X |       |

## Increment Time (INCT)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1   | Operand 2   | Operand 3 | Operand 4            |
|---------------|-------------|-------------|-----------|----------------------|
| 0434          | Result time | Source time | Duration  | Instruction template |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar.

*Operand 3:* Packed decimal scalar.

*Operand 4:* Space pointer.

### ILE access

```
INCT (
  var result_time      : aggregate;
  var source_time      : aggregate;
  var duration         : packed decimal;
  instruction_template : space pointer
)
```

**Description:** The time specified by operand 2 is incremented by the time duration specified by operand 3. The resulting time from the operation is placed in operand 1. Operand 4 defines the data definitional attributes for operands 1 through 3.

The following describes the instruction template.

- Instruction template
  - Instruction template size Char(\*)
  - Operand 1 data definitional attribute template number Bin(4)
  - Operand 2 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Operand 3 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Operand 1 length UBin(2)
  - Operand 2 length UBin(2)
  - Operand 3 length UBin(2)
    - Fractional number of digits Char(1)
    - Total number of digits Char(1)
  - Input indicators Char(2)
    - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 0
    - Tolerate data decimal errors Bit 1
      - 0 = No toleration
      - 1 = Tolerate
    - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 2-15
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(24)
  - Data definitional attribute template list Char(\*)
    - Size of the DDAT list UBin(4)

|   |          |
|---|----------|
| - Number of DDATs                                 | UBin(2)  |
| - Reserved (binary 0)                             | Char(10) |
| - DDAT offset (repeated)                          | UBin(4)  |
| - Data definitional attribute template (repeated) | Char(*)  |

A **data definitional attribute template number (DDAT)** is a number that corresponds to the relative position of a template in the **data definitional attribute template list**. For example the number 1 references the first template. The valid values for this field are 1, 2, and 3.

The DDATs for operands 1 and 2 must be valid for a time and identical. The DDAT for operand 3 must be valid for a time duration. Otherwise, a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be issued.

**Operand 1 length** and **operand 2 length** are specified in number of bytes.

The input indicator, **tolerate decimal data errors**, is used to determine whether errors found in the packed data for the duration will generate exceptions or will be ignored. When the errors are to be *tolerated*, the following rules will apply:

1. An invalid sign nibble found in the packed data value will be changed to a hex F.
2. Any invalid decimal digits found in the packed data value will be forced to zero.
3. If all digits of a packed data value become zero, and no decimal overflow condition exists, the sign will be set to hex F. If all digits are zero and a decimal overflow condition exists, then the sign will not be changed, but its representation will be changed to the preferred sign code.

The **size of the DDAT list** is specified in bytes.

The **number of DDATs** is the count of DDATs specified for this instruction template. The maximum number of DDATs that can be specified is 3.

The **DDAT offset** is the number of bytes from the start of the DDAT list to the start of the specific DDAT. There should be as many *DDAT offsets* as there are DDATs specified.

A data definitional attribute template defines the presentation of the data. Each template describes the definitional attributes of the operands. The length of the time and time duration character operands will be defined by the templates. For a further description of the data definitional attribute template, see "Data Definitional Attribute Template" on page 3-5.

## Authorization Required

- None.

## Lock Enforcement

- None.

## Exceptions

| Exception                     | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|                               | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 06 Addressing                 |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Space addressing violation | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment         | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                      | X        | X | X | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/Parameter                     |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 0C        | Computation                            |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Decimal data                        |          |   | X |   |       |
|           | 16 Data format                         |          | X |   |   |       |
|           | 17 Data value                          |          | X |   |   |       |
| 10        | Damage Encountered                     |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          | X        | X | X | X | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 20        | Machine Support                        |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object Access                          |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 24        | Pointer Specification                  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource Control Limit                 |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 User Profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar Specification                   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Scalar attributes invalid           |          | X |   | X |       |
|           | 03 Scalar value invalid                |          | X |   | X |       |
| 36        | Space Management                       |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Space Extension/Truncation          |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template Specification                 |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Template value invalid              |          |   |   | X |       |

## Increment Timestamp (INCTS)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1        | Operand 2        | Operand 3 | Operand 4            |
|---------------|------------------|------------------|-----------|----------------------|
| 040C          | Result timestamp | Source timestamp | Duration  | Instruction template |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar.

*Operand 3:* Packed decimal scalar.

*Operand 4:* Space pointer.

### ILE access

```
INCTS (
  var result_timestamp      : aggregate;
  var source_timestamp      : aggregate;
  var duration              : packed decimal;
  instruction_template : space pointer
)
```

**Description:** The timestamp specified by operand 2 is incremented by the date, time, or timestamp duration specified by operand 3. The resulting timestamp from the operation is placed in operand 1. Operand 4 defines the data definitional attributes for operands 1 through 3.

The following describes the instruction template.

- Instruction template Char(\*)
  - Instruction template size Bin(4)
  - Operand 1 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Operand 2 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Operand 3 data definitional attribute template number UBin(2)
  - Operand 1 length UBin(2)
  - Operand 2 length UBin(2)
  - Operand 3 length UBin(2)
    - Fractional number of digits Char(1)
    - Total number of digits Char(1)
  - Input indicators Char(2)
    - End of month adjustment Bit 0
      - 0 = No adjustment
      - 1 = Adjustment
    - Tolerate data decimal errors Bit 1
      - 0 = No toleration
      - 1 = Tolerate
    - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 2-15
  - Output indicators Char(2)



|   |          |
|---|----------|
| - End of month adjustment                         | Bit 0    |
| 0 = No adjustment                                 |          |
| 1 = Adjustment                                    |          |
| - Reserved (binary 0)                             | Bit 1-15 |
| - Reserved (binary 0)                             | Char(22) |
| - Data definitional attribute template list       | Char(*)  |
| - Size of the DDAT list                           | UBin(4)  |
| - Number of DDATs                                 | UBin(2)  |
| - Reserved (binary 0)                             | Char(10) |
| - DDAT offset (repeated)                          | UBin(4)  |
| - Data definitional attribute template (repeated) | Char(*)  |

A **data definitional attribute template (DDAT) number** is a number that corresponds to the relative position of a template in the **data definitional attribute template list**. For example the number 1 references the first template. The valid values for this field are 1, 2, and 3.

The DDATs for operands 1 and 2 must be valid for a timestamp and identical. The DDAT for operand 3 must be valid for a timestamp duration. Otherwise, a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be issued.

**Operand 1 length** and **operand 2 length** are specified in number of bytes.

The **input indicator, end of month adjustment**, is used to allow or disallow the occurrence of an end of month adjustment.

The input indicator, **tolerate decimal data errors**, is used to determine whether errors found in the packed data for the duration will generate exceptions or will be ignored. When the errors are to be *tolerated*, the following rules will apply:

1. An invalid sign nibble found in the packed data value will be changed to a hex F.
2. Any invalid decimal digits found in the packed data value will be forced to zero.
3. If all digits of a packed data value become zero, and no decimal overflow condition exists, the sign will be set to hex F. If all digits are zero and a decimal overflow condition exists, then the sign will not be changed, but its representation will be changed to the preferred sign code.

The **output indicator, end of month adjustment**, is used to indicate an end of month adjustment, when end of month adjustments are allowed.

End of month adjustment is the following concept. For SAA, the result of adding a 1 month duration to the date 01/31/1989 is 02/28/1989. The days portion is adjusted to fit the month, 31 is changed to 28. When this happens, the *end of month adjustment output indicator* is set to *on*.

When *end of month adjustments are not allowed*, the month and year definitions in the data definition attribute template must have values greater than zero, otherwise a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be signaled. The result of adding a 1 month duration to the Gregorian date 01/31/1989 is 03/02/1989, when the definition of a month is 30 days.

The **size of the DDAT list** is specified in bytes.

The **number of DDATs** is the count of DDATs specified for this instruction template. The maximum number of DDATs that can be specified is 3.

The **DDAT offset** is the number of bytes from the start of the DDAT list to the start of the specific DDAT. There should be as many *DDAT offsets* as there are DDATs specified.

A data definitional attribute template defines the presentation of the data. Each template describes the definitional attributes of the operands. The length of the timestamp and duration character operands will be defined by the template. For a further description of the data definitional attribute template, see "Data Definitional Attribute Template" on page 3-5.

### Authorization Required

- None.

### Lock Enforcement

- None.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Space addressing violation       | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/Parameter               |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 0C Computation                      |          |   |   |   |       |
| 02 Decimal data                     |          |   | X |   |       |
| 15 Date boundary overflow           | X        | X |   |   |       |
| 16 Data format                      |          | X |   |   |       |
| 17 Data value                       |          | X |   |   |       |
| 18 Date boundary underflow          | X        | X |   |   |       |
| 10 Damage Encountered               |          |   |   |   |       |
| 04 System object damage state       | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 44 Partial system object damage     | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 20 Machine Support                  |          |   |   |   |       |
| 02 Machine check                    |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 03 Function check                   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22 Object Access                    |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Object not found                 | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 Object destroyed                 | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 Object suspended                 | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 24 Pointer Specification            |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Pointer does not exist           | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 Pointer type invalid             | X        | X | X | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   |   |       |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 | Other |
| 2E        | Resource Control Limit                 |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 User Profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar Specification                   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Scalar attributes invalid           |          | X |   | X |       |
|           | 03 Scalar value invalid                |          | X |   | X |       |
| 36        | Space Management                       |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Space Extension/Truncation          |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template Specification                 |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Template value invalid              |          |   |   | X |       |

## Chapter 4. Pointer/Name Resolution Addressing Instructions

This chapter describes the instructions used for pointer and name resolution functions. These instructions are in alphabetic order. See Appendix A, "Instruction Summary," for an alphabetic summary of all the instructions.

|   |      |
|---|------|
| Compare Pointer for Object Addressability (CMPPTRA) | 4-3  |
| Compare Pointer for Space Addressability (CMPPSPAD) | 4-5  |
| Compare Pointers for Equality (CMPPTRE)             | 4-7  |
| Compare Pointer Type (CMPPTRT)                      | 4-9  |
| Copy Bytes with Pointers (CPYBWP)                   | 4-12 |
| Resolve Data Pointer (RSLVDP)                       | 4-14 |
| Resolve System Pointer (RSLVSP)                     | 4-17 |
| Set Space Pointer from Pointer (SETSPFP)            | 4-22 |
| Set System Pointer from Pointer (SETSPFP)           | 4-24 |



**Compare Pointer for Object Addressability (CMPPTRA)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br>CMPPTRAB<br>1CD2 | Extender<br>Branch options | Operand 1<br>Compare<br>operand 1 | Operand 2<br>Compare<br>operand 2 | Operand 3 [4]<br>Branch targets |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| CMPPTRAI<br>18D2                  | Indicator options          | Compare<br>operand 1              | Compare<br>operand 2              | Indicator targets               |

*Operand 1:* Data pointer, space pointer, system pointer, or instruction pointer.

*Operand 2:* Data pointer, space pointer, system pointer, or instruction pointer.

*Operand 3 [4]:*

- *Branch Form*—Instruction number, relative instruction number, branch point, or instruction pointer.
- *Indicator Form*—Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** The object addressed by operand 1 is compared with the object addressed by operand 2 to determine if both operands are addressing the same object. Based on the comparison, the resulting condition is used with the extender to transfer control (branch form) or to assign a value to each of the indicator operands (indicator form).

If operand 1 is a data pointer, a space pointer, or a system pointer, operand 2 may be any pointer type except for instruction pointer in any combination. An *equal* condition occurs if the pointers are addressing the same object. For space pointers and data pointers, only the space they are addressing is considered in the comparison. That is, the space offset portion of the pointer is ignored.

For system pointer compare operands, an *equal* condition occurs if the system pointer is compared with a space pointer or data pointer that addresses the space that is associated with the object that is addressed by the system pointer. For example, a space pointer that addresses a byte in a space associated with a system object compares equal with a system pointer that addresses the system object.

For instruction pointer comparisons, both operands must be instruction pointers; otherwise, an *invalid pointer type* (hex 2402) exception is signaled. An *equal* condition occurs when both instruction pointers are addressing the same instruction in the same program. A *not equal* condition occurs if the instruction pointers are not addressing the same instruction in the same program.

A *pointer does not exist* (hex 2401) exception is signaled if a pointer does not exist in either of the operands.

**Resultant Conditions**

- Equal
- Not equal

**Authorization Required**

- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

**Lock Enforcement**

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

## Exceptions

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Space addressing violation                                | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment  | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Range   | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid                          | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation                             | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Unauthorized for operation                                | X        | X |   |   |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state                                | X        | X | X | X | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage                              | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Invalid lock state  | X        | X |   |   |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check   |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check  |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found  | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed  | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended  | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   |   |   | X     |

**Compare Pointer for Space Addressability (CMPPSPAD)**

| Op Code (Hex)            | Extender          | Operand 1            | Operand 2            | Operand 3 [4-6]   |
|--------------------------|-------------------|----------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| <b>CMPPSPADB</b><br>1CE6 | Branch options    | Compare<br>Operand 1 | Compare<br>Operand 2 | Branch targets    |
| <b>CMPPSPADI</b><br>18E6 | Indicator options | Compare<br>Operand 1 | Compare<br>Operand 2 | Indicator targets |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer or data pointer.

*Operand 2:* Numeric variable scalar, character variable scalar, numeric variable array, character variable array, space pointer, or data pointer.

*Operand 3 [4-6]:*

- *Branch Form*-Instruction number, relative instruction number, branch point, or instruction pointer.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** The space addressability contained in the pointer specified by operand 1 is compared with the space addressability defined by operand 2.

The value of the operand 1 pointer is compared based on the following:

- If operand 2 is a scalar data object (element or array), the space addressability of that data object is compared with the space addressability contained in the operand 1 pointer.
- If operand 2 is a pointer, it must be a space pointer or data pointer, and the space addressability contained in the pointer is compared with the space addressability contained in the operand 1 pointer.

Based on the results of the comparison, the resulting condition is used with the extender to transfer control (branch form) or to assign a value to each of the indicator operands (indicator form). If the operands are not in the same space, the resultant condition is *unequal*. If the operands are in the same space and the offset into the space of operand 1 is larger or smaller than the offset of operand 2, the resultant condition is *high* or *low*, respectively. An *equal* condition occurs only if the operands are in the same space at the same offset. Therefore, the resultant conditions (*high*, *low*, *equal*, and *unequal*) are mutually exclusive. Consequently, if you specify that an action be taken upon the nonexistence of a condition, this results in the action being taken upon the occurrence of any of the other three possible conditions. For example, a branch not high would result in the branch being taken on a *low*, *equal*, or *unequal* condition.

The *object destroyed* (hex 2202) exception, *optimized addressability invalid* (hex 0606) exception, *parameter reference violation* (hex 0801) exception, and *pointer does not exist* (hex 2401) exception are not signaled when operand 1 or operand 2 is a space pointer machine object or when operand 2 is a scalar based on a space pointer machine object. This occurs when the space pointer machine object contains an internal machine value that indicates one of these error conditions exists. If the corresponding exception is not signaled, the resulting condition of the comparison operation is not defined other than that it will be one of the four valid resultant conditions for this instruction.

When the Override Program Attributes (OVRPGATR) instruction is used to override this instruction, the *pointer does not exist*, (hex 2401) exception is not signaled when operand 1 or operand 2 is a space pointer (i.e. either a space pointer data object or a space pointer machine object). Furthermore, some comparisons involving space pointers are defined even when one or both of the compare operands is a pointer subject to the pointer does not exist condition. Specifically, if both compare operands are subject to the pointer does not exist condition, the resultant condition is *equal*. When one space pointer is set and one is subject to the pointer does not exist condition, the resultant condition is



*unequal*, but undefined with respect to comparisons which include specification of the *high* or *low* conditions.

### Resultant Conditions

- High
- Low
- Equal
- Unequal

### Exceptions

| Exception |  | Operands |   |         |       |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---------|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 [4-6] | Other |
| 06        | Addressing                             |          |   |         |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation          | X        | X | X       |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment                  | X        | X |         |       |
|           | 03 range                               | X        | X |         |       |
|           | 04 external data object not found      | X        | X |         |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X |         |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                     |          |   |         |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation       | X        | X |         |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |         |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state          | X        | X | X       | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        | X        | X | X       | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |         |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |         | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |         |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   |         | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   |         | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |         |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X | X       |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X | X       |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X | X       |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |         | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |         |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X       |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X       |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |         |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |         | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |         |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |         | X     |

## Compare Pointers for Equality (CMPPTRE)

| Op Code (Hex)           | Extender          | Operand 1         | Operand 2         | Operand 3 [4]     |
|-------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| <b>CMPPTREB</b><br>1C12 | Branch options    | Compare operand 1 | Compare operand 2 | Branch targets    |
| <b>CMPPTREI</b><br>1812 | Indicator options | Compare operand 1 | Compare operand 2 | Indicator targets |

*Operand 1:* Data pointer, space pointer, system pointer, instruction pointer, invocation pointer, procedure pointer, label pointer, or suspend pointer

*Operand 2:* Data pointer, space pointer, system pointer, instruction pointer, invocation pointer, procedure pointer, label pointer, or suspend pointer

*Operand 3 [4]:*

- *Branch Form*—Instruction number, relative instruction number, branch point, or instruction pointer.
- *Indicator Form*—Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** The pointer specified by operand 1 is compared with the pointer specified by operand 2 to determine if both operands are of the same type and contain equal values. Based on the comparison, the resulting condition is used with the extender to transfer control (branch form) or to assign a value to each of the indicator operands (indicator form).

Pointers may be specified for operands 1 and 2 in any combination. An *equal* condition occurs if the pointers are of the same type and contain the same value, or if neither pointer has been set. If one pointer is set and the other is not, a *not equal* condition occurs.

System pointers and data pointers are not resolved by this instruction. The comparison result is undefined when an unresolved pointer is supplied for one or both operands.

Note that any authorities stored in a resolved system pointer are part of the pointer. Thus system pointers pointing to the same object, but with different levels of authority, will compare as *not equal*.

Since any pointer type may be specified for this instruction, the *invalid pointer type* (hex 2402) exception is not signaled except for pointers used as a base for the operands. Similarly, since the instruction accepts unset pointers, the *pointer does not exist* (hex 2401) exception is not signaled except for pointers used as a base for the operands.

### Resultant Conditions

- Equal
- Not equal

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Space addressing violation       | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment               | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 Range                            | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X | X |       |

## Compare Pointers for Equality (CMPPTRE)

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation                             | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Unauthorized for operation                                | X        | X |   |   |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state                                | X        | X | X | X | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage                              | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Invalid lock state  | X        | X |   |   |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check   |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check  |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found  | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed  | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended  | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   |   |   | X     |

**Compare Pointer Type (CMPPTRT)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br>CMPPTRTB<br>1CE2 | Extender<br>Branch options | Operand 1<br>Compare<br>operand 1 | Operand 2<br>Compare<br>operand 2 | Operand 3 [4]<br>Branch targets |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| CMPPTRTI<br>18E2                  | Indicator options          | Compare<br>operand 1              | Compare<br>operand 2              | Indicator targets               |

*Operand 1:* Data pointer, space pointer, system pointer, instruction pointer, invocation pointer, procedure pointer, label pointer, or suspend pointer

*Operand 2:* Character(1) scalar or null.

*Operand 3 [4]:*

- *Branch Form* — Instruction number, relative instruction number, branch point, or instruction pointer.
- *Indicator Form* — Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Extender**

**Description:** The instruction compares the pointer type currently in operand 1 with the character scalar identified by operand 2. Based on the comparison, the resulting condition is used with the extender to transfer control (branch form) or to assign a value to each of the indicator operands (indicator form).

Operand 1 can specify a space pointer machine object only when operand 2 is null.

If operand 2 is null or if operand 2 specifies a comparison value of hex 00, an equal condition occurs if a pointer does not exist in the storage area identified by operand 1.

Following are the allowable values for operand 2:

- Hex 00 — A pointer does not exist at this location
- Hex 01 — System pointer
- Hex 02 — Space pointer
- Hex 03 — Data pointer
- Hex 04 — Instruction pointer
- Hex 05 — Invocation pointer
- Hex 06 — Procedure pointer
- Hex 07 — Label pointer
- Hex 08 — Suspend pointer

**Resultant Conditions**

- Equal
- Not equal

**Authorization Required**

- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

**Lock Enforcement**

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

**Exceptions**

| Exception  | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 06 Addressing  |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Space addressing violation                                | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment  | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 Range   | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid                          | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter  |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation                             | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 0A Authorization   |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Unauthorized for operation                                | X        |   |   |   |       |
| 10 Damage encountered  |          |   |   |   |       |
| 04 System object damage state                                | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 44 Partial system object damage                              | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 1A Lock state  |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Invalid lock state  | X        |   |   |   |       |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception                               |          |   |   |   |       |
| 03 Machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support   |          |   |   |   |       |
| 02 Machine check   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 03 Function check  |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22 Object access   |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Object not found  | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 Object destroyed  | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 Object suspended  | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 08 object compressed   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification                                     |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 Pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 2E Resource control limit                                    |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 32 Scalar specification                                      |          |   |   |   |       |
| 03 Scalar value invalid                                      |          |   | X |   |       |

**Exception**

36      Space management  
01 space extension/truncation

**Operands**

1      2      3      4      Other

X

## Copy Bytes with Pointers (CPYBWP)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|
| 0132          | Receiver  | Source    |

**Operand 1:** Character variable scalar, space pointer, data pointer, system pointer, instruction pointer, invocation pointer, procedure pointer, label pointer, or suspend pointer

**Operand 2:** Character variable scalar, space pointer, data pointer, system pointer, instruction pointer, invocation pointer, procedure pointer, label pointer, suspend pointer, or null

**Description:** This instruction copies either the pointer value or the byte string specified for the source operand into the receiver operand depending upon whether or not a space pointer machine object is specified as one of the operands.

If either operand is a character variable scalar, it can have a length as great as 16776191 bytes.

Operations involving space pointer machine objects perform a pointer value copy operation for only space pointer values or the pointer does not exist state. Due to this, a space pointer machine object may only be specified as an operand in conjunction with another pointer or a null second operand. The pointer does not exist state is copied from the source to the receiver pointer without signaling the *pointer does not exist* (hex 2401) exception. Source pointer data objects must either be not set or contain a space pointer value when being copied into a receiver space pointer machine object. Receiver pointer data objects will be set with either the system default pointer does not exist value or the space pointer value from a source space pointer machine object.

Normal pointer alignment checking is performed on a pointer data object specified as an operand in conjunction with a space pointer machine object.

Operations not involving space pointer machine objects, those involving just data objects as operands, perform a byte string copy of the data for the specified operands.

The value of the byte string specified by operand 2 is copied to the byte string specified by operand 1 (no padding done).

The byte string identified by operand 2 can contain the storage forms of both scalars and pointers. Normal pointer alignment checking is not done.

When the Override Program Attributes (OVRPGATR) instruction is not used to override CPYBWP, the only alignment requirement is that the space addressability alignment of the two operands must be to the same position relative to a 16-byte multiple boundary. A *boundary alignment* (hex 0602) exception is signaled if the alignment is incorrect. The pointer attributes of any complete pointers in the source are preserved if they can be completely copied into the receiver. Partial pointer storage forms are copied into the receiver as scalar data. Scalars in the source are copied to the receiver as scalars.

When the OVRPGATR instruction is used to override this instruction, the alignment requirement is removed. If the space addressability alignment of the two operands is the same relative to 16-byte multiple boundary, then this instruction will work the same as stated above. If the space addressability alignment is different, then this instruction will work like a Copy Bytes Left Adjusted (CPYBLA) and the pointer attributes of any complete pointers in the source are not preserved in the receiver.

If a pointer data object operand contains a data pointer value upon execution of the instruction, the pointer storage form is copied rather than the scalar described by the data pointer value. The character variable scalar reference allowed on either operand cannot be described through a data pointer value.

The length of the operation is equal to the length of the shorter of the two operands. The copying begins with the two operands left-adjusted and proceeds until completion of the shorter operand.

Operand 1 can specify a space pointer machine object only when operand 2 is a space pointer or null.

If operand 2 is null, operand 1 must define a pointer reference; otherwise, an *invalid operand type* (hex 2A06) exception is signaled by the Create Program instruction. When operand 2 is null, the pointer identified by operand 1 is set to the system default pointer does not exist value.

## Exceptions

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                             |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Space addressing violation          | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment                  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 Range                               | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                     |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation       | X        | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state          | X        | X | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage        | X        | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                       |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                      |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |



## Resolve Data Pointer (RSLVDP)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1                                 | Operand 2                  | Operand 3 |
|---------------|---|----------------------------|-----------|
| 0163          | Pointer for addressability to data object | Data object identification | Program   |

*Operand 1:* Data pointer.

*Operand 2:* Character(32) scalar (fixed-length) or null.

*Operand 3:* System pointer or null.

**Description:** A data pointer with addressability to and the attributes of an external scalar data element is returned in the storage area identified by operand 1. The following describes the instruction's function when operand 2 is null:

- If operand 1 does not contain a data pointer, an exception is signaled.
- If the data pointer specified by operand 1 is not resolved and has an initial value declaration, the instruction resolves the data pointer to the external scalar that the initial value describes. The initial value defines the external scalar to be located and, optionally, defines the program in which it is to be located. If the program name is specified in the initial value, only that program's activation entry is searched for the external scalar. If no program is specified, programs associated with the activation entries in the current activation group in which the program is executing, are searched in reverse order of the activation entries, and operand 3 is ignored. The current activation group for non-bound programs is the default activation group whose state is the same as the state of the process at the time the instruction is run.
- If the data pointer is currently resolved and defines an existing scalar, the instruction causes no operation, and no exception is signaled.

The following describes the instruction's function when operand 2 is not null:

- A data pointer that is resolved to the external scalar identified by operand 2 is returned in operand 1. Operand 2 is a 32-byte value that provides the name of the external scalar to be located.
- Operand 3 specifies a system pointer that identifies the program whose activation is to be searched for the external scalar definition. If operand 3 is null, the instruction searches all activations in the activation group from which the instruction is executed, starting with the most recent activation and continuing to the oldest. The activation under which the instruction is issued also participates in the search. If operand 3 is not null, the instruction searches the activation of the program addressed by the system pointer.

### Authorization Required

- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Exceptions

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Space addressing violation                                | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Range   | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 04 External data object not found                            | X        |   |   |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid                          | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation                             | X        | X | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Unauthorized for operation                                | X        |   | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state                                | X        | X | X | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage                              | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Invalid lock state  |          |   | X |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check   |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check  |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 04 Pointer not resolved                                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Scalar type invalid                                       | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Scalar attributes invalid                                 |          | X |   |       |
|           | 03 Scalar value invalid                                      |          | X |   |       |
| 36        | Space management   |          |   |   |       |

Exception  
01 space extension/truncation

| Operands |   |   |       |
|----------|---|---|-------|
| 1        | 2 | 3 | Other |
|          |   |   | X     |

## Resolve System Pointer (RSLVSP)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1                            | Operand 2  | Operand 3                                      | Operand 4                        |
|---------------|--------------------------------------|--|--|----------------------------------|
| 0164          | Pointer for addressability to object | Object identification and required authorization | Context through which objects is to be located | Authority to be set <sup>1</sup> |

*Operand 1:* System pointer.

*Operand 2:* Character(34) scalar (fixed-length) or null.

*Operand 3:* System pointer or null.

*Operand 4:* Character(2) scalar (fixed-length) or null.

### ILE access

```
RSLVSP (
  var ptr_to_object      : system pointer;
  var objid_and_authreq  : aggregate; OR
                        null operand;
  var context            : system pointer; OR
                        null operand;
  var authority_to_set   : aggregate OR
                        null operand
)
```

**Description:** This instruction locates an object identified by a symbolic address and stores the object's addressability and authority<sup>1</sup> in a system pointer. A resolved system pointer is returned in operand 1 with addressability to a system object and the requested authority currently available to the process for the object.

**Note:** The ownership flag is never set in the system pointer.

Operand 2 specifies the symbolic identification of the object to be located. Operand 3 identifies the context to be searched in order to locate the object. Operand 4 identifies the authority states to be set in the pointer. First, the instruction locates an object based on operands 2 and 3. Then, the instruction sets the appropriate authority states in the system pointer.

The following describes the instruction's function when operand 2 is null:

- If operand 1 does not contain a system pointer, an exception is signaled.
- If the system pointer specified by operand 1 is not resolved but has an initial value declaration, the instruction resolves the system pointer to the object that the initial value describes. The initial value defines the following:
  - Object to be located (by *type code*, *subtype code*, and *object name*)
  - *Context* to be searched to locate the object (optional)
  - Minimum *required authorization* required for the object

If a *context* is specified, only that context is referenced to locate the object, and operand 3 is ignored. If no context is specified, the context(s) located by the process name resolution list is

<sup>1</sup> Programs executing in user-domain may not assign authority in the resulting system pointer. The value in operand 4 is ignored and no exception is raised.

used to locate the object, and operand 3 is ignored. If the object is of a type that can only be addressed through the machine context, then only the machine context is searched, and the context (if any) identified in the initial value or identified in operand 3 is ignored.

If the minimum *required authorization* in the initial value is not set (binary 0), the instruction resolves the operand 1 system pointer to the first object encountered with the designated type code, subtype code, and object name without regard to the authorization available to the process for the object. If one or more authorization (or ownership) states are required (signified by binary 1's), the context(s) is searched until an object is encountered with the designated type, subtype, and name and for which the process currently has all required authorization states.

- If the system pointer specified by operand 1 is currently resolved to address an existing object, the instruction does not modify the addressability contained in the pointer and causes only the authority attribute in the pointer to be modified based on operand 4.

If operand 2 is not null, the operand 1 system pointer is resolved to the object identified by operand 2 in the context(s) specified by operand 3. The format of operand 2 is as follows:

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| • Object specification                  | Char(32)  |
| — Type code                             | Char(1)   |
| — Subtype code                          | Char(1)   |
| — Object name                           | Char(30)  |
| • Required authorization (1 = required) | Char(2)   |
| — Object control                        | Bit 0     |
| — Object management                     | Bit 1     |
| — Authorized pointer                    | Bit 2     |
| — Space authority                       | Bit 3     |
| — Retrieve                              | Bit 4     |
| — Insert                                | Bit 5     |
| — Delete                                | Bit 6     |
| — Update                                | Bit 7     |
| — Ownership                             | Bit 8     |
| — Excluded                              | Bit 9     |
| — Authority List Management             | Bit 10    |
| — Reserved (binary 0)                   | Bit 11-15 |

The allowed type codes are as follows:

Hex 01 = Access group  
 Hex 02 = Program  
 Hex 03 = Module  
 Hex 04 = Context  
 Hex 06 = Byte string space  
 Hex 07 = Journal space  
 Hex 08 = User profile  
 Hex 09 = Journal port  
 Hex 0A = Queue  
 Hex 0B = Data space  
 Hex 0C = Data space index  
 Hex 0D = Cursor  
 Hex 0E = Index

Hex 0F = Commit block  
 Hex 10 = Logical unit description  
 Hex 11 = Network description  
 Hex 12 = Controller description  
 Hex 13 = Dump space  
 Hex 14 = Class of Service Description  
 Hex 15 = Mode description  
 Hex 16 = Network interface description  
 Hex 17 = Connection list  
 Hex 18 = Queue space  
 Hex 19 = Space  
 Hex 1A = Process control space  
 Hex 1B = Authorization list  
 Hex 1C = Dictionary

All other codes are reserved. If other codes are specified, they cause a *scalar value invalid* (hex 3203) exception to be signaled.

Operand 3 identifies the context in which to locate the object identified by operand 2. If operand 3 is null, then the contexts identified in the process name resolution list are searched in the order in which they appear in the list. If operand 3 is not null, the system pointer specified must address a context, and only this context is used to locate the object. If the object is of a type that can only be addressed through the machine context, then only the machine context is searched, and operand 3 and the process name resolution list are ignored.

If the **required authorization** field in operand 2 is not set (all values set to 0), the instruction resolves the operand 1 system pointer to the first object encountered with the designated **type code**, **subtype code**, and **object name** without regard to the authorization currently available to the process. If one or more authorization (or ownership) states are required (signified by binary 1's), the context is searched until an object is encountered with the designated *type code*, *subtype code*, *object name*, and the user profiles governing the instruction's execution that have all the required authorization states.

Once addressability has been set in the pointer, operand 4 is used to determine which, if any, of the object authority states is to be set into the pointer. Only the object authority states correlating with bits 0 through 7, that is, *object control* through *update*, can be set into the pointer. This restriction applies whether the authority mask controlling which authorities to set in the pointer comes from operand 4, operand 2, or the initial value for the system pointer.

If operand 4 is null, the object authority states required to locate the object are set in the pointer. This required object authority is as specified in operand 2 or in the initial value for operand 1 if operand 2 is null. If the process does not currently have authorized pointer authority for the object, no authority is stored in the system pointer, and no exception is signaled.

If operands 2 and 4 are null and operand 1 is a resolved system pointer, the authority states in the pointer are not modified.

If operand 4 is not null, it specifies the object authority states to be set in the resolved system pointer. The format of operand 4 is as follows:

- |   |         |
|---|---------|
| • Requested authorization (1 = set authority) | Char(2) |
| — Object control                              | Bit 0   |
| — Object management                           | Bit 1   |
| — Authorized pointer                          | Bit 2   |
| — Space authority                             | Bit 2   |

|                       |           |
|-----------------------|-----------|
| — Retrieve            | Bit 4     |
| — Insert              | Bit 5     |
| — Delete              | Bit 6     |
| — Update              | Bit 7     |
| — Reserved (binary 0) | Bits 8-15 |

The authority states set in the resolved system pointer are based on the following:

- The authority already stored in the pointer can be increased only when the process has authorized pointer authority to the referenced object. If this authority is not available and the pointer was resolved by this instruction, the authority in the operand 1 system pointer is set to the not set state, and no exception is signaled. If operand 2 is null, if operand 1 is a resolved system pointer containing authority, and if authorized pointer authority is not available to the process, additional authorities cannot be stored in the pointer.
- If the process does not currently have all the authority states requested in operand 4, only the requested and available states are set in the pointer, and no exception is signaled.
- Note that the authority stored in the operand 1 system pointer is a source of authority applies to this instruction when operand 2 is null and operand 1 is a resolved system pointer with authority stored in it.

### Authorization Required

- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution (including operand 3)

### Lock Enforcement

- Materialization
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution (including operand 3)

### Exceptions

| Exception  | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 06 Addressing  |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Space addressing violation                              | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 Boundary alignment                                      | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 Range   | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 06 Optimized addressability invalid                        | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                                      |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Parameter reference violation                           | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 0A Authorization   |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 Unauthorized for operation                              | X        |   | X |   |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                                      |          |   |   |   |       |
| 02 Machine context damage state                            |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 04 System object damage state                              | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 44 Partial system object damage                            | X        | X | X | X | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Invalid lock state  | X        |   | X |   |       |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check   |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check  |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found  | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed  | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended  | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 04 Pointer not resolved                                      |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Scalar attributes invalid                                 |          | X |   | X |       |
|           | 03 Scalar value invalid                                      |          | X |   | X |       |
| 36        | Space management   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   |   |   | X     |



## Set Space Pointer from Pointer (SETSPFPF)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2      |
|---------------|-----------|----------------|
| 0022          | Receiver  | Source Pointer |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* Data pointer, system pointer, or space pointer.

**Description:** A space pointer is returned in operand 1 with the addressability to a space object from the pointer specified by operand 2.

The meaning of the pointers allowed for operand 2 is as follows:

| Pointer                       | Meaning  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Data pointer or space pointer | The space pointer returned in operand 1 is set to address of the leftmost byte of the byte string addressed by the source pointer for operand 2.   |
| System pointer                | The space pointer returned in operand 1 is set to address the first byte of the space contained in the system object addressed by the system pointer for operand 2. The space object addressed is either the created system space or an associated space for the system object addressed by the system pointer. If the operand 2 system pointer addresses a system object with no associated space, the <i>invalid space reference</i> (hex 0605) exception is signaled. |

The *object destroyed* (hex 2202) exception, *optimized addressability invalid* (hex 0606) exception, *parameter reference violation* (hex 0801) exception, and *pointer does not exist* (hex 2401) exception are not signaled when operand 1 and operand 2 are space pointer machine objects. This occurs when operand 2 contains an internal machine value that indicates one of these error conditions exists. If the corresponding exception is not signaled, operand 1 is set with an internal machine value that preserves the exception condition that existed for operand 2. The appropriate exception condition will be signaled for either pointer when a subsequent attempt is made to reference the space data that the pointer addresses.

### Authorization Required

- Space authority
  - Operand 2 (if a system pointer)
- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Exceptions

| Exception                     | Operands |   | Other |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|                               | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06 Addressing                 |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation | X        | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment         | X        | X |       |
| 03 range                      | X        | X |       |

| Exception  | Operands |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 04 external data object not found                            |          | X |       |
| 05 invalid space reference                                   |          | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid                          | X        | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter  |          |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation                             |          |   | X     |
| 0A Authorization   |          |   |       |
| 01 unauthorized for operation                                |          | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered  |          |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state                                | X        | X | X     |
| 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage                              | X        | X | X     |
| 1A Lock state  |          |   |       |
| 01 invalid lock state  |          | X |       |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception                               |          |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support   |          |   |       |
| 02 machine check   |          |   | X     |
| 03 function check  |          |   | X     |
| 22 Object access   |          |   |       |
| 01 object not found  | X        | X |       |
| 02 object destroyed  | X        | X |       |
| 03 object suspended  | X        | X |       |
| 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   | X     |
| 08 object compressed   |          |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification                                     |          |   |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X |       |
| 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X |       |
| 03 pointer addressing invalid object                         |          | X |       |
| 2E Resource control limit                                    |          |   |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   | X     |
| 36 Space management  |          |   |       |
| 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   | X     |

## Set System Pointer from Pointer (SETSPFP)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2      |
|---------------|-----------|----------------|
| 0032          | Receiver  | Source pointer |

*Operand 1:* System pointer.

*Operand 2:* System pointer, space pointer, data pointer, or instruction pointer.

**Description:** This instruction returns a system pointer to the system object address by the supplied pointer.

If operand 2 is a system pointer, then a system pointer addressing the same object is returned in operand 1 containing the same authority as the input pointer.

If operand 2 is a space pointer or a data pointer, then a system pointer addressing the system object that contains the associated space addressed by operand 2 is returned in operand 1.

If operand 2 is an instruction pointer, then a system pointer addressing the program system object that contains the instruction addressed by operand 2 is returned in operand 1.

If operand 2 is an unresolved system pointer or data pointer, the pointer is resolved first.

### Authorization Required

- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Lock Enforcement

- Materialization
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X |       |
| 03 range                            | X        | X |       |
| 04 external data object not found   | X        | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation    |          |   | X     |
| 0A Authorization                    |          |   |       |
| 01 unauthorized for operation       |          | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |       |
| 02 machine context damage           |          |   | X     |
| 04 system object damage state       | X        | X | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              | X        | X | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  |          | X |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  |          | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                                       | X        | X |       |
| 36        | Space management   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   | X     |



## Chapter 5. Space Addressing Instructions

This chapter describes the instructions used for space addressing. These instructions are in alphabetic order. For an alphabetic summary of all the instructions, see Appendix A, "Instruction Summary"

|   |      |
|---|------|
| Add Space Pointer (ADDSP)                     | 5-3  |
| Compare Space Addressability (CMPSPAD)        | 5-5  |
| Set Data Pointer (SETDP)                      | 5-7  |
| Set Data Pointer Addressability (SETDPADR)    | 5-9  |
| Set Data Pointer Attributes (SETDPAT)         | 5-11 |
| Set Space Pointer (SETSP)                     | 5-14 |
| Set Space Pointer with Displacement (SETSPPD) | 5-16 |
| Set Space Pointer Offset (SETSPPO)            | 5-18 |
| Store Space Pointer Offset (STSPPO)           | 5-20 |
| Subtract Space Pointer Offset (SUBSP)         | 5-22 |
| Subtract Space Pointers For Offset (SUBSPFO)  | 5-24 |



## Add Space Pointer (ADDSP)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1        | Operand 2      | Operand 3 |
|---------------|------------------|----------------|-----------|
| 0083          | Receiver Pointer | Source Pointer | Increment |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* Space pointer.

*Operand 3:* Binary scalar.

**Description:** This instruction adds a signed or unsigned binary value to the offset of a space pointer. The value of the binary scalar represented by operand 3 is added to the space address contained in the space pointer specified by operand 2, and the result is stored in the space pointer identified by operand 1. I.e.

$$\text{Operand 1} = \text{Operand 2} + \text{Operand 3}$$

Operand 3 can have a positive or negative value. The space object that the pointer is addressing is not changed by the instruction.

Operand 2 must contain a space pointer when the execution of the instruction is initiated; otherwise, an *invalid pointer type* (hex 2402) exception is signaled. When the addressability in a space pointer is modified, the instruction signals a *space addressing* (hex 0601) exception only when the space address to be stored in the pointer has a negative offset value or when the offset addresses beyond the largest space allocatable in the object. This maximum offset value is dependent on the size and packaging of the object containing the space and is independent of the actual size of the space allocated. If the exception is signaled by this instruction for this reason, the pointer is not modified by the instruction. Attempts to use a pointer whose offset value lies between the currently allocated extent of the space and the maximum allocatable extent of the space cause the *space addressing* (hex 0601) exception to be signaled.

The *object destroyed* (hex 2202) exception, *optimized addressability invalid* (hex 0606) exception, *parameter reference violation* (hex 0801) exception, and *pointer does not exist* (hex 2401) exception are not signaled when operand 1 and operand 2 are space pointer machine objects. This occurs when operand 2 contains an internal machine value that indicates one of these error conditions exists. If the corresponding exception is not signaled, operand 1 is set with an internal machine value that preserves the exception condition that existed for operand 2. The appropriate exception condition will be signaled for either pointer when a subsequent attempt is made to reference the space data that the pointer addresses.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |        | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|--------|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3[4-6] |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |        |       |
| 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X | X      |       |
| 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X | X      |       |
| 03 range                            | X        | X | X      |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X      |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |        |       |



| Exception |  | Operands |   |        | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|--------|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3[4-6] |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X      |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |        |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state          | X        | X | X      | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        | X        | X | X      | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |        |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |        | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |        |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   |        | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   |        | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |        |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X | X      |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X | X      |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X | X      |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |        | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |        |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X      |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X      |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |        |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |        | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |        |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |        | X     |

## Compare Space Addressability (CMPSPAD)

| Op Code (Hex)<br><b>CMPSPADB</b><br>1CF2 | Extender<br>Branch options | Operand 1<br>Compare<br>operand 1 | Operand 2<br>Compare<br>operand 2 | Operand 3 [4-6]<br>Branch targets |
|--|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>CMPSPADI</b><br>18F2                  | Indicator options          | Compare<br>operand 1              | Compare<br>operand 2              | Indicator targets                 |

*Operand 1:* Numeric variable scalar, character variable scalar, numeric variable array, character variable array, pointer data object, pointer data object array.

*Operand 2:* Numeric variable scalar, character variable scalar, numeric variable array, character variable array, pointer data object, pointer data object array.

*Operand 3 [4-6]:*

- *Branch Form*-Instruction number, relative instruction number, branch point, or instruction pointer.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** The space addressability of the object specified by operand 1 is compared with the space addressability of the object specified by operand 2.

Based on the results of the comparison, the resulting condition is used with the extender to transfer control (branch form) or to assign a value to each of the indicator operands (indicator form). If the operands are not in the same space, the resultant condition is *unequal*. If the operands are in the same space and the offset of operand 1 is larger or smaller than the offset of operand 2, the resultant condition is *high* or *low*, respectively. Equal occurs only if the operands are in the same space at the same offset. Therefore, the resultant conditions (*high*, *low*, *equal*, and *unequal*) are mutually exclusive. Consequently, if you specify that an action be taken upon the nonexistence of a condition, this results in the action being taken upon the occurrence of any of the other three possible conditions. For example, a branch not high would result in the branch being taken on a *low*, *equal*, or *unequal* condition.

If a pointer data object operand contains a data pointer value upon execution of the instruction, the addressability is compared to the pointer data object rather than to the scalar described by the data pointer value. The variable scalar references allowed on operands 1 and 2 cannot be described through a data pointer value.

The *object destroyed* (hex 2202) exception, *optimized addressability invalid* (hex 0606) exception, *parameter reference violation* (hex 0801) exception, and *pointer does not exist* (hex 2401) exception are not signaled when operand 1 or operand 2 is based on a space pointer machine object. This occurs when the space pointer machine object contains an internal machine value that indicates one of these error conditions exists. If the corresponding exception is not signaled, the resulting condition of the comparison operation is not defined other than that it will be one of the four valid resultant conditions for this instruction.

### Resultant Conditions

- High
- Low
- Equal
- Unequal

**Exceptions**

| Exception |  | Operands |   |         | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---------|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 [4-6] |       |
| 06        | Addressing                             |          |   |         |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation          | X        | X | X       |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment                  | X        | X | X       |       |
|           | 03 range                               | X        | X | X       |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X | X       |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                     |          |   |         |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X       |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |         |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state          | X        | X | X       | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        | X        | X | X       | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |         |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |         | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |         |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   |         | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   |         | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |         |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X | X       |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X | X       |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X | X       |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |         | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |         |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X       |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X       |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |         |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |         | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |         |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |         | X     |

## Set Data Pointer (SETDP)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|
| 0096          | Receiver  | Source    |

*Operand 1:* Data pointer.

*Operand 2:* Numeric variable scalar, character variable scalar, numeric variable array, or character variable array.

**Description:** A data pointer is created and returned in the storage area specified by operand 1 and has the attributes and space addressability of the object specified by operand 2. Addressability is set to the low-order (leftmost) byte of the object specified by operand 2. The attributes given to the data pointer include scalar type and scalar length.

If operand 2 is a substring compound operand, the length attribute is set equal to the length of the substring. If operand 2 is a subscript compound operand, the attributes and addressability of the single array element specified are assigned to the data pointer. If operand 2 is an array, the attributes and addressability of the first element of the array are assigned to the data pointer. A data pointer can only be set to describe an element of a data array, not a data array in its entirety.

When the addressability in the data pointer is modified, the instruction signals the *space addressing* (hex 0601) exception when one of the following conditions occurs:

- When the space address to be stored in the pointer would have a negative offset value.
- When the offset would address an area beyond the largest space allocatable in the object. This maximum offset value is dependent on the size and packaging of the object containing the space and is independent of the actual size of the space allocated.

If the exception is signaled by this instruction for one of these reasons, the pointer is not modified by the instruction.

Attempts to use a pointer whose offset value lies between the currently allocated extent of the space and the maximum allocatable extent cause the *space addressing* (hex 0601) exception to be signaled.

## Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X |       |
| 03 range                            | X        | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state       | X        | X | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage     | X        | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception      |          |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    |          | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |

## Set Data Pointer Addressability (SETDPADR)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|
| 0046          | Receiver  | Source    |

*Operand 1:* Data pointer.

*Operand 2:* Numeric variable scalar, character variable scalar, numeric variable array, or character variable array.

**Description:** The space addressability of the object specified for operand 2 is assigned to the data pointer specified by operand 1. If operand 1 contains a resolved data pointer, the data pointer's scalar attribute component is not changed by the instruction. If operand 1 contains an initialized but unresolved data pointer, the data pointer is resolved in order to establish the scalar attribute component of the pointer. If operand 1 contains other than a resolved data pointer, the instruction creates and returns a data pointer in operand 1 with the addressability of the object specified for operand 2, and the instruction establishes the attributes as a character(1) scalar.

When the addressability is set into a data pointer, the *space addressing* (hex 0601) exception is signaled by the instruction only when the space address to be stored in the pointer has a negative offset value or if the offset addresses beyond the largest space allocatable in the object. This maximum offset value is dependent on the size and packaging of the object containing the space and is independent of the actual size of the space allocated. If the exception is signaled for this reason, the pointer is not modified by the instruction. Attempts to use a pointer whose offset value lies between the currently allocated extent of the space and the maximum allocatable extent of the space cause the *space addressing* (hex 0601) exception to be signaled.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |       |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | Other |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X |       |
| 03 range                            | X        | X |       |
| 04 external data object not found   | X        |   |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state       | X        | X | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage     | X        | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception      |          |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                  |          |   |       |
| 02 machine check                    |          |   | X     |
| 03 function check                   |          |   | X     |
| 22 Object access                    |          |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |

## Set Data Pointer Attributes (SETDPAT)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2  |
|---------------|-----------|------------|
| 004A          | Receiver  | Attributes |

*Operand 1:* Data pointer.

*Operand 2:* Character(7) scalar.

**Description:** The value of the character scalar specified by operand 2 is interpreted as an encoded representation of an attribute set that is assigned to the attribute portion of the data pointer specified by operand 1. The addressability portion of the data pointer is not modified. If operand 1 contains an initialized but unresolved data pointer, the data pointer is resolved in order to establish the addressability in the pointer. The attributes specified by the instruction are then assigned to the data pointer. If operand 1 does not contain a data pointer at the initiation of the instruction's execution, an exception is signaled.

The format of the attribute set is as follows:

- Data pointer attributes Char(7)
  - Scalar type Char(1)
    - Hex 00 = Signed binary
    - Hex 01 = Floating-point
    - Hex 02 = Zoned decimal
    - Hex 03 = Packed decimal
    - Hex 04 = Character
    - Hex 06 = Onlyns
    - Hex 07 = Onlys
    - Hex 08 = Either
    - Hex 09 = Open
    - Hex 0A = Unsigned binary
  - Scalar length Bin(2)
    - If binary or character:
      - Length (only 2 or 4 for binary)
    - If floating-point:
      - Length (only 4 or 8 for floating-point)
    - If zoned decimal or packed decimal:
      - Fractional digits (F) Bits 0-7
      - Total digits (T) Bits 8-15  
(where  $1 \leq T \leq 31$ ,  $0 \leq F \leq T$ )
    - If character:
      - Length (L, where  $1 \leq L \leq 32767$ )
    - If Onlyns:
      - Length (L, where  $1 \leq L \leq 16,383$ )  
L is the number of double-byte characters.
    - If Onlys:
      - Length (L, where  $2 \leq L \leq 32,766$ )



- L is the number of bytes
- L is even
- L includes any SO and SI characters

If Either:

- Length (L, where  $1 \leq L \leq 32,766$ )
  - L is the number of bytes
  - L includes any SO and SI characters.

If Open:

- Length (L, where  $2 \leq L \leq 32,766$ )
  - L is the number of bytes
  - L includes any SO and SI characters.

— Reserved (binary 0)

Bin(4)

Support for usage of a Data Pointer describing an Onlyns, Onlys, Either, or Open scalar value is limited to the Copy Extended Characters Left Adjusted With Pad instruction. Usage of such a data pointer defined value on any other instruction is not supported and results in the signaling of the *scalar type invalid* (hex 3201) exception.

## Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X |       |
| 03 range                            | X        | X |       |
| 04 external data object not found   | X        |   |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state       | X        | X | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage     | X        | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception      |          |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                  |          |   |       |
| 02 machine check                    |          |   | X     |
| 03 function check                   |          |   | X     |
| 22 Object access                    |          |   |       |
| 01 object not found                 | X        | X |       |
| 02 object destroyed                 | X        | X |       |
| 03 object suspended                 | X        | X |       |
| 08 object compressed                |          |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification            |          |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specifications                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                 |          | X |       |
|           | 02 scalar attributes invalid           |          | X |       |
|           | 03 scalar value invalid                |          | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |

## Set Space Pointer (SETSP)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|
| 0082          | Receiver  | Source    |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* Numeric variable scalar, character variable scalar, numeric variable array, character variable array, or pointer data object.

**Description:** A space pointer is returned in operand 1 and is set to address the lowest order (leftmost) byte of the byte string identified by operand 2.

When the addressability is set in a space pointer, the instruction signals the *space addressing* (hex 0601) exception when the offset addresses beyond the largest space allocatable in the object or when the space address to be stored in the pointer has a nonpositive offset value. This offset value is dependent on the size and packaging of the object containing the space and is independent of the actual size of the space allocated. If the exception is signaled for this reason, the pointer is not modified by the instruction. Attempts to use a pointer whose offset value lies between the currently allocated extent of the space and the maximum allocatable extent of the space cause the *space addressing* (hex 0601) exception to be signaled.

If a pointer data object specified for operand 2 contains a data pointer value upon execution of the instruction, the addressability is set to the pointer storage form rather than to the scalar described by the data pointer value. The variable scalar references allowed on operand 2 cannot be described through a data pointer value.

The *object destroyed* (hex 2202) exception, the *optimized addressability invalid* (hex 0606) exception, the *parameter reference violation* (hex 0801) exception, and the *pointer does not exist* (hex 2401) exception are not signaled when operand 1 is a space pointer machine object and operand 2 is based on a space pointer machine object. This occurs when the basing space pointer machine object for operand 2 contains an internal machine value that indicates one of these error conditions exists. If the corresponding exception is not signaled, operand 1 is set with an internal machine value that preserves the exception condition which existed for operand 2. The appropriate exception condition is signaled for either pointer upon a subsequent attempt to reference the space data the pointer addresses.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X |       |
| 03 range                            | X        | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state       | X        | X | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage     | X        | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception      |          |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        |   |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                 | X        | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |

## Set Space Pointer with Displacement (SETSPPD)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3    |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|--------------|
| 0093          | Receiver  | Source    | Displacement |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* Numeric variable scalar, character variable scalar, numeric variable array, character variable array, or pointer data object.

*Operand 3:* Binary scalar.

**Description:** A space pointer is returned in operand 1 and is set to the space addressability of the lowest (leftmost) byte of the object specified for operand 2 as modified algebraically by an integer displacement specified by operand 3. Operand 3 can have a positive or negative value. I.e.

$$\text{Operand 1} = \text{Address\_of}(\text{Operand 2}) + \text{Operand 3}$$

When the addressability is set in a space pointer, the instruction signals the *space addressing* (hex 0601) exception when the space address to be stored in the pointer has a negative offset value or when the offset addresses beyond the largest space allocatable in the object. This maximum offset value is dependent on the size and packaging of the object containing the space and is independent of the actual size of the space allocated. If the exception is signaled for this reason, the pointer is not modified by the instruction. Attempts to use a pointer whose offset value lies between the currently allocated extent of the space and the maximum allocatable extent of the space cause the *space addressing* (hex 0601) exception to be signaled.

If a pointer data object specified for operand 2 contains a data pointer value upon execution of the instruction, the addressability is set to the pointer storage form rather than to the scalar described by the data pointer value. The variable scalar references allowed on operand 2 cannot be described through a data pointer value.

The *object destroyed* (hex 2202) exception, the *optimized addressability invalid* (hex 0606) exception, the *parameter reference violation* (hex 0801) exception, and the *pointer does not exist* (hex 2401) exception are not signaled when operand 1 is a space pointer machine object and operand 2 is based on a space pointer machine object. This occurs when the basing space pointer machine object for operand 2 contains an internal machine value that indicates one of these error conditions exists. If the corresponding exception is not signaled, operand 1 is set with an internal machine value that preserves the exception condition which existed for operand 2. The appropriate exception condition is signaled for either pointer upon a subsequent attempt is made to reference the space data the pointer addresses.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |       |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | Other |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X | X     |
| 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X | X     |
| 03 range                            | X        | X | X     |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X     |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X     |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state          | X        | X | X X   |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        | X        | X | X X   |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X | X     |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X | X     |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X     |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |

## Set Space Pointer Offset (SETSPPO)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|
| 0092          | Receiver  | Source 1  |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* Binary scalar.

**Description:** The value of the binary scalar specified by operand 2 is assigned to the offset portion of the space pointer identified by operand 1. The space pointer continues to address the same space object.

Operand 1 must contain a space pointer; otherwise, an *invalid pointer type* (hex 2402) exception is signaled.

When the addressability in the space pointer is modified, the instruction signals a *space addressing* (hex 0601) exception when one of the following conditions occurs:

- The space address to be stored in the pointer has a negative offset value.
- The offset addresses beyond the largest space allocatable in the object. This maximum offset value is dependent on the size and packaging of the object containing the space and is independent of the actual size of the space allocated.

If the exception is signaled by this instruction for this reason, the pointer is not modified by the instruction.

Attempts to use a pointer whose offset value lies between the currently allocated extent of the space and the maximum allocatable extent cause the *space addressing* (hex 0601) exception to be signaled.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X |       |
| 03 range                            | X        | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state       | X        | X | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage     | X        | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception      |          |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                  |          |   |       |
| 02 machine check                    |          |   | X     |
| 03 function check                   |          |   | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                 | X        | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |



## Store Space Pointer Offset (STSPPO)

|                      |                  |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|------------------|
| <b>Op Code (Hex)</b> | <b>Operand 1</b> | <b>Operand 2</b> |
| 00A2                 | Receiver         | Source           |

*Operand 1:* Binary variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Space pointer.

**Description:** The offset value of the space pointer referenced by operand 2 is stored in the binary variable scalar defined by operand 1.

If operand 2 does not contain a space pointer at the initiation of the instruction's execution, an *invalid pointer type* (hex 2401) exception is signaled.

If binary size (hex 0C0A) exceptions are to be signaled either because the program creation attribute indicated to do so or because a translator directive indicated to do so, they will be signalled under the following conditions. If the offset value is greater than 32 767 and operand 1 is a signed binary (2) scalar, a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception is signaled. If the offset value is greater than 65 535 and operand 1 is an unsigned binary (2) scalar, a *size* (hex 0C0A) exception is signaled.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |       |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | Other |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X |       |
| 03 range                            | X        | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X |       |
| 0C Computations                     |          |   |       |
| 0A size                             | X        |   |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state       | X        | X | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage     | X        | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception      |          |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                  |          |   |       |
| 02 machine check                    |          |   | X     |
| 03 function check                   |          |   | X     |
| 22 Object access                    |          |   |       |
| 01 object not found                 | X        | X |       |
| 02 object destroyed                 | X        | X |       |
| 03 object suspended                 | X        | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |

## Subtract Space Pointer Offset (SUBSPP)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1        | Operand 2      | Operand 3 |
|---------------|------------------|----------------|-----------|
| 0087          | Receiver pointer | Source pointer | Decrement |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* Space pointer.

*Operand 3:* Binary scalar.

**Description:** The value of the binary scalar specified by operand 3 is subtracted from the space address contained in the space pointer specified by operand 2; the result is stored in the space pointer identified by operand 1. I.e.

$$\text{Operand 1} = \text{Operand 2} - \text{Operand 3}$$

Operand 3 can have a positive or negative value. The space object that the pointer is addressing is not changed by the instruction. If operand 2 does not contain a space pointer at the initiation of the instruction's execution, an *invalid pointer type* (hex 2402) exception is signaled.

When the addressability in the space pointer is modified, the instruction signals a *space addressing* (hex 0601) exception when one of the following conditions occurs:

- The space address to be stored in the pointer has a negative offset value.
- The offset addresses beyond the largest space allocatable in the object. This maximum offset value is dependent on the size and packaging of the object containing the space and is independent of the actual size of the space allocated.

If the exception is signaled by this instruction for this reason, the pointer is not modified by the instruction.

Attempts to use a pointer whose offset value lies between the currently allocated extent of the space and the maximum allocatable extent cause the space addressing exception to be signaled.

The *object destroyed* (hex 2202) exception, *optimized addressability invalid* (hex 0606) exception, *parameter reference violation* (hex 0801) exception, and *pointer does not exist* (hex 2401) exception are not signaled when operand 1 and operand 2 are space pointer machine objects. This occurs when operand 2 contains an internal machine value that indicates one of these error conditions exists. If the corresponding exception is not signaled, operand 1 is set with an internal machine value that preserves the exception condition that existed for operand 2. The appropriate exception condition will be signaled for either pointer when a subsequent attempt is made to reference the space data that the pointer addresses.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 range                            | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state          | X        | X | X | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded | X        | X | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          | X        | X | X |       |

## Subtract Space Pointers For Offset (SUBSPFO)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1         | Operand 2       | Operand 3          |
|---------------|-------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| 0033          | Offset Difference | Minuend pointer | Subtrahend pointer |

*Operand 1:* Binary(4) variable scalar.

*Operand 2:* Space pointer.

*Operand 3:* Space pointer.

**Description:** The offset portion of the space address contained in the operand 3 space pointer is subtracted from the offset of the space address contained in the space pointer specified by operand 2; the result is stored in the 4 byte binary scalar identified by operand 1. I.e.

$$\text{Operand 1} = \text{Address\_of}(\text{Operand 2}) - \text{Address\_of}(\text{Operand 3})$$

The offsets for operands 2 and 3 are strictly unsigned values, while the operand 1 result can have a positive or negative value.

No check is made to determine that the space pointers point to the same space. In addition, the existence of the pointers is not checked except for pointers used as a base for the operands. When the space pointers point to different spaces, or one or both of the pointer operands is subject to the pointer does not exist condition, the resulting value is undefined, but no exception is signaled. However, if both operand 2 and operand 3 are subject to the pointer does not exist condition, the result value is zero.

If either operand 2 or operand 3 contains a pointer which is not a space pointer at the initiation of the instruction's execution, an *invalid pointer type* (hex 2402) exception is signaled.

A *size* (hex 0C0A) exception occurs when the operand 1 field is unsigned binary, the resulting value of the subtraction is negative, and the program attribute to *signal size exceptions* is in effect.

The *object destroyed* (hex 2202) exception, *optimized addressability invalid* (hex 0606) exception, *parameter reference violation* (hex 0801) exception, and *pointer does not exist* (hex 2401) exception are not signaled when operand 2 and operand 3 are space pointer machine objects. This occurs when operand 2 or operand 3 contains an internal machine value that indicates one of these error conditions exists. If the corresponding exception is not signaled, operand 1 is undefined, but no exception is signaled.

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 range                            | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state          | X        | X | X | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        | X        | X | X | X     |
| 0C        | Computation                            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 0A Size                                | X        |   |   |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded | X        | X | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          | X        | X | X |       |



---

## Chapter 6. Space Management Instructions

This chapter describes the instructions used for space management. These instructions are in alphabetic order. For an alphabetic summary of all the instructions, see Appendix A, "Instruction Summary."

|                                     |      |
|-------------------------------------|------|
| Create Space (CRTS)                 | 6-3  |
| Materialize Space Attributes (MATS) | 6-11 |
| Modify Space Attributes (MODS)      | 6-15 |





## Create Space (CRTS)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1                        | Operand 2               |
|---------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 0072          | Pointer for space addressability | Space creation template |

*Operand 1:* System pointer.

*Operand 2:* Space pointer.

### ILE access

```
CRTS (
  var space_obj      : system pointer;
      creation_template : space pointer
)
```

**Description:** A space object is created with the attributes that are specified in the space creation template specified by operand 2, and addressability to the created space is placed in a system pointer that is returned in the addressing object specified by operand 1.

Space objects, unlike other types of system objects, are used to contain a space and serve no other purposes.

The template identified by operand 2 must be 16-byte aligned in the space. The following is the format of the space creation template:

- Template size specification
  - Size of template Char(8)\*
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)\*
- Object identification Char(32)
  - Object type Char(1)\*
  - Object subtype Char(1)
  - Object name Char(30)
- Object creation options Char(4)
  - Existence attribute Bit 0
    - 0 = Temporary
    - 1 = Permanent
  - Space attribute Bit 1
    - 0 = Fixed-length
    - 1 = Variable-length
  - Initial context Bit 2
    - 0 = Addressability is not inserted into context
    - 1 = Addressability is inserted into context
  - Access group Bit 3
    - 0 = Do not create as member of access group
    - 1 = Create as member of access group
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 4-5

- Public authority specified Bit 6
    - 0 = No
    - 1 = Yes
  - Initial owner specified Bit 7
    - 0 = No
    - 1 = Yes
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 8-11
  - Set public authority in operand 1 Bit 12
    - 0 = No
    - 1 = Yes
  - Initialize space Bit 13
    - 0 = Initialize
    - 1 = Do not initialize
  - Automatically extend space Bit 14
    - 0 = No
    - 1 = Yes
  - Hardware storage protection level Bits 15-16
    - 00 = Reference and modify allowed for user state programs
    - 01 = Only reference allowed for user state programs
    - 10 = Invalid (yields *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception)
    - 11 = No reference or modify allowed for user state programs
  - Process temporary space accounting Bit 17
    - 0 = The temporary space will be tracked to the creating process
    - 1 = The temporary space will not be tracked to the creating process
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 18-31
- Recovery options Char(4)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(2)
  - ASP number Char(2)
- Size of space Bin(4)
- Initial value of space Char(1)
- Performance class Char(4)
  - Space alignment Bit 0
    - 0 = The space associated with the object is allocated to allow proper alignment of pointers at 16-byte alignments within the space. If no space is specified for the object, this value must be specified for the performance class.
    - 1 = The space associated with the object is allocated to allow proper alignment of pointers at 16-byte alignments within the space as well as to allow proper alignment of input/output buffers at 512-byte alignments within the space.
- Clear the space into main memory during creation Bit 1
  - 0 = Only a minimum amount (up to 4K) of the space will be in main storage upon completion of the instruction.
  - 1 = Most of the space, with some limits enforced by the machine, will be in main storage upon completion of the instruction.

- Reserved (binary 0) Bits 2-4
- Main storage pool selection Bit 5
  - 0 = Process default main storage pool is used for object.
  - 1 = Machine default main storage pool is used for object.
- Transient storage pool selection Bit 6
  - 0 = Default main storage pool (process default or machine default as specified for main storage pool selection) is used for object.
  - 1 = Transient storage pool is used for object.
- Block transfer on implicit access state modification Bit 7
  - 0 = Transfer the minimum storage transfer size for this object. This value is 1 storage unit.
  - 1 = Transfer the machine default storage transfer size. This value is 8 storage units.
- Unit number Bits 8-15
- Reserved (binary 0) Bits 16-31
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(1)
- Public authority Char(2)
- Extension offset Bin(4)
- Context System pointer
- Access group System pointer

**Note:** The instruction ignores the values associated with template entries annotated with an asterisk (\*).

A template extension must be specified for the *initial owner specified* creation option. Also, the template extension must be specified (*extension offset* must be nonzero) to specify any of the other template extension fields (those other than the initial owner user profile) as input to the instruction.

The template extension is located by the *extension offset* field. The template extension must be 16-byte aligned in the space. The following is the format of the template extension:

- User profile System pointer
- Largest size needed for space Bin(4)
- Domain assigned to the object Char(2)
  - Hex 0000 The domain will be chosen by the machine.
  - Hex 0001 The domain will be 'Common User'.
  - Hex 8000 The domain will be 'Common System'.
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(42)

If the created object is permanent, it is owned by the user profile governing process execution. The owning user profile is implicitly assigned all private authority states for the object. The storage occupied by the created object is charged to this owning user profile. If the created object is temporary, there is no owning user profile, and all authority states are assigned as public. Storage occupied by the created context is charged to the creating process.

The **object identification** specifies the symbolic name that identifies the space within the machine. An **object type** of hex 19 is implicitly supplied by the machine. The *object identification* is used to identify the object on materialize instructions as well as to locate the object in a context that addresses the object. The *object subtype* must be hex EF.

The **existence attribute** specifies whether the space is to be created as temporary or permanent. A *temporary* space, if not explicitly destroyed by the user, is implicitly destroyed by the machine when machine processing is terminated. A *permanent* space exists in the machine until it is explicitly destroyed by the user.

The **space attribute** specifies whether the size of the space can vary. The space may have a *fixed* size or a *variable* size. The initial allocation is as specified in the **size of space** field. The machine allocates a space of at least the size specified. The actual size allocated depends on an algorithm defined by a specific implementation. A fixed size space of zero length causes no space to be allocated.

If the **initial context** creation attribute field indicates that *addressability is to be inserted* into a context, the **context** field must contain a system pointer that identifies a context where addressability to the newly created space is to be placed. If *addressability is not to be inserted* into a context, the **context** field is ignored.

If the **access group** creation attribute field indicates that the space is to be created in an access group, the **access group** field must be a system pointer that identifies the access group in which the space is to be created. If the space is being *created as a member of an access group*, the **existence attribute** field must be *temporary* (bit 0 equals 0). If the space is *not to be created into an access group*, the **access group** field is ignored.

The **public authority specified** creation option controls whether or not the space is to be created with the public authority specified in the template. When *yes* is specified, the space is created with the public authority specified in the **public authority** field of the template. When *no* is specified, the **public authority** field is ignored and the space is created with default public authority. The default public authority depends on the value of the **existence attribute**: An *existence attribute* value of *temporary* results in a default public authority of all authority; an *existence attribute* value of *permanent* results in a default public authority of no authority. Refer to the Grant Authority instruction for a description of the public authority field and a list of allowable values.

The **initial owner specified** creation option controls whether or not the initial owner of the space is to be the user profile specified in the template. When *yes* is specified, initial ownership is assigned to the user profile specified in the **user profile** field of the template extension. When *no* is specified, initial ownership is assigned to the process user profile and the **user profile** field in the template extension is ignored. The initial owner user profile is implicitly assigned all authority states for the object. The storage occupied by the created space is charged to the initial owner. If *yes* is specified for this creation option when the **existence attribute** specifies *temporary*, a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be signaled.

The **set public authority in operand 1** creation option controls, when the **public authority specified** creation option has also been specified as *yes*, whether or not the public authority attribute for the space is to be set into the system pointer returned in operand 1. When *yes* is specified, the specified **public authority** is set into operand 1. When *no* is specified, public authority is not set into operand 1. When the **public authority specified** creation option is set to *no*, this option can not be specified as *yes* (or else a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be signalled) and the authority set into operand 1 is the default of no authority for a *permanent* or all authority for a *temporary* object (as specified by the **existence attribute**).

The **initialize space** creation option controls whether or not the space is to be initialized. When *initialize* is specified, each byte of the space is initialized to a value specified by the **initial value of space** field. Additionally, when the space is extended in size, this byte value is also used to initialize the new allocation. When *do not initialize* is specified, the **initial value of space** field is ignored and the initial value of the bytes of the space are unpredictable.

When *do not initialize* is specified for a space, internal machine algorithms do ensure that any storage resources last used for allocations to another object which are reused to satisfy allocations for the

space are reset to a machine default value to avoid possible access of data which may have been stored in the other object. To the contrary, reusage of storage areas previously used by the space object are not reset, thereby exposing subsequent reallocations of those storage areas within the space to access of the data which was previously stored within them.

The **automatically extend space** creation option controls whether the space is to be extended automatically by the machine or a *space addressing* (hex 0601) exception is to be signaled when a reference is made to an area beyond the allocated portion of the space. When *yes* is specified, the space will automatically be extended by an amount determined through internal machine algorithms. When *no* is specified, the exception will result. Note that an attempt to reference an area beyond that for the maximum size that a space can be allocated, will always result in the signaling of the *space addressing* (hex 0601) exception independently of the setting of this attribute. The *automatically extend space* creation option can only be specified when the *space attribute* has been specified as *variable length*. Invalid specification of the *automatically extend space* option results in the signaling of the *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception.

Usage of the *automatically extend space function* is limited. Predictable results will occur only when you ensure that the automatic extension of a space will not happen in conjunction with modification of the space size by another process. That is, you must ensure that when a process is using the space in a manner that could cause it to be automatically extended, it is the sole process which can cause the space size to be modified. Note that in addition to implicit modification through automatic extension, the space size can be explicitly modified through use of the Modify Space Attributes instruction.

The **hardware storage protection level** can be used to restrict access to the contents of the space by user state programs. It is possible to limit the access of the space by user state programs into 1 of three levels:

- *Reference only* (non-modifying storage references are allowed, modifying storing storage references yield a *domain/protection violation* (hex 4401) exception).
- *No storage references* (all storage references, modifying or non-modifying yield a *domain/protection violation* (hex 4401) exception).
- *Full access* (both modifying and non-modifying storage references are allowed).

**Process temporary space accounting** can be used to detect when temporary space objects, created within a process, still exist at process termination time. Temporary spaces that are created with the *process temporary space accounting* field set to 0 will be "tracked" to the process which created them. Temporary spaces that are created with the *process temporary space accounting* field set to 1 will not be "tracked" to the creating process.

At process termination time, any tracked spaces that exist may cause the machine to attempt to destroy the existing tracked spaces. If this is done, the destroy attempts would be performed as if an MI program issued a Destroy Space (DESS) instruction for each of the existing spaces.

The purpose of *process temporary space accounting* is to identify objects which may be "lost" in the system (until the next IPL). It should not intentionally be used (by MI) as a method of cleaning up temporary space objects at process termination time. The machine does not guarantee that all spaces (that should be tracked) will indeed be tracked. Also, if the machine is attempting to destroy tracked spaces at process termination time, any failures in the deletion attempts (such as if a space is locked to another process) will be ignored (i.e. the space will not be destroyed) and no indication of this is presented to the MI user.

*Process temporary space accounting* only applies to temporary space objects. A value of 1 for the *process temporary space accounting* field when creating a permanent object will result in a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception. This is in spite of the fact that a value of 1 for this field would result in the same actions as when creating a permanent object (i.e. the object would not be tracked to the process). The exception is presented because this field is undefined for permanent objects.

The **ASP number** field specifies the ASP number of the ASP on which the unit is to be allocated. A value of 0 indicates an *ASP number* is not specified and results in the default of allocating the object in the system ASP. Allocation on the system ASP can only be done implicitly by not specifying an ASP number. The only non-zero values allowed are 2 through 16 which specify the user ASP on which the space object will be allocated. The *ASP number* must specify an existing ASP or else an *Auxiliary Storage Pool number invalid* (hex 1C09) exception will be signaled. The *ASP number* field may only be specified for creation of a permanent object. The *ASP number* attribute of an object can be materialized, but cannot be modified.

Invalid specification of the *ASP number* attribute results in the signaling of the *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception.

The **performance class** fields provide information allowing the machine to more effectively manage the space object considering the overall performance objectives of operations involving the space. The **unit number** field indicates the auxiliary storage unit on which the space should be located, if possible.

The preferred *unit number* field which can be specified in the *performance class* field at object creation may not be specified in conjunction with specification of the ASP number attribute.

The **extension offset** specifies the byte offset from the beginning of the operand 2 template to the beginning of the template extension. An offset value of zero specifies that the template extension is not provided. A negative offset value is invalid. A non-zero offset must be a multiple of 16 (to cause 16 byte alignment of the extension). Except for these restrictions, the offset value is not verified for correctness relative to the location of other portions of the create template.

The **largest size needed for space** field of the template extension specifies, when nonzero, a value in bytes that indicates the largest size that will be needed for the space. This field is different from the *size of space* field which indicates the size for the initial allocation of the space. This field can be used to communicate to the machine what the largest size needed for the space will be. Specification of a value larger than the maximum size space allowed for this object is invalid and results in signaling of the *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception. Specification of a nonzero value that is less than the *size of space* field also results in the signaling of the *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception. For more information on the maximum allowed, see the Limitations topic at the end of the instruction's description.

Specifying the *largest size of space* needed value allows the machine, under certain circumstances, to select usage of an internal storage allocation unit which best utilizes the internal addressing resources within the machine. Note that the internal storage allocation unit selected can alter the maximum modification size of the associated space for the object. However, the machine will always use an internal storage allocation unit that will allow for extension of the space to at least the value specified in the *largest size of space needed* field. The maximum size to which the space can be modified is dependent upon specific implementations of the machine and can vary with different machine implementations. For more information on the affect of this option, see the Limitations topic at the end of this create instruction definition.

The **domain assigned** field in the template extension allows the user of this instruction to override the domain for this object that would otherwise be chosen by the machine.

Any value specified for the *domain assigned* field other than those listed will result in a *template value invalid* exception (hex 3801) being signalled.

**Limitations:** The following are limits that apply to the functions performed by this instruction.

The maximum size space allowed for this object under any circumstances is limited to 16MB-256 Bytes. Note that the value specified in largest size of space needed field in the creation template is used by the machine as part of the criteria used in selecting the appropriate internal storage allocation unit to be used for the storage allocations for the space.

### Authorization Required

- Insert
  - User profile of object owner
  - Context identified in operand 2
- Retrieve
  - Context referenced for address resolution
- Object control
  - Operand 1 if being replaced

### Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution
- Modify
  - Context identified in operand 2
  - User profile of object owner
  - Access group identified in operand 2

### Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 |       |
| 02        | Access group                        |          |   |       |
|           | 02 object exceeds available space   |          | X |       |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 range                            | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation       |          | X |       |
| 0E        | Context operation                   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 duplicate object identification  |          | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                  |          |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state       | X        | X | X     |



| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              | X        | X | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  |          | X |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   | X     |
|           | 04 object storage limit exceeded                             |          | X |       |
|           | 09 auxiliary storage pool number invalid                     |          | X |       |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X |       |
|           | Pointer addressing invalid object                            |          | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          | X |       |
| 36        | Space management   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid                                    |          | X |       |

## Materialize Space Attributes (MATS)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2    |
|---------------|-----------|--------------|
| 0036          | Receiver  | Space object |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* System pointer.

### ILE access

```
MATS (
    receiver      : space pointer;
    var space_object : system pointer
)
```

**Description:** The current attributes of the space object specified by operand 2 are materialized into the receiver specified by operand 1.

The template identified by operand 1 must be 16-byte aligned in the space. The format of the materialization is as follows:

- Materialization size specification Char(8)
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Bin(4)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)  
(always 96 for this instruction)
- Object identification Char(32)
  - Object type Char(1)
  - Object subtype Char(1)
  - Object name Char(30)
- Object creation options Char(4)
  - Existence attribute Bit 0
    - 0 = Temporary
    - 1 = Permanent
  - Space attribute Bit 1
    - 0 = Fixed-length
    - 1 = Variable-length
  - Context Bit 2
    - 0 = Addressability not in context
    - 1 = Addressability in context
  - Access group Bit 3
    - 0 = Not member of access group
    - 1 = Member of access group
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 4-12
  - Initialize space Bit 13
    - 0 = Initialize

|  |                |
|--|----------------|
| 1 = Do not initialize  |                |
| – Automatically extend space   | Bit 14         |
| 0 = No   |                |
| 1 = Yes  |                |
| – Hardware storage protection level  | Bits 15-16     |
| 00 = Reference and modify allowed for user state programs  |                |
| 01 = Only reference allowed for user state programs  |                |
| 10 = Invalid (undefined)   |                |
| 11 = No reference or modify allowed for user state programs  |                |
| – Reserved (binary 0)  | Bits 17-31     |
| • Reserved (binary 0)  | Char(2)        |
| • ASP number   | Char(2)        |
| • Size of space  | Bin(4)         |
| • Initial value of space   | Char(1)        |
| • Performance class  | Char(4)        |
| – Space alignment  | Bit 0          |
| 0 = The space associated with the object is allocated to allow proper alignment of pointers at 16-byte alignments within the space. If no space is specified for the object, this value must be specified for the performance class.     |                |
| 1 = The space associated with the object is allocated to allow proper alignment of pointers at 16-byte alignments within the space as well as to allow proper alignment of input/output buffers at 512-byte alignments within the space. |                |
| – Reserved (binary 0)  | Bits 1-4       |
| – Main storage pool selection  | Bit 5          |
| 0 = Process default main storage pool is used for object.  |                |
| 1 = Machine default main storage pool is used for object.  |                |
| – Transient storage pool selection   | Bit 6          |
| 0 = Default main storage pool (process default or machine default as specified for main storage pool selection) is used for object.  |                |
| 1 = Transient storage pool is used for object.   |                |
| – Block transfer on implicit access state modification   | Bit 7          |
| 0 = Transfer the minimum storage transfer size for this object. This value is 1 storage unit.  |                |
| 1 = Transfer the machine default storage transfer size. This value is 8 storage units.   |                |
| – Unit number  | Bits 8-15      |
| – Reserved (binary 0)  | Bits 16-31     |
| • Reserved (binary 0)  | Char(7)        |
| • Context  | System pointer |
| • Access group   | System pointer |

The first 4 bytes that are materialized identify the total **number of bytes provided** for use by the instruction. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than 8 causes a *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception.

The second 4 bytes that are materialized identify the total **number of bytes available** to be materialized. The instruction materializes as many bytes as can be contained in the area specified as the receiver.

If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested, then the excess bytes are unchanged. No exceptions (other than the materialization length exception described previously) are signaled in the event that the receiver contains insufficient area for the materialization.

See the Create Space instruction for a description of these fields.

This instruction cannot be used to materialize the *public authority specified* creation option, the *initial owner specified* creation option, the *process temporary space accounting* creation option, or the template extension which can be specified on space creation. The Materialize Authority instruction can be used to materialize the current public authority for the space. The Materialize System Object instruction can be used to materialize the current owner of the space.

## Authorization Required

- Operational or space authority
  - Operand 2
- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

## Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Operand 2
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

## Exceptions

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment                                      | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 range   | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                        | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                           | X        | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                              |          | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                              | X        | X | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object |          |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                            | X        | X | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state                                      |          | X |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                          |          |   | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 pointer addressing invalid object                         |          | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                                       |          |   |       |
|           | 03 materialization length exception                          | X        |   |       |

## Modify Space Attributes (MODS)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1      | Operand 2                            |
|---------------|----------------|--------------------------------------|
| 0062          | System object. | Size or Space modification template. |

*Operand 1:* System pointer.

*Operand 2:* Binary scalar or character(28) scalar (fixed length).

### ILE access

```
MODS1 (
  var space_object : system pointer;
  var size         : signed binary
)

OR

MODS2 (
  var system_object           : system pointer;
  var space_modification_template : aggregate
)
```

**Description:** The attributes of the space associated with the system object specified for operand 1 are modified with the attribute values specified in operand 2. Operand 1 may address any system object.

The operand 2 space modification template is specified with one of two formats. The abbreviated format, operand 2 specified as a binary scalar, only provides for modifying the *size of space* attribute. The full format, operand 2 specified as a character scalar, provides for modifying the full set of space attributes.

When operand 2 is a binary value, it specifies the size in bytes to which the space size is to be modified. The current allocation of the space is extended or truncated accordingly to match as closely as possible the specified size. The modified space size will be of at least the size specified. The actual size allocated is dependent upon the algorithm used within the specific implementation of the machine. If the space is of fixed size, or if the value of operand 2 is negative, or if the operand 2 size is larger than that for the largest space that can be associated with the object, the space extension/truncation exception is signaled. When operand 2 is a character scalar, it specifies a selection of space attribute values to be used to modify the attributes of the space. It must be at least 28 bytes long and have the following format:

- Modification selection Char(4)
  - Modify space length attribute Bit 0
    - 0 = No
    - 1 = Yes
  - Modify size of space Bit 1
    - 0 = No
    - 1 = Yes
  - Modify initial value of space Bit 2
    - 0 = No
    - 1 = Yes

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Modify performance class</li> </ul>  | Bit 3      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0 = No</li> <li>1 = Yes</li> </ul> </li> </ul>   |            |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Modify initialize space attribute</li> </ul>   | Bit 4      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0 = No</li> <li>1 = Yes</li> </ul> </li> </ul>   |            |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Reinitialize space</li> </ul>  | Bit 5      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0 = No</li> <li>1 = Yes</li> </ul> </li> </ul>   |            |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Modify automatically extend space attribute</li> </ul>   | Bit 6      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0 = No</li> <li>1 = Yes</li> </ul> </li> </ul>   |            |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Create secondary associated space</li> </ul>   | Bit 7      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0 = No</li> <li>1 = Yes</li> </ul> </li> </ul>   |            |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Reserved (binary 0)</li> </ul>   | Bits 8-31  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicator attributes</li> </ul>  | Char(4)    |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Reserved (binary 0)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>   | Bit 0      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Space length</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  | Bit 1      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0 = Fixed length</li> <li>1 = Variable length</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>   |            |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Initialize space</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  | Bit 2      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0 = Initialize</li> <li>1 = Do not initialize</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>   |            |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Automatically extend space</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  | Bit 3      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0 = No</li> <li>1 = Yes</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>   |            |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Reserved (binary 0)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>   | Bits 4-14  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Hardware storage protection level*</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  | Bits 15-16 |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>00 = Reference and modify allowed for user state programs</li> <li>01 = Only reference allowed for user state programs</li> <li>10 = Invalid (undefined)</li> <li>11 = No reference or modify allowed for user state programs</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> |            |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Reserved (binary 0)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>   | Bits 17-31 |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maximum size of space*</li> </ul>  | Bin(4)     |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Size of space</li> </ul>   | Bin(4)     |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Initial value of space</li> </ul>  | Char(1)    |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Performance class</li> </ul>   | Char(4)    |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reserved (binary 0)</li> </ul>   | Char(1)    |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Secondary associated space number</li> </ul>   | UBin(2)    |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reserved (binary 0)</li> </ul>   | Char(4)    |

\* These fields will be ignored when *create secondary associated space* is 0.

The **modification selection** indicator fields select the modifications to be performed on the space.

The **modify space length attribute** modification selection field controls whether or not the space length attribute is to be modified. When *yes* is specified, the value of the **space length** indicator is used to modify the space to be specified *fixed* or *variable* length attribute. When *no* is specified, the *space length* indicator attribute value is ignored and the *space length* attribute is not modified.

The **modify size of space** modification selection field controls whether or not the allocation size of the space is to be modified. When *yes* is specified, the current allocation of the space is extended or truncated accordingly to match as closely as possible the specified size in the **size of space** field. The modified size will be at least the size specified. The actual size allocated is dependent upon the algorithm used within the specific implementation of the machine. When *no* is specified, the current allocation of the space is not modified and the *size of space* field is ignored.

Modification of the *size of space attribute* for a space of fixed length can only be performed in conjunction with modification of the *space length* attribute. In this case, the *space length* attribute may be modified to the same fixed length attribute or to the variable length attribute. An attempt to modify the *size of space* attribute for a space of fixed length without modification of the *space length* attribute results in the signaling of the *space extension/truncation* (hex 3601) exception. Modification of the *size of space* attribute for a space of variable length can always be performed separately from a modification of the *space length* attribute.

When the *size of space* attribute is to be modified, if the value of the *size of space* field is negative or specifies a size larger than that for the largest space that can be associated with the object, the *space extension/truncation* (hex 3601) exception is signaled.

The **modify initial value of space** modification selection field controls whether or not the *initial value of space* attribute is to be modified. When *yes* is specified, the value of the **initial value of space** field is used to modify the corresponding attribute of this space. This byte value will be used to initialize any new space allocations for this space due to an extension to the size of space attribute on the current execution of this instruction as well as any subsequent modifications. When *no* is specified, the *initial value of space* field is ignored and the *initial value of space* attribute is not modified.

The **modify performance class** modification selection field controls whether or not the *performance class* attribute of the specified system object is to be modified with the values relating to space objects. When *yes* is specified, the value of the **performance class** field is used to modify the corresponding attribute of the specified system object. When *no* is specified, the *performance class* attribute of the specified system object is not modified.

The **modify initialize space attribute** modification selection field controls whether or not the *initialize space attribute* is to be modified. When *yes* is specified, the value of the **initialize space** indicator attribute is used to modify that attribute of the specified space to the specified value. When *no* is specified, the *initialize space* indicator attribute value is ignored and the *initialize space* attribute is not modified.

Changing the value of the *initialize space* attribute only affects whether or not future extensions of the space will be initialized or not. That is, it is the state of this attribute at the time of allocation of the storage for a space that determines whether that newly allocated storage area will be initialized to the initial value specified for the space. Modifications of this attribute subsequent to the allocation of storage to a space have no effect on the value of that previously allocated storage area.

The **reinitialize space** modification selection field controls whether the storage allocated to the space is to be reinitialized in its entirety. When *no* is specified, the space is not reinitialized. When *yes* is specified, the space is reinitialized. This re-initialization is performed after all other attribute modifications which may also have been specified on the instruction have been made. Thus changes to the *size of*



the space, the *initial value of the space*, etc. will be put into effect and be considered the current attributes of the space for purposes of the re-initialization. The byte value used for the re-initialization is either the current initial value for the space if the *initialize space* attribute for the space currently specifies *yes*, or a value of hex 00 if the *initialize space* attribute currently specifies *no*.

Note that specifying *yes* for the *reinitialize space* modification selection field for a space with current attributes of fixed length size zero results in no operation, because such a space has no allocated storage to reinitialize. Also, note that re-initialization of a space will have the side effect of resetting partial damage for a space object containing the space if the space object had previously been marked as having partial damage. This only applies to space objects; i.e. re-initialization of an associated space does not have the side effect of resetting partial damage for the MI object containing it.

The **modify automatically extend space** attribute modification selection field controls whether or not the *automatically extend space* attribute is to be modified. When *yes* is specified, the value of the **automatically extend space** indicator attribute is used to modify that attribute of the specified space to the specified value. When *no* is specified, the *automatically extend space* indicator attribute value is ignored and the *automatically extend space* attribute is not modified. The *automatically extend space* attribute can only be specified as *yes* when the *space length* attribute for the space is already *variable* length, or when the *space length* attribute is being modified to *variable* length. Invalid specification of the *automatically extend space* attribute results in the signaling of the *invalid space modification* (hex 3602) exception.

Modification to or from the state of a space being fixed length of size zero can not be performed for the following objects:

- Class of service description
- Controller description
- Cursor
- Data space
- Logical unit description
- Mode description
- Network description
- Space

Program (when attempted while in user state on a security level 40 or higher system).

If such a modification is attempted for these objects, the *invalid space modification* (hex 3602) exception is signaled.

Specifying *yes* for the **modify performance class** modification selection field is only allowed when the space to be modified is a fixed length space of size zero. This modification may be specified in conjunction with other modifications. Only bit 0 of the *performance class* field is used to modify the performance class attribute of the specified system object. A bit value of zero requests that the start of the space storage provide 16-byte multiple (pointer) machine address alignment. A bit value of one requests that the start of the space storage provide 512-byte multiple (buffer) machine address alignment. Bits 1 through 31 are ignored. Specifying *yes* for the *modify performance class* modification selection field when the space to be modified is not a fixed length space of size zero results in the signaling of the *invalid space modification* (hex 3602) exception.

The **create secondary associated space** field indicates if a secondary associated space is to be created for the object. All the indicator attributes and size and value fields are used for this create. The secondary associated space to be created is indicated by the *secondary associated space number* field. If the specified space already exists, the *invalid space modification* (hex 3602) exception is signalled. When this bit is set to *yes*, all other *modification selection* bits are ignored.

Specifying the **largest size of space needed** value allows the machine, under certain circumstances, to select usage of an internal storage allocation unit which best utilizes the internal addressing resources within the machine. Note that the internal storage allocation unit selected can alter the maximum modification size of the associated space for the object. However, the machine will always use an internal storage allocation unit that will allow for extension of the space to at least the value specified in the largest size of space needed field. The maximum size to which the space can be modified is dependent upon specific implementations of the machine and can vary with different machine implementations.

The **secondary associated space number** field is used to indicate which secondary space is to be created or modified. When this field is zero, the primary associated space of the space object is modified. If this field is not zero and no secondary associated spaces are allowed for the object, the *scalar value invalid* (hex 3203) exception will be signalled.

A fixed length space of size zero is defined by the machine to have no internal storage allocation. Due to this, a modification to or from this state is, in essence, the same as a destroy or create for the space associated with the specified system object. The effect of modifying to this state is similar to destroying the associated space in that address references to the space through previously set pointers will result in signaling of the object destroyed exception. When a primary associated space is destroyed by using this method, any secondary associated spaces for the object are also destroyed. Additionally, an attempt to set a space pointer to the space associated with the specified system object through the Set Space Pointer from Pointer instruction will result in the signaling of the *invalid space reference* (hex 0605) exception. To the contrary, modifying the space attributes from this state is similar to creating an associated space in that the Set Space Pointer from Pointer instruction can be used to set a space pointer to the start of a storage within the associated space and the allocated space storage can be used to contain space data.

The extension and truncation of a space is always by an implementation-defined multiple of 256 bytes. This means that if, for example, the implementation defined multiple is 2 (or 512 bytes), any modification of the space size will be in increments of 512 bytes.

## Authorization Required

- Object management
  - Operand 1
- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

## Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution
- Object control
  - Operand 1 (when operand 2 is binary)
- Modify
  - Operand 1 (when operand 2 is character)

## Events

0002 Authorization  
     0101 Object authorization violation

000C Machine resource

0201 Machine auxiliary storage threshold exceeded  
 0202 User auxiliary storage pool threshold exceeded  
 0203 User auxiliary storage pool overflow  
 0204 Asp unprotected space overflow  
 0501 Machine address threshold exceeded

000D Machine status  
 0101 Machine check  
 0401 Auxiliary storage device requires service

0010 Process  
 0701 Maximum processor time exceeded  
 0801 Process storage limit exceeded

0016 Machine observation  
 0101 Instruction reference

0017 Damage set  
 0401 System object damage set  
 0801 Partial system object damage set

## Exceptions

| Exception  | Operands |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06 Addressing  |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation                              | X        | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment                                      | X        | X |       |
| 03 range   | X        | X |       |
| 05 invalid space reference                                 |          |   | X     |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid                        | X        | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                                      |          |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation                           | X        | X |       |
| 0A Authorization   |          |   |       |
| 01 unauthorized for operation                              | X        |   |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                                      |          |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state                              | X        | X | X     |
| 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object |          |   | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage                            | X        | X | X     |
| 1A Lock state  |          |   |       |
| 01 invalid lock state                                      | X        |   |       |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception                             |          |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded                          |          |   | X     |
| 04 object storage limit exceeded                           | X        |   |       |
| 20 Machine support   |          |   |       |
| 02 machine check   |          |   | X     |
| 03 function check  |          |   | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 pointer addressing invalid object                         | X        |   |       |
| 2A        | Program creation   |          |   |       |
|           | 06 invalid operand type                                      | X        | X |       |
|           | 07 invalid operand attribute                                 | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 invalid operand value range                               | X        | X |       |
|           | 0A invalid operand length                                    |          | X |       |
|           | 0C invalid operand odt reference                             | X        | X |       |
|           | 0D reserved bits are not zero                                | X        | X | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       | X        |   |       |
| 32        | Scalar Specification   |          |   |       |
|           | 03 scalar value invalid                                      |          | X |       |
| 36        | Space management   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 invalid space modification                                | X        | X |       |



## Chapter 7. Heap Management Instructions

This chapter describes the instructions used for heap management. These instructions are in alphabetic order. For an alphabetic summary of all the instructions, see Appendix A, "Instruction Summary."

|  |      |
|--|------|
| Allocate Heap Space Storage (ALCHSS)         | 7-3  |
| Create Heap Space (CRTHS)                    | 7-6  |
| Destroy Heap Space (DESHS)                   | 7-11 |
| Free Heap Space Storage (FREHSS)             | 7-13 |
| Free Heap Space Storage From Mark (FREHSSMK) | 7-15 |
| Materialize Heap Space Attributes (MATHSAT)  | 7-17 |
| Reallocate Heap Space Storage (REALCHSS)     | 7-22 |
| Set Heap Space Storage Mark (SETHSSMK)       | 7-25 |



## Allocate Heap Space Storage (ALCHSS)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1        | Operand 2       | Operand 3                |
|---------------|------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| 03B3          | Space allocation | Heap Identifier | Size of space allocation |

Operand 1: Space pointer.

Operand 2: Binary(4) scalar or null.

Operand 3: Binary(4) scalar.

### ILE access

```
ALCHSS (
  heap_identifier      : signed binary;
  size_of_space_allocation : signed binary
) : space pointer /* space_allocation */
```

**Description:** A heap space storage allocation of at least the size indicated by operand 3 is provided from the heap space indicated by operand 2. The operand 1 space pointer is set to address the first byte of the allocation which will begin on a boundary at least as great as the minimum boundary specified when the heap space was created.

Each allocation associated with a heap space provides a continuum of contiguously addressable bytes. Individual allocations within a heap space have no addressability affinity with each other. The contents of the heap space allocation are unpredictable unless initialization of heap allocations was specified when the heap space was created.

Simultaneous operations against a heap space from multiple processes is not supported and may produce unpredictable results.

The maximum single allocation allowed is determined by the maximum single allocation size specified when the heap space was created. The maximum single allocation possible is 16M-64K bytes.

It is the responsibility of the using program to see that only the amount of heap space storage requested is used. Reference to heap space storage outside the bounds of the requested space will produce unpredictable results. The exact address returned must be supplied to the Free Heap Space Storage (FREHSS) instruction when the user has completed use of the heap space storage.

A default heap space (heap identifier value of 0) is automatically available in each activation group without issuing a Create Heap Space (CRTHS) instruction. The default heap space is created when the first Allocate Heap Space is issued against the default heap space. When operand 2 is null, the default heap space (heap identifier of 0) provides the allocation.

The machine supplied attributes of the default heap space are as follows:

- Maximum single allocation size is 16M - 64K bytes.
- Minimum boundary requirement is a 16 byte boundary.
- The creation size advisory is 4KB unless the size of the allocation request dictates a larger creation size be used.
- The extension size advisory is 4KB unless the size of the allocation request dictates a larger extension size be used.



- | • Domain is determined from the state of the program issuing the instruction.
- | • Normal allocation strategy.
- | • A heap space mark is not allowed.
- | • The transfer size is 1 storage unit.
- | • The process access group membership advisory value is taken from the activation group. Default activation groups get this value from the attribute specified on the Initiate Process (INITPR) instruction. Other activation groups get this value from the attribute specified on the Create Bound Program (CRTBPGM) instruction for the program which initiated the activation group.
- | • Heap space storage allocations are not initialized to the allocation value.
- | • Heap space storage allocations are not overwritten to the freed value after being freed.
- | Neither operand 2 nor 3 is modified by the instruction.

## Events

- | 000C Machine resource
  - | 0201 Machine auxiliary storage threshold exceeded
  - | 0501 Machine address threshold exceeded
- | 000D Machine status
  - | 0101 Machine check
  - | 0401 Auxiliary storage device requires service
- | 0010 Process
  - | 0701 Maximum processor time exceeded
  - | 0801 Process storage limit exceeded
- | 0016 Machine observation
  - | 0101 Instruction reference
  - | 0401 Domain violation
  - | 0402 Hardware storage violation
- | 0017 Damage set
  - | 0401 System object damage set
  - | 0801 Partial system object damage set

## Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 range                            | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X | X     |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |   |       |

| Exception  | Operands |   |   |       |
|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | 3 | Other |
| 04 system object damage state                              | X        | X | X | X     |
| 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object |          |   |   | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage                            | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception                             |          |   |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded                          |          |   |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support   |          |   |   |       |
| 02 machine check   |          |   |   | X     |
| 03 function check  |          |   |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification                                   |          |   |   |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist                                  | X        | X | X | X     |
| 02 pointer type invalid                                    | X        | X | X | X     |
| 03 Pointer addressing invalid object                       |          | X | X |       |
| 44 Domain specification                                    |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Domain Violation  | X        | X | X |       |
| 45 Heap specification                                      |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Invalid Heap Identifier                                 |          | X |   |       |
| 03 Heap Space Full   |          | X |   |       |
| 04 Invalid Size Request                                    |          |   | X |       |
| 05 Heap Space Destroyed                                    |          |   |   | X     |
| 06 Invalid Heap Condition                                  | X        | X | X | X     |

## Create Heap Space (CRTHS)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1       | Operand 2                    |
|---------------|-----------------|------------------------------|
| 03B2          | Heap Identifier | Heap Space creation template |

Operand 1: Binary(4) variable scalar

Operand 2: Space pointer

### ILE access

```
CRTHS (
  var heap_identifier : signed binary;
  creation_template : space pointer
)
```

**Description:** A heap space is created with the attributes supplied in the heap space creation template specified by operand 2. The heap space identifier used to perform allocations and marks against the heap space is returned in operand 1.

The heap identifier returned in operand 1 represents the heap space. This identifier is used for the Allocate Heap Space Storage (ALCHSS), Destroy Heap Space (DESHS), Set Heap Space Storage Mark (SETHSSMK) and Materialize Heap Space Attributes (MATHSAT) instructions.

The heap space creation template identified by operand 2 must be 16-byte aligned in the space. Operand 2 is not modified by the instruction.

The following is the format of the heap space creation template:

- Reserved (binary 0) Char(8)
- Maximum single allocation UBin(4)
- Minimum boundary requirement UBin(4)
- Creation size UBin(4)
- Extension size UBin(4)
- Domain/Storage protection Bin(2)
  - Hex 0000 = System should chose the Domain
  - Hex 0001 = The heap space domain should be "Common User"
  - Hex 8000 = The heap space domain should be "Common System"
- Heap space creation options Char(6)
  - Allocation strategy Bit 0
    - 0 = Normal allocation strategy
    - 1 = Force process space creation on each allocate
  - Heap Space Mark Bit 1
    - 0 = Allow heap space mark
    - 1 = Prevent heap space mark
  - Block transfer Bit 2
    - 0 = Transfer the minimum storage transfer size.
    - This value is 1 storage unit.

1 = Transfer the machine default storage transfer size.  
This value is 8 storage units.

- Process access group member Bit 3
  - 0 = Do not create the heap space in the PAG.
  - 1 = Create the heap space in the PAG.
- Allocation initialization Bit 4
  - 0 = Do not initialize allocations.
  - 1 = Initialize allocations.
- Overwrite freed allocations Bit 5
  - 0 = Do not overwrite freed allocations.
  - 1 = Overwrite freed allocations.
- Reserved (binary 0) Bits 6-7
- Allocation value Char(1)
- Freed value Char(1)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(3)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(64)

The **maximum single allocation** of any single allocation from the heap space is useful for controlling the use of the heap space and may also improve performance for some cases when the machine can optimize access based on this attribute. The minimum value that can be specified is 4 bytes, and the maximum value that can be specified is 16M-64K bytes. If zero is specified, the default value of 16M-64K bytes will be used. Values outside the range indicated will cause a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception.

The **minimum boundary alignment** associated with any allocation from the heap space can be specified in the template. The minimum value that can be specified is a 4 byte boundary alignment. The maximum boundary alignment that can be specified is a 512 byte boundary alignment. If zero is specified, a default of a 16 byte boundary will be used. The *minimum boundary alignment* will be rounded up to a power of 2. Values outside the range indicated will cause a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception.

The **creation size** of the heap space can be specified in the template. If zero is specified the system will compute a default value. The minimum value that can be specified is 512 bytes. The maximum value that can be specified is 16M-1K bytes. The value specified will be rounded up to a storage unit boundary. Values outside the range indicated will cause a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception. This is an advisory value only. The machine may decide to override the value specified based on system resource constraints.

The **extension size** of the heap space can be specified in the template. If zero is specified the system will compute a default value. The minimum value that can be specified is 512 bytes. The maximum value that can be specified is 16M-1K bytes. The value specified will be rounded up to a storage unit boundary. Values outside the range indicated will cause a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception. This is an advisory value only. The machine may decide to override the value specified based on system resource constraints.

The **domain/storage protection** field in the template allows the user of this instruction to override the domain for the heap space that would otherwise be chosen by the machine. The *domain/storage protection* attribute can be used to restrict access to the contents of the heap space by user state programs. It is possible to limit the access of the heap space by user state programs into 1 of two levels:

- No storage references (all storage references, modifying or non-modifying yield a *domain/protection violation* (hex 4401) exception). This is *Common System*.
- Full access (both modifying and non-modifying storage references are allowed). This is *Common User*.

Only a system state process can specify a heap space to be created with a domain of *Common System*. If a user state program attempts to specify the *domain/storage protection* as *Common System*, a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be signaled. Any value other than the ones listed will cause a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception to be signaled.

The **normal allocation strategy** as defined by the machine will be used unless the force process space creation on each allocation attribute is indicated. This option should only be used in unusual situations, such as when necessary for debug of application problems caused by references outside an allocation.

The **heap space mark** attribute can be used to prevent the use of the Set Heap Space Storage Mark (SETHSSMK) and Free Heap Space Storage from Mark (FREHSSMK) instructions on a heap space.

**Block transfer** on a heap space is used to increase the performance of a heap space based on prior knowledge of the program creating the heap space on how that heap space will be used. This attribute is used only when the heap space is not a member of a process access group (PAG).

A heap space can be created as a process access group (PAG) member of the currently executing process, if specified by the **process access group member**. It is possible for the PAG to overflow at which point any requested heap space creations or extensions will not reside in the PAG. Thus the specification to have the heap space as a member of the PAG is only an advisory which the machine may decide to override.

The **allocation initialization** field in the template allows the user of this instruction to specify that all storage allocations from the heap space being created will be *initialized* to the **allocation value** supplied in the template. If the user chooses *not to initialize* heap space storage allocations, the initial value of heap space storage allocations is unpredictable but will not expose data produced by a different user profile.

The **overwrite freed allocations** field in the template allows the user of this instruction to specify that all heap space storage allocations upon being freed *will be overwritten* with the **freed value** supplied in the template. If the user chooses *not to overwrite* heap space storage allocations when freed, the contents of the freed allocations will be unaltered.

A default heap space (heap identifier value of 0) is automatically available in each activation group, without issuing a Create Heap Space (CRTHS) instruction. The default heap space is created on the first allocation request of the default heap space. See Allocate Heap Space Storage (ALCHSS) for a description of the default heap space.

A heap space is scoped to an activation group, thus the maximum life of a heap space is the life of the activation group in which the heap space was created. A heap space can only be destroyed from within the activation group in which it was created.

Simultaneous operations against a heap space from multiple processes is not supported and may produce unpredictable results.

**Limitations:** The following are limits that apply to the functions performed by this instruction.

The amount of heap space storage that can be allocated for a single heap space is 4G-512K bytes. Due to fragmentation a heap space may grow to 4GB-512KB without having 4GB-512KB of outstanding heap space storage allocations.

The maximum allocation size of any single allocation from the heap space is limited to 16MB-64K bytes. A smaller maximum allocation size can be specified.

## Events

000C Machine resource

0201 Machine auxiliary storage threshold exceeded

0501 Machine address threshold exceeded

000D Machine status

0101 Machine check

0401 Auxiliary storage device requires service

0010 Process

0701 Maximum processor time exceeded

0801 Process storage limit exceeded

0016 Machine observation

0101 Instruction reference

0401 Domain violation

0402 Hardware storage violation

0017 Damage set

0401 System object damage set

0801 Partial system object damage set

## Exceptions

| Exception  | Operands |   |       |
|--|----------|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | Other |
| 06 Addressing  |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation                              | X        | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment                                      | X        | X |       |
| 03 range   | X        | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid                        | X        | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                                      |          |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation                           | X        | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                                      |          |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state                              | X        | X | X     |
| 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object |          |   | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage                            | X        | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception                             |          |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded                          |          |   | X     |
| 04 object storage limit exceeded                           |          |   | X     |

| Exception                            | Operands |   |       |
|--------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|                                      | 1        | 2 | Other |
| 20 Machine support                   |          |   |       |
| 02 machine check                     |          |   | X     |
| 03 function check                    |          |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification             |          |   |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist            | X        | X |       |
| 02 pointer type invalid              | X        | X |       |
| 03 Pointer addressing invalid object |          | X |       |
| 38 Template specification            |          |   |       |
| 01 template value invalid            |          | X |       |
| 44 Domain specification              |          |   |       |
| 01 Domain Violation                  | X        | X |       |

## Destroy Heap Space (DESHS)

|                      |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|
| <b>Op Code (Hex)</b> | <b>Operand 1</b> |
| 03B1                 | Heap Identifier  |

Operand 1: Binary(4) variable scalar.

### ILE access

```
DESHS (
    var heap_identifier : signed binary
)
```

**Description:** This instruction destroys and removes from the current activation group the heap space specified by the heap identifier in operand 1. Subsequent use of this heap identifier within the activation group will result in an *invalid identifier* (hex 4501) exception. The heap identifier was returned on the Create Heap Space (CRTHS) instruction. An attempt to destroy the default heap space (heap identifier value of 0) will result in an *invalid request* (hex 4502) exception.

Space pointer references to heap space allocations from a destroyed heap space will cause unpredictable results.

All heap spaces are implicitly destroyed when the activation group in which they were created is destroyed.

Operand 1 is not modified by the instruction.

### Events

000C Machine resource  
     0201 Machine auxiliary storage threshold exceeded  
     0501 Machine address threshold exceeded

000D Machine status  
     0101 Machine check  
     0401 Auxiliary storage device requires service

0010 Process  
     0701 Maximum processor time exceeded  
     0801 Process storage limit exceeded

0016 Machine observation  
     0101 Instruction reference  
     0401 Domain violation  
     0402 Hardware storage violation

0017 Damage set  
     0401 System object damage set  
     0801 Partial system object damage set

### Exceptions

|                  |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|
|                  | <b>Operands</b>     |
| <b>Exception</b> | <b>1      Other</b> |



| Exception |  | Operands |       |
|-----------|--|----------|-------|
|           |  | 1        | Other |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                              | X        |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment                                      | X        |       |
|           | 03 range   | X        |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                        | X        |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                           | X        |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                              | X        | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object |          | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                            | X        | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                |          |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                          |          | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                                      |          |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                  | X        |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                    | X        |       |
| 44        | Domain specification                                       |          |       |
|           | 01 Domain Violation  | X        |       |
| 45        | Heap specification   |          |       |
|           | 01 Invalid Heap Identifier                                 | X        |       |
|           | 02 Invalid Request   | X        |       |
|           | 05 Heap Space Destroyed                                    |          | X     |
|           | 06 Invalid Heap Condition                                  | X        | X     |

## Free Heap Space Storage (FREHSS)

|                      |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|
| <b>Op Code (Hex)</b> | <b>Operand 1</b> |
| 03B5                 | Space allocation |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

### ILE access

```
FREHSS (
    space_allocation : space_pointer
)
```

**Description:** The heap space storage allocation beginning at the byte addressed by operand 1 is de-allocated from the heap space which supplied the allocation. De-allocation makes the storage available for reuse by subsequent Allocate Heap Space Storage (ALCHSS) instructions. The entire space allocation is de-allocated; partial de-allocation is not supported. A free of heap space storage can be performed without regard to the activation group in which it was allocated, as long as the allocation was done by the same process.

Operand 1 must be exactly equal to the space pointer that was returned by some previous Allocate Heap Space Storage (ALCHSS) or Reallocate Heap Space Storage (REALCHSS) instruction. If it is not, an *invalid request* (hex 4502) exception will be signaled.

Subsequent references to space allocations which have been freed cause unpredictable results.

FREHSS will signal a *domain violation* (hex 4401) exception if a program running user state attempts to de-allocate heap space storage in a heap space with a domain of Common System.

Operand 1 is not modified by the instruction.

### Events

000C Machine resource

- 0201 Machine auxiliary storage threshold exceeded
- 0501 Machine address threshold exceeded

000D Machine status

- 0101 Machine check
- 0401 Auxiliary storage device requires service

0010 Process

- 0701 Maximum processor time exceeded
- 0801 Process storage limit exceeded

0016 Machine observation

- 0101 Instruction reference
- 0401 Domain violation
- 0402 Hardware storage violation

0017 Damage set

- 0401 System object damage set
- 0801 Partial system object damage set

**Exceptions**

| Exception  | Operands |       |
|--|----------|-------|
|  | 1        | Other |
| 06 Addressing  |          |       |
| 01 space addressing violation                              | X        |       |
| 02 boundary alignment                                      | X        |       |
| 03 range   | X        |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid                        | X        |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                                      |          |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation                           | X        |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                                      |          |       |
| 04 system object damage state                              | X        | X     |
| 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object |          | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage                            | X        | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception                             |          |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded                          |          | X     |
| 20 Machine support   |          |       |
| 02 machine check   |          | X     |
| 03 function check  |          | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification                                   |          |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist                                  | X        |       |
| 02 pointer type invalid                                    | X        |       |
| 03 Pointer addressing invalid object                       |          |       |
| 44 Domain specification                                    |          |       |
| 01 Domain Violation  | X        |       |
| 45 Heap specification                                      |          |       |
| 02 Invalid Request   | X        |       |
| 05 Heap Space Destroyed                                    |          | X     |
| 06 Invalid Heap Condition                                  | X        | X     |

## Free Heap Space Storage From Mark (FREHSSMK)

|                      |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|
| <b>Op Code (Hex)</b> | <b>Operand 1</b> |
| 03B9                 | Mark Identifier  |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer data object.

### ILE access

```
FREHSSMK (
  var mark_identifier : space pointer
)
```

**Description:** All heap space allocations which have occurred from the heap space since it was marked, with the mark identifier supplied in operand 1, are freed. This may include heap space storage marked by intervening Set Heap Space Storage Mark (SETHSSMK) instructions. The mark identifier specified in operand 1 and all mark identifiers obtained since the heap space was marked by operand 1 are cleared from the heap space. An attempt to free heap space storage from a mark that has already been cleared by a previous FREHSSMK instruction will result in an *invalid identifier* (hex 4507) exception. A free of heap space storage can be performed without regard to the activation group in which it was allocated, as long as the allocation was done by the same process.

FREHSSMK will signal a *domain violation* (hex 4401) exception if a program running user state attempts a free heap space storage from mark for a heap space with a *domain of Common System*.

Operand 1 is not modified by the instruction.

### Events

000C Machine resource  
     0201 Machine auxiliary storage threshold exceeded  
     0501 Machine address threshold exceeded

000D Machine status  
     0101 Machine check  
     0401 Auxiliary storage device requires service

0010 Process  
     0701 Maximum processor time exceeded  
     0801 Process storage limit exceeded

0016 Machine observation  
     0101 Instruction reference  
     0401 Domain violation  
     0402 Hardware storage violation

0017 Damage set  
     0401 System object damage set  
     0801 Partial system object damage set

### Exceptions

|                  |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|
|                  | <b>Operands</b>     |
| <b>Exception</b> | <b>1      Other</b> |

| Exception |  | Operands |       |
|-----------|--|----------|-------|
|           |  | 1        | Other |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                              | X        |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment                                      | X        |       |
|           | 03 range   | X        |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                        | X        |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                           | X        |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                              | X        | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object |          | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                            | X        | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                |          |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                          |          | X     |
|           | 04 object storage limit exceeded                           |          |       |
|           | 09 auxiliary storage pool number invalid                   |          |       |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                                      |          |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                  | X        |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                    | X        |       |
|           | 03 Pointer addressing invalid object                       |          |       |
| 44        | Domain specification                                       |          |       |
|           | 01 Domain Violation  | X        |       |
| 45        | Heap specification   |          |       |
|           | 02 Invalid Request   | X        |       |
|           | 05 Heap Space Destroyed                                    |          | X     |
|           | 06 Invalid Heap Condition                                  | X        | X     |
|           | 07 Invalid Mark Identifier                                 | X        |       |

## Materialize Heap Space Attributes (MATHSAT)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1            | Operand 2                | Operand 3           |
|---------------|----------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| 03B7          | Materialize template | Heap identifier template | Attribute Selection |

Operand 1: Space pointer.

Operand 2: Space pointer.

Operand 3: Character(1) scalar (fixed length).

### ILE access

```
MATHSAT (
    materialize_template      : space pointer
    heap_identifier_template : space pointer
    var attribute_selection   : aggregate
```

**Description:** This instruction will materialize the information selected by operand 3 for the heap space specified by operand 2 and return the selected information in the template indicated by operand 1.

Operand 3 can have three possible values:

- Hex 00 - Return heap space attributes
- Hex 01 - Return heap space attributes and mark information.
- Hex 02 - Return heap space attributes, mark information and allocation information.

Any value for operand 3 other than those listed will cause a *scalar value invalid* (3203) exception.

The heap space attributes template identified by operand 1 must be 16-byte aligned in the space.

If operand 3 is equal to hex 00, then only the **heap space attributes** template information is returned. The format of the attributes template information is as follows (see the Create Heap Space instruction for a description of these fields):

- Template size specification Char(8)
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Bin(4)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Maximum single allocation UBin(4)
- Minimum boundary requirement UBin(4)
- Creation size UBin(4)
- Extension size UBin(4)
- Domain Bin(2)
  - Hex 0001 = The heap space domain is "Common User"
  - Hex 8000 = The heap space domain is "Common System"
- Heap space creation options Char(6)
  - Allocation strategy Bit 0
    - 0 = Normal allocation strategy
    - 1 = Force implicit space creation on each allocate

|   |          |
|---|----------|
| – Heap Space Mark   | Bit 1    |
| 0 = Allow heap space mark   |          |
| 1 = Prevent heap space mark   |          |
| – Block transfer  | Bit 2    |
| 0 = Transfer the minimum storage transfer size.<br>This value is 1 storage unit.          |          |
| 1 = Transfer the machine default storage transfer size.<br>This value is 8 storage units. |          |
| – Process access group member   | Bit 3    |
| 0 = Do not create the heap space in the PAG.  |          |
| 1 = Create the heap space in the PAG.   |          |
| – Initialization allocations  | Bit 4    |
| 0 = Do not initialize allocations.  |          |
| 1 = Initialize allocations.   |          |
| – Overwrite freed allocations   | Bit 5    |
| 0 = Do not overwrite freed allocations.   |          |
| 1 = Overwrite freed allocations.  |          |
| – Reserved (binary 0)   | Bits 6-7 |
| – Allocation value  | Char(1)  |
| – Freed value   | Char(1)  |
| – Reserved (binary 0)   | Char(3)  |
| • Reserved (binary 0)   | Char(64) |
| • Current number of outstanding allocations   | UBin(4)  |
| • Total number of reallocations   | UBin(4)  |
| • Total number of frees   | UBin(4)  |
| • Total number of allocations   | UBin(4)  |
| • Maximum number of outstanding allocations   | UBin(4)  |
| • Size of the heap space in pages   | UBin(4)  |
| • Number of outstanding marks   | UBin(4)  |
| • Total number of extensions  | UBin(4)  |

The first 4 bytes that are materialized identify the total **number of bytes provided** for use by the instruction. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than 8 causes a *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception.

The second 4 bytes that are materialized identify the total **number of bytes available** to be materialized. The instruction materializes as many bytes as can be contained in the area specified as the receiver. If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested, then the excess bytes are unchanged. No exceptions (other than the materialization length exception described previously) are signaled in the event that the receiver contains insufficient area for the materialization.

If operand 3 is equal to hex 01, then the *mark template information* is added to the *heap space attributes* template information. The *mark template information* is repeated for the number of outstanding marks. This information follows the *heap space attributes* template information. The format of the **mark template information** is as follows:

- Mark template information

- Mark identifier

Space pointer

Given the list of mark identifiers with a mark identifier being entry N and a allocation belonging to mark identifier N, that allocation also belongs to mark identifier N-X, where X has values 1 to N-1 for all N > 1.

If operand 3 is equal to hex 02, then the **allocation template** information is added to the *heap space attributes* and *mark template information*. The *allocation template information* is repeated for current number of outstanding allocations. This information follows the mark information template.

- Allocation template

Char(48)

- Allocation address

Space pointer

- Mark identifier

Space pointer

- Allocation size

UBin(4)

- Reserved

Char(12)

If **mark identifier** is null, this allocation is not associated with any mark. If it is not null it contains the most recent mark identifier to which the allocation belongs.

The **heap identifier template** identified by operand 2 must be 16-byte aligned in the space. The format of the template specified by operand 2 is as follows:

- Heap Identifier Template

Char(8)

- Activation Group Mark identifier

UBin(4)

- Heap identifier

UBin(4)

The **activation group mark identifier** may be zero, indicating the heap space specified by the **heap identifier** is in the current Activation Group.

MATHSAT will signal an *activation group access violation* (hex 2C12) exception if a program attempts to materialize heap space attributes of a heap space in an activation group to which the program does not have access.

Operands 1, 2 and 3 are not modified by the instruction.

## Events

000C Machine resource

0201 Machine auxiliary storage threshold exceeded

0501 Machine address threshold exceeded

000D Machine status

0101 Machine check

0401 Auxiliary storage device requires service

0010 Process

0701 Maximum processor time exceeded

0801 Process storage limit exceeded

0016 Machine observation

0101 Instruction reference

0401 Domain violation

0402 Hardware storage violation



0017 Damage set  
 0401 System object damage set  
 0801 Partial system object damage set

## Exceptions

| Exception  | Operands |   |   |       |
|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | 3 | Other |
| 06 Addressing  |          |   |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation                              | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment                                      | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 range   | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid                        | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                                      |          |   |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation                           | X        | X | X | X     |
| 10 Damage encountered                                      |          |   |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state                              | X        | X | X | X     |
| 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object |          |   |   | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage                            | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception                             |          |   |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded                          |          |   |   | X     |
| 04 object storage limit exceeded                           |          | X |   |       |
| 09 auxiliary storage pool number invalid                   |          | X |   |       |
| 20 Machine support   |          |   |   |       |
| 02 machine check   |          |   |   | X     |
| 03 function check  |          |   |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification                                   |          |   |   |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist                                  | X        | X | X | X     |
| 02 pointer type invalid                                    | X        | X | X | X     |
| 03 Pointer addressing invalid object                       |          | X | X |       |
| 2C Program execution                                       |          |   |   |       |
| 12 Activation group access violation                       |          | X |   |       |
| 13 Activation group not found                              |          | X |   |       |
| 32 Scalar specification                                    |          |   |   |       |
| 03 Scalar value invalid                                    |          |   | X |       |
| 38 Template specification                                  |          |   |   |       |
| 03 Materialization length                                  |          |   | X |       |
| 44 Domain specification                                    |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Domain Violation  | X        | X | X |       |
| 45 Heap specification                                      |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Invalid Heap Identifier                                 |          | X |   |       |

## Exception

02 Invalid Request

05 Heap Space Destroyed

06 Invalid Heap Condition

## Operands

| 1 | 2 | 3 | Other |
|---|---|---|-------|
|   | X |   |       |
|   |   |   | X     |
| X | X | X | X     |

## Reallocate Heap Space Storage (REALCHSS)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1        | Operand 2                  |
|---------------|------------------|----------------------------|
| 03BA          | Space allocation | Size of space reallocation |

Operand 1: Space pointer.

Operand 2: Binary(4) scalar.

### ILE access

```
REALCHSS (
    space_allocation      : space pointer;
    size_of_space_reallocation : signed binary
) : space pointer /* space_reallocation */
```

**Description:** A new heap space storage allocation of at least the size indicated by operand 2 is provided from the same heap space as the original allocation, which is indicated by operand 1. The operand 1 space pointer is set to address the first byte of the new allocation, which will begin on a boundary at least as great as the minimum boundary specified when the heap space was created.

Each allocation associated with a heap space provides a continuum of contiguously addressable bytes. Individual allocations within a heap space have no addressability affinity with each other.

The maximum single allocation allowed is determined by the maximum single allocation size specified when the heap space was created. The maximum single allocation possible is 16M-64K bytes.

Storage that is reallocated maintains the same mark/release status as the original allocation. If the original allocation was marked, the new allocation carries the same mark and will be released by a Free Heap Space Storage from Mark (FREHSSMK) which specifies that mark identifier.

The original heap space storage allocation will be freed. Subsequent references to the original allocation will cause unpredictable results.

The contents of the original allocation are preserved in the following fashion:

- If the new allocation size is greater than the original allocation size, the entire contents of the original allocation will appear in the new allocation. The contents of the rest of the new allocation are unpredictable unless initialization of heap allocations was specified when the heap space was created.
- If the new allocation size is less than or equal to the original allocation size, the new allocation will contain at least as much of the original allocation contents as the new allocation size allows.

REALCHSS will signal a *domain violation* (hex 4401) exception if a program running user state attempts to reallocate heap space storage in a heap space with a *domain of Common System*.

Operand 2 is not modified by the instruction.

### Events

000C Machine resource  
 0201 Machine auxiliary storage threshold exceeded  
 0501 Machine address threshold exceeded

000D Machine status  
0101 Machine check  
0401 Auxiliary storage device requires service

0010 Process  
0701 Maximum processor time exceeded  
0801 Process storage limit exceeded

0016 Machine observation  
0101 Instruction reference  
0401 Domain violation  
0402 Hardware storage violation

0017 Damage set  
0401 System object damage set  
0801 Partial system object damage set

## Exceptions

| Exception  | Operands |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06 Addressing  |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation                              | X        | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment                                      | X        | X |       |
| 03 range   | X        | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid                        | X        | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                                      |          |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation                           | X        | X | X     |
| 10 Damage encountered                                      |          |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state                              | X        | X | X     |
| 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object |          |   | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage                            | X        | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception                             |          |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded                          |          |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support   |          |   |       |
| 02 machine check   |          |   | X     |
| 03 function check  |          |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification                                   |          |   |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist                                  | X        | X | X     |
| 02 pointer type invalid                                    | X        | X | X     |
| 03 Pointer addressing invalid object                       |          | X |       |
| 44 Domain specification                                    |          |   |       |
| 01 Domain Violation  | X        | X |       |
| 45 Heap specification                                      |          |   |       |
| 02 Invalid Request   |          | X |       |

## Reallocate Heap Space Storage (REALCHSS)

| Exception                 | Operands |   | Other |
|---------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|                           | 1        | 2 |       |
| 03 Heap Space Full        |          |   | X     |
| 04 Invalid Size Request   |          | X |       |
| 05 Heap Space Destroyed   |          |   | X     |
| 06 Invalid Heap Condition | X        | X | X     |

**Set Heap Space Storage Mark (SETHSSMK)**

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1       | Operand 2       |
|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 03B6          | Mark Identifier | Heap Identifier |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer data object.

*Operand 2:* Binary(4) scalar.

**ILE access**

```
SETHSSMK
  var mark_identifier : space pointer;
  var heap_identifier : signed binary
)
```

**Description:** The heap space identified by operand 2 is marked and the mark identifier is returned in operand 1.

Marking a heap space allows a subsequent Free Heap Space Storage from Mark (FREHSSMK) instruction, using the mark identifier returned in operand 1, to free all outstanding allocations that were performed against the heap space since the heap space was marked with that mark identifier. This relieves the user of performing a Free Heap Space Storage (FREHSS) for every individual heap space allocation.

A heap space may have multiple marks.

The heap identifier specified in operand 2 is the identifier that was returned on the Create Heap Space (CRTHS) instruction. An attempt to mark the default heap space (heap identifier value of 0) will result in a *invalid request* (hex 4502) exception. An attempt to mark a heap space that has been created to not allow a Set Heap Space Storage Mark will result in a *invalid request* (hex 4502) exception.

Operand 2 is not modified by the instruction.

**Events**

000C Machine resource  
 0201 Machine auxiliary storage threshold exceeded  
 0501 Machine address threshold exceeded

000D Machine status  
 0101 Machine check  
 0401 Auxiliary storage device requires service

0010 Process  
 0701 Maximum processor time exceeded  
 0801 Process storage limit exceeded

0016 Machine observation  
 0101 Instruction reference  
 0401 Domain violation  
 0402 Hardware storage violation

0017 Damage set

0401 System object damage set  
0801 Partial system object damage set

**Exceptions**

| Exception  | Operands |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06 Addressing  |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation                              | X        | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment                                      | X        | X |       |
| 03 range   | X        | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid                        | X        | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                                      |          |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation                           | X        | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                                      |          |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state                              | X        | X | X     |
| 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object |          |   | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage                            | X        | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception                             |          |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded                          |          |   | X     |
| 04 object storage limit exceeded                           |          | X |       |
| 09 auxiliary storage pool number invalid                   |          | X |       |
| 20 Machine support   |          |   |       |
| 02 machine check   |          |   | X     |
| 03 function check  |          |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification                                   |          |   |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist                                  | X        | X |       |
| 02 pointer type invalid                                    | X        | X |       |
| 03 Pointer addressing invalid object                       |          | X |       |
| 44 Domain specification                                    |          |   |       |
| 01 Domain Violation  | X        | X |       |
| 45 Heap specification                                      |          |   |       |
| 01 Invalid Heap Identifier                                 |          | X |       |
| 02 Invalid Request   |          | X |       |
| 03 Heap Space Full   |          | X |       |
| 05 Heap Space Destroyed                                    |          |   | X     |
| 06 Invalid Heap Condition                                  | X        | X | X     |

## Chapter 8. Program Management Instructions

This chapter describes all instructions used for program management. These instructions are in alphabetic order. For an alphabetic summary of all the instructions, see Appendix A, "Instruction Summary"

|   |      |
|---|------|
| Materialize Bound Program (MATBPGM) . . . . . | 8-3  |
| Materialize Program (MATPG) . . . . .         | 8-24 |





## Materialize Bound Program (MATBPGM)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1                        | Operand 2                              |
|---------------|----------------------------------|--|
| 02C6          | Materialization request template | Bound Program or Bound Service Program |

Operand 1: Space pointer.

Operand 2: System pointer.

### ILE access

```

MATBPGM (
    request_template : space pointer
    var bound_program : system pointer
)

```

**Description:** The bound program or bound service program identified by operand 2 is materialized according to the specifications provided by operand 1.

Operand 2 is a system pointer that identifies the bound program or bound service program to be materialized. If Operand 2 does not refer to a program object, an *object not eligible for operation* (hex 2403) exception will be signaled. If Operand 2 refers to a program, but not to a bound program or bound service program, then a *program not eligible for operation* (hex 220A) exception will be signaled.

The values in the materialization relate to the current attributes of the materialized bound program. Components are the materializable parts of a bound program or bound service program. Components may not be available for materialization because they were not encapsulated during bound program creation. Other components may not be available for materialization because they contain no data.

**Note:** The bound program materialization request template takes the form of a variable length array of materialization requests.

- Template size specification Char(8)
  - Number of bytes provided UBin(4)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(4)
- Number of materialization requests UBin(4)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(4)
- Array of materialization requests Char(\*)
  - Receiver Space pointer
  - Bound Program materialization options Char(4)
    - General Bound Program materialization options Char(2)
      - General bound program information Bit 0
        - 0 = Do not materialize
        - 1 = Materialize

<sup>1</sup> Reserved for IBM Internal Use Only. If used, unpredictable results may occur.

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| • Reserved <sup>1</sup>  | Bit 1      |
| • Program copyright Strings  | Bit 2      |
| 0 = Do not materialize   |            |
| 1 = Materialize  |            |
| • Bound service programs information   | Bit 3      |
| 0 = Do not materialize   |            |
| 1 = Materialize  |            |
| • Bound modules information  | Bit 4      |
| 0 = Do not materialize   |            |
| 1 = Materialize  |            |
| • Bound program string directory component   | Bit 5      |
| 0 = Do not materialize   |            |
| 1 = Materialize  |            |
| • Bound program limits   | Bit 6      |
| 0 = Do not materialize   |            |
| 1 = Materialize  |            |
| • Reserved <sup>1</sup>  | Bits 7-11  |
| • Activation group data imports  | Bit 12     |
| 0 = Do not materialize   |            |
| 1 = Materialize  |            |
| • Activation group data exports  | Bit 13     |
| 0 = Do not materialize   |            |
| 1 = Materialize  |            |
| • Reserved (binary 0)  | Bits 14-15 |
| - Specific Bound Program materialization options                                   | Char(1)    |
| • Specific bound program information   | Bit 0      |
| 0 = Do not materialize   |            |
| 1 = Materialize if the program is a bound program and not a bound service program. |            |
| • Reserved (binary 0)  | Bits 1-7   |
| - Specific Bound Service Program   | Char(1)    |
| - Materialization options  |            |
| • Reserved (binary 0)  | Bit 0      |
| • Signatures information   | Bit 1      |
| 0 = Do not materialize   |            |
| 1 = Materialize if the program is a bound service program.                         |            |
| • Exported program procedure information   | Bit 2      |
| 0 = Do not materialize   |            |
| 1 = Materialize if the program is a bound service program.                         |            |
| • Exported program data information  | Bit 3      |
| 0 = Do not materialize   |            |
| 1 = Materialize if the program is a bound service program.                         |            |
| • Reserved (binary 0)  | Bits 4-7   |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| — Bound Modules materialization options | Char(4)    |
| - General module information            | Bit 0      |
| 0 = Do not materialize                  |            |
| 1 = Materialize                         |            |
| - Reserved <sup>1</sup>                 | Bit 1      |
| - Module string directory component     | Bit 2      |
| 0 = Do not materialize                  |            |
| 1 = Materialize                         |            |
| - Reserved <sup>1</sup>                 | Bits 3-10  |
| - Reserved (binary 0)                   | Bits 11-17 |
| - Module copyright strings              | Bit 18     |
| 0 = Do not materialize                  |            |
| 1 = Materialize                         |            |
| - Reserved (binary 0)                   | Bits 19-31 |
| — Bound Module materialization number   | UBin(4)    |
| — Reserved (binary 0)                   | Char(4)    |

**Description of bound program materialization request template fields:** Each of the reserved fields must be set to binary zeroes, or a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be signaled.

## **Number of bytes provided**

This is the size in bytes of the materialization request template. If this size does not correspond to the actual number of bytes in the materialization request template, then a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be signaled. This does not include any storage for returned data. That storage is pointed to by the *receiver* values.

## **Number of materialization requests**

The number of requests in the array of materialization requests is specified by this value. If this number is greater than the actual number of materialization requests provided, then a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be signaled.

## **Materialization requests**

This is an array of materialization requests. A materialization request consists of one or more bits, and an optional module number specified to be materialized into the corresponding *receiver*. Each materialization request consists of the following fields.

### **Receiver**

This is a pointer to a space which will hold the materialized data. The space pointed to must be aligned on a 16-byte boundary, and must be at least 8 bytes long. This is so that it can hold the *bytes provided* and *bytes available* field of the *receiver*. If the space is not at least 8 bytes long a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be signaled.

### **Bound Program materialization options**

This bit mapped field specifies the parts of the bound program object to be materialized. A materialization request need not specify any program materialization options. If no bits are set, a bit must be set in the *bound module materialization options* field, or a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be signaled. Multiple options may be specified. When multiple options are specified, all of the requested data will be materialized into one receiver. The pieces requested on the materialization will be placed in the receiver in the order that the option bits are defined. For example, if all data is requested, the *general bound program information* will be the first item in the receiver and the *exported program data*

information will be the last item. If options are also specified on the *bound module materialization options* field, the materialized data for those options will follow that data materialized for the *bound program materialization options*.

The *bound program materialization options* are split into three distinct materialization bit sets.

1. The **general bound program materialization options** contains bits that represent data that can be materialized for either bound programs or bound service programs.
2. The **specific bound program materialization options** contains bits that represent data that can be materialized only for bound programs, and not for bound service programs.
3. The **specific bound service program materialization options** contains bits that represent data that can be materialized only for bound service programs.

If a bit is on to materialize information that is not contained in the type of bound program being materialized, then an indication that the information is not materializable will be provided in the receiver header. No exception, in this case, will be signaled.

Each of the requested pieces will be placed on a 16-byte boundary within the receiver.

The *general bound program information* field specifies that general information about the bound program object should be materialized.

The **program copyright strings** field specifies that the collected program copyright strings of the constituent bound modules should be materialized.

The **bound service programs information** field specifies that information about the service programs bound to the materialized bound program should be materialized. These bound service programs are those that contain exports that resolve to imports in the materialized bound program.

The **bound modules information** field specifies that information about the modules bound into the materialized bound program should be materialized.

The **bound program string directory component** field specifies that the bound program string directory should be materialized.

The **bound program limits** field specifies that the current sizes and maximum values of the bound program components should be materialized.

The **activation group data imports** field specifies that information about those data imports resolving to weak activation data exports is to be materialized.

The **activation group data exports** field specifies that information about those data exports promoted to the activation group is to be materialized.

The **specific bound program information** field specifies that information specific to a bound program, and not to a bound service program, should be materialized.

The **signatures information** field specifies that the bound program signatures should be materialized.

The **exported program procedure information** field specifies that the exported procedures specified during program creation should be materialized.

<sup>2</sup> Referential extensions are data streams that are not included in the creation templates, but are pointed to by a space pointer in the template.

The **exported program data information** field specifies that the exported data specified during program creation instruction should be materialized.

## **Bound Module Materialization Options**

This bit mapped field specifies the parts of the modules bound into the program that are to be materialized. A module materialization request need not specify any materialization options. If no bits are set, a bit must be set in the *bound program materialization options* field, or a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be signaled. Multiple options may be specified. When multiple options are specified, all of the requested data will be materialized into one receiver. The pieces requested on the module materialization will be placed in the receiver in the order that the option bits are defined. For example, if all data is requested, the *general module information* will be the first item in the receiver and the *module string directory component* will be the last item. If options are also specified on the *bound program materialization options* field, the materialized data for those options will precede that data materialized for the *bound module materialization options*.

In addition, each of the requested pieces will be placed on a 16 byte boundary within the *receiver*.

The **general module information** field specifies that general information about the module object should be materialized.

The **module string directory component** field specifies that the string directory of the associated module(s) should be materialized.

The **module copyright strings** field specifies that the module copyright strings should be materialized.

## **Bound Module Materialization Number**

If at least one bit of the *Bound Module Materialization Options* field is on, then this is the number of the module to materialize, from 1 through the number of modules bound into the program; or 0, to materialize information about all modules bound into the program. If this number is greater than the number of modules bound into the program, then a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be signaled.

The information that is materialized is specified in the *bound module materialization options* field.

If no bits of the *bound module materialization options* field are on, then no module information is being materialized, and this field must be binary 0 or a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception will be signaled.

## **Format of materialized data**

### **Format of Receiver**

- |   |         |
|---|---------|
| • Number of bytes provided for materialization  | UBin(4) |
| • Number of bytes available for materialization | UBin(4) |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                           | Char(8) |
| • Materialized data                             | Char(*) |

### **Bytes provided**

This is the number of bytes the user is providing to hold the materialized data. It must be greater than or equal to eight. If it is equal to eight, then no data will actually be materialized, and the number of bytes required to materialize the requested data will be placed in *bytes available*. If the value provided is greater than eight, but less than the number of bytes required to hold the requested data, the data will be truncated and no exception will

be signaled. Note that a value greater than eight, but less than 16 will result in no data being materialized, since bytes 9-16 are reserved.

If the receiver is smaller than the size indicated by *bytes provided*, and the materialized data is larger than the space provided in *receiver*, the *space addressing* (hex 0601) exception will be signaled unless *receiver* is an automatically extendable space object. If *receiver* is an automatically extendable space object, the space will be extended, up to its maximum size.

#### **Bytes available**

If *bytes provided* is greater than eight, this contains the number of bytes that have been used for the materialization, including any reserved bytes or bytes used for padding. If *bytes provided* is equal to eight, this contains the total size of the *receiver* needed to hold the requested materialization. A value of zero is returned if there is no data to materialize.

#### **Materialized data**

For each bit on in the *bound program materialization options* and *bound module materialization options*, this will contain the associated data. Each entry will be preceded by a common header which identifies the type of data and the offset to the next entry. When multiple bits are on in the same request, the data is returned in the order defined by the *bound program materialization options* and the *bound module materialization options*.

No exception is signaled when the size of the *receiver*, as specified by *bytes provided* is not large enough to hold data for all requested *bound program materialization options* and *bound module materialization options*. Instead, the data is truncated and *bytes provided* only reflects the actual amount of data returned. One of several conditions may arise, each with a different result.

If the receiver is not large enough to hold the materialization header, no data is returned for that *bound program materialization option* or *bound module materialization option*. The *offset to next entry* field in the previous materialization header, if one exists, is set to 0, and the *bytes available* field is set to reflect the amount of data actually materialized for the *bound program materialization options* or *bound module materialization options* that have already been processed. *Bytes available* will be set to 8, or *bytes provided*; whichever is less, if the *receiver* is not big enough to hold the first materialization header.

If the *receiver* is big enough to hold the materialization header, but not big enough to hold all of the data requested by the *bound program materialization option* or *bound module materialization option*, the *partial data* flag will be set in the materialization header and as much data will be returned for which there is room. For data which consists of one continuous stream<sup>3</sup> the receiver will be filled and *bytes available* will equal *bytes provided*. For data which consists of an option specific header followed by an array of homogenous elements<sup>4</sup> data will be returned in such a way that no partial option specific header or array element will be returned. If there is not enough room to hold the entire option specific header, none of it will be returned. If there is room for the option specific header, but not all of the entries, only those entries that will fit will be returned. The number of entries in the option specific header will reflect the number of entries returned rather than the actual number of entries available in the module. *Bytes available* will reflect the actual amount of data returned and may not equal *bytes provided*. Note that because many option specific headers and entries are larger than the common *materialization header*, there may be more than one option for which partial data is returned.

<sup>3</sup> The items that fall into this category are general bound program information, bound program limits, specific bound program information, specific bound service program information, general module information, bound program string directory component, module string directory component and module copyright strings.

<sup>4</sup> The items which fall into this category are bound service programs information, bound modules information, signatures information, program copyright strings, exported program procedure information, activation group data imports, activation group data exports, and exported program data information.

## Format of Common Materialization Header

- Offset to next entry UBin(4)
- Bound Program materialization identifier Char(4)
- Bound Module materialization identifier Char(4)
- Bound Module materialization number identifier UBin(4)
- Flags Char(4)
  - Entry presence Bit 0
    - 0 = No data present for entry
    - 1 = Data present for entry
  - Partial data Bit 1
    - 0 = All data in materialization was returned
    - 1 = Partial data was returned because receiver was too small to hold all data for the requested option
  - Valid Materialization data Bit 2
    - 0 = The data requested in this materialization request is never present for the type of bound program being materialized.
    - 1 = The data requested in this materialization request may be present for the type of bound program being materialized.
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 3-31
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(12)

## Offset to next entry

This contains the offset from the beginning of this entry to the beginning of the next entry. It will contain zero if this is the last entry.

## Bound Program materialization identifier

This indicates which portion of the bound program is contained in this entry. It is the bit which was on in *bound program materialization options* that resulted in this data being materialized. Either no bits, or a single bit of this field will be on. If no bits of this field are on, then the data contained in this entry is indicated by the *bound module materialization identifier* field.

## Bound Module materialization identifier

This indicates which portion of the module, indicated by the *bound module materialization number identifier* field, is contained in this entry. It is the bit which was on in the *bound module materialization options* field that resulted in this data being materialized. Either a single bit or no bit of this field will be on. If no bit is on, then the data contained in this entry is indicated by the *bound program materialization identifier* field. If a bit is set on, then that type of information will be returned in the entry.

## Bound Module materialization number identifier

If a bit of the *bound module materialization identifier* field is on, then this is the number of the module for which information has been materialized in this entry, and this field will not be 0.

If no bits of the *bound module materialization identifier* field are on, then this field will be 0.

## Flags

This field specifies information about the item being materialized.

The **entry presence** field specifies whether there is data available for the requested item. Some items may not be encapsulated into the object, so no data will be returned when their materialization is requested.



The **partial data** field specifies that only a portion of the data was returned because sufficient space was not present in the *receiver* to hold all of the data for the requested materialization option.

The **valid materialization** field specifies whether the requested information is valid to be materialized for the type of bound program that is being materialized. For example, *specific bound program information* is not valid for a bound service program. Even if data may be present for the type of bound program being materialized does not mean that it actually is. Refer to the *entry present* field to see if it is.

## Format of materialized general bound program information

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| • Length in bytes of materialization                                | UBin(4)   |
| • Reserved <sup>1</sup>   | Char(264) |
| • Number of secondary associated spaces                             | UBin(4)   |
| • Activation group attributes                                       | Char(4)   |
| — Target activation group   | Char(1)   |
| 0 = Default activation group  |           |
| 1 = Caller's activation group                                       |           |
| 2 = Named activation group  |           |
| 3 = Unnamed activation group  |           |
| 4-255 reserved  |           |
| — Reserved <sup>1</sup>   | Char(3)   |
| • Activation group name   | Char(30)  |
| • Reserved <sup>1</sup>   | Char(14)  |
| • Coded character set identifier                                    | UBin(2)   |
| • Composite language version <sup>5</sup>                           | UBin(2)   |
| • Composite version on which module creations occurred <sup>5</sup> | UBin(2)   |
| • Composite machine version <sup>5</sup>                            | UBin(2)   |
| • Creation target version <sup>5</sup>                              | UBin(2)   |
| • Version on which creation occurred <sup>5</sup>                   | UBin(2)   |
| • Bound program identifier  | Char(1)   |
| 0 = reserved  |           |
| 1 = Bound Program   |           |
| 2 = Bound Service Program   |           |
| 3-255 = reserved  |           |
| • Compression status  | Char(1)   |
| — Executable portion  | Bit 0     |
| - 0 = Executable portion is not compressed                          |           |

<sup>5</sup> All versions are represented as 16 bit values mapped as follows.

|              |                     |
|--------------|---------------------|
| — Bits 0-3   | Reserved (binary 0) |
| — Bits 4-7   | Version             |
| — Bits 8-11  | Release             |
| — Bits 12-15 | Modification        |

- 1 = Executable portion is compressed
- Observable portion Bit 1
  - 0 = Observable portion is not compressed
  - 1 = Observable portion is compressed
- Reserved (binary 0) Bits 2-7
- Reserved<sup>1</sup> Char(178)

## **Length in bytes of materialization**

This is the number of bytes materialized. For the general bound program information this will always be a constant 512.

## **Number of secondary associated spaces**

This is the number of secondary associated spaces currently associated with the object.

## **Activation group attributes**

The *activation group attributes* specify characteristics of the activation group into which the program will be activated.

### **Target activation group**

This is the *target activation group* value specified when the bound program or bound service program was created.

## **Activation group name**

This is the *activation group name* specified when the bound program or bound service program was created.

## **Coded character set identifier**

This is the CCSID value of the bound program or bound service program.

## **Composite language version**

This is the earliest version of the operating system on which the languages used for the bound modules will allow the bound program object to be saved. This is a composite<sup>6</sup> of all of the language versions of the modules bound into this program.

## **Composite version on which module creations occurred**

This is the earliest version of the operating system on which all of the modules bound into the program can be re-created. This is a composite<sup>6</sup> of all of the version-on-which-module-creations-occurred versions of the modules bound into this program.

## **Composite machine version**

This is the earliest version of the operating system on which the machine will allow the bound program to be saved. This is a composite<sup>6</sup> of all of the machine versions of the modules bound into this program.

## **Creation target version**

This is the version of the operating system for which the bound program object was created.

## **Version on which creation occurred**

This is the version of the operating system on which the bound program object was created.

## **Bound program identifier**

This field identifies the type of bound program being materialized.

<sup>6</sup> A composite version is defined to be the latest version, in time, of all of the versions comprising the composite. Given back-level compatibility, this would be the earliest version of the operating system on which all of the comprising versions would be compatible.

**Compression status**

This field identifies whether the executable or the observable portions of the bound program or bound service program are compressed.

**Format of materialized program copyright strings**

- Length in bytes of materialization Ubin(4)
- Version of copyright creation extension Ubin(4)
- Number of copyright statements in the pool Ubin(4)
- Reserved Char(4)
- Copyright string pool Char(\*)

**Length in bytes of materialization**

This is the number of bytes materialized.

**Version of copyright creation extension**

This is the version of the copyrights when the module was created.

**Number of copyright strings in the pool.**

This is the number of copyright strings that follow.

**Copyright statement pool.**

This is the data for all of the copyright strings. Each copyright string consists of a 4 byte length followed by the text of the string. The length reflects the actual length of the copyright string and does not include the length of the length field. All copyright strings along with their lengths are placed contiguously in the buffer with no intervening padding.

**Format of the materialized bound service programs information**

- Length in bytes of materialization UBin(4)
- Number of service programs bound to this program UBin(4)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(8)
- Array of bound service program records Char(\*)
  - Bound service program ID Char(24)
    - Bound service program context object type Char(1)
    - Bound service program context object subtype Char(1)
    - Bound service program context name Char(10)
    - Bound service program object type Char(1)
    - Bound service program object subtype Char(1)
    - Bound service program name Char(10)
  - Referentially bound program signature Char(16)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(8)

**Length in bytes of materialization**

The number of bytes materialized. This will be  $16 + (N * 48)$  where N is the number of bound service programs — those programs that contain exports that resolve imports in the bound program.

**Number of service programs bound to this program**

This is the number of bound service programs bound to the bound program.

**Array of bound service program records**

This array contains one record for each bound service program bound to the bound program. Each record contains the following information

**Bound service program context type**

This is the object type of the context with the given name.

**Bound service program context subtype**

This is the object subtype of the context with the given name.

**Bound service program context name**

This is the context specified during program creation where this bound service program was found when the bound program was created. This value could be set with all hex zeroes, in which case the name resolution list is used to locate the given bound service program.

**Bound service program type**

This is the object type of the program with the given name.

**Bound service program subtype**

This is the object subtype of the program with the given name.

**Bound service program name**

This is the name of the bound service program specified during program creation.

**Bound service program signature**

This is the signature of the bound service program that was used to match against the current signature of the bound program.

**Format of the materialized bound modules information**

- |   |          |
|---|----------|
| • Length in bytes of materialization        | UBin(4)  |
| • Number of modules bound into this program | UBin(4)  |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                       | Char(8)  |
| • Array of bound module records             | Char(*)  |
| — Bound module ID                           | Char(60) |
| - Module qualifier                          | Char(30) |
| - Module name                               | Char(30) |
| — Reserved (binary 0)                       | Char(20) |

**Length in bytes of materialization**

The number of bytes materialized. This will be  $16 + (N * 80)$  where N is the number of modules bound into the bound program.

**Number of modules bound into this program**

This is the number of modules bound into the bound program.

**Array of bound module records**

This array contains one record for each module bound into the bound program. Each record contains the following information

**Module qualifier**

This is the qualifier specified during program creation where this module was found when the bound program was created. The module qualifier is used to differentiate between two different modules of the same name. This usually contains a context name.

### Module name

This is the name of the module.

### **Format of the materialized bound program string directory component**

- Length in bytes of materialization UBin(4)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(12)
- String Pool Char(\*)
  - Length of the string UBin(4)
  - CCSID of the string UBin(2)
  - String Char(\*)

### **Length in bytes of materialization**

The number of bytes materialized. This will be 16 + the length of the string pool.

### **String Pool**

A memory area containing the strings defined for this program. It can be of any length addressable by a UBin(4). It contains a series of strings and lengths. String IDs specified in other materialized components can be used as indexes into this string pool.

### **Length of string**

The length of the next string. This field contains the length of the string only, and does not include the length of the either the length or the CCSID field. The length field of a string is not subject to alignment considerations.

### **CCSID of string**

The character code set identifier of this string. This string is encoded in the given CCSID, which is the CCSID of the module object from which this string is originally declared. The CCSID field of a string is not subject to alignment considerations.

### **String**

Character buffer which contains one string. Its length is defined by the length field.

### **Format of the materialized bound program limits**

- Length in bytes of materialization UBin(4)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(12)
- Current size of bound program UBin(4)
- Maximum number of associated spaces UBin(4)
- Current number of associated spaces UBin(4)
- Maximum number of modules bindable into program UBin(4)
- Current number of modules bound into program UBin(4)
- Maximum number of service programs bindable to program UBin(4)
- Current number of service programs bound to program UBin(4)
- Maximum size of bound program string directory UBin(4)
- Current size of bound program string directory UBin(4)
- Maximum size of bound program copyright strings UBin(4)
- Current size of bound program copyright strings UBin(4)
- Maximum number of auxiliary storage segments UBin(4)
- Current number of auxiliary storage segments UBin(4)
- Maximum number of static storage frames UBin(4)

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| • Current number of static storage frames     | UBin(4)   |
| • Maximum number of program procedure exports | UBin(4)   |
| • Current number of program procedure exports | UBin(4)   |
| • Maximum number of program data exports      | UBin(4)   |
| • Current number of program data exports      | UBin(4)   |
| • Maximum number of signatures                | UBin(4)   |
| • Current number of signatures                | UBin(4)   |
| • Minimum amount of static storage required   | UBin(4)   |
| • Maximum amount of static storage required   | UBin(4)   |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                         | Char(148) |

## **Length in bytes of materialization**

The number of bytes materialized. This will always be a constant 256.

## **Current size of bound program**

This is the current size, in machine-dependent units, of the bound program being materialized.

## **Maximum number of associated spaces**

This is the maximum number of associated spaces allowed for the bound program being materialized.

## **Current number of associated spaces**

This is the current number of associated spaces allocated to the bound program being materialized.

## **Maximum number of modules bindable into program**

This is the maximum number of modules that can be bound into a bound program.

## **Current number of modules bound into program**

This is the current number of modules bound into the bound program being materialized.

## **Maximum number of service programs bindable to program**

This is the maximum number of bound service programs that can be bound to a bound program. These bound service programs contain exports to which imports from a bound program resolve.

## **Current number of service programs bound to program**

This is the current number of bound service programs bound to the bound program being materialized.

## **Maximum size of bound program string directory**

This is the maximum size, in bytes, of the bound program string directory.

## **Current size of bound program string directory**

This is the current size, in bytes, of the bound program string directory.

## **Maximum size of bound program copyright strings**

This is the maximum size, in bytes, of the bound program copyright strings.

## **Current size of bound program copyright strings**

This is the current size, in bytes, of the bound program copyright strings.

## **Maximum number of auxiliary storage segments**

This is the maximum number of auxiliary storage segments allowed for a bound program.

## **Current number of auxiliary storage segments**

This is the current number of auxiliary storage segments in the bound program being materialized.

**Maximum number of static storage frames**

This is the maximum number of static storage frames allowed for a bound program.

**Current number of static storage frames**

This is the current number of static storage frames required by the bound program being materialized.

**Maximum number of procedure exports**

This is the maximum number of procedures that are allowed to be exported from a bound program. If the bound program being materialized is not a bound service program, then this value will be zero.

**Current number of procedure exports**

This is the current number of procedures exported from the bound program being materialized. If the bound program being materialized is not a bound service program, then this value will be zero.

**Maximum number of data exports**

This is the maximum number of data items that are allowed to be exported from a bound program. If the bound program being materialized is not a bound service program, then this value will be zero.

**Current number of data exports**

This is the current number of data items exported from the bound program being materialized. If the bound program being materialized is not a bound service program, then this value will be zero.

**Maximum number of signatures**

This is the maximum number of signatures allowed for a bound program. If the bound program being materialized is not a bound service program, then this value will be zero.

**Current number of signatures**

This is the current number of signatures contained in the bound program being materialized. If the bound program being materialized is not a bound service program, then this value will be zero.

**Minimum amount of static storage required.**

This is the smallest amount of static storage that is required for the bound program or service program. This measure is in bytes. The actual amount of static storage that is used may be anywhere between the minimum and the maximum amounts of required static storage, inclusive.

**Maximum amount of static storage required.**

This is the largest amount of static storage that may be required for the bound program or service program. This measure is in bytes. The actual amount of static storage that is used may be anywhere between the minimum and the maximum amounts of required static storage, inclusive.

***Format of the materialized activation group data imports***

- |   |          |
|---|----------|
| • Length in bytes of materialization      | UBin(4)  |
| • Number of activation group data imports | UBin(4)  |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                     | Char(8)  |
| • Array of activation group data imports  | Char(*)  |
| — String ID                               | UBin(4)  |
| — Reserved (binary 0)                     | Char(12) |

**Length in bytes of materialization**

The number of bytes materialized. This will be  $(N + 1) * 16$ , where N is the number of activation group data imports contained in the bound program or bound service program.

**Number of activation group data imports**

The number of activation group data imports contained in the bound program or bound service program.

**Array of activation group data imports**

This array contains one record for each data item contained in the program or bound service program. Each record contains the following information:

**String ID**

This is the identification used to extract the name of this data item from the program string directory.

**Format of the materialized activation group data exports**

- |   |         |
|---|---------|
| • Length in bytes of materialization      | UBin(4) |
| • Number of activation group data exports | UBin(4) |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                     | Char(8) |
| • Array of activation group data exports  | Char(*) |
| — String ID                               | UBin(4) |
| — Strength of data item                   | Char(1) |
| - 0 = Reserved                            |         |
| - 1 = Export Strongly                     |         |
| - 2 = Export Weakly                       |         |
| - 3-255 = Reserved                        |         |
| — Reserved (binary 0)                     | Char(3) |
| — Length of data item                     | UBin(4) |
| — Reserved (binary 0)                     | Char(4) |

**Length in bytes of materialization**

The number of bytes materialized. This will be  $(N + 1) * 16$ , where N is the number of activation group data exports contained in the bound program or bound service program.

**Number of activation group data exports**

The number of activation group data exports contained in the bound program or bound service program.

**Array of activation group data exports**

This array contains one record for each data item contained in the program or bound service program. Each record contains the following information:

**String ID**

This is the identification used to extract the name of this data item from the program string directory.

**Strength of data item**

This field indicates whether the activation group export is exported strongly or weakly.

**Length of data item.**

The size in bytes of the activation group export.



**Format of the materialized specific bound program information:** Specific bound program information can only be materialized for bound programs, and not for bound service programs.

- Length in bytes of materialization UBin(4)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(12)
- Program entry procedure information Char(16)
  - Module number containing program entry procedure UBin(4)
  - Program entry procedure string ID UBin(4)
  - Minimum parameters UBin(2)
  - Maximum parameters UBin(2)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(4)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(32)

**Length in bytes of materialization**

The number of bytes materialized. This will always be a constant 64.

**Module number containing program entry procedure**

This is the number, in the bound modules information, of the module which contains the program entry procedure for this bound program.

**Program entry procedure string ID**

This is the string ID for the name of this program entry procedure.

**Minimum parameters**

This is the minimum number of parameters that the program entry procedure can accept.

**Maximum parameters**

This is the maximum number of parameters that the program entry procedure can accept.

**Format of the materialized signatures information:** Signatures information can only be materialized for bound service programs, and not for bound programs.

- Length in bytes of materialization UBin(4)
- Number of signatures contained in the program UBin(4)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(8)
- Array of signatures Char(\*)
  - Signature Char(16)

**Length in bytes of materialization**

The number of bytes materialized. This will be  $(N + 1) * 16$ , where N is the number of signatures contained in the program.

**Number of signatures contained in the program**

This is the number of signatures contained in the program.

**Array of signatures**

This array contains one record for each signature contained in the program. Each record contains the following information. The first record contains the current signature.

**Signature**

A signature of the service program.

**Format of the materialized exported program procedure information:** Exported program procedure information can only be materialized for bound service programs, and not for bound programs.

- Length in bytes of materialization UBin(4)
- Number of exported procedures UBin(4)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(8)
- Array of program exports Char(\*)
  - String ID for procedure export UBin(4)
  - Export number UBin(4)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(8)

**Length in bytes of materialization**

The number of bytes materialized. This will be  $(N + 1) * 16$ , where N is the number of exported procedures.

**Number of exported procedures**

This is the number of procedures exported from the service program.

**Array of program exports**

This array contains one record for each procedure exported from the service program. Each record contains the following information:

**String ID for procedure export**

This is the identification used to extract the name of this exported procedure from the program string directory.

**Export number**

This is the number of this exported procedure.

**Format of the materialized exported program data information:** Exported program data information can only be materialized for bound service programs, and not for bound programs.

- Length in bytes of materialization UBin(4)
- Number of exported data items UBin(4)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(8)
- Array of data exports Char(\*)
  - String ID for data export UBin(4)
  - Export number UBin(4)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(8)

**Length in bytes of materialization**

The number of bytes materialized. This will be  $(N + 1) * 16$ , where N is the number of exported data items.

**Number of exported data items**

This is the number of data items exported from the service program.

**Array of data exports**

This array contains one record for each data item exported from the service program. Each record contains the following information:

**String ID for data export**

This is the identification used to extract the name of this exported data item from the program string directory.

**Export number**

This is the number of this exported data item.

**Format of materialized general module information**

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| • Length in bytes of materialization                      | UBin(4)   |
| • Reserved  | Char(12)  |
| • Reserved <sup>1</sup>                                   | Char(276) |
| • Coded character set identifier                          | UBin(2)   |
| • Reserved  | Char(10)  |
| • Creation target version <sup>5</sup>                    | Char(2)   |
| • Language version <sup>5</sup>                           | Char(2)   |
| • Version on which creation occurred <sup>5</sup>         | Char(2)   |
| • VLIC version <sup>5</sup>                               | Char(2)   |
| • Reserved  | Char(16)  |
| • Number of secondary associated spaces                   | UBin(4)   |
| • Reserved  | Char(16)  |
| • Reserved <sup>1</sup>                                   | Char(2)   |
| • Reserved  | Char(2)   |
| • Compiler name   | Char(20)  |
| • Program entry procedure                                 | Char(16)  |
| Program entry procedure attributes                        | Char(4)   |
| Program entry procedure exists                            | Bit 0     |
| 0 = Program entry procedure does not exist in this module |           |
| 1 = Program entry procedure exists in this module         |           |
| Reserved (0)  | Bits 1-31 |
| Program entry procedure dictionary id                     | UBin(4)   |
| Program entry procedure string id                         | UBin(4)   |
| Program entry procedure minimum parms                     | UBin(2)   |
| Program entry procedure maximum parms                     | UBin(2)   |
| • Reserved  | Char(124) |

**Length in bytes of materialization**

This is the number of bytes materialized. For the general module information this will always be a constant 512.

**Coded character set identifier**

The CCSID defines the code page of the symbols in the string directory.

**Language version**

This is the earliest version of the operating system on which language used will allow the module object to be saved.

**Creation target version**

This is the version of the operating system for which the module object was created.

**Version on which creation occurred**

This is the version of the operating system that was running on the system where the module object was created.

**Earliest version**

This is the earliest version of the operating system on which the machine will allow the module object to be saved.

**Number of secondary associated spaces**

This is the number of secondary associated space segments currently associated with the object.

**Compiler name**

This identifies the compiler which translated the user's source language.

**Program entry procedure**

This identifies the program entry procedure if one is present in the module.

**Program entry procedure attributes**

This bit mapped field identifies attributes of the program entry procedure.

The *program entry procedure existence* field specifies whether a program entry procedure is present in the module being materialized.

**Dictionary id of the procedure**

The dictionary id is used as a handle to uniquely identify the procedure.

**String id of the procedure name**

The string id may be used to extract the character string which is the procedure name from the string pool.

**Program entry procedure minimum parms**

This is the minimum number of parameters allowed by the program entry procedure.

**Program entry procedure maximum parms**

This is the maximum number of parameters allowed by the program entry procedure.

**Format of the materialized module string directory component**

- |                                      |          |
|--------------------------------------|----------|
| • Length in bytes of materialization | UBin(4)  |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                | Char(12) |
| • String Pool                        | Char(*)  |
| — Length of the string               | UBin(4)  |
| — String                             | Char(*)  |

**Length in bytes of materialization**

The number of bytes materialized. This will be 16 + the length of the string pool.

**String Pool**

A memory area containing the strings defined for this module. It can be of any length addressable by a UBin(4). It contains a series of strings and lengths. String IDs specified in other materialized components can be used as indexes into this string pool.

**Length of string**

The length of the next string. This field contains the length of the string only, and does not include the length of the length field, itself. The length field of a string is not subject to alignment considerations.

**String**

Character buffer which contains one string. Its length is defined by the length field.

***Format of the materialized module copyright strings:*** The format of the materialized module copyright strings is the same as for the materialized program copyright strings.

**Template Value Invalid exception reason codes:** This instruction supports setting of the optional reason code field in the exception data which can be retrieved when the template value invalid exception is signaled. When the first byte of the reason code is not zero, the exception is being signaled because one of the materialization receivers is not valid.

00 Bound Program Materialization Template (pointed to by operand 1 of this instruction)

01 Size of template is not sufficient to hold number of requests specified.

On nth materialization request is not valid.

01 The *receiver* is not aligned on a 16 byte boundary.

02 The materialization request *bytes provided* is less than 8.

03 The materialization request contains no *materialization options* or invalid *materialization options*.

If the *length of field* data is 8, then no materialization options were specified and the *offset in field in bits* data will be 0. Otherwise, an invalid option was specified and the provided *offset to field in bytes* and *offset in field in bits* data will identify the invalid materialization option.

04 The materialization request contains a *module materialization number* that is greater than the number of modules bound into the program.

05 The materialization request contains a non-zero *module materialization number*, but no *module materialization options*.

06 The materialization request contains a non-zero reserved field.

### Authorization Required

- Retrieve
  - Operand 2
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Operand 2
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Exceptions

| Exception  | Operands |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06 Addressing  |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation                              | X        | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment                                      | X        | X |       |
| 03 range   | X        | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid                        | X        | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                                      |          |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation                           | X        | X |       |
| 0A Authorization   |          |   |       |
| 01 unauthorized for operation                              |          | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                                      |          |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state                              | X        | X | X     |
| 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object |          |   | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage                            | X        | X | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  |          | X |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X |       |
|           | 04 object intelligible                                       | X        | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   | X     |
|           | 0A program object intelligible                               |          | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 pointer addressing invalid object                         |          | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid                                    | X        |   | X     |
|           | 02 template size invalid                                     | X        |   | X     |
|           | 03 materialization length exception                          |          |   | X     |

## Materialize Program (MATPG)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1          | Operand 2 |
|---------------|--------------------|-----------|
| 0232          | Attribute receiver | Program   |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* System pointer.

### ILE access

```

MATPG (
    receiver : space pointer;
    var program : system pointer
)

```

**Description:** The program identified by operand 2 is materialized into the template identified by operand 1.

Operand 2 is a system pointer that identifies the program to be materialized. The values in the materialization relate to the current attributes of the materialized program.

The template identified by operand 1 must be 16-byte aligned.

The first 4 bytes of the materialization template identify the total **number of bytes provided** in the template. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified. A value of less than 8 causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception to be signaled.

The second 4 bytes of the materialization template are modified by the instruction to contain a value identifying the template size required to provide for the total **number of bytes available** to be materialized. The instruction materializes as many bytes as can be contained in the area specified by the receiver. If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested, then the excess bytes are unchanged. No exceptions (other than the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception) are signaled in the event that the receiver contains insufficient area for the materialization.

The following attributes apply to the materialization of a program:

- The **existence attribute** indicates whether the program is *temporary* or *permanent*.
- The **observation attribute** field specifies the template components of the programs that currently can be materialized.
- If the program has an associated space, then the **space attribute** is set to indicate either fixed- or variable-length; the initial value for the space is returned in the **initial value of space** field, and the **size of space** field is set to the current size value of the space. If the program has no associated space, the *size of space* field is set to a zero value, and the *space attribute* and *initial value of space* field values are meaningless.
- If the program is addressed by a context, then the **context addressability** attribute is set to indicate this, and a system pointer to the addressing context is returned in the **context** field. If the program is not addressed by a context, then the *context addressability* attribute is set to indicate this, and binary 0's are returned in the *context* field.
- If the program is a member of an access group, then the **access group** attribute is set to indicate this, and a system pointer to the access group is returned in the **access group** field. If the program

is not a member of an access group, then the *access group* attribute is set to indicate this, and binary 0's are returned in the *access group* field.

- The **performance class** field is set to reflect the performance class information associated with the program.
- The **user exit** attribute defines if the referenced program is allowed to be used as a user exit program.

Components of the program template may not be present if they have been removed by the Delete Program Observability instruction. Also, a template component will not be available if the program was created with its corresponding *observation attribute* in the Create Program template set to binary 0. If a template component cannot be materialized, 0's are placed in the fields of the program template that describe the size and offsets to that component.

The **offset to the OMT component** field specifies the location of the OMT component in the materialized program template. The OMT consists of a variable-length vector of 6-byte entries. The number of entries is identical to the number of ODV entries because there is one OMT entry for each ODV entry. The OMT entries correspond one for one with the ODV entries; each OMT entry gives a location mapping for the object defined by its associated ODV entry.

The following describes the formats for an OMT entry:

- OMT entry Char(6)
  - Addressability type Char(1)
    - Hex 00= Base addressability is from the start of the static storage
    - Hex 01= Base addressability is from the start of the automatic storage area
    - Hex 02= Base addressability is from the start of the storage area addressed by a space pointer
    - Hex 03= Base addressability is from the start of the storage area of a parameter
    - Hex 04= Base addressability is from the start of the storage area addressed by the space pointer found in the process communication object attribute of the process executing the program
    - Hex FF= Base addressability not provided. The object is contained in machine storage areas to which addressability cannot be given, or a parameter has addressability to an object that is in the storage of another program
  - Offset from base Char(3)
    - For types hex 00, hex 01, hex 02, hex 03, and hex 04, this is a 3-byte logical binary value representing the offset to the object from the base addressability. For type and hex FF, the value is binary 0.
  - Base addressability Char(2)
    - For types hex 02 and hex 03, this is a 2-byte binary field containing the number of the OMT entry for the space pointer or a parameter that provides base addressability for this object. For types hex 00, hex 01, hex 04 and hex FF, the value is binary 0.

### Authorization Required

- Retrieve
  - Operand 2
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution



**Lock Enforcement**

- Materialize
  - Operand 2
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

**Exceptions**

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                                | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 range   | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                          | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                             | X        | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                                |          | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                                | X        | X | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              | X        | X | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  |          | X |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 pointer addressing invalid object                         |          | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   | X     |

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 |       |
| 36        | Space management                    |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation       |          |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification              |          |   |       |
|           | 03 materialization length exception | X        |   |       |



## Chapter 9. Program Execution Instructions

This chapter describes the instructions used for program execution control. These instructions are in alphabetic order. For an alphabetic summary of all the instructions, see Appendix A, "Instruction Summary."

|  |      |
|--|------|
| Activate Program (ACTPG)                           | 9-3  |
| Call External (CALLX)                              | 9-5  |
| Call Internal (CALLI)                              | 9-9  |
| Clear Invocation Exit (CLREXIT)                    | 9-11 |
| Deactivate Program (DEACTPG)                       | 9-12 |
| End (END)  | 9-14 |
| Materialize Activation Attributes (MATACTAT)       | 9-15 |
| Materialize Activation Group Attributes (MATAGPAT) | 9-19 |
| Modify Automatic Storage Allocation (MODASA)       | 9-23 |
| Return External (RTX)                              | 9-25 |
| Set Argument List Length (SETALLEN)                | 9-27 |
| Set Invocation Exit (SETIEXIT)                     | 9-29 |
| Store Parameter List Length (STPLLEN)              | 9-31 |
| Transfer Control (XCTL)                            | 9-33 |



## Activate Program (ACTPG)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1                       | Operand 2 |
|---------------|---------------------------------|-----------|
| 0212          | Program or static storage frame | Program   |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer data object, system pointer.

*Operand 2:* System pointer.

### ILE access

```
ACTPG (
  var activation : system pointer; OR
               space pointer;
  var program   : system pointer
)
```

**Warning:** The following information is subject to change from release to release. Use it with caution and be prepared to adjust for changes with each new release.

**Description:** This instruction creates an activation entry for the program specified by operand 2, if it uses static storage. If the program specified is a bound program, an *invalid operation for program* (hex 2C15) exception is signaled. No operation is performed for a program which does not require static storage.

Operand 1 receives either a space pointer or system pointer as follows:

If an activation entry is created or an activation entry exists for the program within the target activation group, then a space pointer to the static storage frame is returned. The static storage frame is allocated and initialized according to specifications within the program. The static storage frame is 16-byte aligned and begins with a 64-byte header. The header is not initialized and it is not used by the machine. The header is provided for compatibility with prior machine implementations.

- If the program does not use static storage (hence, no activation entry is created) a copy of the program pointer in operand 2 is returned.

If an attempt is made to activate an already active program then

- the activation mark of the activation entry is unchanged, and
- the static storage frame is reinitialized

A space pointer machine object may not be specified for operand 1.

### Authorization Required

- Operational
  - Program referenced by operand 2
- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

**Lock Enforcement**

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

**Exceptions**

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                                | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 range   | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                          | X        | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                                |          | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                                | X        | X | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              | X        | X | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  |          | X |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    |          | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 pointer addressing invalid object                         |          | X |       |
| 2C        | Program execution  |          |   |       |
|           | 15 invalid operation for program                             | X        |   |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management   |          |   |       |

**Exception**  
01 space extension/truncation

| Operands |   | Other |
|----------|---|-------|
| 1        | 2 |       |
|          |   | X     |



## Call External (CALLX)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1                             | Operand 2     | Operand 3   |
|---------------|---------------------------------------|---------------|-------------|
| 0283          | Program to be called or Call template | Argument list | Return list |

*Operand 1:* System pointer or Space pointer data object.

*Operand 2:* Operand list or null.

*Operand 3:* Instruction definition list or null.

**Warning:** The following information is subject to change from release to release. Use it with caution and be prepared to adjust for changes with each new release.

**Description:** The instruction preserves the calling invocation and passes control to either the *program entry procedure* of a bound program or the external entry point of a non-bound program. If operand 1 specifies a bound program which does not contain a *program entry procedure*, an *invalid operation for program* (hex 2C15) exception is signaled.

Operand 1 may be specified as a system pointer which directly addresses the program that is to receive control or as a space pointer to a call template which identifies the program to receive control. Specifying a template allows for additional controls over how the specified program is to be invoked. The format of the call template is the following:

- Call options
  - Suppress adopted user profiles
 

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| 0 | = No  |
| 1 | = Yes |
  - Reserved (binary 0)
  - Force process state to user state for call
 

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| 0 | = No  |
| 1 | = Yes |
- Reserved (binary 0)
- Program to be called

Char(4)

Bit 0

Bits 1-30

Bit 31

Char(12)

System pointer

The **suppress adopted user profiles** call option specifies whether or not the program adopted and propagated user profiles which may be serving as sources of authority to the process are to be suppressed from supplying authority to the new invocation. Specifying *yes* causes the propagation of adopted user profiles to be stopped as of the calling invocation, thereby, not allowing the called invocation to benefit from their authority. Specifying *no* allows the normal propagation of adopted and propagated user profiles to occur. The called program may adopt its owning user profile, if necessary, to supplement the authority available to its invocation.

The **force process state to user state** option specifies whether or not the call changes the state of the process to user state.

**Common Program Call Processing:** The details of processing differ for non-bound and bound programs. The following outlines the common steps.

1. A check is made to determine if the caller has authority to invoke the program and that the object is indeed a program object. The specified program must be either a bound program that contains a *program entry procedure* or a non-bound program.
2. The activation group in which the program is to be run is located or created if it doesn't exist. The activation group supplies the storage resources required for program execution: static, automatic, and heap storage.
3. If the program requires an activation entry and it is not already active within the appropriate activation group, it is activated. Bound programs always require an activation; non-bound programs require an activation only if they use static storage. The *invocation count* of a newly created activation is set to 1 while the *invocation count* of an existing activation is incremented by 1.
4. The invocation created for the target program has the following attributes (as would be reported via the Materialize Invocation Attributes instruction.)
  - the *invocation mark* is one higher than the current mark count value maintained for the process. If the program was activated as a result of the call then its invocation mark will equal the activation mark, otherwise the invocation mark is larger than the activation mark.

**Note:** The so-called mark counts are generated from a counter maintained for the process. Each time a mark is required the counter is incremented. The mark counts thus form a non-decreasing sequence of unique identifiers which can be used to distinguish the time ordering of activations, invocations, and activation groups.

  - the *invocation number* is one greater than the invocation number of the calling invocation. This is merely a measure of the depth of the call-stack.
  - the *invocation type* is hex 01 to indicate a CALLPGM or CALLX invocation.
  - the *invocation number* is the same as the invocation number of the transferring invocation.
  - the *invocation type* is hex 02 to indicate a XCTL type of invocation.
5. The automatic storage frame (ASF), if required, is allocated on a 16-byte boundary.
6. Control is transferred to the program entry procedure (or external entry point) of the program.
7. Normal flow-of-control resumes at the instruction following the program call instruction after a return from the program.
8. Normal flow-of-control resume at the instruction following the caller of the program issuing the XCTL instruction.

The details of locating the target activation group and activating the program differ depending upon the model of the program.

**Bound Program:** A bound program is activated and run in an activation group specified by program attributes. There are two logical steps involved:

- locate the existing, or create a new activation group for the program
- locate an existing, or create a new activation entry for the program within the activation group

After locating the activation entry for the program, control is passed to the program entry procedure for the program. If required, the activation group is destroyed when the invocation for the program entry procedure is destroyed.

**Non-bound Program:** The automatic storage frame begins with a 64 byte header. If the program defines no automatic data items the frame consists solely of the 64-byte header, otherwise the automatic storage items are located immediately following the header. In prior releases of the machine, this header contained invocation information which is now available via the Materialize Invocation Attributes (MATINVAT) instruction. This header is not initialized and the contents of the header are not used by the machine. (The space is allocated merely to provide for compatibility with prior implementations of the machine.) The *update PASA stack* program attribute, supported in prior implementations of the machine, is no longer meaningful and is ignored, if specified as an attribute of the program.

Following the allocation and initialization of the invocation entry, control is passed to the invoked program.

Operand 2 specifies an operand list that identifies the arguments to be passed to the invocation entry to be called. If operand 2 is null, no arguments are passed by the instruction. A *parameter list length* (hex 0802) exception is signaled if the number of arguments passed does not correspond to the number required by the parameter list of the target program.

Operand 3 specifies an IDL (instruction definition list) that identifies the instruction number(s) of alternate return points within the calling invocation. A Return External instruction in an invocation immediately subordinate to the calling invocation can indirectly reference a specific entry in the IDL to cause a return of control to the instruction associated with the referenced IDL entry. If operand 3 is null, then the calling invocation has no alternate return points associated with the call. If operand 3 is not null and operand 1 specifies a bound program, an *invalid operation for program* (hex 2C15) exception is signaled.

### Authorization Required

- Operational
  - Program referenced by operand 1
- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |   |       |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 | Other |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation       | X        |   |   |       |
| 02 boundary alignment               | X        |   |   |       |
| 03 range                            | X        |   |   |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        |   |   |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation    | X        |   |   |       |
| 02 parameter list length violation  |          | X |   |       |
| 0A Authorization                    |          |   |   |       |
| 01 unauthorized for operation       | X        |   |   |       |

| Exception | Operands   |   |   |       |
|-----------|--|---|---|-------|
|           | 1  | 2 | 3 | Other |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |   |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                                |   |   |       |
|           | X  | X | X | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |   |   |       |
|           |  |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              |   |   |       |
|           | X  | X | X | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  |   |   |       |
|           | X  |   |   |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |   |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |   |   |       |
|           |  |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |   |   |       |
|           |  |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |   |   |       |
|           |  |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  |   |   |       |
|           | X  |   |   |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  |   |   |       |
|           | X  |   |   |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  |   |   |       |
|           | X  |   |   |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |   |   |       |
|           |  |   |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |   |   |       |
|           |  |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    |   |   |       |
|           | X  |   |   |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      |   |   |       |
|           | X  |   |   |       |
|           | 03 pointer addressing invalid object                         |   |   |       |
|           | X  |   |   |       |
| 2C        | Program execution  |   |   |       |
|           | 15 invalid operation for program                             |   |   |       |
|           | X  |   | X |       |
|           | 1D automatic storage overflow                                |   |   |       |
|           |  |   |   | X     |
|           | 1E activation access violation                               |   |   |       |
|           |  |   |   | X     |
|           | 1F program signature violation                               |   |   |       |
|           |  |   |   | X     |
|           | 20 static storage overflow                                   |   |   |       |
|           |  |   |   | X     |
|           | 21 program import invalid                                    |   |   |       |
|           |  |   |   | X     |
|           | 22 data reference invalid                                    |   |   |       |
|           |  |   |   | X     |
|           | 23 imported object invalid                                   |   |   |       |
|           |  |   |   | X     |
|           | 24 activation group export conflict                          |   |   |       |
|           |  |   |   | X     |
|           | 25 import not found  |   |   |       |
|           |  |   |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |   |   |       |
|           |  |   |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |   |   |       |
|           |  |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                                       |   |   |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid                                    |   |   |       |
|           | X  |   |   |       |

## Call Internal (CALLI)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1            | Operand 2     | Operand 3     |
|---------------|----------------------|---------------|---------------|
| 0293          | Internal entry point | Argument list | Return target |

*Operand 1:* Internal entry point.

*Operand 2:* Operand list or null.

*Operand 3:* Instruction pointer.

**Warning:** The following information is subject to change from release to release. Use it with caution and be prepared to adjust for changes with each new release.

**Description:** The internal entry point specified by operand 1 is located in the same invocation from which the Call Internal instruction is executed. A subinvocation is defined and execution control is transferred to the first instruction associated with the internal entry point. The instruction does not cause a new invocation to be established. Therefore, there is no allocation of objects and instructions in the subinvocation have access to all invocation objects.

Operand 2 specifies an operand list that identifies the arguments to be passed to the subinvocation. If operand 2 is null, no arguments are passed. After an argument has been passed on a Call Internal instruction, the corresponding parameter may be referenced. This causes an indirect reference to the storage area located by the argument. This mapping exists until the parameter is assigned a new mapping based on a subsequent Call Internal instruction. A reference to an internal parameter before its being assigned an argument mapping causes a *parameter reference violation* (hex 0801) exception to be signaled.

Operand 3 specifies an instruction pointer that identifies the pointer into which the machine places addressability to the instruction immediately following the Call Internal instruction. A branch instruction in the called subinvocation can directly reference this instruction pointer to cause control to be passed back to the instruction immediately following the Call Internal instruction.

## Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation       |          |   | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment               |          |   | X |       |
|           | 03 range                            |          |   | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid |          |   | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation    |          | X |   |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state       | X        | X | X | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage     | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception         |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   |   | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              |          |   | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                |          |   | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |

## Clear Invocation Exit (CLREXIT)

Op Code (Hex)  
0250

**Description:** The instruction removes the invocation exit program for the requesting invocation. No exception is signaled if an invocation exit program is not specified for the current invocation. Also, an implicit clear of the invocation exit occurs when the invocation exit program is given control, or the program which set the invocation exit completes execution.

### Exceptions

| Exception                                | Other |
|--|-------|
| 10      Damage encountered               |       |
| 04   System object damage state          | X     |
| 44   Partial system object damage        | X     |
| 1C      Machine-dependent exception      |       |
| 03   Machine storage limit exceeded      | X     |
| 20      Machine support                  |       |
| 02   Machine check                       | X     |
| 03   Function check                      | X     |
| 22      Object access                    |       |
| 08   object compressed                   | X     |
| 2E      Resource control limit           |       |
| 01   user profile storage limit exceeded | X     |
| 36      Space management                 |       |
| 01   space extension/truncation          | X     |

**Deactivate Program (DEACTPG)**

|                      |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|
| <b>Op Code (Hex)</b> | <b>Operand 1</b> |
| 0225                 | Program          |

*Operand 1:* System pointer or null.

**ILE access**

```
DEACTPG (
  var program : system pointer or
               null operand
)
```

**Description:** This instruction, provided that certain conditions are met, deactivates a non-bound program. Subsequent invocations of the program within the same activation group will cause a new activation to be created.

Operand 1 specifies program activation entry which is to be deactivated, if permitted. The activation entry is inferred by one of two means:

1. *operand 1 is null* — the target activation entry is that associated with the current invocation
2. *operand 1 is not null* — the target activation entry associated with the program system pointer is selected from one of the two default activation groups

The target activation entry is deactivated if permitted. An *activation in use by invocation* (hex 2C05) exception is signaled if the deactivation is not permitted. If the target activation entry does not exist, then no operation is performed. If the program specified is a bound program, an *invalid operation for program* (hex 2C15) exception is signaled.

In general, only those activations with a zero invocation count can be deactivated. The following two exceptions apply:

1. A program can deactivate itself if it is the only invocation of that program in the process (its invocation count must be 1.)
2. An invocation exit program can deactivate the program on whose behalf it is running provided that the invocation count of that program is no more than 1.

**Authorization Required**

- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

**Lock Enforcement**

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

**Exceptions** invalid operation for program

| Exception | Operand 1  | Other |
|-----------|------------|-------|
| 06        | Addressing |       |



| Exception |  | Operand |       |
|-----------|--|---------|-------|
|           |  | 1       | Other |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                                | X       |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment  | X       |       |
|           | 03 range   | X       |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                          | X       |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |         |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                             | X       |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |         |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                                | X       |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |         |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                                | X       | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |         | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              | X       | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |         |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  | X       |       |
| 20        | Machine support  |         |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |         | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |         | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |         |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X       |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X       |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X       |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |         | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |         | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |         |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X       |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X       |       |
|           | 03 pointer addressing invalid object                         | X       |       |
| 2C        | Program execution  |         |       |
|           | 05 activation in use by invocation                           | X       |       |
|           | 15 invalid operation for program                             | X       |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |         |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |         | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification   |         |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                                       | X       |       |
| 36        | Space management   |         |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |         | X     |

## End (END)

Op Code (Hex)  
0260

**Description:** The instruction delimits the end of a program's instruction stream. When this instruction is encountered in execution, it causes a return to the preceding invocation (if present) or causes termination of the process phase if the instruction is executed in the highest-level invocation for a process. The End instruction delineates the end of the instruction stream. When it is encountered in execution, the instruction functions as a Return External instruction with a null operand. Refer to the Return External instruction for a description of that instruction.

## Exceptions

| Exception |  | Other |
|-----------|--|-------|
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state          | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          | X     |

## Materialize Activation Attributes (MATACTAT)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2       | Operand 3           |
|---------------|-----------|-----------------|---------------------|
| 0213          | Receiver  | Activation mark | Attribute selection |

Operand 1: Space pointer

Operand 2: Binary(4) scalar

Operand 3: Character(1) scalar (fixed length)

### ILE access

```
MATACTAT (
    receiver          : space pointer;
    var activation_mark : unsigned binary;
    var attribute_selection : aggregate
)
```

**Warning:** The following information is subject to change from release to release. Use it with caution and be prepared to adjust for changes with each new release.

**Description:** This instruction will materialize the information selected by operand 3 for the program activation specified by operand 2 and return the information in the template supplied by operand 1.

The operand 3 selection operand is provided to deal with the variable-length nature of some of the returned information. All "length-of-list" type information can be gathered by selecting the first option described below.

Operand 3 can have the following values:

- hex 00 — basic activation attributes
- hex 01 — static storage frame list

Any value for operand 3 other than those listed will cause a *scalar value invalid* (hex 3203) exception.

Operand 2 supplies the activation mark of the activation for which information is to be returned. The activation mark uniquely identifies an activation within a process. A value of zero is interpreted to be a request for information about the activation of the invoking program.

The materialization template identified by operand 1 must be 16-byte aligned in the space. This materialization template has the following format:

- Template size specification
 

|   |         |
|---|---------|
| Number of bytes provided for materialization    | Char(8) |
| — Number of bytes available for materialization | Bin(4)  |
| — Reserved (binary 0)                           | Bin(4)  |
|   | Char(8) |
- Returned information
 

|  |         |
|--|---------|
|  | Char(*) |
|--|---------|

The **number of bytes provided** indicates the number of bytes provided for returned information by the user of the instruction. In all cases if the number of bytes provided is less than 8, then a *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception will be signaled.

The **number of bytes available** is set by the instruction to indicate the actual number of bytes available to be returned. In no case does the instruction return more bytes of information than those available.

The format of **returned information** is described in the following paragraphs.

**Basic Activation Attributes:** The following information is returned when operand 3 is hex 00.

- Program Aystem pointer
- Activation mark UBin(4)
- Activation group mark UBin(4)
- Invocation count UBin(4)
- Static frame count UBin(4)
- Program model Char(1)
  - Hex 00 = original model
  - Hex 01 = new model
  - Hex 02-FF = reserved
- Activation attributes Char(3)
  - Activation status bit 0
    - 0 = inactive
    - 1 = active
  - Reserved (binary 0) bits 1-23

A description of the fields follows.

#### **program**

This is a pointer to the program. The system pointer returned does not contain authority. Within a process, a program may have more than one activation.

#### **activation mark**

The *activation mark* identifies the activation within the process. This field provides the actual activation mark when the special zero value was supplied for operand 2. Otherwise, this field has the same value as operand 2.

#### **activation group mark**

This identifies the activation group which contains the activation.

#### **invocation count**

This is a count of the number of program invocations which currently exist for this activation of the program. Recall that a program invocation results from a *program call* operation like Call Program not a *procedure call* operation like Call Bound Procedure.

#### **static frame count**

This is the number of static storage frames allocated for this activation.

#### **program model**

the model of the program. A program is either an *original model* (non-bound) or *new model* (bound) program.

#### **activation attributes**

The activation attributes identify

- whether the program is active or not. Only original model program can be deactivated by use of the Deactivate Program instruction.

**Static Storage Frame List:** The following information is returned when operand 3 is hex 01. This is a list of static storage frame descriptors. The *static frame count* (available in the basic activation attributes template) indicates how many entries must be accommodated by the template. The static storage frame list can be materialized only if the source activation group is permitted access to the target activation group as determined by the activation group access protection mechanism. If access is not permitted, then an *activation group access violation* (hex 2C12) exception is signaled.

The format of the list is:

- array(1..*static frame count*) of

– Static frame base

Space pointer

This is a pointer to the first byte of the static frame.

– Static frame size

UBin(4)

This is the size, in machine dependent units (currently bytes), of the static frame.

– Reserved

Char(12)

### Exceptions

| Exception  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing  |          |   |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation                              | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment                                      | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 range   | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid                        | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                                      |          |   |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation                           | X        | X | X | X     |
| 10 Damage encountered                                      |          |   |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state                              | X        | X | X | X     |
| 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object |          |   |   | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage                            | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception                             |          |   |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded                          |          |   |   | X     |
| 04 object storage limit exceeded                           |          | X |   |       |
| 09 auxiliary storage pool number invalid                   |          | X |   |       |
| 20 Machine support   |          |   |   |       |
| 02 machine check   |          |   |   | X     |
| 03 function check  |          |   |   | X     |
| 22 Object access   |          |   |   |       |
| 02 object destroyed  |          |   |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification                                   |          |   |   |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist                                  | X        | X | X | X     |

| Exception                            | Operands |   |   | Other |
|--------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                                      | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 02 pointer type invalid              | X        | X | X | X     |
| 03 Pointer addressing invalid object |          | X | X |       |
| 2C Program execution                 |          |   |   |       |
| 12 Activation group access violation |          | X |   |       |
| 16 Activation not found              |          | X |   |       |
| 32 Scalar specification              |          |   |   |       |
| 03 Scalar value invalid              |          |   | X |       |
| 38 Template specification            |          |   |   |       |
| 03 Materialization length            | X        |   |   |       |
| 44 Domain specification              |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Domain Violation                  | X        |   |   |       |

## Materialize Activation Group Attributes (MATAGPAT)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2             | Operand 3           |
|---------------|-----------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 02D3          | Receiver  | Activation group mark | Attribute selection |

Operand 1: Space pointer

Operand 2: Unsigned binary(4) scalar

Operand 3: Character(1) scalar (fixed length)

### ILE access

```

MATAGPAT (
    receiver          : space pointer;
    var activation_group_mark : unsigned binary;
    var attribute_selection  : aggregate
)

```

**Warning:** The following information is subject to change from release to release. Use it with caution and be prepared to adjust for changes with each new release.

**Description:** This instruction will materialize the information selected by operand 3 for the activation group specified by operand 2 and return the information in the template supplied by operand 1. If the activation group mark specified by operand 2 is zero, then information about the activation group associated with the current invocation is returned.

In order to deal with the variable-length nature of some activation group attributes, the selection option is provided. All of the "length-of-list" type information can be gathered by selecting the first option described below.

Operand 3 can have the following values:

- hex 00 — basic activation group attributes
- hex 01 — activation group heap list option
- hex 02 — program activation list option

Any value for operand 3 other than those listed will cause a *scalar value invalid* (hex 3203) exception.

The materialization template identified by operand 1 must be 16-byte aligned in the space. This materialization template has the following format:

- Materialization size specification
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Char(8)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(8)
- Returned information Char(\*)

The **number of bytes provided** indicates the number of bytes provided for returned information by the user of the instruction. In all cases if the number of bytes provided is less than 8, then a *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception will be signaled.

The **number of bytes available** is set by the instruction to indicate the actual number of bytes available to be returned. In no case does the instruction return more bytes of information than those available.

The format of **returned information** is described in the following paragraphs.

**Basic Activation Group Attributes:** The following information is returned when operand 3 is hex 00.

|   |                        |
|---|------------------------|
| • Root program  | System pointer or null |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                                 | Char(16)               |
| • Storage address recycling key                       | System pointer or null |
| • Activation group name                               | Char(30)               |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                                 | Char(2)                |
| • Activation group mark                               | UBin(4)                |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                                 | Char(4)                |
| • Heap space count                                    | UBin(4)                |
| • Activation count                                    | UBin(4)                |
| • Static storage size                                 | UBin(4)                |
| • Automatic storage size                              | UBin(4)                |
| • Attributes  | Char(1)                |
| — Reserved  | Bit 0                  |
| — Activation group state.                             | Bit 1                  |
| 0 = user  |                        |
| 1 = system  |                        |
| — Is activation group named?                          | Bit 2                  |
| 0 = no  |                        |
| 1 = yes   |                        |
| — Destroy pending?                                    | Bit 3                  |
| 0 = no  |                        |
| 1 = yes   |                        |
| — Reserved (binary 0)                                 | Bits 4-7               |
| • Process access group membership advisory attributes | Char(1)                |
| — Automatic storage                                   | Bit 0                  |
| 0 = do not create in PAG                              |                        |
| 1 = permit creation in PAG                            |                        |
| — Static storage                                      | Bit 1                  |
| 0 = do not create in PAG                              |                        |
| 1 = permit creation in PAG                            |                        |
| — Default heap storage                                | Bit 2                  |
| 0 = do not create in PAG                              |                        |
| 1 = permit creation in PAG                            |                        |
| — Reserved (binary 0)                                 | Bits 3-7               |

## Additional Description



## root program

those activation groups which are created by the machine (the default activation groups) do not have root programs, in which case this field is null.

## storage address recycling key

a system pointer is returned only if the *activation group state* is specified as *user*, otherwise the field is null.

## activation group name

For activation groups which do not have a symbolic name, this field contains all blanks.

## heap space count

This is the number of heap spaces currently associated with the activation group.

## activation count

This is the number of programs which are currently active within the activation group.

## static storage size

This is the maximum amount of static storage, in machine dependent units, which has been allocated to the activation group at any particular time. Note that this does not necessarily reflect the amount of storage currently in use.

## automatic storage size

This is the maximum amount of automatic storage, in machine dependent units, which has been allocated to the activation group at any particular time. Note that this does not necessarily reflect the amount of storage currently in use. It is merely a measure of the maximum "depth" the automatic storage stack has had to this point.

## is activation group named?

Indicates whether the activation group is named or unnamed. The *activation group name* field contains blanks for unnamed activation groups. The default activation groups and those created with the "unnamed" attribute are unnamed.

**Activation Group Heap List:** When operand 3 is hex 01, the format of the returned information is an array of heap identifiers. This is a list of the heaps which are currently associated with the activation group. The *heap space count* (available in the basic template) indicates how many entries must be accommodated by the template. The format of the list is:

- array(1..*heap space count*) of

Bin(4)

Information about a specific heap may be obtained from the Materialize Heap Space Attributes (MATHSAT) instruction.

**Program Activation List:** When operand 3 is hex 02, the format of the returned information is an array of *activation marks*. Each activation mark represents a program activation within the activation group. (The activation mark is a number which uniquely identifies the activation within a process.) The *activation count* (available in the basic template) indicates how many entries must be accommodated by the template. The format of the list is:

- array(1..*activation count*) of

UBin(4)

Information about a specific activation may be obtained from the Materialize Activation Attributes (MATACTAT) instruction.

## Exceptions

| Exception                     | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                               | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing                 |          |   |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation | X        | X | X |       |

| Exception  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 02 boundary alignment                                      | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 range   | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid                        | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                                      |          |   |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation                           | X        | X | X | X     |
| 10 Damage encountered                                      |          |   |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state                              | X        | X | X | X     |
| 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object |          |   |   | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage                            | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception                             |          |   |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded                          |          |   |   | X     |
| 04 object storage limit exceeded                           |          | X |   |       |
| 09 auxiliary storage pool number invalid                   |          | X |   |       |
| 20 Machine support   |          |   |   |       |
| 02 machine check   |          |   |   | X     |
| 03 function check  |          |   |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification                                   |          |   |   |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist                                  | X        | X | X | X     |
| 02 pointer type invalid                                    | X        | X | X | X     |
| 03 Pointer addressing invalid object                       |          | X | X |       |
| 32 Scalar specification                                    |          |   |   |       |
| 03 Scalar value invalid                                    |          |   |   |       |
| 2C Program execution                                       |          |   |   |       |
| 13 Activation group not found                              |          | X |   |       |
| 38 Template specification                                  |          |   |   |       |
| 03 Materialization length                                  | X        |   |   |       |
| 44 Domain specification                                    |          |   |   |       |
| 01 Domain Violation  | X        |   |   |       |

## Modify Automatic Storage Allocation (MODASA)

|                      |                    |                   |
|----------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| <b>Op Code (Hex)</b> | <b>Operand 1</b>   | <b>Operand 2</b>  |
| 02F2                 | Storage allocation | Modification size |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer data object or null.

*Operand 2:* Signed binary scalar.

### ILE access

```
MODASA (
  modification_size : signed binary; OR
                   unsigned binary;
) : space pointer /* storage_allocation */
```

**Description:** The automatic storage frame (ASF) of the current invocation is extended or truncated by the size specified by operand 2. A positive value indicates that the frame is to be *extended*; a negative value indicates that the frame is to be *truncated*; a zero value does not change the ASF. If operand 1 is not null, it will be treated as follows:

- ASF extension: receives the address of the first byte of the extension. The ASF extension might *not* be contiguous with the remainder of the ASF allocation.
- ASF truncation: Operand 1 should be null for truncation. If operand 1 is not null, then addressability to the first byte of the deallocated space is returned. This value should not be used as a space pointer since it locates space that has been deallocated.
- If a value of zero is specified for operand 2: the value returned is unpredictable.

When the ASF is extended, the extension is aligned on a 16-byte boundary. An extension is not initialized.

A *scalar value invalid* (hex 3203) exception is signaled if truncation amount would cause size of the ASF to be less than the amount of the initial allocation.

A space pointer machine object cannot be specified for operand 1.

## Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X |       |
| 03 range                            | X        | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state       | X        | X | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage     | X        | X | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X |       |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |       |
|           | 1D automatic storage exceeded          |          |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                 | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 scalar attributes invalid           |          | X |       |
|           | 03 scalar value invalid                |          | X |       |

## Return External (RTX)

|                      |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|
| <b>Op Code (Hex)</b> | <b>Operand 1</b> |
| 02A1                 | Return point     |

*Operand 1:* Signed binary (2) scalar or null.

**Description:** The instruction terminates execution of the invocation in which the instruction is specified. The automatic storage frame is deallocated.

A Return External instruction can be specified within an invocation's subinvocation, and no exception is signaled.

If a higher invocation exists in the invocation hierarchy, the instruction causes execution to resume in the preceding invocation in the process' invocation hierarchy at an instruction location indirectly specified by operand 1. If operand 1 is binary 0 or null, the next instruction following the Call External instruction from which control was relinquished in the preceding invocation in the hierarchy is given execution control. If the value of operand 1 is not 0, the value represents an index into the instruction definition list (IDL) specified as the return list operand in the Call External instruction, and the value causes control to be passed to the instruction referenced by the corresponding IDL entry. The first IDL entry is referenced by a value of one. If operand 1 is not 0 and no return list was specified in the Call External instruction, or if the value of operand 1 exceeds the number of entries in the IDL, or if the value is negative, a *return point invalid* (hex 2C02) exception is signaled.

If a higher invocation does not exist, the Return External instruction causes termination of the current process state. If operand 1 is not 0 and is not null, the *return point invalid* (hex 2C02) exception is signaled. Refer to the Terminate Process instruction for the functions performed in process termination.

If the returning invocation has received control to process an event, then control is returned to the point where the event handler was invoked. In this case, if operand 1 is not 0 and is not null, then a *return point invalid* (hex 2C02) exception is signaled.

If the returning invocation has received control from the machine to process an exception, the *return instruction invalid* (hex 2C02) exception is signaled.

If the returning invocation has an activation, the invocation count in the activation is decremented by 1.

If the returning invocation currently has an invocation exit set, the invocation exit is not given control and is implicitly cleared.

### Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operand |       |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|---------|-------|
|           |                                     | 1       | Other |
| 06        | Addressing                          |         |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation       | X       |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment               | X       |       |
|           | 03 range                            | X       |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid | X       |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  |         |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation    |         | X     |

| Exception |  | Operand |       |
|-----------|--|---------|-------|
|           |  | 1       | Other |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |         |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state          | X       | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        | X       | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |         |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      | X       |       |
| 20        | Machine support                        |         |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |         | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |         | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |         |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X       |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X       | X     |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X       |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |         | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |         |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X       | X     |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X       | X     |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |         |       |
|           | 01 return instruction invalid          |         | X     |
|           | 02 return point invalid                | X       |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |         |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |         | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |         |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |         | X     |

## Set Argument List Length (SETALLEN)

|                      |                  |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|------------------|
| <b>Op Code (Hex)</b> | <b>Operand 1</b> | <b>Operand 2</b> |
| 0242                 | Argument list    | Length           |

*Operand 1:* Operand list.

*Operand 2:* Binary scalar.

**Description** This instruction specifies the number of arguments to be passed on a succeeding Call External or Transfer Control instruction. The current length of the variable-length operand list (used as an argument list) specified by operand 1 is modified to the value indicated in the binary scalar specified by operand 2. This length value specifies the number of arguments (starting from the first) to be passed from the list when the operand list is referenced on a Call External or Transfer Control instruction. Only variable-length operand lists with the argument list attribute may be modified by the instruction.

The value in operand 2 may range from 0 (meaning no arguments are to be passed) to the maximum size specified in the ODT definition of the operand list (meaning all defined arguments are to be passed).

The length of the argument list remains in effect for the duration of the current invocation or until a Set Argument List Length instruction is issued against this operand list.

### Exceptions

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                                     |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                  |          | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment                          |          | X |       |
|           | 03 range                                       |          | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid            |          | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                             |          |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation               |          | X |       |
|           | 03 argument list length modification violation | X        |   |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                             |          |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                  | X        | X | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                | X        | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                    |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded              | X        |   |       |
| 20        | Machine support                                |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                               |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                              |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                            |          | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                            |          | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    |          | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              |          | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                |          | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |       |
|           | 03 scalar value invalid                | X        |   |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |



---

## Set Invocation Exit (SETIEXIT)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1               | Operand 2     |
|---------------|-------------------------|---------------|
| 0252          | Invocation exit program | Argument list |

*Operand 1:* System pointer

*Operand 2:* Operand list or null

**Description:** This instruction allows the external entry point of the program specified by operand 1 to be given control when the requesting invocation is destroyed due to normal exception handling actions, or due to any process termination. Normal exception handling actions are considered to be those actions performed by the Return From Exception (RTNEXCP) or the Signal Exception (SIGEXCP) instructions.

Operand 1 is a system pointer addressing the program that is to receive control. The operand 1 system pointer must be in either the static or automatic storage of the program invoking this instruction.

Operand 2 specifies an operand list that identifies the arguments to be passed to the invocation exit program being called. If operand 2 is null, no arguments are passed to the invocation.

No operand verification takes place when this instruction is executed. Nor are copies made of the operands, so changes made to the operand values after execution of this instruction will be used during later operand verification. Operand verification occurs on the original form of the operands when the invocation exit program is invoked. At that time operational authorization to the invocation exit program and retrieve authorization to any contexts referenced for materialization take place. Also, materialization lock enforcement occurs to contexts referenced for materialization.

If an invocation exit program currently exists for the requesting invocation, it is replaced, and no exception is signaled. The invocation exit set by this instruction is implicitly cleared when the invocation exit program is given control, or the program which set the invocation exit completes execution.

If any invocations are to be destroyed due to normal exception handling actions, then those invocation exit programs associated with the invocations to be destroyed are given control before execution proceeds to the signaled exception handler.

A *failure to invoke program* (hex 0011,04,01) event is signaled when both of the following conditions occur:

- Exception management is destroying an invocation stack due to a Signal Exception instruction, a Return From Exception instruction, or process termination.
- An invocation exit program is to be destroyed due to a second Signal Exception or a second Return From Exception instruction.

The invocation exit program that is being destroyed is terminated, and its associated invocation execution is terminated. Termination of invocations due to a previous Signal Exception instruction, a Return From Exception instruction, or a process termination is then resumed.

If a process phase is terminated and the process was not in termination phase, then the invocations are terminated. Invocation exit programs set for the terminated invocations are allowed to run. If an invocation to be terminated is an invocation exit program, then the following occurs:

- A *failure to invoke program* (hex 0011,04,01) event is signaled.
- If an invocation exit has been set for this invocation exit, it is allowed to run.

- The invocation exit is terminated and the associated invocation is terminated (the invocation exit is not reinvoked).

Invocation exit programs for the remaining invocations to be terminated are then allowed to run.

## Exceptions

| Exception                              | Operands |   |       |
|--|----------|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | Other |
| 06 Addressing                          |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation          | X        |   |       |
| 02 boundary alignment                  | X        |   |       |
| 03 range                               | X        |   |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid    | X        |   |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                  |          |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation       | X        |   |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                  |          |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state          |          |   | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage        |          |   | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception         |          |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                     |          |   |       |
| 02 machine check                       |          |   | X     |
| 03 function check                      |          |   | X     |
| 22 Object access                       |          |   |       |
| 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 2E Resource control limit              |          |   |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 32 Scalar specification                |          |   |       |
| 01 scalar type invalid                 | X        |   |       |
| 36 Space management                    |          |   |       |
| 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |

## Store Parameter List Length (STPLLEN)

**Op Code (Hex)**      **Operand 1**  
0241                      Length

*Operand 1:* Binary variable scalar.

**Description:** A value is returned in operand 1 that represents the number of parameters associated with the invocation's external entry point for which arguments have been passed on the preceding Call External or Transfer Control instruction.

The value can range from 0 (no parameters were received) to the maximum size possible for the parameter list associated with the external entry point.

### Exceptions

| Exception |  | Operand<br>1      Other |   |
|-----------|--|-------------------------|---|
| 06        | Addressing                             |                         |   |
|           | 01 space addressing violation          | X                       |   |
|           | 02 boundary alignment                  | X                       |   |
|           | 03 range                               | X                       |   |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid    | X                       |   |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                     |                         |   |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation       | X                       |   |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |                         |   |
|           | 04 system object damage state          | X                       | X |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        | X                       | X |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |                         |   |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      | X                       |   |
| 20        | Machine support                        |                         |   |
|           | 02 machine check                       |                         | X |
|           | 03 function check                      |                         | X |
| 22        | Object access                          |                         |   |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X                       |   |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X                       |   |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X                       |   |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |                         | X |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |                         |   |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X                       |   |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X                       |   |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |                         |   |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |                         | X |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |                         |   |

| Exception |                               | Operand |       |
|-----------|-------------------------------|---------|-------|
|           |                               | 1       | Other |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid        | X       |       |
|           | 02 scalar attributes invalid  | X       |       |
| 36        | Space management              |         |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation |         | X     |

## Transfer Control (XCTL)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1                             | Operand 2     |
|---------------|---------------------------------------|---------------|
| 0282          | Program to be called or Call template | Argument list |

*Operand 1:* System pointer or Space pointer Data Object.

*Operand 2:* Operand list or null.

**Description:** The instruction destroys the calling invocation and passes control to either the *program entry procedure* of a bound program or the external entry point of a non-bound program. If operand 1 specifies a bound program that does not contain a *program entry procedure*, an *invalid operation for program* (hex 2C15) exception is signaled.

Operand 1 may be specified as a system pointer which directly addresses the program that is to receive control or as a space pointer to a call template which identifies the program to receive control. Specifying a template allows for additional controls over how the specified program is to be invoked. The format of the call template is the following:

- Call options Char(4)
  - Suppress adopted user profiles Bit 0
    - 0 = no
    - 1 = yes
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 1-30
  - Force program state to user state for transfer Bit 31
    - 0 = no
    - 1 = yes
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(12)
- Program to be called System Pointer

The **suppress adopted user profiles** option specifies whether or not the program adopted and propagated user profiles which may be serving as sources of authority to the process are to be suppressed from supplying authority to the new invocation. Specifying *yes* causes the propagation of adopted user profiles to be stopped as of the calling invocation, thereby, not allowing the called invocation to benefit from their authority. Specifying *no* allows the normal propagation of adopted and propagated user profiles to occur. The called program may adopt its owning user profile, if necessary, to supplement the authority available to its invocation.

The **force program state to user state for transfer** option specifies whether or not the transfer control needs to be done in the current program state or as though the transferring program were running in the user state without the transferring program changing to run in the user state.

If the transferring invocation has an activation, the invocation count is decremented by 1.

**Common Program Call Processing:** The details of processing differ for non-bound and bound programs. The following outlines the common steps.

1. A check is made to determine if the caller has authority to invoke the program and that the object is indeed a program object. The specified program must be either a bound program that contains a *program entry procedure* or a non-bound program.

| Exception |                               | Operand |       |
|-----------|-------------------------------|---------|-------|
|           |                               | 1       | Other |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid        | X       |       |
|           | 02 scalar attributes invalid  | X       |       |
| 36        | Space management              |         |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation |         | X     |

---

**Transfer Control (XCTL)**

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1                             | Operand 2     |
|---------------|---------------------------------------|---------------|
| 0282          | Program to be called or Call template | Argument list |

*Operand 1:* System pointer or Space pointer Data Object.

*Operand 2:* Operand list or null.

**Description:** The instruction destroys the calling invocation and passes control to either the *program entry procedure* of a bound program or the external entry point of a non-bound program. If operand 1 specifies a bound program that does not contain a *program entry procedure*, an *invalid operation for program* (hex 2C15) exception is signaled.

Operand 1 may be specified as a system pointer which directly addresses the program that is to receive control or as a space pointer to a call template which identifies the program to receive control. Specifying a template allows for additional controls over how the specified program is to be invoked. The format of the call template is the following:

- Call options Char(4)
  - Suppress adopted user profiles Bit 0
    - 0 = no
    - 1 = yes
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 1-30
  - Force program state to user state for transfer Bit 31
    - 0 = no
    - 1 = yes
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(12)
- Program to be called System Pointer

The **suppress adopted user profiles** option specifies whether or not the program adopted and propagated user profiles which may be serving as sources of authority to the process are to be suppressed from supplying authority to the new invocation. Specifying *yes* causes the propagation of adopted user profiles to be stopped as of the calling invocation, thereby, not allowing the called invocation to benefit from their authority. Specifying *no* allows the normal propagation of adopted and propagated user profiles to occur. The called program may adopt its owning user profile, if necessary, to supplement the authority available to its invocation.

The **force program state to user state for transfer** option specifies whether or not the transfer control needs to be done in the current program state or as though the transferring program were running in the user state without the transferring program changing to run in the user state.

If the transferring invocation has an activation, the invocation count is decremented by 1.

**Common Program Call Processing:** The details of processing differ for non-bound and bound programs. The following outlines the common steps.

1. A check is made to determine if the caller has authority to invoke the program and that the object is indeed a program object. The specified program must be either a bound program that contains a *program entry procedure* or a non-bound program.

2. The activation group in which the program is to be run is located or created if it doesn't exist. The activation group supplies the storage resources required for program execution: static, automatic, and heap storage.
3. If the program requires an activation entry and it is not already active within the appropriate activation group, it is activated. Bound programs always require an activation; non-bound programs require an activation only if they use static storage. The *invocation count* of a newly created activation is set to 1 while the *invocation count* of an existing activation is incremented by 1.
4. The invocation created for the target program has the following attributes (as would be reported via the Materialize Invocation Attributes instruction.)
  - the *invocation mark* is one higher than the current mark count value maintained for the process. If the program was activated as a result of the call then its invocation mark will equal the activation mark, otherwise the invocation mark is larger than the activation mark.

**Note:** The so-called mark counts are generated from a counter maintained for the process. Each time a mark is required the counter is incremented. The mark counts thus form a non-decreasing sequence of unique identifiers which can be used to distinguish the time ordering of activations, invocations, and activation groups.

  - the *invocation number* is the same as the invocation number of the transferring invocation.
  - the *invocation type* is hex 02 to indicate a XCTL type of invocation.
5. The automatic storage frame (ASF), if required, is allocated on a 16-byte boundary.
6. Control is transferred to the program entry procedure (or external entry point) of the program.
7. Normal flow-of-control resume at the instruction following the caller of the program issuing the XCTL instruction.

The details of locating the target activation group and activating the program differ depending upon the model of the program.

**Bound Program:** A bound program is activated and run in an activation group specified by program attributes. There are two logical steps involved:

- locate the existing, or create a new activation group for the program
- locate an existing, or create a new activation entry for the program within the activation group

After locating the activation entry for the program, control is passed to the program entry procedure for the program. If required, the activation group is destroyed when the invocation for the program entry procedure is destroyed.

**Non-bound Program:** The automatic storage frame begins with a 64 byte header. if the program defines no automatic data items the frame consists solely of the 64-byte header, otherwise the automatic storage items are located immediately following the header. In prior releases of the machine, this header contained invocation information which is now available via the Materialize Invocation Attributes (MATINVAT) instruction. This header is not initialized and the contents of the header are not used by the machine. (The space is allocated merely to provide for compatibility with prior implementations of the machine.) The *update PASA stack* program attribute, supported in prior implementations of the machine, is no longer meaningful and is ignored, if specified as an attribute of the program.

Operand 2 specifies an operand list that identifies the arguments to be passed to the invocation to which control is being transferred. Automatic objects allocated by the transferring invocation are destroyed as a result of the transfer operation and, therefore, cannot be passed as arguments. A *parameter list length* (hex 0802) exception is signaled if the number of arguments passed does not correspond to the number required by the parameter list of the target program.



If the transferring invocation has received control to process an exception, or an invocation exit, the *return instruction invalid* (hex 2C01) exception is signaled.

If the transferring invocation currently has an invocation exit set, the invocation exit is not given control and is implicitly cleared.

### Authorization Required

- Operand 1
  - Operational
- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Exceptions

| Exception  | Operands |   |  | Other |
|--|----------|---|--|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 |  |       |
| 06 Addressing  |          |   |  |       |
| 01 space addressing violation                              | X        |   |  |       |
| 02 boundary alignment                                      | X        |   |  |       |
| 03 range   | X        |   |  |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid                        | X        |   |  |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                                      |          |   |  |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation                           |          |   |  | X     |
| 02 parameter list length violation                         |          | X |  |       |
| 0A Authorization   |          |   |  |       |
| 01 unauthorized for operation                              | X        |   |  |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                                      |          |   |  |       |
| 04 system object damage state                              | X        | X |  | X     |
| 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object |          |   |  | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage                            | X        | X |  | X     |
| 1A Lock state  |          |   |  |       |
| 01 invalid lock state                                      | X        |   |  |       |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception                             |          |   |  |       |
| 02 program limitation exceeded                             |          |   |  | X     |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded                          |          |   |  | X     |
| 20 Machine support   |          |   |  |       |
| 02 machine check   |          |   |  | X     |
| 03 function check  |          |   |  | X     |
| 22 Object access   |          |   |  |       |

| Exception  | Operands |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 01 object not found  | X        |   |       |
| 02 object destroyed  | X        |   |       |
| 03 object suspended  | X        |   |       |
| 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   | X     |
| 08 object compressed   |          |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification                                     |          |   |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        |   |       |
| 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        |   |       |
| 03 pointer addressing invalid object                         | X        |   |       |
| 2C Program execution   |          |   |       |
| 01 return instruction invalid                                |          |   | X     |
| 15 invalid operation for program                             | X        |   |       |
| 1D automatic storage overflow                                |          |   | X     |
| 1E activation access violation                               |          |   | X     |
| 1F program signature violation                               |          |   | X     |
| 20 static storage overflow                                   |          |   | X     |
| 21 program import invalid                                    |          |   | X     |
| 22 data reference invalid                                    |          |   | X     |
| 23 imported object invalid                                   |          |   | X     |
| 24 activation group export conflict                          |          |   | X     |
| 25 import not found  |          |   | X     |
| 2E Resource control limit                                    |          |   |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   | X     |
| 36 Space management  |          |   |       |
| 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   | X     |
| 38 Template specification                                    |          |   |       |
| 01 template value invalid                                    | X        |   |       |



---

## Chapter 10. Program Creation Control Instructions

This chapter describes all the instructions used to control the create program function. These instructions are arranged in alphabetic order. For an alphabetic summary of all the instructions, see Appendix A, "Instruction Summary."

|  |      |
|--|------|
| No Operation (NOOP) .....                    | 10-3 |
| No Operation and Skip (NOOPS) .....          | 10-4 |
| Override Program Attributes (OVRPGATR) ..... | 10-5 |



---

## No Operation (NOOP)

**Op Code (Hex)**

0000

**Description:** No function is performed. The instruction consists of an operation code and no operands. The instruction may not be branched to and is not counted as an instruction in the instruction stream. The instruction may be used for inserting gaps in the instruction stream. These gaps allow instructions with adjacent instruction addresses to be physically separated.

The instruction may precede or follow any machine instruction except the End instruction, and any number of No Operation instructions may exist in succession.

---

## No Operation and Skip (NOOPS)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1  |
|---------------|------------|
| 0001          | Skip count |

*Operand 1:* Unsigned immediate value.

**Description:** This instruction performs no function other than to indicate a specific number of bytes within the instruction stream that are to be skipped during encapsulation. It consists of an operation code and 1 operand. Operand 1 is an unsigned immediate value that contains the number of bytes between this instruction and the next instruction to be processed. These bytes are skipped during the encapsulation of this program. A value of zero for operand 1 indicates that no bytes are to be skipped between this instruction and the next instruction to be processed.

If the operand 1 skip count indicates that the next instruction to process is beyond the end of the instruction stream, an invalid operand value range exception is signaled.

This instruction may be used to insert gaps in the instruction stream in such a manner that allows instructions with adjacent instruction addresses to not be physically adjacent.

This instruction may not be branched to, and is not counted as an instruction in the instruction stream.

The instruction may precede or follow any machine instruction except the End instruction, and any number of No Operation and Skip instructions may exist in succession.

**Note:** When this instruction is used in an existing program template, the following items within the template may be adversely affected:

- The actual count of instructions may be altered to be different than the count of instructions that is specified in the program template header.
- Object definitions that reference instructions may now be out of range or may not reference the intended instruction.

The actual number of bytes skipped includes the bytes containing the instruction plus the number of bytes specified by the skip count value. The number of bytes skipped per template version is as follows:

- Version 0 = 4 plus the skip count value.
- Version 1 = 5 plus the skip count value.

## Override Program Attributes (OVRPGATR)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1                | Operand 2          |
|---------------|--------------------------|--------------------|
| 0006          | Attribute identification | Attribute modifier |

*Operand 1:* Unsigned immediate value.

*Operand 2:* Unsigned immediate value.

**Description:** This program creation control instruction allows one of a set of program attributes specified below to be overridden. The overridden program attribute is in effect until it is changed by another OVRPGATR instruction. The initial program attributes are set to the ones given in the program template for the Create Program (CRTPG) instruction. These same initial program attributes are the ones that are materialized when a Material Program (MATPG) is done. That is, the OVRPGATR instruction has no effect on the materialized attributes.

The OVRPGATR instruction consists of an operation code and two operands. Operand 1 is an unsigned immediate value that contains a representation of which program attribute is to be overridden. Operand 2 is an unsigned immediate value that contains a representation of how the program attribute is to be overridden.

This instruction may not be branched to, and is not counted as an instruction in the instruction stream.

The instruction may precede or follow any machine instruction.

The program attributes defined by operand 1 is overridden according to the following selection values:

| Attribute Identification | Attribute Description  |
|--------------------------|--|
| 1                        | Array constraintment attribute<br>Allowed values for operand 2:<br>1 = Constrain array references<br>2 = Do not constrain array references<br>3 = Fully unconstrain array references<br>4 = Terminate override of array constraintment attributes and resume use of the attributes specified in the program template |
| 2                        | String constraintment attribute<br>Allowed values for operand 2:<br>1 = Constrain string references<br>2 = Do not constrain string references<br>3 = Terminate override of string constraintment attribute and resume use of the attribute specified in the program template   |
| 3                        | Suppress binary size exception attribute<br>Allowed values for operand 2:<br>1 = Suppress binary size exceptions<br>2 = Do not suppress binary size exceptions<br>3 = Terminate override of suppression of binary size exception attribute and resume use of the attribute specified in the program template         |



4 Suppress decimal data exception attribute

Allowed values for operand 2:

1 = Suppress decimal data exceptions

2 = Do not suppress decimal data exceptions

3 = Terminate override of suppression of decimal data exception attribute and resume use of the attribute specified in the program template

5 Copy Bytes with Pointers (CPYBWP) alignment data check attribute

Allowed values for operand 2:

1 = Constrain CPYBWP to require like alignment of operands (default)

2 = Do not constrain CPYBWP to require like alignment of operands

6 Compare Pointer for Space Addressability (CMPSPAD) null pointer tolerance attribute

Allowed values for operand 2:

1 = Signal pointer does not exist exceptions for operands 1 and 2 (default)

2 = Do not signal pointer does not exist exceptions for operands 1 and 2

---

## Chapter 11. Independent Index Instructions

This chapter describes the instructions used for indexes. These instructions are in alphabetic order. For an alphabetic summary of all the instructions, see Appendix A, "Instruction Summary."

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| Create Independent Index (CRTINX)                   | 11-3  |
| Destroy Independent Index (DESINX)                  | 11-10 |
| Find Independent Index Entry (FNDINXEN)             | 11-12 |
| Insert Independent Index Entry (INSINXEN)           | 11-16 |
| Materialize Independent Index Attributes (MATINXAT) | 11-19 |
| Modify Independent Index (MODINX)                   | 11-23 |
| Remove Independent Index Entry (RMVINXEN)           | 11-26 |



## Create Independent Index (CRTINX)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2                  |
|---------------|-----------|----------------------------|
| 0446          | Index     | Index description template |

*Operand 1:* System pointer.

*Operand 2:* Space pointer.

### ILE access

```
CRTINX (
  var index          : system pointer;
  description_template : space pointer
)
```

**Description:** This instruction creates an independent index based on the index template specified by operand 2 and returns addressability to the index in a system pointer stored in the addressing object specified by operand 1.

The format of the index description template described by operand 2 is as follows (must be aligned on a 16-byte multiple):

- Template size specification
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Char(8)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)\*
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)\*
- Object identification Char(32)
  - Object type Char(1)\*
  - Object subtype Char(1)
  - Object name Char(30)
- Object creation options Char(4)
  - Existence attributes Bit 0
    - 0 = Temporary
    - 1 = Permanent
  - Space attribute Bit 1
    - 0 = Fixed-length
    - 1 = Variable-length
  - Initial context Bit 2
    - 0 = Do not insert addressability in context
    - 1 = Insert addressability in context
  - Access group Bit 3
    - 0 = Do not create as member of access group
    - 1 = Create as member of access group
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 4-12
  - Initialize space Bit 13
    - 0 = Initialize

- 1 = Do not initialize
- Reserved (binary 0) Bits 14-31
- Recovery options Char(4)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(2)
  - ASP number Char(2)
- Size of space Bin(4)
- Initial value of space Char(1)
- Performance class Char(4)
  - Space alignment Bit 0
    - 0 = The space associated with the object is allocated to allow proper alignment of pointers at 16-byte alignments within the space. If no space is specified for the object, 0 must be specified for the performance class.
    - 1 = The space associated with the object is allocated to allow proper alignment of pointers at 16-byte alignments within the space as well as to allow proper alignment of input/output buffers at 512-byte alignments within the the space.
- Reserved (binary 0) Bits 1-4
- Main storage pool selection Bit 5
  - 0 = Process default main storage pool is used for object.
  - 1 = Machine default main storage pool is used for object.
- Reserved (binary 0) Bit 6
- Block transfer on implicit access state modification Bit 7
  - 0 = Transfer the minimum storage transfer size for this object. This value is 1 storage unit.
  - 1 = Transfer the machine default storage transfer size. This value is 8 storage units.
- Reserved (binary 0) Bits 8-31
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(3)
- Extension offset Bin(4)
- Context System pointer
- Access group System pointer
- Index attributes Char(1)
  - Entry length attribute Bit 0
    - 0 = Fixed-length entries
    - 1 = Variable-length entries
  - Immediate update Bit 1
    - 0 = No immediate update
    - 1 = Immediate update
  - Key insertion Bit 2
    - 0 = No insertion by key
    - 1 = Insertion by key
  - Entry format Bit 3
    - 0 = Scalar data only
    - 1 = Both pointers and scalar data
  - Optimized processing mode Bit 4

- 0 = Optimize for random references
- 1 = Optimize for sequential references

— Maximum entry length

Bit 5

- 0 = Maximum entry length is 120 bytes
- 1 = Maximum entry length is 2000 bytes

— Reserved (binary 0)

Bits 6-7

- Argument length
- Key length

Bin(2)

Bin(2)

**Note:** This instruction ignores the values associated with the entries annotated with an asterisk (\*).

The template identified by operand 2 must be 16-byte aligned.

The template extension is located by the **extension offset** field. The template extension must be 16-byte aligned in the space. The following is the format of the template extension:

- Reserved (binary 0) Char(20)
- Domain assigned to the object Char(2)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(42)

If the created object is permanent, it is owned by the user profile governing process execution. The owning user profile is implicitly assigned all private authority states for the object. The storage occupied by the created object is charged to this owning user profile. If the created object is temporary, there is no owning user profile, and all authority states are assigned as public. Storage occupied by the created context is charged to the creating process.

The **object identification** specifies the symbolic name that identifies the space within the machine. An **object type** of hex 0E is implicitly supplied by the machine. The *object identification* is used to identify the object on materialize instructions as well as to locate the object in a context that addresses the object.

The **existence attribute** specifies that the index is to be created as a *permanent* or a *temporary* object. A temporary index, if not explicitly destroyed by the user, is implicitly destroyed by the machine when machine processing is terminated.

A space may be associated with the created object. The space may be *fixed* or *variable* in size, as specified by the **space attribute** field. The initial allocation is as specified in the **size of space** field. The machine allocates a space of at least the size specified. The actual size allocated is dependent on an algorithm defined by a specific implementation.

If the **initial context** creation attribute field indicates that *addressability is to be inserted* in a context, the **context** field must be a system pointer that identifies a context where addressability to the newly created object is to be placed. If the *initial context* indicates that *addressability is not to be placed in a context*, the **context** field is ignored.

If the **access group** creation attribute field indicates that the object *is to be created in an access group*, the **access group** field must be a system pointer that identifies an access group in which the object is to be created. The *existence attribute* of the object must be identical to the *existence attribute* of the access group. If the object *is not to be created in the access group*, the **access group** field is ignored.

The **initialize space** creation option controls whether or not the space is to be initialized. When *initialize* is specified, each byte of the space is initialized to a value specified by the **initial value of space** field. Additionally, when the space is extended in size, this byte value is also used to initialize the new allocation. When *do not initialize* is specified, the *initial value of space* field is ignored and the initial value of the bytes of the space are unpredictable.

When *do not initialize* is specified for a space, internal machine algorithms do ensure that any storage resources last used for allocations to another object which are reused to satisfy allocations for the space are reset to a machine default value to avoid possible access of data which may have been stored in the other object. To the contrary, reuse of storage areas previously used by the space object are not reset, thereby exposing subsequent reallocations of those storage areas within the space to access of the data which was previously stored within them.

The **ASP number** attribute specifies the ASP number of the ASP on which the unit is to be allocated. A value of 0 indicates an *ASP number* is not specified and results in the default of allocating the object in the system ASP. Allocation on the system ASP can only be done implicitly by not specifying an *ASP number*. The only nonzero values allowed are 2 through 16 which provide for explicit allocation of objects on user ASPs. The ASP number must specify an existing ASP. The *ASP number* attribute may only be specified for creation of a permanent object. The *ASP number* attribute of an object can be materialized, but cannot be modified.

Invalid specification of the ASP number attribute results in the signaling of the *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception.

The *preferred unit number* attribute which can be specified in the *performance class* field at object creation may not be specified in conjunction with specification of the *ASP number* attribute.

The **performance class** parameter provides information allowing the machine to more effectively manage the object considering the overall performance objectives of operations involving the index.

If the **entry length** attribute field specifies *fixed-length entries*, the entry length of every index entry is established at creation by the value in the **argument length** field of the index description template. If the *entry length* attribute field specifies *variable-length entries*, then entries will be variable-length (the length of each entry is supplied when the entry is inserted), and the *argument length* field is ignored.

If the **immediate update** field specifies that an *immediate update* should occur, then every update to the index will be written to auxiliary storage after every insert or remove operation.

If the **key insertion** field specifies *insertion by key*, then the **key length** field must be specified. This allows the specification of a portion of the argument (the key), which may be manipulated in either of the following ways in the Insert Index Entry instruction:

- The insert will not take place if the key portion of the argument is already in the index.
- The insert will cause the nonkey portion of the argument to be replaced if the key is already in the index.

The **entry format** field designates the index entries as containing *both pointers and scalar data* or *scalar data only*. The *both pointers and scalar data* field can be used only for indexes with fixed-length entries. If the index is created to contain both pointers and data, then

- Entries to be inserted must be 16-byte aligned.
- Each entry retrieved by the Find Independent Index Entry instruction or the Remove Independent Index Entry is 16-byte aligned.
- Pointers are allowed in both the key and nonkey portions of an index entry.
- Pointers need not be at the same location in every index entry.
- Pointers inserted into the index remain unchanged. No resolution is performed before insertion.

If the index is created to contain *scalar data only*, then:

- Entries to be inserted need not be aligned.
- Entries returned by the Find Independent Index Entry instruction or the Remove Independent Index Entry instruction are not aligned.

- Any pointers inserted into the index will be invalidated.

The **optimized processing mode** index attribute field is used to designate whether the index should be created and maintained in a manner that optimizes performance for either *random* or *sequential* operations.

If the **maximum entry length** attribute field specifies that the maximum entry length is 2000 bytes, then the maximum length allowed for independent index entries will be 2000 bytes. Otherwise, the maximum entry length allowed will be 120 bytes.

The **key length** field specifies the length of the key for the entries that are inserted into the index. The **argument length** specifies the length of the entries when *fixed length* entries are used.

The *key length* must have a value less than or equal to the *argument length* whether specified during creation (for fixed-length entries) or during insertion (for variable length). The *key length* is not used if the *key insertion field* specifies *no insertion by key*.

The **extension offset** specifies the byte offset from the beginning of the operand 2 template to the beginning of the template extension. An offset value of zero specifies that the template extension is not provided. A negative offset value is invalid. A non-zero offset must be a multiple of 16 (to cause 16 byte alignment of the extension). Except for these restrictions, the offset value is not verified for correctness relative to the location of other portions of the create template.

The **domain assigned** field in the template extension allows the user of this instruction to override the domain for this object that would otherwise be chosen by the machine. Valid values for this field are:

| Domain field | Domain assigned to the object             |
|--------------|---|
| Hex 0000     | The domain will be chosen by the machine. |
| Hex 0001     | The domain will be 'Common User'.         |
| Hex 8000     | The domain will be 'Common System'.       |

Any value specified for the *domain assigned* field other than those listed above will result in a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception being signalled.

**Limitations:** The following are limits that apply to the functions performed by this instruction.

The size of the object specific portion of the object is limited to a maximum of 4 gigabytes. This size is dependent upon the amount of storage needed for the number and size of index entries and excludes the size of the associated space, if any.

The size of the associated space for this object is limited to a maximum of 16MB-32 bytes.

### Authorization Required

- Insert
  - Context identified by operand 2
  - User profile of object owner
- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution



**Lock Enforcement**

- Modify
  - Access group identified by operand 2
  - User profile of object owner
  - Context identified by operand 2
- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

**Exceptions**

| Exception  | Operands |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 02 Access group  |          |   |       |
| 01 object ineligible for access group                      |          | X |       |
| 02 object exceeds available space                          |          | X |       |
| 06 Addressing  |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation                              | X        | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment                                      | X        | X |       |
| 03 range   | X        | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid                        | X        | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                                      |          |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation                           | X        | X |       |
| 0A Authorization   |          |   |       |
| 01 unauthorized for operation                              |          | X |       |
| 0E Context   |          |   |       |
| 01 duplicate object identification                         |          | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                                      |          |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state                              | X        | X | X     |
| 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object |          |   | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage                            | X        | X | X     |
| 1A Lock state  |          |   |       |
| 01 invalid lock state                                      |          | X |       |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception                             |          |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded                          |          |   | X     |
| 04 object storage limit exceeded                           |          | X |       |
| 09 auxiliary storage pool number invalid                   |          | X |       |
| 20 Machine support   |          |   |       |
| 02 machine check   |          |   | X     |
| 03 function check  |          |   | X     |
| 22 Object access   |          |   |       |
| 01 object not found  | X        | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 pointer addressing invalid object                         |          | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          | X |       |
| 36        | Space management   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid                                    |          | X |       |

## Destroy Independent Index (DESINX)

**Op Code (Hex)**      **Operand 1**  
0451                      Index

*Operand 1:* System pointer.

### ILE access

```
DESINX (
  var index : system pointer
)
```

**Description:** A previously created index identified by operand 1 is destroyed, and addressability to the object is removed from any context in which addressability exists. The system pointer identified by operand 1 is not modified by the instruction, and a subsequent reference to the destroyed index through the pointer results in an object destroyed exception.

### Authorization Required

- Object control
  - Operand 1
- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution
- Object control
  - Operand 1
- Modify
  - Access group which contains operand 1
  - Context which addresses operand 1
  - User profile which owns index

### Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operand |       |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|---------|-------|
|           |                                     | 1       | Other |
| 06        | Addressing                          |         |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation       | X       |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment               | X       |       |
|           | 03 range                            | X       |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid | X       |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  |         |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation    | X       |       |

| Exception |  | Operand |       |
|-----------|--|---------|-------|
|           |  | 1       | Other |
| 0A        | Authorization  |         |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                                | X       |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |         |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                                | X       | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |         | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              | X       | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |         |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  | X       |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |         |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |         | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |         |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |         | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |         | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |         |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X       |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X       |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X       |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |         | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |         | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |         |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X       |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X       |       |
|           | 03 pointer addressing invalid object                         | X       |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |         |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |         | X     |
| 36        | Space management   |         |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |         | X     |

## Find Independent Index Entry (FNDINXEN)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3   | Operand 4       |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|-----------------|
| 0494          | Receiver  | Index     | Option list | Search argument |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* System pointer.

*Operand 3:* Space pointer.

*Operand 4:* Space pointer.

## ILE access

```

FNDINXEN (
    receiver      : space pointer;
    var index     : system pointer;
    option_list   : space pointer;
    search_argument : space pointer
)

```

**Warning:** The following information is subject to change from release to release. Use it with caution and be prepared to adjust for changes with each new release.

**Description:** This instruction searches the independent index identified by operand 2 according to the search criteria specified in the option list (operand 3) and the search argument (operand 4); then it returns the desired entry or entries in the receiver field (operand 1). The maximum size of the independent index entry is either 120 bytes or 2000 bytes depending on how the maximum entry length attribute field was specified when the index was created.

The **option list** is a variable-length area that identifies the type of search to be performed, the length of the search argument(s), the number of resultant arguments to be returned, the lengths of the entries returned, and the offsets to the entries within the receiver identified by the operand 1 space pointer. The *option list* has the following format:

- Rule option Char(2)
- Argument length UBin(2)
- Argument offset Bin(2)
- Occurrence count Bin(2)
- Return count Bin(2)

Each entry that is returned to the receiver operand contains the following:

- Entry length UBin(2)
- Offset Bin(2)

The **rule option** identifies the type of search to be performed and has the following meaning:

| Search Type | Value (Hex) | Meaning   |
|-------------|-------------|---|
| =           | 0001        | Find equal occurrences of operand 4.              |
| >           | 0002        | Find occurrences that are greater than operand 4. |

| Search Type | Value (Hex) | Meaning  |
|-------------|-------------|--|
| <           | 0003        | Find occurrences that are less than operand 4.                                 |
| >           | 0004        | Find occurrences that are greater than or equal to operand 4.                  |
| ≤           | 0005        | Find occurrences that are less than or equal to operand 4.                     |
| First       | 0006        | Find the first index entry or entries.   |
| Last        | 0007        | Find the last index entry or entries.  |
| Between     | 0008        | Find all entries between the two arguments specified by operand 4 (inclusive). |

The *rule option* to find *between* requires that operand 4 be a 2-element array in which element 1 is the starting argument and element 2 is the ending argument. All arguments between (and including) the starting and ending arguments are returned, but the *occurrence count* specified is not exceeded.

If the index was created to contain *both pointers and scalar data*, then the search argument must be 16-byte aligned. For the option to find between limits, both search arguments must be 16-byte aligned.

The *rule option* and the *argument length* determine the search criteria used for the index search. The *argument length* must be greater than or equal to one. The *argument length* for fixed-length entries must be less than or equal to the *argument length* specified when the index is created.

The **argument length** field specifies the length of the search argument (operand 4) to be used for the index search. When the *rule option* equals *first* or *last*, the *argument length* field is ignored. For the *rule option* to find *between*, the *argument length* field specifies the lengths of one array element. The lengths of the array elements must be equal.

The **argument offset** is the offset of the second search argument from the beginning of the entire argument field (operand 4). The *argument offset* field is ignored unless the *rule option* is find *between*.

The **occurrence count** specifies the maximum number of index entries that satisfy the search criteria to be returned. This field is limited to a maximum value of 4095. If this value is exceeded, a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception is signaled.

The **return count** specifies the number of index entries satisfying the search criteria that were returned in the receiver (operand 1). If this field is 0, no index arguments satisfied the search criteria.

There are two fields in the option list for each entry returned in the receiver (operand 1). The **entry length** is the length of the entry retrieved from the index. The **offset** has the following meaning:

- For the first entry, the *offset* is the number of bytes from the beginning of the receiver (operand 1) to the first byte of the first entry.
- For any succeeding entry, the *offset* is the number of bytes from the beginning of the immediately preceding entry to the first byte of the entry returned.

The entries that are retrieved as a result of the Find Independent Index Entry instruction are always returned starting with the entry that is closest to or equal to the search argument and then proceeding away from the search argument. For example, a search that is for < (less than) or ≤ (less than or equal to) returns the entries in order of decreasing value.

All the entries that satisfy the search criteria (up to the occurrence count) are returned in the space starting at the location designated by the operand 1 space pointer.

If the index was created to contain *both pointers and scalar data*, then each returned entry is 16-byte aligned.

If the index was created to contain *scalar data only*, then returned entries are contiguous.

Every entry retrieved causes the count of the find operations to be incremented by 1. The current value of this count is available through the Materialize Index Attributes instruction.

### Authorization Required

- Retrieve
  - Operand 2
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Operand 2
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Exceptions

| Exception  | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 06 Addressing  |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation                              | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment                                      | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 range   | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid                        | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                                      |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation                           | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 0A Authorization   |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 unauthorized for operation                              |          | X |   |   |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                                      |          |   |   |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state                              | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage                            | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 1A Lock state  |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 invalid lock state                                      |          | X |   |   |       |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception                             |          |   |   |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded                          |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support   |          |   |   |   |       |
| 02 machine check   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 03 function check  |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22 Object access   |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 object not found  | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 object destroyed  | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 object suspended  | X        | X | X | X |       |

| Exception  | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 08 object compressed   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification                                     |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 pointer addressing invalid object                         |          | X |   |   |       |
| 2E Resource control limit                                    |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 36 Space management  |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 38 Template specification                                    |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 template value invalid                                    |          |   | X |   |       |
| 02 template size invalid                                     |          |   | X |   |       |



## Insert Independent Index Entry (INSINXEN)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3   |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| 04A3          | Index     | Argument  | Option list |

*Operand 1:* System pointer.

*Operand 2:* Space pointer.

*Operand 3:* Space pointer.

### ILE access

```
INSINXEN (
  var index      : system pointer;
  argument       : space pointer;
  option_list    : space pointer
)
```

**Warning:** The following information is subject to change from release to release. Use it with caution and be prepared to adjust for changes with each new release.

**Description:** This instruction inserts one or more new entries into the independent index identified by operand 1 according to the criteria specified in the option list (operand 3). Each entry is inserted into the index at the appropriate location based on the binary value of the argument. No other collating sequence is supported. The maximum length allowed for the independent index entry is either 120 bytes or 2000 bytes depending on how the *maximum entry length* attribute field was specified when the index was created.

The argument (operand 2) and the option list (operand 3) have the same format as the argument and option list for the Find Independent Index Entry instruction.

The **rule option** identifies the type of insert to be performed and has the following meaning:

| Insert Type                | Value (Hex) | Meaning  | Authorization |
|----------------------------|-------------|--|---------------|
| Insert                     | 0001        | Insert unique argument   | Insert        |
| Insert with replacement    | 0002        | Insert argument, replacing the nonkey portion if the key is already in the index | Update        |
| Insert without replacement | 0003        | Insert argument only if the key is not already in the index                      | Insert        |

The *insert rule option* is valid only for indexes not containing keys. The *insert with replacement rule option* and the *insert without replacement rule option* are valid for indexes containing either fixed- or variable-length entries with keys. The *duplicate key argument* (hex 1801) exception is signaled for the following conditions:

- If the *rule option* is *insert* and the argument to be inserted (operand 2) is already in the index
- If the *rule option* is *insert without replacement* and the key portion of the argument to be inserted (operand 2) is already in the index

The *argument length* and *argument offset* fields are ignored, however, the *entry length* and *offset* fields must be entered for every entry which is to be inserted into the index.

The **occurrence count** specifies the number of arguments to be inserted. This field is limited to a maximum value of 4095. If this value is exceeded, a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception is signaled.

If the index was created to contain *both pointers and data*, then each entry to be inserted must be 16-byte aligned. If the index was created to contain *variable-length* entries, then the *entry length* and *offset fields* must be specified in the option list for each argument in the space identified by operand 2. The *entry length* is the length of the entry to be inserted.

If the index was created to contain *both pointer and scalar data*, the *offset* field in the option list must be supplied for each entry to be inserted. The *offset* is the number of bytes from the beginning of the previous entry to the beginning of the entry to be inserted. For the first entry, this is the offset from the start of the space identified by operand 2.

The *return count* specifies the number of entries inserted into the index. If the index was created to contain *scalar data only*, then any pointers inserted are invalidated.

### Authorization Required

- Insert or update depending on insert type
  - Operand 1
- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution
- Modify
  - Operand 1

### Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 02        | Access group                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object exceeds available space   | X        |   |   |       |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 range                            | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation       | X        |   |   |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state       | X        | X | X | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              | X        | X | X | X     |
| 18        | Independent index  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 duplicate key argument in index                           | X        |   |   |       |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  | X        |   |   |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 04 object storage limit exceeded                             | X        |   |   |       |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 pointer addressing invalid object                         | X        |   |   |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       | X        |   |   |       |
| 36        | Space management   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid                                    |          |   | X |       |
|           | 02 template size invalid                                     |          |   | X |       |

## Materialize Independent Index Attributes (MATINXAT)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|
| 0462          | Receiver  | Index     |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* System pointer.

### ILE access

```
MATINXAT (
    receiver : space pointer;
    var index : system pointer
)
```

**Warning:** The following information is subject to change from release to release. Use it with caution and be prepared to adjust for changes with each new release.

**Description:** The instruction materializes the creation attributes and current operational statistics of the independent index identified by operand 2 into the space identified by operand 1. The format of the attributes materialized is as follows:

- Materialization size specification
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Char(8)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Object identification Char(32)
  - Object type Char(1)
  - Object subtype Char(1)
  - Object name Char(30)
- Object creation options Char(4)
  - Existence attributes Bit 0
    - 0 = Temporary
    - 1 = Reserved
  - Space attribute Bit 1
    - 0 = Fixed-length
    - 1 = Variable-length
  - Context Bit 2
    - 0 = Addressability not in context
    - 1 = Addressability in context
  - Access group Bit 3
    - 0 = Not a member of access group
    - 1 = Member of access group
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 4-12
  - Initialize space Bit 13
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 14-31

- Reserved (binary 0) Char(4)
- Size of space Bin(4)
- Initial value of space Char(1)
- Performance class Char(4)
- Space alignment Bit 0
  - 0 = The space associated with the object is allocated to allow proper alignment of pointers at 16-byte alignments within the space. If no space is specified for the object, this value must be specified for the performance class.
  - 1 = The space associated with the object is allocated to allow proper alignment of pointers at 16-byte alignments within the space as well as to allow proper alignment of input/output buffers at 512-byte alignments within the the space.
- Reserved (binary 0) Bits 1-4
- Main storage pool selection Bit 5
  - 0 = Process default main storage pool used for object.
  - 1 = Machine default main storage pool used for object.
- Reserved (binary 0) Bit 6
- Block transfer on implicit access state modification Bit 7
  - 0 = The minimum storage transfer size for this object is a value of 1 storage unit.
  - 1 = The machine default storage transfer size for this object is a value of 8 storage units.
- Reserved (binary 0) Bits 8-31
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(7)
- Context System pointer
- Access group System pointer
- Index attributes Char(1)
- Argument length Bin(2)
- Key length Bin(2)
- Index statistics Char(12)
  - Entries inserted UBin(4)
  - Entries removed UBin(4)
  - Find operations UBin(4)

The first 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes provided** that may be used by the instruction. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than 8 causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception to be signaled.

The second 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes available** to be materialized. The instruction materializes as many bytes as can be contained in the area specified as the receiver. If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested, then the excess bytes are unchanged.

No exceptions other than the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception described previously are signaled in the event that the receiver contains insufficient area for the materialization.

The template identified by the operand 1 space pointer must be 16-byte aligned. Values in the template remain the same as the values specified at the creation of the independent index except that the *object identification*, *context*, and *size of the associated space* contain current values.

If the *entry length* is *fixed*, then the *argument length* is the value supplied in the template when the index was created. If the *entry length* is *variable*, then the *argument length* field is equal to the length of the longest entry that has ever been inserted into the index.

The number of arguments in the index equals the number of **entries inserted** minus **entries removed**. The value of the **find operations** field is initialized to 0 each time the index is materialized. The value may not be correct after an abnormal system termination.

## Authorization Required

- Operational
  - Operand 2
- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

## Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Operand 2
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

## Exceptions

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment                                      | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 range   | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                        | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                           | X        | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                              |          | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                              | X        | X | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object |          |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                            | X        | X | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state                                      |          | X |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                          |          |   | X     |

## Materialize Independent Index Attributes (MATINXAT)

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 pointer addressing invalid object                         |          | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid                                    |          | X |       |
|           | 03 materialization length exception                          | X        |   |       |

## Modify Independent Index (MODINX)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1         | Operand 2           |
|---------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| 0452          | Independent index | Modification option |

Operand 1: System pointer.

Operand 2: Character (4) scalar.

### ILE access

```
MODINX (
  var index           : system pointer;
  var modification_option : aggregate
)
```

**Warning:** The following information is subject to change from release to release. Use it with caution and be prepared to adjust for changes with each new release.

**Description:** This instruction modifies the selected attributes of the independent index specified by operand 1 to have the values specified in operand 2. The modification options specified in operand 2 have the following format:

- Modification selection Char(1)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 0
  - Immediate update Bit 1
    - 0 = Do not change immediate update attribute
    - 1 = Change immediate update attribute
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 2-7
- New attribute value Char(1)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 0
  - Immediate update Bit 1
    - 0 = No immediate update
    - 1 = Immediate update
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 2-7
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(2)

If the **modification selection immediate update** is 0, then the *immediate update* attribute is not changed. If the modification selection *immediate update* bit is 1, the *immediate update* attribute is changed to the **new immediate update attribute** value.

If the *immediate update* attribute of the index was previously set to *no immediate update*, and it is being modified to *immediate update*, then the index is ensured before the attribute is modified.

### Authorization Required

- Object management
  - Operand 1
- Retrieve



- Contexts referenced for address resolution

## Lock Enforcement

- Modify
  - Operand 1
- Materialization
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

## Exceptions

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                                | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 range   | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                          | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                             | X        | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                                | X        |   |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage                                      | X        |   | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              |          |   | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  | X        |   |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 pointer address invalid object                            | X        |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                 | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 scalar attributes invalid           |          | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |

## Remove Independent Index Entry (RMVINXEN)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3   | Operand 4 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|-----------|
| 0484          | Receiver  | Index     | Option list | Argument  |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer or null.

*Operand 2:* System pointer.

*Operand 3:* Space pointer.

*Operand 4:* Space pointer.

### ILE access

```
RMVINXEN (
  receiver      : space pointer; OR
                null operand;
  var index     : system pointer;
  option_list   : space pointer;
  argument      : space pointer
)
```

**Warning:** The following information is subject to change from release to release. Use it with caution and be prepared to adjust for changes with each new release.

**Description:** The index entries identified by operands 3 and 4 are removed from the independent index identified by operand 2 and optionally returned in the receiver specified by operand 1. The maximum length of an independent index entry is either 120 bytes or 2000 bytes depending on how the *maximum entry length* attribute field was specified when the index was created.

The option list (operand 3) and the argument (operand 4) have the same format and meaning as the option list and argument for the Find Independent Index Entry instruction. The return count designates the number of index entries that were removed from the index.

The arguments removed are returned in the receiver field if a space pointer is specified for operand 1. If operand 1 is null, the entries removed from the index are not returned. If neither space pointer nor null is specified for operand 1, the entries are returned in the same way that entries are returned for the Find Independent Index Entry instruction.

Every entry removed causes the *occurrence count* to be incremented by 1. The current value of this count is available through the Materialize Index Attributes instruction. The *occurrence count* field must be less than 4096.

### Authorization Required

- Delete
  - Operand 2
- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

**Lock Enforcement**

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution
- Modify
  - Operand 2

**Exceptions**

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 02        | Access group   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object exceeds available space                            |          | X |   |   |       |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                                | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment  | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 03 range   | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                          | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                             | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                                |          | X |   |   |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                                | X        | X | X | X | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  |          | X |   |   | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 04 object storage limit exceeded                             |          | X |   |   |       |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X | X | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 03 pointer addressing invalid object   |          | X |   |   |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          | X |   |   |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                 |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid              |          |   | X |   |       |
|           | 02 template size invalid               |          |   | X |   |       |

---

## Chapter 12. Queue Management Instructions

This chapter describes the instructions used for queue management. These instructions are in alphabetic order. For an alphabetic summary of all the instructions, see Appendix A, "Instruction Summary."

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| Dequeue (DEQ) .....                         | 12-3  |
| Enqueue (ENQ) .....                         | 12-9  |
| Materialize Queue Attributes (MATQAT) ..... | 12-12 |
| Materialize Queue Messages (MATQMSG) .....  | 12-16 |



**Dequeue (DEQ)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br><b>DEQ</b><br>1033 | Extender             | Operand 1<br>Message<br>prefix | Operand 2<br>Message text | Operand 3<br>Queue or<br>queue tem-<br>plate | Operand 4-5       |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------|--|-------------------|
| <b>DEQB</b><br>1C33                 | Branch options       | Message<br>prefix              | Message text              | Queue or<br>queue tem-<br>plate              | Branch targets    |
| <b>DEQI</b><br>1833                 | Indicator<br>options | Message<br>prefix              | Message text              | Queue or<br>queue tem-<br>plate              | Indicator targets |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar (fixed-length).

*Operand 2:* Space pointer.

*Operand 3:* System pointer or space pointer data object.

*Operand 4-5:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**ILE access**

```
DEQ (
  var message_prefix : aggregate;
      message_text   : space pointer;
  var queue          : system pointer;
) : signed binary /* return_code */
```

If a message is not available, this instruction will return immediately with the return code set as follows:

| Return_Code | Meaning               |
|-------------|-----------------------|
| 1           | Message Dequeued.     |
| 0           | Message Not Dequeued. |

OR

```
DEQWAIT (
  var msg_prefix : aggregate;
      msg_text   : space pointer;
  var queue      : system pointer
)
```

If a message is not available, this instruction will wait until a message is available.



**Description:** The instruction retrieves a queue message based on the *queue type* (FIFO, LIFO, or keyed) specified during the queue's creation. If the queue was created with the *keyed* option, messages can be retrieved by any of the following relationships between an enqueued *message key* and a *selection key* specified in operand 1 of the Dequeue instruction:  $\neq$ ,  $>$ ,  $<$ ,  $\leq$ , and  $\geq$ . If the queue was created with either the *LIFO* or *FIFO* attribute, then only the next message can be retrieved from the queue.

If a message is not found that satisfies the dequeue selection criterion and the branch or options are not specified, the process waits until a message arrives to satisfy the dequeue or until the *dequeue wait time-out* expires. If branch or indicator options are specified, the process is not placed in the dequeue wait state and either the control flow is altered according to the branch options, or indicator values are set based on the presence or absence of a message to be dequeued.

If operand 3 is a system pointer, the message is dequeued from the queue specified by operand 3. If operand 3 is a space pointer, the message is dequeued from the queue which is specified in the template pointed to by the space pointer. The format of this template is given later in this section. The criteria for message selection are given in the message prefix specified by operand 1. The message text is returned in the space specified by operand 2, and the message prefix is returned in the scalar specified by operand 1. Improper alignment results in an exception being signaled. The format of the message prefix is as follows:

- Timestamp of enqueue of message Char(8)\*\*
- Dequeue wait time-out value Char(8)\*  
(ignored if branch options specified)
- Size of message dequeued Bin(4)\*\*  
(The maximum allowable size of a queue message is 65 000 bytes.)
- Access state modification option indicator and message selection criteria Char(1)\*
  - Access state modification option when entering Dequeue wait Bit 0\*
    - 0 = Access state is not modified
    - 1 = Access state is modified
  - Access state modification option when leaving Dequeue wait Bit 1\*
    - 0 = Access state is not modified
    - 1 = Access state is modified
  - Multiprogramming level option Bit 2\*
    - 0 = Leave current MPL set at Dequeue wait
    - 1 = Remain in current MPL set at Dequeue wait
  - Time-out option Bit 3\*
    - 0 = Wait for specified time, then signal time-out exception
    - 1 = Wait indefinitely
  - Actual key to input key relationship Bits 4-7\*  
(for keyed queue)
    - 0010: Greater than
    - 0100: Less than
    - 0110: Not equal
    - 1000: Equal
    - 1010: Greater than or equal
    - 1100: Less than or equal

- Search key (ignored for FIFO/LIFO queues but must be present for FIFO/LIFO queues with nonzero key length values) Char(key length)\*
- Message key Char(key length)\*\*

**Note:** Fields shown here with one asterisk indicate input to the instruction, and fields shown here with two asterisks are returned by the machine.

A nonzero **dequeue wait time-out** value overrides any *dequeue wait time-out* value specified as the current process attribute. A zero *dequeue wait time-out* value causes the wait time-out value to be taken from the current process attribute. If all wait time-out values are 0 (from the Dequeue instruction and the current process attribute), an *immediate wait time-out* (hex 3A01) exception is signaled. The bits in this field are numbered from 0 to 63, and bit 41 is defined as 1024 microseconds. The maximum *dequeue wait time-out* interval allowed is a value equal to  $(2^{48} - 1)$  microseconds. Any value that indicates more time than the maximum wait time-out causes the maximum wait time-out to be used.

The **size of the message dequeued** is returned in the message prefix. The *size of the message dequeued* can be less than or equal to the *maximum size of message* specified when the queue was created. When dequeuing from a keyed queue, the length of the *search key* field and the length of the *message key* field (in the message key prefix specified in operand 1) are determined implicitly by the attributes of the queue being accessed. If the message text on the queue contains pointers, the message text operand must be 16-byte aligned.

The **access state** of the process access group is modified when a Dequeue instruction results in a wait and the following conditions exist:

- The process' *instruction wait initiation access state* control attribute specifies allow access state modification
- The *dequeue access state modification* option specifies *modify access state*
- The *multiprogramming level option* specifies *leave MPL* set during wait.

The process will remain in the current MPL set for a maximum of two seconds when a Dequeue instruction results in a wait if the *multiprogramming level option* specifies *remain in current MPL set at Dequeue wait* and the *access state modification when entering Dequeue wait* option specifies *do not modify access state*. After two seconds, the process will automatically be removed from the current MPL set. The automatic removal does not change or affect the total wait time specified for the process by the *Dequeue wait time-out* value.

Operand 3 can be a system pointer or a space pointer. If it is a system pointer, this pointer will be addressing the queue from which the message is to be dequeued. If it is a space pointer, this pointer will be addressing a template which will contain the system pointer to the queue as well as the Dequeue template extension. The template is 32 bytes in length and must be aligned on a 16-byte boundary with the format as follows:

- Queue System pointer
- Dequeue template extension Char(16)
  - Extension Options Char(1)
    - Modify process event mask option Bit 0 \*
    - 0 = Do not modify process event mask
    - 1 = Modify process event mask
    - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 1-7
  - Extension Area Char(15)

|                               |           |
|-------------------------------|-----------|
| - New process event mask      | Bin(2) *  |
| - Previous process event mask | Bin(2) ** |
| - Reserved (binary 0)         | Char(11)  |

The previous process event mask is only returned when the modify process event mask option has been set to 1.

**Note:** Fields shown here with one asterisk indicate input to the instruction, and fields shown here with two asterisks are returned by the machine.

The **modify process event mask** option controls the state of the event mask in the process executing this instruction. If the *modify process event mask* field specified to *modify the process event mask*, the process event mask will be changed as specified by the **new process event mask** field. When the process event mask is changed, the current process event mask will be returned in the **previous process event mask** field.

If the system security level machine attribute is hex 40 or greater and the process is running in user state, then the *modify process event mask option* is not allowed and a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception is signalled.

If the *process event mask* is in the *masked* state, the machine does not schedule signaled event monitors in the process. The event monitors continue to be signaled by the machine or other processes. When the process is modified to the *unmasked* state, event handlers are scheduled to handle those events that occurred while the process was masked and those events occurring while in the unmasked state. The number of signals retained while the process is masked is specified by the attributes of the event monitor associated with the process.

The process is automatically masked by the machine when event handlers are invoked. If the process is unmasked in the event handler, other events can be handled if another enabled event monitor within that process is signaled. If the process is masked when it exits from the event handler, the machine explicitly unmask the process.

Valid masking values are:

0 Masked  
256 Unmasked

Other values are reserved and must not be specified. If any other values are specified, a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception is signalled.

Whether masking or unmasking the current process, the new mask takes effect upon completion of a satisfied dequeue.

#### **Resultant Conditions**

- Equal - message dequeued
- Not equal - message not dequeued

#### **Authorization Required**

- Retrieve
  - Operand 3
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

**Lock Enforcement**

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

**Exceptions**

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                                | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 range   | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                          | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                             | X        | X | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                                |          |   | X | X     |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                                | X        | X | X | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  |          | X | X |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        |   | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 pointer address invalid object                            | X        |   |   |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   |   | X     |

## Dequeue (DEQ)

### Exception

32     Scalar specification  
       03 scalar value invalid

36     Space management  
       01 space extension/truncation

3A     Wait time-out  
       01 dequeue

### Operands

1     2     3     Other

X

X

X

## Enqueue (ENQ)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2      | Operand 3    |
|---------------|-----------|----------------|--------------|
| 036B          | Queue     | Message prefix | Message text |

*Operand 1:* System pointer.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar.

*Operand 3:* Space pointer.

### ILE access

```
ENQ (
  var queue           : system pointer;
  var message_prefix : aggregate;
  message_text       : space pointer
)
```

**Description:** A message is enqueued according to the *queue type* attribute specified during the queue's creation.

If *keyed* sequence is specified, enqueued messages are sequenced in ascending binary collating order according to the key value. If a message to be enqueued has a key value equal to an existing enqueued key value, the message being added is enqueued following the existing message.

If the queue was defined with either *last in, first out (LIFO)* or *first in, first out (FIFO)* sequencing, then enqueued messages are ordered chronologically with the latest enqueued message being either first on the queue or last on the queue, respectively. A key can be provided and associated with messages enqueued in a LIFO or FIFO queue; however, the key does not establish a message's position in the queue. The key can contain pointers, but the pointers are not considered to be pointers when they are placed on the queue by an Enqueue instruction.

Operand 1 specifies the queue to which a message is to be enqueued. Operand 2 specifies the message prefix, and operand 3 specifies the message text.

The format of the message prefix is as follows:

- Size of message to be enqueued Bin(4)
- Enqueue key value (Ignored for FIFO/LIFO queues with key lengths equal to 0. Char(key length)

The **size of the message to be enqueued** is supplied to inform the machine of the number of bytes in the space that are to be considered message text. The size of the message is then considered the lesser of the *size of the message to be enqueued* attribute and the *maximum message size* specified on queue creation. The message text can contain pointers. When pointers are in message text, the operand 3 space pointer must be 16-byte aligned. Improper alignment will result in an exception being signaled.

If the enqueued message causes the number of messages to exceed the maximum number of messages attribute of the queue, one of the following occurs:

- If the queue is not extendable, the *queue message limit exceeded* (hex 2602) exception and the *queue message limit exceeded* (hex 0012,03,01) event are signaled. The message is not enqueued.

- If the queue is extendable, the queue is implicitly extended by the *extension value* attribute. The message is enqueued. No exception is signaled, but the *queue extended* (hex 0012,04,01) event is signaled.

The maximum allowable queue size, including all messages currently enqueued and the machine overhead, is 16 megabytes.

### Authorization Required

- Insert
  - Operand 1
- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Exceptions

| Exception  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing  |          |   |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation                              | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment                                      | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 range   | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid                        | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                                      |          |   |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation                           | X        | X | X |       |
| 0A Authorization   |          |   |   |       |
| 01 unauthorized for operation                              | X        |   |   | X     |
| 10 Damage encountered                                      |          |   |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state                              | X        | X | X | X     |
| 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object |          |   |   | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage                            | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1A Lock state  |          |   |   |       |
| 01 invalid lock state                                      | X        |   |   | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception                             |          |   |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded                          | X        |   |   | X     |
| 04 object storage limit exceeded                           | X        |   |   |       |
| 20 Machine support   |          |   |   |       |
| 02 machine check   |          |   |   | X     |
| 03 function check  |          |   |   | X     |
| 22 Object access   |          |   |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 pointer address invalid object                            | X        |   |   |       |
| 26        | Process management   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 queue message limit exceeded                              | X        |   |   |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   |   | X     |



## Materialize Queue Attributes (MATQAT)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|
| 0336          | Receiver  | Queue     |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* System pointer.

### ILE access

```

MATQAT (
    receiver : space pointer;
    var queue  : system pointer
)

```

**Description:** The attributes of the queue specified by operand 2 are materialized into the object specified by operand 1. The format of the materialized queue attributes must be aligned on a 16-byte multiple. The format is as follows:

- Materialization size specification
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Char(8)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Object identification Bin(4)
  - Object type Char(32)
  - Object subtype Char(1)
  - Object subtype Char(1)
  - Object name Char(30)
- Object creation options Char(4)
  - Existence attributes Bit 0
    - 0 = Temporary
    - 1 = Permanent
  - Space attribute Bit 1
    - 0 = Fixed-length
    - 1 = Variable-length
  - Initial context Bit 2
    - 0 = Addressability not in context
    - 1 = Addressability in context
  - Access group Bit 3
    - 0 = Not a member of access group
    - 1 = Member of access group
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 4-12
  - Initialize space Bit 13
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 14-31
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(4)
- Size of space Bin(4)

- Initial value of space Char(1)
- Performance class Char(4)
  - Space alignment Bit 0
    - 0 = The space associated with the object is allocated to allow proper alignment of pointers at 16-byte alignments within the space. If no space is specified for the object, this value must be specified for the performance class.
    - 1 = The space associated with the object is allocated to allow proper alignment of pointers at 16-byte alignments within the space as well as to allow proper alignment of input/output buffers at 512-byte alignments within the the space.
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 1-4
  - Main storage pool selection Bit 5
    - 0 = Process default main storage pool is used for object.
    - 1 = Machine default main storage pool is used for object.
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 6
  - Block transfer on implicit access state modification Bit 7
    - 0 = Transfer the minimum storage transfer size for this object. This value is 1 storage unit.
    - 1 = Transfer the machine default storage transfer size. This value is 8 storage units.
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 8-31
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(7)
- Context System pointer
- Access group System pointer
- Queue attributes Char(1)
  - Message content Bit 0
    - 0 = Contains scalar data only
    - 1 = Contains pointers and scalar data
  - Queue type Bits 1-2
    - 00 = Keyed
    - 01 = Last in, first out
    - 10 = First in, first out
  - Queue overflow action Bit 3
    - 0 = Signal exception
    - 1 = Extend queue
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 4-7
- Current maximum number of messages Bin(4)
- Current number of messages enqueued Bin(4)
- Extension value Bin(4)
- Key length Bin(2)
- Maximum size of message to be enqueued Bin(4)

The first 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes provided** for use by the instruction. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than 8 causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception.

The second 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes available** to be materialized. The instruction materializes as many bytes as can be contained in the area specified as the receiver. If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested, then the excess bytes are unchanged. No exceptions (other than the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception described previously) are signaled when the receiver contains insufficient area for the materialization.

See the Create Queue (CRTQ) instruction for a description of these fields.

### Authorization Required

- Operational
  - Operand 2
- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Operand 2
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Exceptions

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment                                      | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 range   | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                        | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                           | X        | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                              |          | X | X     |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                              | X        | X | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object |          |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                            | X        | X | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state                                      |          | X | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X |       |

| Exception  | Operands |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 02 object destroyed  | X        | X |       |
| 03 object suspended  | X        | X |       |
| 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   | X     |
| 08 object compressed   |          |   | X     |
| <b>24</b> Pointer specification                              |          |   |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X |       |
| 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X |       |
| 03 pointer address invalid object                            |          | X |       |
| <b>2E</b> Resource control limit                             |          |   |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   | X     |
| <b>36</b> Space management                                   |          |   |       |
| 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   | X     |
| <b>38</b> Template specification                             |          |   |       |
| 03 materialization length exception                          | X        |   |       |

## Materialize Queue Messages (MATQMSG)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3                  |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|----------------------------|
| 033B          | Receiver  | Queue     | Message selection template |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* System pointer.

*Operand 3:* Character(16) scalar (fixed length).

### ILE access

```

MATQMSG (
    receiver          : space pointer;
    var queue         : system pointer;
    var selection_template : aggregate
)

```

**Description:** This instruction materializes selected messages on a queue. One or more messages on the queue specified by operand 2 is selected according to information provided in operand 3 and materialized into operand 1. The number of messages materialized and the amount of key and message text data materialized for each message is governed by the message selection template.

Note that the list of messages on a queue is a dynamic attribute and may be changing on a continual basis. The materialization of messages provided by this instruction is just a picture of the status of the queue at the point of interrogation by this instruction. As such, the actual status of the queue may differ from that described in the materialization when subsequent instructions use the information in the template as a basis for operations against the queue.

Operand 1 specifies a space that is to receive the materialized attribute values.

Operand 2 is a system pointer identifying the queue from which the messages are to be materialized.

Operand 3 is a character (16) scalar specifying which messages are to be materialized.

The operand 1 space pointer must address a 16-byte boundary. The materialization template has the following format:

- Materialization size specification
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Char(8)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Materialization data Char(4)
  - Count of messages materialized Bin(4)
- Queue data Char(12)
  - Count of messages on the queue Bin(4)
  - Maximum message size Bin(4)
  - Key size Bin(4)
- Reserved Char(8)
- Message data (repeated for each message) Char(\*)

- Message attributes Char(16)
  - Message enqueue time Char(8)
  - Message length Bin(4)
  - Reserved Char(4)
- Message key Char(\*)
- Message text Char(\*)

The first 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes provided** for use by the instruction. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than 8 causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception to be signaled.

The second 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes available** to be materialized. The instruction materializes as many bytes as can be contained in the area specified as the receiver. If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested, then the excess bytes are unchanged. No exceptions are signaled in the event that the receiver contains insufficient area for the materialization, other than the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception described previously.

The **maximum message size** and **key size** are values specified when the queue was created. If the queue is not a keyed queue, the value materialized for the key size is zero.

The length of the message key and message text fields is determined by values supplied in operand 3, message selection data. If the length supplied in operand 3 exceeds the actual data length, the remaining space will be padded with binary zeros.

The message selection template identified by operand 3 must be at least 16 bytes and must be on a 16-byte boundary. The format of the message selection template is as follows:

- Message selection Char(2)
  - Type Bits 0-3
    - 0001 = All messages
    - 0010 = First
    - 0100 = Last
    - 1000 = Keyed
    - All other values are reserved
  - Key relationship (if needed) Bits 4-7
    - 0010 = Greater than
    - 0100 = Less than
    - 0110 = Not equal
    - 1000 = Equal
    - 1010 = Greater than or equal
    - 1100 = Less than or equal
    - All other values are reserved
  - Reserved Bits 8-15
- Lengths Char(8)
  - Number of key bytes to materialize Bin(4)
  - Number of message text bytes to materialize Bin(4)
- Reserved Char(6)
- Key (if needed) Char(\*)

The message selection type must not specify *keyed* if the queue was not created as a keyed queue.

Both of the fields specified under lengths must be zero or an integer multiple of 16. The maximum value allowed for the key length is 256. The maximum value allowed for the message text is 65536.

## Authorization Required

- Retrieve
  - Operand 2
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

## Lock Enforcement

- Materialization
  - Operand 2
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

## Exceptions

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   |   |       |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 | Other |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                                | X        | X | X |   |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment  | X        | X | X |   |       |
|           | 03 range   | X        | X | X |   |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                          | X        | X | X |   |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                             | X        | X | X |   |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                                |          | X |   |   |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                                |          | X |   |   | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  |          |   |   | X |       |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X | X |   |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X | X |   |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X | X |   |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   |   |   | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   |   |       |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 | Other |
| 24        | Pointer specification                                  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                              | X        | X | X |   |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                | X        | X | X |   |       |
|           | 03 pointer address invalid object                      |          | X |   |   |       |
| 28        | Process state  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 process control space not associated with a process |          | X |   |   |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                 |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                 |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                                   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                                 | X        | X | X |   |       |
|           | 02 scalar attributes invalid                           | X        | X | X |   |       |
|           | 03 scalar value invalid                                |          |   | X |   |       |
| 36        | Space management                                       |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                          |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                                 |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 03 materialization length exception                    | X        |   |   |   |       |





---

## Chapter 13. Object Lock Management Instructions

This chapter describes the lock management instructions. The instructions are in alphabetic order. For an alphabetic summary of all the instructions, see Appendix A, "Instruction Summary."

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| Lock Object (LOCK)                             | 13-3  |
| Lock Space Location (LOCKSL)                   | 13-8  |
| Materialize Data Space Record Locks (MATDRECL) | 13-13 |
| Materialize Process Locks (MATPRLK)            | 13-17 |
| Materialize Process Record Locks (MATPRECL)    | 13-20 |
| Materialize Selected Locks (MATSELLK)          | 13-24 |
| Transfer Object Lock (XFRLOCK)                 | 13-27 |
| Unlock Object (UNLOCK)                         | 13-30 |
| Unlock Space Location (UNLOCKSL)               | 13-33 |



## Lock Object (LOCK)

|                      |                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>Op Code (Hex)</b> | <b>Operand 1</b>      |
| 03F5                 | Lock request template |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

### ILE access

```
LOCK (
  lock_request_template : space pointer
)
```

**Description:** The instruction requests that locks for system objects identified by system pointers in the space object (operand 1) be allocated to the issuing process. The lock state desired for each object is specified by a value associated with each system pointer in the lock template (operand 1).

The lock request template must be aligned on a 16-byte boundary. The format is as follows:

- Number of lock requests in template Bin(4)
- Offset to lock state selection values Bin(2)
- Wait time-out value for instruction Char(8)
- Lock request options Char(1)
  - Lock request type Bits 0-1
    - 00 = Immediate request- If all locks cannot be immediately granted, signal *lock request not grantable* (hex 1A02) exception.
    - 01 = Synchronous request- Wait until all locks can be granted.
    - 10 = Asynchronous request- Allow processing to continue and signal event when the object is available.
  - Access state modifications Bits 2-3
    - When the process is entering lock wait for synchronous request: Bit 2
      - 0 = Access state should not be modified.
      - 1 = Access state should be modified.
    - When the process is leaving lock wait: Bit 3
      - 0 = Access state should not be modified.
      - 1 = Access state should be modified.
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 4-5\*
  - Time-out option Bit 6
    - 0 = Wait for specified time, then signal time-out exception.
    - 1 = Wait indefinitely.
  - Template extension specified Bit 7
    - 0 = Template is not specified.
    - 1 = Template is specified.
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(1)

The Lock Object template extension is only present if *template extension specified* is indicated above. Otherwise, the *Object(s) to be locked* should immediately follow.

- Lock Object template extension Char(16)
  - Extension options Char(1)
    - Modify process event mask option Bit 0
      - 0 = Do not modify process event mask
      - 1 = Modify process event mask
    - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 1-7
  - Extension area Char(15)
    - New process event mask UBin(2)
    - Previous process event mask UBin(2)
    - Reserved (binary 0) Char(11)
- Object(s) to be locked System pointer
 

This should be repeated as specified by *number of lock requests in template* above.

The *lock state selection* is located by adding the *offset to lock state selection values* above to operand 1.

- Lock state selection Char(1)
 

(repeated for each pointer in the template)

  - Requested lock state Bits 0-4
 

(1 = lock requested, 0 = lock not requested)

Only one state may be requested.

    - LSRD lock Bit 0
    - LSRO lock Bit 1
    - LSUP lock Bit 2
    - LEAR lock Bit 3
    - LENR lock Bit 4
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 5-6\*
  - Entry active indicator Bit 7
    - 0 = Entry not active - This entry is not used.
    - 1 = Entry active - Obtain this lock.

**Note:** Entries indicated with an asterisk are ignored by the instruction.

**Lock Allocation Procedure:** A single Lock instruction can request the allocation of one or more lock states on one or more objects. Locks are allocated sequentially until all locks requested are allocated.

The **offset to lock state selection** values specifies an offset from the beginning of the lock request. This offset is used to locate the lock state selection values.

The **wait time-out** field establishes the maximum amount of time that a process competes for the requested set of locks when either *lock request type* is either *synchronous* or *asynchronous*. The bits in this field are numbered from 0 to 63, and bit 41 is defined as 1024 microseconds. The maximum wait time-out interval allowed is a value equal to  $(2^{48} - 1)$  microseconds. Any value that indicates more time than the maximum wait time-out causes the maximum wait time-out to be used. If the *wait time-out* field is specified with a value of binary 0, then the value associated with the default wait time-out field in the process definition template establishes the time interval.

When a requested lock state cannot be immediately granted, any locks already allocated by this Lock instruction are released, and the **lock request type** specified in the lock request template establishes the machine action. The lock request types are described in the following paragraphs.

- *Immediate Request*- If the requested locks cannot be granted immediately, this option causes the *lock request not grantable* (hex 1A02) exception to be signaled. No locks are granted and the lock request is canceled.
- *Synchronous Request*- This option causes the process requesting the locks to be placed in the wait state until all requested locks can be granted. If the locks cannot be granted in the time interval established by the *wait time-out* field specified in the lock request template, the *lock wait time-out* (hex 3A02) exception is signaled to the requesting process at the end of the interval. No locks are granted, and the lock request is canceled.
- *Asynchronous Request*- This option allows the requesting process to proceed with execution while the machine asynchronously attempts to satisfy the lock request.

When the *synchronous request* option is specified and the requested locks cannot be immediately allocated, the **access state modification** field in the lock request template specifies whether the access state of the process access group is to be modified on entering and/or returning from the lock wait. The field has no effect if the process instruction wait access state control attribute specifies that no access state modification is allowed. If the process attribute value specifies that access state modification is allowed and the wait on event access state modification option specifies modify access state, the machine modifies the access state for the specified process access group.

If the *lock request type* is *synchronous* and the invocation containing the lock instruction is terminated, then the lock request is canceled.

If the lock request is satisfied, then the *object locked* (hex 000A,01,01) event is signaled to the requesting process. If the request is not satisfied in the time interval established by the *wait time-out* field specified in the lock request template, the *asynchronous lock wait timeout* (hex 000A,04,01) event is signaled to the requesting process. No locks are granted, and the lock request is canceled. If an object is destroyed while a process has a pending request to lock the object, the *object destroyed* (hex 000A,02,01) event is signaled to the waiting process.

If the *lock request type* is *asynchronous* and the invocation containing the Lock instruction is terminated, then the lock request remains active.

When two or more processes are competing for a conflicting lock allocation on a system object, the machine attempts to first satisfy the lock allocation request of the process with the highest priority. Within that priority, the machine attempts to satisfy the request that has been waiting longest.

If any exception is identified during the instruction's execution, any locks already granted by the instruction are released, and the lock request is canceled.

For each system object lock, counts are kept by lock state and by process. When a lock request is granted, the appropriate lock count(s) of each lock state specified is incremented by 1.

If a previously unsatisfied lock request is satisfied by the transfer of a lock from another process, the lock request and transfer lock are treated as independent events relative to lock accounting. The appropriate lock counts are incremented for both the lock request and the transfer lock function.

The **modify process event mask option** controls the state of the event mask in the process executing this instruction. If the event mask is in the *masked* state, the machine does not schedule signaled event monitors in the process. The event monitors continue to be signaled by the machine or other processes. When the process is modified to the *unmasked* state, event handlers are scheduled to handle those events that occurred while the process was masked and those events occurring while in

the unmasked state. The number of events retained while the process is masked is specified by the attributes of the event monitor associated with the process.

A lock request with an *asynchronous lock request type* cannot have the *modify process event mask option* set to 1.

If the system security level machine attribute is hex 40 or greater and the process is running in user state, then the *modify process event mask option* is not allowed and a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception is signalled.

When the *modify process event mask* is set to 1, the **previous process event mask** will be returned and the **new process event mask** will take effect only when the lock(s) have been successfully granted. If the lock request is not successful, the *previous process event mask* value is not returned, nor does the *new process event mask* take effect.

The process is automatically masked by the machine when event handlers are invoked. If the process is unmasked in the event handler, other events can be handled if another enabled event monitor within that process is signaled. If the process is masked when it exits from the event handler, the machine explicitly unmask the process.

Valid masking values are:

0 Masked  
256 Unmasked

Other values are reserved and must not be specified. If any other values are specified, a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception is signaled.

Whether masking or unmasking the current process, the new mask takes effect upon completion of a satisfied lock object.

### Authorization Required

- Some authority or ownership
  - Objects to be locked
- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |       |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | Other |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation       | X        |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment               | X        |       |
|           | 03 range                            | X        |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  |          |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |       |
|-----------|--|----------|-------|
|           |  | 1        | Other |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                             | X        |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                                | X        |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                                | X        | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              | X        | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  |          | X     |
|           | 02 lock request not grantable                                | X        |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          | X     |
|           | 06 machine lock limit exceeded                               |          | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          | X     |
| 36        | Space management   |          |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                                       |          |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid                                    | X        |       |
| 3A        | Wait time-out  |          |       |
|           | 02 lock  |          | X     |



## Lock Space Location (LOCKSL)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1                                     | Operand 2    |
|---------------|---|--------------|
| 03F6          | Space location or<br>Lock Request<br>Template | Lock request |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer data object.

*Operand 2:* Char(1) scalar or null.

### ILE access

```
LOCKSL (
  var space_location : space pointer;
  var lock_request   : aggregate OR
                    null operand
)
```

**Description:** When operand 2 is not null, the space location (operand 1) is granted to the issuing process according to the lock request specified by operand 2. When operand 2 is null, the instruction requests that the space locations identified in the lock request template (operand 1) be granted to the issuing process.

Locking a space location does not prevent any byte operation from referencing that location, nor does it prevent the space from being extended, truncated, or destroyed. Space location locks follow the normal locking rules with respect to conflicts and waits but are strictly symbolic in nature.

A space pointer machine object cannot be specified for operand 1.

The following is the format of operand 2 when not null:

- Lock request Char(1)
  - Lock state selection Bits 0-4

(1 = lock requested, 0 = lock not requested)

Only one state may be requested.

    - LSRD lock Bit 0
    - LSRO lock Bit 1
    - LSUP lock Bit 2
    - LEAR lock Bit 3
    - LENR lock Bit 4
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 5-7

For this form, if the requested lock cannot be immediately granted, the process will enter a synchronous wait for the lock for a period of up to the interval specified by the process default time-out value. If the wait exceeds this time limit, a space location lock wait exception is signaled, and the requested lock is not granted.

During the wait, the process access state may be modified. This can occur if the process' *instruction wait access state* control attribute is set to *allow access state modification*.

When operand 2 is null, the lock request template identified by operand 1 must be aligned on a 16-byte boundary. The format of operand 1 is as follows:

- Number of space location lock requests in template Bin(4)
- Offset to lock state selection values Bin(2)
- Wait time-out value for instruction Char(8)
- Lock request options Char(3)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 0
  - Lock request type Bit 1
    - 0 = Immediate request-If all locks cannot be immediately granted, signal exception.
    - 1 = Synchronous request-Wait until all locks can be granted.
  - Access state modifications Bits 2-3
    - When the process is entering lock wait for synchronous request: Bit 2
      - 0= Access state should not be modified.
      - 1= Access state should be modified.
    - When the process is leaving lock wait: Bit 3
      - 0= Access state should not be modified.
      - 1= Access state should be modified.
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 4-5
  - Time-out option Bit 6
    - 0= Wait for specified time, then signal time-out exception.
    - 1= Wait indefinitely.
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 7-15
  - Modify process event mask option Bit 16
    - 0 = Do not modify process event mask
    - 1 = Modify process event mask
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 17-23
- Modify process event mask control Char(4)
  - New process event mask UBin(2)
  - Previous process event mask UBin(2)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(11)
- Space location(s) to be locked Space pointer data object

This should be repeated as specified by *number of lock requests in template* above.

The *lock state selection* is located by adding the *offset to lock state selection values* above to operand 1.

- Lock state selection Char(1)
  - (repeated for each pointer in the template)
  - Requested lock state Bits 0-4

(1 = lock requested, 0 = lock not requested)

Only one state may be requested.

|                          |         |
|--------------------------|---------|
| - LSRD lock              | Bit 0   |
| - LSRO lock              | Bit 1   |
| - LSUP lock              | Bit 2   |
| - LEAR lock              | Bit 3   |
| - LENR lock              | Bit 4   |
| - Reserved (binary 0)    | Bit 5-6 |
| - Entry active indicator | Bit 7   |

0 = Entry not active- This entry is not used.  
1 = Entry active- Obtain this lock.

**Lock Allocation Procedure:** A single Lock Space Location instruction can request the allocation of one or more lock states on one or more space locations. Space location locks are granted sequentially until all the locks requested are granted.

The **wait time-out** field establishes the maximum amount of time that a process competes for the requested set of locks when the *lock request type* is *synchronous*. The bits in this field are numbered from 0 to 63, and bit 41 is defined as 1024 microseconds. The maximum wait time-out interval allowed is a value equal to  $(2^{48} - 1)$  microseconds. Any value that indicates more time than the maximum wait time-out causes the maximum wait time-out to be used. If the *wait time-out* field is specified with a value of binary 0, then the value associated with the default wait time-out parameter in the process definition template establishes the time interval.

When a requested lock state cannot be immediately granted, any locks already granted by this Lock Space Location instruction are released, and the *lock request type* specified in the lock request template establishes the machine action. The **lock request type** values are described in the following paragraphs.

- **Immediate Request-** If the requested space location locks cannot be granted immediately, this option causes the *lock request not grantable* (hex 1A02) exception to be signaled. No space location locks are granted, and the lock request is canceled.
- **Synchronous Request-** This option causes the process requesting the locks to be placed in the wait state until all requested locks can be granted. If the locks cannot be granted in the time interval established by the *wait time-out* field specified in the lock request template, the *space location lock wait time-out* (hex 3A04) exception is signaled to the requesting process at the end of the interval. No locks are granted, and the lock request is canceled.

If the *lock request type* is *synchronous* and the requested locks cannot be immediately granted, the **access state modification** field in the lock request template specifies whether the access state of the process access group is to be modified on entering and/or returning from the lock wait. The parameter has no effect if the process instruction wait access state control attribute specifies that no access state modification is allowed. If the process attribute value specifies that access state modification is allowed and the wait on event access state modification option specifies modify access state, the machine modifies the access state for the specified process access group.

If the *lock request type* is *synchronous* and the invocation containing the Lock Space Location instruction is terminated, then the lock request is canceled.

The **modify process event mask option** controls the state of the event mask in the process executing this instruction. When the process event mask is in the *masked* state, the machine does not schedule signaled event monitors in the process. The event monitors continue to be signaled by the machine or other processes. When the process event mask is modified to the *unmasked* state, event handlers are

scheduled to handle those events that occurred while the process was masked and those events occurring while in the unmasked state.

If the system security level machine attribute is hex 40 or greater and the process is running in user state, then the *modify process event mask option* is not allowed and a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception is signalled.

When the *modify process event mask* is set to 1, the **previous process event mask** will be returned and the **new process event mask** will take effect only when the space location lock(s) have been successfully granted. If the space location lock request is not successful, the *previous process event mask* value is not returned, nor does the *new process event mask* take effect.

The process event mask values are validity checked only when the modify process event mask is set to 1, and ignored otherwise. Valid masking values are:

0 Masked  
256 Unmasked

Other values are reserved and must not be specified, otherwise a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception is signaled.

If any exception is identified during the instruction's execution, any locks already granted by the instruction are released, and the lock request is canceled.

For each space location lock, counts are kept by lock state and by process. When a lock request is granted, the appropriate *lock count* of each lock state specified is incremented by 1.

## Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   | Other |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X |       |
| 03 range                            | X        | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state       |          |   | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage     |          |   | X     |
| 1A Lock state                       |          |   |       |
| 02 lock request not grantable       | X        |   |       |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception      |          |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   | X     |
| 06 machine lock limit exceeded      |          |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                  |          |   |       |
| 02 machine check                    |          |   | X     |
| 03 function check                   |          |   | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                 | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 scalar value invalid                |          | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid              | X        |   |       |
| 3A        | Wait time-out                          |          |   |       |
|           | 04 space location lock wait            | X        |   |       |

## Materialize Data Space Record Locks (MATDRECL)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2                    |
|---------------|-----------|------------------------------|
| 032E          | Receiver  | Record selection<br>template |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* Space pointer.

### ILE access

```
MATDRECL (
    receiver          : space pointer;
    selection_template : space pointer
)
```

**Description:** This instruction materializes the current allocated locks on the specified data space record.

The current lock status of the data space record identified by the template in operand 2 is materialized into the space identified by operand 1.

The record selection template identified by operand 2 must be 16-byte aligned. The format of the record selection template is as follows.

- Record selection Char(24)
  - Data space identification System pointer
  - Record number Bin(4)
  - Reserved Char(4)
- Lock selection Char(8)
  - Materialize data space locks held Bit 0
    - 1 = Materialize
    - 0 = Do not materialize
  - Materialize data space locks waited for Bit 1
    - 1 = Materialize
    - 0 = Do not materialize
  - Reserved Bits 2-7
  - Reserved Char(7)

The **data space identification** must be a system pointer to a data space.

The **record number** is a relative record number within that data space. If the *record number* is zero then all locks on the specified data space will be materialized. If the *record number* is not valid for the specified data space a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception is signaled.

Both of the fields specified under **lock selection** are bits which determine the locks to be materialized. If the **materialize data space locks held** is *materialize*, the current holders of the specified data space record lock are materialized. If the **materialize data space locks waited for** is *materialize*, any process waiting to lock the specified data space record is materialized.

The materialization template identified by operand 1 must be 16-byte aligned. The format of the materialization is as follows:

- Materialization size specification
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Bin(4)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Materialization data Char(8)
  - Count of locks held UBin(2)
  - Count of locks waited for UBin(2)
  - Reserved Char(4)
- Locks held identification Char(32)  
(repeated for each lock held)
  - Process control space System pointer
  - Record number Bin(4)
  - Lock state being described Char(1)
    - Hex C0 = DLRD lock state
    - Hex F8 = DLUP lock state
    - All other values are reserved.
  - Reserved Char(11)
- Locks waited for identification Char(32)  
(repeated for each lock waited for)
  - Process control space System pointer
  - Record number Bin(4)
  - Lock state being described Char(1)
    - Hex C0 = DLRD lock state
    - Hex F8 = DLUP lock state
    - All other values are reserved.
  - Reserved Char(11)

The first 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes provided** for use by the instruction. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than 8 causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception to be signaled.

The second 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes available** to be materialized. The instruction materializes as many bytes as can be contained in the area specified as the receiver. If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested, the excess bytes are unchanged. No exceptions are signaled in the event that the receiver contains insufficient area for the materialization, other than the materialization length exception described previously.

The **count of locks held** contains the number of locks held. One system pointer to the **process control space** (PCS) of each process holding a lock, the relative **record number** which is locked, and the **lock state** are materialized in the area identified as **locks held identification**. These fields contain data only if **materialize data space locks held** is *materialize*.

The **count of locks waited** for contains the number of locks being waited for. One system pointer to the **process control space** (PCS) of each process waiting for a lock, the relative **record number**, and the

**lock state** which the process is waiting for are materialized in the area identified as locks waited for identification. These fields contain data only if **materialize data space locks waited for** is *materialize*.

### Authorization Required

- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Exceptions

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                                | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 range   | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                          | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                             | X        | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                                |          | X | X     |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                                |          | X | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              |          |   | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  |          | X |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |       |



# Materialize Data Space Record Locks (MATDRECL)

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                 | X        | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid              |          | X |       |
|           | 03 materialization length exception    | X        |   |       |

## Materialize Process Locks (MATPRLK)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2             |
|---------------|-----------|-----------------------|
| 0312          | Receiver  | Process control space |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* System pointer or null.

### ILE access

```

MATPRLK (
    receiver          : space pointer;
    var process_control_spacec : system pointer OR
                           null operand
)

```

**Description:** The lock status of the process identified by operand 2 is materialized into the receiver specified by operand 1. If operand 2 is null, the lock status is materialized for the process issuing the instruction. The materialization identifies each object or space location for which the process has a lock allocated or for which the process is in a synchronous or asynchronous wait. The format of the materialization is as follows:

- Materialization size specification
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Char(8)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Number of lock entries Bin(2)
- Expanded number of lock entries Bin(4)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(2)
- Lock status (repeated for each lock currently allocated or waited for by the process) Char(32)
  - Object, space location, or binary 0 if no pointer exists System pointer or Space pointer
  - Lock state Char(1)
    - LSRD Bit 0
    - LSRO Bit 1
    - LSUP Bit 2
    - LEAR Bit 3
    - LENR Bit 4
    - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 5-7
  - Status of lock state for process Char(1)
    - Reserved Bits 0-1
    - Object or space location no longer exists Bit 2
    - Waiting because this lock is not available Bit 3
    - Process in asynchronous wait for lock Bit 4

- Process in synchronous wait for lock Bit 5
- Implicit lock (machine-applied) Bit 6
- Lock held by process Bit 7
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(14)

The first 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes provided** for use by the instruction. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than 8 causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception to be signaled.

The second 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes available** to be materialized. The instruction materializes as many bytes as can be contained in the area specified as the receiver. If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested, then the excess bytes are unchanged. No exceptions (other than the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception described previously) are signaled if the receiver contains insufficient area for the materialization.

The **number of lock entries** field identifies the number of lock entries that are materialized. When a process holds more than 32,767 locks, this field is set with its maximum value of 32,767. This field has been retained in the template for compatibility with programs using the template prior to the changes made to support materialization of more than 32,767 lock entries.

The **expanded number of lock entries** field identifies the number of lock entries that are materialized. This field is always set in addition to the number of lock entries field described previously; however, it does not have a maximum limit of 32,767, so it can be used to specify that more than 32,767 locks have been materialized. When a process holds more than 32,767 locks, the *number of lock entries* field will equal 32,767, which would be incorrect. The *expanded number of lock entries* field, however, will identify the correct number of lock entries materialized. In all cases, this field should be used instead of the *number of lock entries* field to get the correct count of lock entries materialized.

### Authorization Required

- Retrieve
  - Context referenced by address resolution

### Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 range                            | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                  |          |   |       |

| Exception  | Operands |   |       |
|--|----------|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | Other |
| 04 system object damage state                                | X        | X | X     |
| 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage                              | X        | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception                               |          |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support   |          |   |       |
| 02 machine check   |          |   | X     |
| 03 function check  |          |   | X     |
| 22 Object access   |          |   |       |
| 01 object not found  | X        | X |       |
| 02 object destroyed  | X        | X |       |
| 03 object suspended  | X        | X |       |
| 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   | X     |
| 08 object compressed   |          |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification                                     |          |   |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X |       |
| 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X |       |
| 03 pointer addressing invalid object                         |          | X |       |
| 28 Process state   |          |   |       |
| 02 process control space not associated with a process       |          | X |       |
| 2E Resource control limit                                    |          |   |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   | X     |
| 36 Space management  |          |   |       |
| 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   | X     |
| 38 Template specification                                    |          |   |       |
| 03 materialization length exception                          | X        |   |       |

## Materialize Process Record Locks (MATPRECL)

|                      |                  |                               |
|----------------------|------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>Op Code (Hex)</b> | <b>Operand 1</b> | <b>Operand 2</b>              |
| 031E                 | Receiver         | Process selection<br>template |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* Space pointer.

### ILE access

```

MATPRECL (
    receiver          : space pointer;
    selection_template : space pointer
)

```

**Description:** This instruction materializes the current allocated data space record locks held by the process. The current lock status of the process identified in the process selection template specified by operand 2 is materialized into the receiver identified by operand 1. The materialization identifies each data space record lock which the process has or the process is waiting to obtain.

If the process control space (PCS) pointer is null or all zeros, the lock activity for the process issuing the instruction is materialized.

The process selection template identified by operand 2 must be 16-byte aligned. The format of the process selection template is as follows:

- Process selection
  - Process identification Char(16)
  - Lock selection System pointer
- Lock selection Char(8)
  - Materialize held locks Bit 0
    - 1 = Materialize
    - 0 = Do not materialize
  - Materialize locks waited for Bit 1
    - 1 = Materialize
    - 0 = Do not materialize
  - Reserved Bits 2-7
  - Reserved Char(7)

The **process identification** must be a system pointer to a process control space (PCS) or null, all zeros.

Both of the fields specified under **lock selection** are bits which determine the locks to be materialized. If the **materialize held locks** is *materialize*, any data base record lock held by the process is materialized. If the **materialize lock waited for** is *materialize* any data base record lock the process is waiting for is materialized.

The materialization template identified by operand 1 must be 16-byte aligned. The format of the materialization is as follows:

- Materialization size specification Char(8)
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Bin(4)

|  |                |
|--|----------------|
| — Number of bytes available for materialization                          | Bin(4)         |
| • Materialization data   | Char(8)        |
| — Count of locks held  | Bin(2)         |
| — Count of locks waited for  | Bin(2)         |
| — Reserved   | Char(4)        |
| • Locks held identification<br>(repeated for each lock held)             | Char(32)       |
| — Data space identification  | System pointer |
| — Relative record number   | Bin(4)         |
| — Lock state being described   | Char(1)        |
| Hex C0 = DLRD lock state   |                |
| Hex F8 = DLUP lock state   |                |
| All other values are reserved.   |                |
| — Reserved   | Char(11)       |
| • Locks waited for identification<br>(repeated for each lock waited for) | Char(32)       |
| — Data space identification  | System pointer |
| — Relative record number   | Bin(4)         |
| — Lock state being described   | Char(1)        |
| Hex C0 = DLRD lock state   |                |
| Hex F8 = DLUP lock state   |                |
| All other values are reserved.   |                |
| — Reserved   | Char(11)       |

The first 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes provided** for use by the instruction. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than 8 causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception to be signaled.

The second 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes available** to be materialized. The instruction materializes as many bytes as can be contained in the area specified as the receiver. If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested, the excess bytes are unchanged. No exceptions are signaled in the event that the receiver contains insufficient area for the materialization, other than the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception described previously.

The **count of locks held** contains the number of locks held by the process. One system pointer to the **data space**, **relative record number** in the data space, and **lock state** is materialized in the area identified as **locks held identification** for each lock. These fields contain data only if *materialize held locks* is *materialize*.

The **count of locks waited for** contains the number of locks that the process is waiting for. One system pointer to the **data space**, **relative record number** in the data space, and **lock state** is materialized in the area identified as locks waited for identification for each lock waited for. These fields contain data only if *materialize locks waited for* is *materialize*.

**Authorization Required**

- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

**Lock Enforcement**

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

**Exceptions**

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                                | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 range   | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                          | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                             | X        | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                                |          | X | X     |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                                |          | X | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              |          |   | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  |          | X |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                 | X        | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid              |          | X |       |
|           | 03 materialization length exception    | X        |   |       |



## Materialize Selected Locks (MATSELLK)

|                      |                  |                          |
|----------------------|------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>Op Code (Hex)</b> | <b>Operand 1</b> | <b>Operand 2</b>         |
| 033E                 | Receiver         | Object or space location |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* System pointer or space pointer data object.

### ILE access

```
MATSELLK (
    receiver          : space pointer;
    var system_or_space_pointer : pointer
)
```

**Description:** The locks held by the process issuing this instruction for the object or space location referenced by operand 2 are materialized into the template specified by operand 1. The format of the materialization template is as follows:

- Materialization size specification
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Char(8)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Cumulative lock status for all locks on operand 2 Bin(4)
  - Lock state Char(1)
    - LSRD Char(1)
    - LSRO Bit 0
    - LSUP Bit 1
    - LEAR Bit 2
    - LENR Bit 3
    - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 4
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 5-7
- Reserved Char(1)
- Number of lock entries Bin(2)
- Reserved Char(2)
- Lock status (repeated for each lock currently allocated) Char(2)
  - Lock state Char(1)
    - Hex 80 = LSRD lock request
    - Hex 40 = LSRO lock request
    - Hex 20 = LSUP lock request
    - Hex 10 = LEAR lock request
    - Hex 08 = LENR lock request
    - All other values are reserved
  - Status of lock Char(1)
    - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 0-5

- Implicit lock Bit 6
  - 0 = Not implicit lock
  - 1 = Is implicit lock
- Reserved (binary 1) Bit 7

The first 4 bytes of the materialization identifies the total **number of bytes provided** for use by the instruction. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than 8 causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception to be signaled.

The second 4 bytes of the materialization identifies the total **number of bytes available** to be materialized. The instruction materializes as many bytes as can be contained in the area specified as the receiver. If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested, then the excess bytes are unchanged. No exceptions are signaled in the event that the receiver contains insufficient area for the materialization, other than the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception described previously.

A space pointer machine object cannot be specified for operand 2.

### Authorization

- Retrieve
  - Context referenced by address resolution

### Lock Enforcement:

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Exceptions

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment                                      | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 range   | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                        | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                           | X        | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |       |
|           | 02 unauthorized for operation                              |          | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |       |
|           | 04 system object   | X        | X | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object |          |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                            |          |   | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state                                      |          | X |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                |          |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |       |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | Other |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 pointer addressing invalid object                         |          | X |       |
| 28        | Process state  |          |   |       |
|           | 02 process control space not associated with a process       |          | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                                       | X        | X |       |
| 36        | Space management   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                                       |          |   |       |
|           | 03 materialization length exception                          | X        |   |       |

## Transfer Object Lock (XFRLOCK)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1                       | Operand 2              |
|---------------|---------------------------------|------------------------|
| 0382          | Receiving process control space | Lock transfer template |

*Operand 1:* System pointer.

*Operand 2:* Space pointer.

### ILE access

```
XFRLOCK (
  var receiving_process_control_space : system pointer
      lock_transfer_template           : space pointer
)
```

**Description:** The receiving process (operand 1) is allocated the locks designated in the lock transfer template (operand 2). Upon completion of the transfer lock request, the current process no longer holds the transferred lock(s).

Operand 2 identifies the objects and the associated lock states that are to be transferred to the receiving process. The space contains a system pointer to each object that is to have a lock transferred and a byte which defines whether this entry is active. If the entry is active, the space also contains the lock states to be transferred. Operand 2 must be aligned on a 16-byte boundary. The format is as follows:

- Number of lock transfer requests in template Bin(4)
- Offset to lock state selection bytes Bin(2)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(10)\*
- Object lock(s) to be transferred System pointer

This should be repeated as specified by *number of lock transfer requests in template* above.

The *lock state selection* is located by adding the *offset to lock state selection values* above to operand 1.

- Lock state selection (repeated for each pointer in the template) Char(1)
  - Lock state to transfer. Only one state may be requested. (1 = transfer) Bits 0-4
    - LSRD Bit 0
    - LSRO Bit 1
    - LSUP Bit 2
    - LEAR Bit 3
    - LENR Bit 4
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 5\*
  - Lock count Bit 6
    - 0 = The current lock count is transferred.
    - 1 = A lock count of 1 is transferred.

- Entry active indicator

Bit 7

- 0 = Entry not active. This entry is not used.
- 1 Entry active. This lock is transferred.

**Note:** Entries indicated by an asterisk are ignored by the instruction.

If the receiving process is issuing the instruction, then no operation is performed, and no exception is signaled. The **lock count** transferred is either the lock count held by the transferring process or a count of 1. If the receiving process already holds an identical lock, then the final lock count is the sum of the count originally held by the receiving process and the transferred count.

Only locks currently allocated to the process issuing the instruction can be transferred. If the transfer of an allocated lock would result in the violation of the lock allocation rules, then the lock cannot be transferred. An implicit lock may not be transferred.

No locks are transferred if an entry in the template is invalid.

The locks specified by operand 2 are transferred sequentially and individually. If one lock cannot be transferred because the process does not hold the indicated lock on the object, then exception data is saved to identify the lock that could not be transferred. Processing of the next lock to be transferred continues.

After all locks specified in operand 2 have been processed, the *object lock transferred* (hex 000A,03,01) event is signaled to the process receiving the locks if any locks were transferred. If any lock was not transferred, the *invalid object lock transfer request* (hex 1A04) exception is signaled.

When an object lock is transferred, the transferring process synchronously loses the record of the lock, and the object is locked to the receiving process. However, the receiving process obtains the lock asynchronously after the instruction currently being executed is completed. If the transferring process holds multiple locks for the object, any lock states not transferred are retained in the process.

### Authorization Required

- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 range                            | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                                |          | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                                | X        | X | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              | X        | X | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  |          |   | X     |
|           | 04 invalid object lock transfer request                      |          | X |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 pointer addressing invalid object                         |          | X |       |
| 28        | Process state  |          |   |       |
|           | 02 process control space not associated with a process       | X        |   |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid                                    |          | X |       |

## Unlock Object (UNLOCK)

**Op Code (Hex)**      **Operand 1**  
03F1                      Unlock template

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

### ILE access

```
UNLOCK (
    unlock_template : space pointer
)
```

**Description:** The instruction releases the object locks that are specified in the unlock template. The template specified by operand 1 identifies the system objects and the lock states (on those objects) that are to be released. The unlock template must be aligned on a 16-byte boundary. The format is as follows:

- Number of unlock requests in template Bin(4)
- Offset to lock state selection bytes Bin(2)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(8)\*
- Unlock option Char(1)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 0-3\*
  - Unlock type Bits 4-5
    - 00 = Unlock specific locks now allocated to process
    - 01 = Cancel specific asynchronously waiting lock request or allocated locks
    - 10 = Cancel all asynchronously waiting lock requests
    - 11 = Invalid
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 6-7
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(1)
- Object to unlock (one for each unlock request) System pointer

The *Unlock options* is located by adding the **offset to lock state selection bytes** above to operand 1.

- Unlock options (repeated for unlock request) Char(1)
  - Lock state to unlock (only one state can be selected) (1 = unlock) Bits 0-4
    - LSRD Bit 0
    - LSRO Bit 1
    - LSUP Bit 2
    - LEAR Bit 3
    - LENR Bit 4
  - Lock count option Bit 5
    - 0 = Lock count reduced by 1
    - 1 = All locks are unlocked. The lock count is set to 0
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 6\*

- Entry active indicators

Bit 7

- 0 = Entry not active. This entry is not used.
- 1 = Entry active. These locks are unlocked.

**Note:** Entries indicated by an asterisk are ignored by the instruction.

The **unlock type** field specifies if locks are to be released or outstanding lock requests are to be canceled.

If all *asynchronous lock waits* are being canceled (*unlock type* specified as 10), then *objects to unlock* and *unlock options* for each object are not required. If the asynchronous lock fields are provided in the template, then the data is ignored.

Specifying 01 for *unlock type* attempts to cancel an asynchronous lock request that is identical to the one defined in the template. After the instruction attempts to cancel the specified request, program execution continues just as if 00 had been specified for *unlock type*. A waiting lock request is canceled if the number of active requests in the template, the objects, the objects corresponding lock states, and the order of the active entries in the template all match.

When a lock is released, the lock count is reduced by 1 or set to 0 in the specified state. This option is specified by the **lock count option** parameter.

If 01 is specified for *unlock type* is specified and the unlock count option for an object lock is 0 (lock count reduced by 1), then a successful cancel satisfies this request, and no additional locks on the object are unlocked. If the *lock count option* for an object lock is set to 1 (*set lock count to 0*), the results of the cancel are disregarded, and all held locks on the object are unlocked.

Specific locks can be unlocked only if they are allocated to the process issuing the unlock instruction. Implicit locks may not be unlocked with this instruction. No locks are unlocked if an entry in the template is invalid.

Object locks to unlock are processed sequentially and individually. If one specific object lock cannot be unlocked because the process does not hold the indicated lock on the object, then exception data is saved, but processing of the instruction continues.

After all requested object locks have been processed, the *invalid unlock request* (hex 1A03) exception is signaled if any object lock was not unlocked.

If 01 is specified for *unlock type* is selected and the cancel attempt is unsuccessful, an *invalid unlock request* (hex 1A03) exception is signaled when any object lock in the template is not unlocked.

### Authorization Required

- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Exceptions

| Exception | Operands |       |
|-----------|----------|-------|
|           | 1        | Other |



| Exception |  | Operands |       |
|-----------|--|----------|-------|
|           |  | 1        | Other |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                                | X        |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment  | X        |       |
|           | 03 range   | X        |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                          | X        |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                             | X        |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                                | X        |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                                | X        | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              | X        | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  |          | X     |
|           | 03 invalid unlock request                                    | X        |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          | X     |
| 36        | Space management   |          |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                                       |          |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid                                    | X        |       |

## Unlock Space Location (UNLOCKSL)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1                            | Operand 2    |
|---------------|--------------------------------------|--------------|
| 03F2          | Space location or<br>Unlock template | Lock request |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer data object.

*Operand 2:* Char(1) scalar or null.

### ILE access

```
UNLOCKSL (
  var space_location : space pointer;
  var lock_request   : aggregate OR
                    null operand
)
```

**Description:** When operand 2 is not null, the lock type specified by operand 2 is removed from the space location (operand 1). When the operand 2 is null, the lock type is removed for the space locations specified in the unlock template (operand 1).

Any space location(s) specified by operand 1, or within the template specified by operand 1, need not exist when this instruction is issued although the space pointer must be a valid pointer as used to lock the space location.

A space pointer machine object cannot be specified for operand 1.

The following is the format of operand 2 when not null:

- Lock request Char(1)
  - Lock state selection Bits 0-4

(1 = lock requested, 0 = lock not requested)

    - Only one state may be requested.
    - LSRD lock Bit 0
    - LSRO lock Bit 1
    - LSUP lock Bit 2
    - LEAR lock Bit 3
    - LENR lock Bit 4
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 5-7

If a space location lock cannot be unlocked because the process does not hold the indicated lock, then the *invalid space location unlock* (hex 1A05) exception is signaled.

When operand 2 is null, the lock request template identified by operand 1 must be aligned on a 16-byte boundary. The format of operand 1 is as follows:

- Number of space location unlock requests in template Bin(4)
- Offset to lock state selection values Bin(2)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(26)\*

- Space location(s) to be unlocked

Space pointer

This should be repeated as specified by *number of space location unlock requests in template* above.

The *unlock options* is located by adding the *offset to lock state selection values* above to operand 1.

- Unlock options  
(repeated for each unlock request)

Char(1)

- Lock state to unlock  
(1 = unlock requested, 0 = unlock not requested)

Bits 0-4

- Only one state may be requested.

- LSRD lock

Bit 0

- LSRO lock

Bit 1

- LSUP lock

Bit 2

- LEAR lock

Bit 3

- LENR lock

Bit 4

- Lock count option

Bit 5

0 = Lock count reduced by 1

1 = All locks are unlocked. (The lock count is set to 0).

- Reserved (binary 0)

Bit 6

- Entry active indicator

Bit 7

0 = Entry not active. This entry is not used.

1 = Entry active. Lock is to be unlocked.

**Note:** Entries indicated with an asterisk are ignored by the instruction.

This instruction can request the deallocation of one or more lock states on one or more space locations. The locks are deallocated sequentially until all specified locks are deallocated. When a lock is deallocated, the lock count is either reduced by 1 or set to 0 for the specified state. This option is specified by the **lock count option**.

Specific locks can be unlocked only if they are held by the process issuing the unlock instruction. If a space location lock cannot be unlocked because the process does not hold the indicated lock, then exception data is saved but processing of the instruction continues. After all requested space location locks have been processed, the *invalid unlock request* (hex 1A03) exception is signaled if any space location lock was not unlocked.

No locks are unlocked if a template value is invalid.

## Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |       |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | Other |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation       | X        |   |       |
| 02 boundary alignment               | X        |   |       |
| 03 range                            | X        |   |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        |   |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation       | X        |   |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |       |
|           | 04 system object                       | X        |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        |          |   | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state                             |          |   |       |
|           | 03 invalid unlock request              | X        |   |       |
|           | 05 invalid space location unlock       | X        |   |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   | X     |
|           | 06 machine lock limit exceeded         |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        |   |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        |   |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                 | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 scalar value invalid                |          | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid              | X        |   |       |



---

## Chapter 14. Exception Management Instructions

This chapter describes all instructions used for exception management. These instructions are in alphabetic order. For an alphabetic summary of all the instructions, see Appendix A, "Instruction Summary."

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| Materialize Exception Description (MATEXCPD) . . . . . | 14-3  |
| Modify Exception Description (MODEXCPD) . . . . .      | 14-6  |
| Retrieve Exception Data (RETEXCPD) . . . . .           | 14-9  |
| Return From Exception (RTNEXCP) . . . . .              | 14-12 |
| Sense Exception Description (SNSEXCPD) . . . . .       | 14-15 |
| Signal Exception (SIGEXCP) . . . . .                   | 14-19 |
| Test Exception (TESTEXCP) . . . . .                    | 14-24 |



## Materialize Exception Description (MATEXCPD)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1          | Operand 2             | Operand 3              |
|---------------|--------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 03D7          | Attribute receiver | Exception description | Materialization option |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* Exception description.

*Operand 3:* Character(1) scalar.

**Description:** The instruction materializes the attributes (operand 3) of an exception description (operand 2) into the receiver specified by operand 1.

The template identified by operand 1 must be a 16-byte aligned area in the space if the *materialization option* is hex 00.

Operand 2 identifies the exception description to be materialized.

The value of operand 3 specifies the **materialization option**. If the *materialization option* is hex 00, the format of the exception description materialization is as follows:

- Template size Char(8)
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Bin(4)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Control flags Char(2)
  - Exception handling action Bits 0-2
    - 000 = Do not handle. (Ignore occurrence of exception and continue processing.)
    - 001 = Do not handle. (Disable this exception description and continue to search this invocation for another exception description to handle the exception.)
    - 010 = Do not handle. (Continue to search for an exception description by resignaling the exception to the preceding invocation.)
    - 100 = Defer handling. (Save exception data for later exception handling.)
    - 101 = Pass control to the specified exception handler.
  - No data Bit 3
    - 0 = Exception data is returned
    - 1 = Exception data is not returned
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 4
  - User data indicator Bit 5
    - 0 = User data not present
    - 1 = User data present
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 6-7
  - Exception handler type Bits 8-9
    - 00 = External entry point
    - 01 = Internal entry point
    - 10 = Branch point
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 10-15
- Instruction number to be given control UBin(2)



(if *exception handler type* is *internal entry point* or *branch point*; otherwise, 0)

- Length of compare value (maximum of 32 bytes) Bin(2)
- Compare value (size established by value of length of compare value field) Char(32)
- Number of exception IDs Bin(2)
- System pointer to the exception handling program (if *exception handler type* is *external entry point*) System pointer
- Pointer to user data (not present if value of *user data indicator* is 0) Space pointer
- Exception ID (one for each exception ID dictated by the number of exception IDs field) Char(2)

If the *materialization option* is hex 01, the format of the materialization is as follows:

- Template size Char(8)
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Bin(4)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Control flags Char(2)
  - Exception handling action Bits 0-2
    - 000 = Do not handle. (Ignore occurrence of exception and continue processing.)
    - 001 = Do not handle. (Disable this exception description and continue to search this invocation for another exception description to handle the exception.)
    - 010 = Do not handle. (Continue to search for an exception description by resignaling the exception to the preceding invocation.)
    - 100 = Defer handling. (Save exception data for later exception handling.)
    - 101 = Pass control to the specified exception handler.
  - No data Bit 3
    - 0 = Exception data is returned
    - 1 = Exception data is not returned
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 4-15

If the *materialization option* is hex 02, the format of the materialization is as follows:

- Template size Char(8)
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Bin(4)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Compare value length (maximum of 32 bytes) Bin(2)
- Compare value Char(32)

The first 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total number of bytes provided for use by the instruction. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than 8 causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception to be signaled.

The second 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total number of bytes available to be materialized. The instruction materializes as many bytes as can be contained in the area specified as the receiver. If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested, then the excess bytes are unchanged. No exceptions (other than the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception) are signaled in the event that the receiver operand contains insufficient area for the materialization.

**Exceptions:**

| Exception                              | Operands |   |   |       |
|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | 3 | Other |
| 06 Addressing                          |          |   |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation          | X        |   | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment                  | X        |   | X |       |
| 03 range                               | X        |   | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid    | X        |   | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                  |          |   |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation       | X        |   | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                  |          |   |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state          | X        | X | X | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage        | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception         |          |   |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                     |          |   |   |       |
| 02 machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
| 03 function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22 Object access                       |          |   |   |       |
| 01 object not found                    | X        |   | X |       |
| 02 object destroyed                    | X        |   | X |       |
| 03 object suspended                    | X        |   | X |       |
| 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist              | X        |   | X |       |
| 02 pointer type invalid                | X        |   | X |       |
| 2E Resource control limit              |          |   |   |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32 Scalar specification                |          |   |   |       |
| 03 scalar value invalid                |          |   | X |       |
| 36 Space management                    |          |   |   |       |
| 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |
| 38 Template specification              |          |   |   |       |
| 03 materialization length exception    | X        |   |   |       |

## Modify Exception Description (MODEXCPD)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1             | Operand 2            | Operand 3           |
|---------------|-----------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| 03EF          | Exception description | Modifying attributes | Modification option |

*Operand 1:* Exception description.

*Operand 2:* Space pointer or character(2) constant.

*Operand 3:* Character(1) scalar.

**Description:** The exception description attributes specified by operand 3 are modified with the values of operand 2.

Operand 1 references the exception description.

Operand 2 specifies the new attribute values. Operand 2 may be either a character constant or a space pointer to the modification template. When operand 3 is a constant, operand 2 is a character constant; when operand 3 is not a constant, operand 2 is a space pointer.

The value of operand 3 specifies the **modification option**. If the *modification option* is hex 01 and operand 2 specifies a space pointer, the format of the modifying attributes pointed to by operand 2 is as follows:

- Template size
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization (must be at least 10) Char(8)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)\*
- Control flags Char(2)
  - Exception handling action Bits 0-2
    - 000 = Do not handle. (Ignore occurrence of exception and continue processing.)
    - 001 = Do not handle. (Disable this exception description and continue to search this invocation for another exception description to handle the exception.)
    - 010 = Do not handle. (Continue to search for an exception description by resignaling the exception to the preceding invocation.)
    - 100 = Defer handling. (Save exception data for later exception handling.)
    - 101 = Pass control to the specified exception handler.
  - No data Bit 3
    - 0 = Exception data is returned
    - 1 = Exception data is not returned
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 4-15

If the exception description was in the deferred state prior to the modification, the deferred signal, if present, is lost.

When the **no data** field is set to *exception data is not returned*, no data is returned for the Retrieve Exception Data or Test Exception instructions, and the *number of bytes available* for materialization field is set to 0. This option can also be selected in the object definition table entry of the exception description.

If the *modification option* of operand 3 is a constant value of hex 01, then operand 2 may specify a character constant. The operand 2 constant has the same format as the control flags entry previously described.

If the *modification option* is hex 02, then operand 2 must specify a space pointer. The format of the modification is as follows:

- Template size Char(8)
  - Number of bytes provided Bin(4)  
(must be at least 10 plus the length of the *compare value* in the exception description)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)\*
- Compare value length Bin(2)\*  
(maximum of 32 bytes)
- Compare value Char(32)

**Note:** Entries shown here with an asterisk (\*) are ignored by the instruction.

The number of bytes in the *compare value* is dictated by the compare value length specified in the exception description as originally specified in the object definition table.

An external exception handling program can be modified by resolving addressability to a new program into the system pointer designated for the exception description.

The presence of user data is not a modifiable attribute of exception descriptions. If the exception description has user data, it can be modified by changing the value of the data object specified in the exception description.

## Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation       |          | X | X |       |
|           | 03 range                            |          | X | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid |          | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation    |          | X | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state       | X        | X | X | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage     | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception         |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded   |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                    |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                 |          | X | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                 |          | X | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    |          | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              |          | X | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                |          | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 scalar value invalid                |          |   | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid              |          | X |   |       |
|           | 02 template size invalid               |          | X |   |       |

## Retrieve Exception Data (RETEXCPD)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2        |
|---------------|-----------|------------------|
| 03E2          | Receiver  | Retrieve options |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* Character(1) scalar.

**Description:** The data related to a particular occurrence of an exception is returned and placed in the specified space.

Operand 1 is a space pointer that identifies the receiver template. The template identified by operand 1 must be 16-byte aligned in the space.

The value of operand 2 specifies the type of exception handler for which the exception data is to be retrieved. The exception handler may be a branch point exception handler, an internal entry point exception handler, or an external entry point exception handler.

An *exception state of process invalid* (hex 1602) exception is signaled to the invocation issuing the Retrieve Exception Data instruction if the retrieve option is not consistent with the process's exception handling state. For example, the exception is signaled if the retrieve option specifies retrieve for internal entry point exception handler and the process exception state indicates that an internal exception handler has not been invoked.

After an invocation has been destroyed, exception data associated with a signaled exception description within that invocation is lost.

The format of operand 1 for the materialization is as follows:

- |  |                            |
|--|----------------------------|
| • Template size                              | Char(8)                    |
| — Number of bytes provided for retrieval     | Bin(4)                     |
| — Number of bytes available for retrieval    | Bin(4)                     |
| • Exception identification                   | Char(2)                    |
| • Compare value length (maximum of 32 bytes) | Bin(2)                     |
| • Compare value                              | Char(32)                   |
| • Message reference key                      | Char(4)                    |
| • Exception specific data                    | Char(*)                    |
| • Source invocation                          | Invocation pointer or Null |
| • Target invocation                          | Invocation pointer         |
| • Source invocation address                  | UBin(2)                    |
| • Target invocation address                  | UBin(2)                    |
| • Machine-dependent data                     | Char(10)                   |

The first 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes provided** for retrieval of the exception data. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than 8 causes the *materialization length exception* (hex 3803) exception to be signaled.

The second 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes available** to be materialized. The instruction materializes as many bytes as can be contained in the area specified as the

receiver. If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested, then the excess bytes are unchanged. No exceptions (other than the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception) are signaled in the event that the receiver contains insufficient area for the materialization.

The **message reference key** field returns the architected value that uniquely identifies the message in the process queue space.

The **source invocation** and **source invocation address** identify the invocation that caused the exception to be signaled. For machine exceptions, this invocation pointer identifies the invocation executing when the exception occurred. For user-signaled exceptions, this invocation pointer locates the invocation that executed the Signal Exception instruction or the Send Process Message instruction. The pointer will be null if the source invocation no longer exists at the time that this instruction is executed. The *source instruction address* field locates the instruction that caused the exception to be signaled. This field in a bound program invocation will be set to 0.

The **target invocation** and **target invocation address** identify the invocation that is the target of the exception. This invocation is the last invocation that was given the chance to handle the exception. For machine exceptions, the first target invocation is the invocation incurring the exception. For user-signaled exceptions, the Signal Exception instruction may initially locate the current or any previous invocation. For Send Process Message, the source and target invocations are specified as input parameters. If the target invocation handles the exception by resignaling the exception, the immediately previous invocation is considered to be the target invocation. This may occur repetitively until no more prior invocations exist in the process and the signaled program invocation entry is assigned a value of binary 0. If an invocation handles the exception in any manner other than resignaling or does not handle the exception, that invocation is considered to be the target.

The *target instruction address* field specifies the number of the instruction that is currently being executed in the target invocation.

The machine extends the area beyond the *exception specific data* area with binary 0's so that the pointers to program invocations are aligned on a 16 byte boundary.

The operand 2 values are defined as follows:

- Retrieve options Char(1)
  - Hex 00 = Retrieve for a branch point exception handler
  - Hex 01 = Retrieve for an internal entry point exception handler
  - Hex 02 = Retrieve for an external entry point exception handler

If the *exception data retention* option is set to 1 (do not save), the *number of bytes available for retrieval* is set to 0.

Exception data is always available to the process default exception handler.

## Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |       |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | Other |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X |       |
| 03 range                            | X        | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                     |          |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation       | X        | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state          | X        | X | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        | X        | X | X     |
| 16        | Exception management                   |          |   |       |
|           | 02 exception state of process invalid  |          | X |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |       |
|           | 03 scalar value invalid                |          | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                 |          |   |       |
|           | 03 materialization length exception    | X        |   |       |



## Return From Exception (RTNEXCP)

**Op Code (Hex)**              **Operand 1**  
03E1                              Return target

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

**Description:** An internal exception handler subinvocation or an external exception handler invocation is terminated, and control is passed to the specified instruction in the specified invocation. All intervening invocations are marked as cancelled, down to, but not including, the invocation that is being returned to. When each of these invocations are returned to, their return handlers and invocation exit (I-exit) routines/cancel handlers will be found and run.

**Note:** This instruction is not allowed from a bound program invocation.

The template identified by operand 1 must be 16-byte aligned in the space. It specifies the target invocation and target instruction in the invocation where control is to be passed. The format of operand 1 is as follows:

|   |                          |
|---|--------------------------|
| • Invocation address/offset   | Space/Invocation pointer |
| • Reserved (binary 0)   | Char(1)                  |
| • Action  | Char(2)                  |
| — Reserved (binary 0)   | Bits 0-4                 |
| — Use offset option   | Bit 5                    |
| 0 = Use invocation address as a pointer value   |                          |
| 1 = Use invocation address as an offset value   |                          |
| — Unstack option  | Bit 6                    |
| 0 = The action performed is determined by the setting of the following action code (bit 7).   |                          |
| 1 = If the exception handler is an internal exception handler, resume execution with the instruction that follows the RTNEXCP instruction and terminate the internal exception handler subinvocation. |                          |
| — Action code   | Bit 7                    |
| 0 = Re-execute the instruction that caused the exception or the instruction that invoked the invocation.  |                          |
| 1 = Resume execution with the instruction that follows the instruction that caused the exception or resume execution with the instruction that follows the instruction that invoked the invocation.   |                          |
| — Reserved (binary 0)   | Char(1)                  |

The **invocation address/offset** field is a space/invocation pointer that identifies the invocation to which control will be passed.

The target *invocation address* field can also be an offset value from the current requesting invocation to the invocation to be searched. This is done by setting the **use offset option** field that follows the *invocation address* field to 1. If the *invocation offset* value locates the invocation stack base entry, the *invocation offset outside range of current stack* (hex 2C1A) exception is signaled. If the *invocation offset* value is a positive number (which represents newer invocations on the stack) a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception is signaled. The current instruction in an invocation is the one that caused another invocation to be created.

The **unstack option** is only valid when issued in an internal exception handler subinvocation and is ignored for an external exception handler invocation. This option will cause the internal exception

handler subinvocation to be terminated and control will resume at the instruction immediately following the RTNEXCP instruction. In effect, this option will cause the current subinvocation to be unstacked.

If the **action code** is 0, then the current instruction of the addressed invocation is reexecuted, if it is allowed. If the **action code** is 1, execution resumes with the instruction following the current instruction of the addressed invocation, if it is allowed. If it is not, a *retry/resume invalid* (hex 1604) exception will be signaled.

The Return From Exception instruction may be issued only from the initial invocation of an external exception handling sequence or from an invocation that has an active internal exception handler.

If the instruction is issued from an invocation that is not an external exception handler and has no internal exception handler subinvocations, the *return instruction invalid* (hex 2C01) exception is signaled.

The following table shows the actions performed by the Return From Exception instruction:

| Invocation<br>Issuing<br>Instruction                        | Addressing<br>Own<br>Invocation/Option | Addressing<br>Higher<br>Invocation/Option |
|---|--|---|
| Not handling exception                                      | Error (see note 1)                     | Error (see note 1)                        |
| Handling internal exception(s)                              | Allowed (see note 2)                   | Allowed (see note 3)                      |
| Handling external exception(s)                              | Error (see note 1)                     | Allowed (see note 3)                      |
| Handling external exception(s)<br>and internal exception(s) | Allowed (see note 2)                   | Allowed (see note 3)                      |

#### Notes:

1. A *return instruction invalid* (hex 2C01) exception is signaled. If there are no more internal exception handler subinvocations active and this invocation is not an external exception handler, the instruction may not be issued.
2. The current internal exception handler subinvocation is terminated.
3. All invocations after the addressed invocation are terminated and execution proceeds within the addressed invocation. Any invocation exit programs set for the terminated invocations will be given control before execution proceeds within the addressed invocation.

Whenever an invocation is terminated, the invocation count in the corresponding activation entry (if any) is decremented by 1.

An **action code** of 1 specifies completion of an instruction rather than execution of the following instruction if the current instruction in the addressed invocation signaled a size exception or a floating-point inexact result exception.

**Note:** The previous condition does not apply if any of the above exceptions were explicitly signaled by a Signal Exception instruction.

A Return From Exception instruction cannot be used or recognized in conjunction with a branch point internal exception handler.

If a failure to invoke an invocation exit handler occurs, a failure to invoke program event is signaled.

## Exceptions

| Exception          | Operands |       |
|--------------------|----------|-------|
|                    | 1        | Other |
| 06      Addressing |          |       |

| Exception |   | Operands |       |
|-----------|---|----------|-------|
|           |   | 1        | Other |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                       | X        |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment                               | X        |       |
|           | 03 range  | X        |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                 | X        |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                                  |          |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                    | X        |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                                  |          |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                       | X        | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                     | X        | X     |
| 16        | Exception management                                |          |       |
|           | 03 invalid invocation                               | X        |       |
|           | 04 retry/resume invalid                             | X        |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                         |          |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                   |          | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                                     |          |       |
|           | 02 machine check                                    |          | X     |
|           | 03 function check                                   |          | X     |
| 22        | Object access                                       |          |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                                 | X        |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                                 | X        |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                                |          | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                               |          |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                           | X        |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                             | X        |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                                   |          |       |
|           | 01 return instruction invalid                       |          | X     |
|           | 12 activation group access protection violation     | X        |       |
|           | 1A invocation offset outside range of current stack | X        |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                              |          |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded              |          | X     |
| 36        | Space management                                    |          |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                       |          | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                              |          |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid                           | X        |       |

## Sense Exception Description (SNSEXCPD)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1          | Operand 2           | Operand 3          |
|---------------|--------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| 03E3          | Attribute receiver | Invocation template | Exception template |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* Space pointer.

*Operand 3:* Space pointer.

**Note:** A change has been made in the way in which exceptions are handled for bound programs. This instruction is intended for use with Original Program Model (OPM) programs, but can be used against New Program Model (NPM) bound programs. The data that is returned when an NPM program is accessed will always say that there is an external handler for the sensed exception, that there is no exception data being returned and a starting exception description number of 0.

**Description:** The Sense Exception Description instruction searches the invocation specified by operand 2 for an exception description that matches the *exception identifier* and *compare value* specified by operand 3 and returns the *user data* and *exception handling action* specified in the exception description. The exception descriptions of the invocation are searched in ascending Object Definition Table (ODT) number sequence.

The template identified by operand 1 must be 16-byte aligned.

The format of the attribute receiver is as follows:

- Template size Char(8)
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Bin(4)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Control flags Char(2)
  - Exception handling action Bits 0-2
    - 000 = Do not handle- Ignore occurrence of exception and continue processing
    - 010 = Do not handle- Continue search for an exception description by resignaling the exception to the immediately preceding invocation
    - 100 = Defer handling- Save exception data for later exception handling
    - 101 = Pass control to the specified exception handler
  - No data Bit 3
    - 0 = Exception data is returned
    - 1 = Exception data is not returned
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 4
  - User data indicator Bit 5
    - 0 = User data not present
    - 1 = User data present
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 6-7
  - Exception handler type Bits 8-9
    - 00 = External entry point
    - 01 = Internal entry point
    - 10 = Branch point

- |   |               |
|---|---------------|
| – Reserved (binary 0)   | Bits 10-15    |
| • Relative exception description number                                       | Bin(2)        |
| • Reserved (binary 0)   | Char(4)       |
| • Pointer to user data (binary 0 if value of <i>user data indicator</i> is 0) | Space pointer |

The first 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes provided** for use by the instruction. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than 8 causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception to be signaled.

The second 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes available** to be materialized. The instruction materializes as many bytes as can be contained in the area specified as the receiver. If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested, then the excess bytes are unchanged. No exception is signaled in the event the receiver contains insufficient area for the materialization, other than the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception described previously.

The **relative exception description number** field identifies the relative number of the exception description that matched the search criteria. The order of definition of the exception descriptions in the ODT determines the value of the index. A value of 1 indicates that the first exception description defined in the ODT matched the search criteria.

The format of the invocation template is as follows:

- |   |                          |
|---|--------------------------|
| • Invocation address/offset                   | Space/Invocation pointer |
| • Search flags                                | Char(2)                  |
| – Use offset option                           | Bit 0                    |
| 0 = Use invocation address as a pointer value |                          |
| 1 = Use invocation address as an offset value |                          |
| – Reserved (binary 0)                         | Bits 1-15                |
| • First exception description to search       | Bin(2)                   |

The template identified by operand 2 must be 16-byte aligned. The **invocation address/offset** field is a space/invocation pointer that identifies the invocation to be searched. The invocation is searched for a matching exception description. If the *invocation address* locates either an invalid invocation or the invocation stack base entry, the *invalid invocation address* (hex 1603) exception is signaled.

The *invocation address/offset* field can also be an offset value from the current requesting invocation to the invocation to be searched. This is setting the **use offset option** bit field that follows the *invocation address* field to 1. If the *invocation offset* value locates the invocation stack base entry, the *invocation offset outside range of current stack* (hex 2C1A) exception is signaled. If the *invocation offset* value is positive or zero, a *template value invalid* (hex 3803) exception is signaled.

The **first exception description to search** field specifies the relative number of the exception description to be used to start the search. The number must be a nonzero positive binary number determined by the order of definition of exception descriptions in the ODT. A value of 1 indicates that the first exception description in the invocation is to be used to begin the search. If the value is greater than the number of exception descriptions for the invocation, the operand 1 template is materialized with the *number of bytes available* for materialization set to 0.

The operand 3 exception template specifies the exception-related data to be used as a search argument. The format of the template is as follows:

- |                 |         |
|-----------------|---------|
| • Template size | Char(8) |
|-----------------|---------|

- Number of bytes provided for materialization (must be at least 44) Bin(4)
- Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)\*
- Exception identifier Char(2)
- Compare value length (maximum of 32) Bin(2)
- Compare value Char(32)

**Note:** Entries noted with an asterisk (\*) are ignored by the instruction.

The **exception identifier** in the exception description can be specified in one of the following ways:

Hex 0000 = Any exception ID will result in a match

Hex nn00 = Any exception ID in class nn will result in a match

Hex nnmm = Only exception ID nnmm will result in a match

If a match on *exception ID* is detected, the corresponding **compare values** are matched. If the *compare value length* in the exception description is less than the *compare value* in the search template, the length of the *compare value* in the exception description is used for the match. If the *compare value length* in the exception description is greater than the *compare value* in the search template, an automatic mismatch results.

If a match on *exception ID* and *compare value* is detected, the exception handling action of the exception description determines which of the following actions is taken:

**IGNORE** The operand 1 template is materialized.

**DISABLE** The exception description is bypassed and the search for an exception description continues with the next exception description defined for the invocation.

**RESIGNAL** The operand 1 template is materialized.

**DEFER** The operand 1 template is materialized.

**HANDLE** The operand 1 template is materialized.

If no exception description of the invocation matches the exception ID and compare value of operand 3, the number of bytes available for materialization on the operand 1 template is set to 0.

## Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 range                            | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage             |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage     |          |   |   | X     |
| 16        | Exception management                |          |   |   |       |

| Exception |   | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|---|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |   | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|           | 03 invalid invocation address                       |          | X |   |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                         |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                                    |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                                 | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                                 | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                                 | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                                |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                               |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                           | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                             | X        | X | X |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 1A invocation offset outside range of current stack |          | X |   |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                              |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded              |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                                |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                              | X        | X | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                                    |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                       |          |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                              |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid                           |          | X | X |       |
|           | 02 template size invalid                            |          |   | X |       |
|           | 03 materialization length exception                 | X        |   |   |       |

**Signal Exception (SIGEXCP)**

| Op Code (Hex)<br>SIGEXCP<br>10CA | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Attribute template | Operand 2<br>Exception data | Operand 3-4       |
|----------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>SIGEXCPB</b><br>1CCA          | Branch options    | Attribute template              | Exception data              | Branch targets    |
| <b>SIGEXCPI</b><br>18CA          | Indicator options | Attribute template              | Exception data              | Indicator targets |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* Space pointer.

*Operand 3-4:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** The Signal Exception instruction signals a new exception or resigns an existing exception to the process. Optionally, the instruction branches to one of the specified targets based on the results of the signal and the selected branch options in the extender field, or it sets indicators based on the results of the signal. The signal is presented starting at the invocation identified in the signal template.

The SIGEXCP instruction is a subset of the Send Process Message (SNDPRMSG) instruction. Additional parameters used in the SNDPRMSG instruction will be defaulted when the SIGEXCP instruction is used. See the SNDPRMSG instruction for more information about the complete set of parameters available when signalling an exception.

The template identified by operand 1 specifies the signal option and starting point. It must be 16-byte aligned in the space with the following format.

- |  |                          |
|--|--------------------------|
| • Target invocation address  | Space/Invocation pointer |
| • Signal option  | Char(1)                  |
| — Signal/resignal option   | Bit 0                    |
| 0 = Signal new exception.  |                          |
| 1 = Resignal currently handled exception (valid only for an external exception handler).                             |                          |
| — Invoke PDEH (process default exception handler) option   | Bit 1                    |
| 0 = Invoke PDEH if no exception description found for invocation.  |                          |
| 1 = Do not invoke PDEH if no exception description found for invocation (ignore if base invocation entry specified). |                          |
| — Exception description search control   | Bit 2                    |
| 0 = Exception description search control not present   |                          |
| 1 = Exception description present  |                          |
| — Reserved (binary 0)  | Bits 3-7                 |
| • Reserved (binary 0)  | Char(1)                  |



- First exception description to search

Bin(2)

The **target invocation address** pointer uniquely identifies the invocation to which the exception is to be signalled. Signalling directly to the PDEH can not be accomplished via this instruction. Support for this function is being provided in the SNDPRMSG instruction. If the *target invocation address* pointer locates neither a valid invocation entry nor the base invocation entry, the *invalid invocation* (hex 1603) exception is signaled.

The invocation which issued this instruction will be checked to ensure it has the proper authority to send an exception message to the target invocation. If the authority check fails, *activation group access violation* (hex 2C12) will be signaled. If the program associated with the invocation has defined an exception description to handle the exception, the specified action is taken; otherwise, the PDEH is invoked unless the **invoke PDEH option** bit is 1 (the exception is considered ignored). If the base invocation entry is addressed instead of an existing invocation, the PDEH will be invoked.

A change has been made to the way in which exception handlers are determined for bound programs. The following description relates only to the invocation of exception handlers related to OPM programs. In both instances the actions of signalling and handling have been broken apart.

**Note:**

Exception descriptions of an invocation are searched in ascending ODT number sequence. If the **exception description search control** control specified that an *exception description is not present*, the search begins with the first exception description defined in the ODT. Otherwise, the **first exception description to search** value identifies the relative number of the exception description to be used to start the search. The value must be a nonzero positive binary number determined by the order of definition of exception descriptions in the ODT. This value is also returned by the Sense Exception Description instruction. A value of 1 indicates that the first exception description in the invocation is to be used to begin the search. If the value is greater than the number of exception descriptions for the invocation, the *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception is signaled.

If an **exception ID** in an exception description corresponds to the signaled exception, the corresponding **compare values** are verified. If the *compare value length* in the exception description is less than the *compare value length* in the signal template, the length of the compare value in the exception description is used for the match. If the *compare value length* in the exception description is greater than the *compare value length* in the signal template, an automatic mismatch results. Machine-signaled exceptions have a 4-byte compare value of binary 0's.

An exception description may monitor for an exception with a generic ID as follows:

Hex 0000 = Any signaled exception ID results in a match.

Hex nn00 = Any signaled exception ID in class nn results in a match.

Hex nnmm = The signaled exception ID must be exactly nnmm in order for a match to occur.

An exception description may be in one of five states, each of which determines an action to be taken when the match criteria on the exception ID and compare value are met.

**IGNORE** No exception handling occurs. The Signal Exception instruction is assigned a resultant condition of ignored. If a corresponding branch or indicator setting is present, that action takes place.

**DISABLE** The exception description is bypassed, and the search for a monitor continues with the next exception description defined for the invocation.

**RESIGNAL** The search for a monitoring exception description is to be reinitiated at the preceding invocation. A resignal from the initial invocation in the process results in the invocation of the process default exception handler. A resignal from an invocation exit program results in an unhandled exception that causes process termination.

**DEFER** The exception description is signaled, and the Signal Exception instruction is assigned the resultant condition of deferred. If a corresponding branch or indicator setting is present, that action takes place. To take future action on a deferred exception, the exception description must be synchronously tested with the Test Exception instruction in the signaled invocation.

**HANDLE** Control is passed to the indicated exception handler, which may be a branch point, an internal subinvocation, or an external invocation.

If the exception description is in the ignore or defer state and if the Signal Exception instruction does not specify a branch or indicator condition or if it specifies branch or indicator conditions that are not met, then the instruction following the Signal Exception instruction is executed.

When control is given to an internal or branch point exception handler, all invocations up to, but not including, the exception handling invocation are terminated. Any invocation exit programs set for the terminated invocations will be given control before execution proceeds in the signaled exception handler.

When this instruction is invoked with the *Resignal* option, all invocations up to, but not including, the interrupted invocation are cancelled and the message is signalled to the next oldest invocation in the stack. This implies that the Return from Exception (RTNEXCP) instruction can no longer return to the invocation that issued the resignal request. Any cancel handlers set for the cancelled invocations will be given control before execution proceeds in the signaled exception handler.

If a failure to invoke an external exception handler or an invocation exit occurs, a failure to invoke program event is signaled. For each destroyed invocation, the invocation count in the corresponding activation entry (if any) is decremented by 1.

The template identified by operand 2 must be 16-byte aligned in the space. It specifies the exception-related data to be passed with the exception signal. The format of the exception data is the same as that returned by the Retrieve Exception Data instruction. The format is as follows:

- |   |          |
|---|----------|
| • Template size   | Char(8)  |
| — Number of bytes of data to be signaled<br>(must be at least 48 bytes) | Bin(4)   |
| — Number of bytes available for materialization                         | Bin(4)*  |
| • Exception identification  | Char(2)  |
| • Compare value length (maximum of 32 bytes)                            | Bin (2)  |
| • Compare value   | Char(32) |
| • Reserved  | Char(4)* |
| • Exception specific data   | Char(*)  |

**Note:** Entries shown here with an asterisk (\*) are ignored by the instruction.

Operand 2 is ignored if *signal/resignal option* is *resignal* because the exception-related data is the same as for the exception currently being processed; however, it must be specified when signaling a new exception.

The maximum size for *exception specific* data that is to accompany an exception signaled by the Signal Exception instruction is 65 503 bytes, including the standard exception data.

The following required parameters only available on the SNDPRMSG instruction will be given the following default values:

- Message status* - Log message + Retain + Action pending
- Initial monitor priority* - 64
- Interrupt class mask* - Message generated by Signal Exception instruction
- Source invocation* - invocation issuing SIGEXCP instruction

#### Resultant Conditions

- Exception ignored
- Exception deferred.

**Authorization Required:** The invocation which originated the exception must have proper activation group access to the target invocation. The following algorithm is used to determine this access.

1. The invocation which invoked the SIGEXCP instruction must have access to the invocation identified as the Originating Invocation.
2. The Originating Invocation must have access to the invocation identified as the Source Invocation or to the invocation directly called by the Source invocation.
3. The Originating Invocation must have access to the invocation identified as the Target Invocation or to the invocation directly called by the Target Invocation.

If any of the access checks fail then an *activation group access violation* (hex 2C12) exception will be signaled.

#### Exceptions

| Exception                             | Operands |   | Other |
|---------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|                                       | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06 Addressing                         |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation         | X        | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment                 | X        | X |       |
| 03 range                              | X        | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid   | X        | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                 |          |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation      | X        | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                 |          |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state         | X        | X | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage       | X        | X | X     |
| 16 Exception management               |          |   |       |
| 02 exception state of process invalid |          |   | X     |
| 03 invalid invocation                 | X        |   |       |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception        |          |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded     |          |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                    |          |   |       |
| 02 machine check                      |          |   | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                      |          |   |       |
|           | 12 activation group access violation   | X        |   |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid              | X        |   |       |
|           | 02 template size invalid               | X        |   |       |

## Test Exception (TESTEXCP)

| Op Code (Hex)<br>TESTEXCP<br>104A | Extender          | Operand 1<br>Receiver | Operand 2<br>Exception<br>description | Operand 3-4       |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------|
| TESTEXCPB<br>1C4A                 | Branch options    | Receiver              | Exception<br>description              | Branch options    |
| TESTEXCPI<br>184A                 | Indicator options | Receiver              | Exception<br>description              | Indicator options |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* Exception description.

*Operand 3-4:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

**Description:** The instruction tests the signaled status of the exception description specified in operand 2, and optionally alters the control flow or sets the specified indicators based on the test. Exception data is returned at the location identified by operand 1. The branch or indicator setting occurs based on the conditions specified in the extender field depending on whether or not the specified exception description is signaled.

Operand 2 is an exception description whose signaled status is to be tested. An exception can be signaled only if the referenced exception description is in the deferred state.

Operand 1 addresses a space into which the exception data is placed if an exception identified by the exception description has been signaled.

The template identified by operand 1 must be 16-byte aligned in the space and is formatted as follows:

- |   |                         |
|---|-------------------------|
| • Template size   | Char(8)                 |
| — Number of bytes provided for materialization  | Bin(4)                  |
| — Number of bytes available for materialization<br>(0 if exception description is not signaled) | Bin(4)                  |
| • Exception identification  | Char(2)                 |
| • Compare value length (maximum of 32 bytes)  | Bin(2)                  |
| • Compare value   | Char(32)                |
| • Message reference key   | Char(4)                 |
| • Exception-specific data   | Char(*)                 |
| • Source invocation address   | Invocation/Null pointer |
| • Target invocation address   | Invocation pointer      |
| • Signaling program instruction address   | UBin(2)                 |
| • Signaled program instruction address  | UBin(2)                 |
| • Machine-dependent data  | Char(10)                |

The first 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes provided** for use by the instruction. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than 8 causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception to be signaled.

The second 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes available** to be materialized. The instruction materializes as many bytes as can be contained in the area specified as the receiver. If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested, then the excess bytes are unchanged. No exceptions (other than the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception) are signaled in the event that the receiver contains insufficient area for the materialization.

If the exception description is not in the signaled state, the *number of bytes available* for the materialization entry is set to binary 0's, and no other bytes are modified.

| The **message reference key** field holds the architected value that uniquely identifies the exception message in a process queue space.

| The **source invocation address** field will contain a null pointer if the source invocation no longer exists when this instruction is executed.

The area beyond the *exception-specific data* area is extended with binary 0's so that pointers to program invocations are properly aligned.

If no branch options are specified, instruction execution proceeds at the instruction following the Test Exception instruction.

If the *exception data retention option*, from the exception description, is set to 1 (do not save), no data is returned by this instruction.

### Resultant Conditions

- Exception signaled
- Exception not signaled.

### Exceptions

| Exception                               | Operands |   |       |
|---|----------|---|-------|
|   | 1        | 2 | Other |
| 06 Addressing                           |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation           | X        |   |       |
| 02 boundary alignment                   | X        |   |       |
| 03 range                                | X        |   |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid     | X        |   |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                   |          |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation        | X        |   |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                   |          |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state           | X        | X | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage         | X        | X | X     |
| 16 Exception management                 |          |   |       |
| 01 exception description status invalid |          | X |       |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception          |          |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        |   |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        |   |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                 |          |   |       |
|           | 03 materialization length exception    | X        |   |       |

---

# Chapter 15. Queue Space Management Instructions

This chapter describes the instructions used for queue space management. These instructions are in alphabetic order. For an alphabetic summary of all the instructions, see Appendix A, "Instruction Summary."

|  |      |
|--|------|
| Materialize Process Message (MATPRMSG) | 15-3 |
|--|------|





**Materialize Process Message (MATPRMSG)**

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1                | Operand 2        | Operand 3       | Operand 4          |
|---------------|--------------------------|------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| 039C          | Materialization template | Message template | Source template | Selection template |

Operand 1: Space pointer

Operand 2: Space pointer

Operand 3: Space pointer or null

Operand 4: Space pointer

**ILE access**

```

MATPRMSG (
    receiver_template : space pointer;
    message_template  : space pointer;
    source_template   : space pointer; OR
                      null operand;
    selection_template : space pointer
)

```

**Description:** A message is materialized from a queue space according to the options specified. The message is located on a queue space queue specified by *operand 3*. The message is selected by the *operand 4* criteria. *Operands 1* and *2* contain the materialized information from the process message.

The template identified by *operand 1* must be 16-byte aligned. Following is the format of the materialization template:

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Template size specification                     | Char(8)*                                 |
| — Number of bytes provided for materialization  | Bin(4)                                   |
| — Number of bytes available for materialization | Bin(4)                                   |
| • Process queue space queue offset              | Bin(4)                                   |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                           | Char(4)                                  |
| • Time sent                                     | Char(8)                                  |
| • Time modified                                 | Char(8)                                  |
| • Interrupted invocation                        | Invocation pointer                       |
| • Target invocation                             | Invocation pointer, or<br>System pointer |
| • Original target invocation                    | Invocation pointer                       |
| • Source program location                       | Suspend pointer                          |
| • Target program location                       | Suspend pointer                          |
| • Originating program location                  | Suspend pointer                          |
| • Invocation mark                               | UBin(4)                                  |
| • Activation group mark                         | UBin(4)                                  |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                           | Char(8)                                  |

The first 4 bytes of the materialization template identify the total **number of bytes provided** for use by the instruction. This number is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. If the value is zero for this field, then the operand 1 template is not returned. A number less than 128 (but not 0) causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception.

#### **Queue space queue offset**

This value indicates which queue in the queue space a message resides on. A value of -1 will be returned if the message is on the external queue, and zero if the message is on the message log. If the message resides on an invocation queue this field will be zero.

#### **Time sent**

The value of the system time-of-day clock when the message was originally sent (Send Process Message instruction, Signal Exception, or message originated as a result of an exception).

#### **Time modified**

This value is initially equal to the *time sent* value. However, it can be modified by the Modify Process Message instruction.

#### **Interrupted invocation**

An invocation pointer that addresses the invocation which currently has this message as its interrupt cause. This pointer is null if the message is not an exception message.

#### **Target invocation**

An invocation pointer or system pointer that identifies which queue contains the message. If the message resides on an invocation queue, this field contains an invocation pointer that addresses the invocation whose invocation message queue currently contains the message. If the message does not reside on an invocation queue, then a system pointer to the Queue Space is returned. The *queue space queue offset* field indicates which queue on which the message resides, the message log or the external queue.

#### **Original target invocation**

An invocation pointer that addresses the invocation which originally was sent the message. This pointer is null if the original target invocation no longer exists.

#### **Source program location**

A suspend pointer which identifies the program, module, procedure, and statement where the source invocation was suspended (due to a CALL or some form of interrupt). If the message was originally sent as a non-interrupt message, then the source invocation is the one identified by the Send Process Message instruction, and the suspend point identified is the one that was current when that instruction was executed; otherwise the source invocation is the invocation for which the message was most recently an interrupt cause.

#### **Target program location**

A suspend pointer which identifies the program, module, procedure, and statement where the target invocation was suspended (due to a CALL or some form of interrupt). If the message is no longer in an invocation message queue, then this pointer reflects the invocation of the last (most recent) invocation message queue in which the message resided. This pointer is null if the message has never resided in an invocation message queue.

#### **Originating program location**

A suspend pointer which identifies the program, module, procedure, and statement of the Send Process Message instruction that sent the message. For messages sent by the machine, this pointer area contains a machine-dependent representation of the source machine component.

#### **Invocation mark**

If the message has ever resided on an invocation, this field will be non-zero. It contains the mark of the invocation where the message was last queued.

**Activation group mark**

If the message has ever resided on an invocation, this field will be non-zero. It contains the mark of the activation group which contains the invocation where the message was last queued.

The template identified by *operand 2* is used to contain the materialized message. It must be 16-byte aligned with the following format.

- Template size
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Bin(4)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Message type Char(1)
  - hex 00 = Informational message 0
  - hex 01 = Informational message 1
  - hex 04 = Exception message
  - hex 06 = Return/Transfer Control message
  - hex 07 = Return message
  - All other values are reserved.
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(1)
- Message severity Bin(2)
- Reply/Inquiry message reference key Char(4)
- Message status mask Char(8)
  - Log message Bit 0
    - 0 = The message is not queued to the Process Message Log.
    - 1 = The message is queued to the Process Message Log.
  - Inquiry Bit 1
    - 0 = Message will not accept a reply.
    - 1 = Message will accept a reply.
  - Reply Bit 2
    - 0 = Message does not represent a reply message.
    - 1 = Message represents a reply message.
  - Answered Bit 3
    - 0 = For messages with a *status* of *inquiry*, this indicates that a reply message has not been received.
    - 1 = For messages with a *status* of *inquiry*, this indicates that a reply message has been received.
  - Message being processed Bit 4
    - 0 = This value of the flag has no particular meaning.
    - 1 = For a *message type* of *exception*, this indicates that the interrupt is currently being handled.
  - Retain Bit 5
    - 0 = Message will be dequeued and its contents discarded when the following message status bits are FALSE: *Log*, *Message being processed*, and *Action pending*.
    - 1 = Keeps the message from being dequeued after all other message status bits are FALSE.

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Action pending</li> </ul>  | Bit 6      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0 = Indicates no actions are pending based on this message.</li> <li>1 = Indicates that the message is either an interrupt cause or is a Return, Return/Transfer Control message.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |            |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Invoke Process Default Exception Handler (PDEH)</li> </ul>   | Bit 7      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0 = Do not invoke PDEH.</li> <li>1 = Invoke PDEH, only valid if <i>message type</i> is <i>exception</i>.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  |            |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Error</li> </ul>   | Bit 8      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0 = No error has occurred in the sending of this message.</li> <li>1 = An error has occurred in the sending of this message.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  |            |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— PDEH previously invoked</li> </ul>   | Bit 9      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0 = PDEH has not previously been invoked for this message.</li> <li>1 = PDEH has previously been invoked for this message.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  |            |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Reserved (binary 0)</li> </ul>   | Bits 10-31 |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— User defined status</li> </ul>   | Bits 32-63 |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Interrupt class mask</li> </ul>  | Char(8)    |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Binary overflow or divide by zero</li> </ul> </li> </ul>   | Bit 0      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Decimal overflow or divide by zero</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  | Bit 1      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Decimal data error</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  | Bit 2      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Floating-point overflow or divide by zero</li> </ul> </li> </ul>   | Bit 3      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Floating-point underflow or inexact result</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  | Bit 4      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Floating-point invalid operand or conversion error</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  | Bit 5      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Other data error (edit mask, etc)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>   | Bit 6      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Specification (operand alignment) error</li> </ul> </li> </ul>   | Bit 7      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Pointer not set/pointer type invalid</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  | Bit 8      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Object not found</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  | Bit 9      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Object destroyed</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  | Bit 10     |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Address computation underflow/overflow</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  | Bit 11     |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Space not allocated as specified offset</li> </ul> </li> </ul>   | Bit 12     |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Domain/State protection violation</li> </ul> </li> </ul>   | Bit 13     |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Authorization violation</li> </ul> </li> </ul>   | Bit 14     |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Reserved (binary 0)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>   | Bit 15-28  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Other MI generated exception (not function check)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>   | Bit 29     |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— MI generated function check/machine check</li> </ul> </li> </ul>   | Bit 30     |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Message generated by Signal Exception instruction</li> </ul> </li> </ul>   | Bit 31     |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Send Process Message instruction</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  | Bit 32     |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Send Process Message instruction</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  | Bit 33     |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Send Process Message instruction</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  | Bit 34     |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Send Process Message instruction</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  | Bit 35     |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Send Process Message instruction</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  | Bit 36     |

|  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| — Send Process Message instruction   | Bit 37                         |
| — Send Process Message instruction   | Bit 38                         |
| — Send Process Message instruction   | Bit 39                         |
| — User defined   | Bits 40-63                     |
| • Initial handler priority   | Char(1)                        |
| • Current handler priority   | Char(1)                        |
| • Exception ID   | UBin(2)                        |
| • PDEH Reason Code   | Char(1)                        |
| • Reserved (binary 0)  | Char(1)                        |
| • Compare data length  | Bin(2)                         |
| • Message ID   | Char(7)                        |
| • Reserved (binary 0)  | Char(1)                        |
| • Max message data length  | Bin(4) <sup>1</sup>            |
| • Message data length  | Bin(4)                         |
| • Max length of message extension data   | Bin(4) <sup>1</sup>            |
| • Message extension data length  | Bin(4)                         |
| • Message data pointer   | Space pointer <sup>1</sup>     |
| • Message data extension pointer   | Space pointer <sup>1</sup>     |
| • Message format information   | Char(32)                       |
| — If the message is not a <i>return</i> or <i>return/transfer control</i> message. |                                |
| - Compare data   | Char(32)                       |
| — If the message is a <i>return</i> or <i>return/transfer control</i> message.     |                                |
| - Return handler identifier  | System or<br>Procedure pointer |
| - Reserved   | Char(16)                       |
| • Reserved (binary 0)  | Char(32)                       |

| The first 4 bytes of the message template identify the total **number of bytes provided** for use the instruction. This number is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A number less than 160 causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception.

#### | **Message type**

|     This value determines the type of the message. The type of message determines which *message status values* have meaning.

|     The following *message status* are valid for all *informational message types*.

- |         • Log Message
- |         • Reply
- |         • Inquiry

|     The following *message status* are valid for a *message type* of *Exception*.

- |         • Log Message

---

| <sup>1</sup> Input to the instruction

- Retain
- Action pending
- Invoke PDEH
- Inquiry
- Reply

The following *message status* are valid for a *message type* of *return* or *return/transfer control*.

- Action pending

The following describes each *message type* in detail.

- *Informational 0* - There are no special requirements as to what message status contains or what the Target Invocation pointer actually identifies.
- *Informational 1* - There are no special requirements as to what message status contains or what the Target Invocation pointer actually identifies.
- *Exception* - This type of message has an *interrupt cause* for the *interrupted invocation*.
- *Return* - This message type indicates that a return handler will be invoked if the target invocation is exited for any reason other than Transfer Control (XCTL). In the case of XCTL, the message is preserved and associated with the transferred to invocation. Additionally, messages of this type interpret the *message format information* field to identify a program or procedure to be invoked as the return handler.
- *Return/Transfer control* - This message type indicates that a return handler is invoked when the target invocation is exited for any reason including XCTL. Additionally, messages of this type interpret the *message format information* field to identify a program or procedure to be invoked as the return handler.

#### **Message severity**

A value indicating the severity of the message.

#### **Reply/Inquiry message reference key**

If the message materialized is an *inquiry* message, that has been answered this is the *message reference key* of its reply message.

If the message materialized is a *reply* message, this is the *message reference key* of its inquiry message.

This value only has meaning for *exception*, and *informational* messages.

#### **Message status mask**

A bit-significant value indicating the original status of the message.

- **Log message** status. If this bit is TRUE, then the message is queued to the Process Message Log until it is explicitly removed.
- **Inquiry** status. If this bit is TRUE, then this message will accept a *reply* message.
- **Reply** status. If this value is TRUE, then this message is a Reply to an *inquiry* message. The *reply message reference key* is used to identify the message for which the message was replied.
- **Answered** status. If this value is TRUE, then the message is a inquiry message for which a reply has been sent. The *reply message reference key* is used to identify the reply message.
- **Retain** status. If this bit is TRUE, then the message is kept even in the invocation message queue after the following message status bits are FALSE: *Log*, *Message being processed*, and *Action pending*

- **Action pending** status. If this bit is TRUE, this message represents an exception which is the current interrupt cause for the specified Source Invocation or else it is a Return or Return/Transfer Control message which has not yet been processed.
- **Invoke Process Default Exception Handler**. This status only has meaning for *exception* messages.

## **Interrupt class mask**

A bit-significant value indicating the cause of the interrupt. The MI user is allowed to use the machine-defined classes since machine-generated errors may be re-sent by the MI user.

This value only has meaning for *exception* messages.

## **Initial handler priority**

An unsigned eight-bit binary number which selects the initial interrupt handler priority. This value is within the range of 64 - 255.

This value only has meaning for *exception* messages.

## **Exception ID**

A two-byte field that identifies the exception being defined by this message.

This value only has meaning for *exception* messages.

## **PDEH Reason Code**

A value defined by the user which indicates the type of processing to be attempted by the Process Default Exception Handler.

This value only has meaning for *exception* messages.

## **Compare data length**

A value indicating the number of bytes provided as compare data.

This value only has meaning for *exception* messages.

## **Message ID**

Specifies the message identifier of a message description whose predefined message is being sent.

## **Max length of message data**

Input to the instruction that specifies the number of bytes supplied for the message data. The maximum value allowed is 65504.

## **Message data length**

A value indicating the number of bytes of message data for this process message.

## **Max length of message data extension**

Input to the instruction that specifies the number of bytes supplied for the message data extension. The maximum value allowed is 65504.

## **Message data extension length**

A value indicating the number of bytes of message data extension for this process message.

## **Message data pointer**

A pointer to the area to receive the message data. This field is ignored if the *max length of message data* field is zero.

## **Message data extension pointer**

A pointer to the area to receive the message data extension. This field is ignored if the *max length of message data extension* field is zero.

## **Message format information**

A 32 byte field that contains either compare data or two 16 bytes fields which contain information related to a return type message.



- If *message type* is not a *return* or *return/transfer control* message, this field is defined as compare data used to determine which exception handler is to given control. Up to 32 bytes may be specified.
- If *message type* is a *return* or *return/transfer control* message, then the first 16 bytes of this field are defined as a *system pointer* to an *program* object, or else a *procedure pointer* to a New Model procedure. The last 16 bytes of the field are reserved for future use.

This value is ignored if the message does not represent an *exception*, *return* or *return/transfer control* message.

The template identified by *operand 3* specifies the source invocation of the message. This operand can be null (which indicates the requesting invocation is to be used for the Source Invocation) or specify either an Invocation pointer to an invocation, a null pointer (which indicates the current invocation), or a pointer to a Process Queue Space. It must be 16-byte aligned with the following format.

|   |                              |
|---|------------------------------|
| • Source invocation offset                      | Bin(4)                       |
| • Originating invocation offset                 | Bin(4)                       |
| • Invocation range                              | Bin(4)                       |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                           | Char(4)                      |
| • Source invocation/Process Queue Space pointer | Invocation/System<br>pointer |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                           | Char(16)                     |

#### **Source invocation offset**

A signed numerical value indicating an invocation relative to the invocation located by the *source invocation pointer*. A value of zero denotes the the invocation addressed by the *source invocation pointer*, with increasingly positive numbers denoting increasingly later invocations in the stack, and increasingly negative numbers denoting increasingly earlier invocations in the stack. If a Process Queue Space is specified as the message source, then the only valid values for this field are 0, -1 and -2. A value of -1 indicates to materialize from the external queue of the Process Queue Space. A zero value indicates to materialize from the message log of the Process Queue Space. A value of -2 indicates to attempt to locate the message using the *message reference index* supplied in operand 4 without regard to the queue space queue that the message resides on. Only unanswered *inquiry* messages, *return* messages, and *return/transfer control* messages can be materialized in this fashion. Other values result in a *scalar value invalid* (hex 3203) exception being signaled.

If the invocation identified by this offset does not exist in the stack, a *scalar value invalid* (hex 3203) exception will be signaled.

#### **Originator invocation offset**

Specifies a displacement from the invocation executing this instruction and must be zero (which indicates the current invocation) or negative (which indicates an older invocation). The invocation identified is used as the source for all authorization checks (environment authority to an invocation or authority to a process queue space). If the *originator invocation offset* is non-zero, then the invocation executing this instruction must be authorized to the originating invocation identified.

If the invocation identified by this offset does not exist in the stack or the value is greater than zero, a *scalar value invalid* (hex 3203) exception will be signaled.

**Invocation Range**

A signed numerical value indicating the number of invocations in the range in addition to the invocation identified by the Source invocation pointer. If a *Process Queue Space pointer* is provided, this value must be zero.

The sign of the *invocation range* determines the direction of the additional invocations. A positive number specifies a range encompassing newer invocations, while a negative number specifies a range encompassing older invocations.

It is not an error if this value specifies a range greater than the number of existing invocations in the specified direction. The materialization will stop after the last invocation is encountered.

**Source invocation pointer**

An *invocation pointer* to an invocation. If null, then the current invocation is indicated.

If the invocation identified does not exist in the stack or is invalid for this operation, an *invalid invocation* (hex 1603) exception will be signaled.

**Process Queue Space pointer**

A *system pointer* to a *Process Queue Space* object.

The template identified by operand 4 must be 16-byte aligned. Following is the format of the message selection template:

- |  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| • Starting message reference index             | Char(4)              |
| • Ending message reference index               | Char(4)              |
| • Number of selection criteria                 | Bin(2)               |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                          | Char(6)              |
| • Selected message reference index             | Char(4) <sup>3</sup> |
| • Selected message count                       | Bin(4) <sup>3</sup>  |
| • Status change count                          | Bin(4) <sup>2</sup>  |
| • Moved message count                          | Bin(4) <sup>2</sup>  |
| • Selection criterion                          | Char(32)             |
| — Selection type                               | Char(1)              |
| hex 00 = Select based on message status        |                      |
| hex 01 = Select based on message ID            |                      |
| hex 02 = Select based on interrupt class       |                      |
| hex 03 = Select based on invocation mark       |                      |
| hex 04 = Select based on activation group mark |                      |
| — Reserved (binary 0)                          | Char(1)              |
| — Selection action                             | Char(2)              |
| - Reject criterion                             | Bit 0                |
| 0 = Select message if criterion is satisfied   |                      |
| 1 = Reject message if criterion is satisfied   |                      |
| - Reject message                               | Bit 1                |

<sup>2</sup> Ignored by the instruction

<sup>3</sup> Output by the instruction

0 = Do not reject message if criterion is not satisfied

1 = Reject message if criterion is not satisfied

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| - Reserved (binary 0)  | Bits 2 - 15 |
| - Message type mask  | Char(4)     |
| - Selection criterion information                            | Char(24)    |
| If the <i>selection type</i> is <i>message status</i>        |             |
| - Message status mask  | Char(8)     |
| - Message status complement                                  | Char(8)     |
| - Reserved (binary 0)  | Char(8)     |
| If the <i>selection type</i> is <i>message ID</i>            |             |
| - Message ID   | Char(7)     |
| - Reserved (binary 0)  | Char(17)    |
| If the <i>selection type</i> is <i>interrupt class</i>       |             |
| - Interrupt class mask                                       | Char(8)     |
| - Interrupt class complement                                 | Char(8)     |
| - Reserved (binary 0)  | Char(8)     |
| If the <i>selection type</i> is <i>invocation mark</i>       |             |
| - Invocation mark  | UBin(4)     |
| - Reserved (binary 0)  | Char(20)    |
| If the <i>selection type</i> is <i>activation group mark</i> |             |
| - Activation group mark                                      | UBin(4)     |
| - Reserved (binary 0)  | Char(20)    |

#### **Starting and ending message reference index**

Messages in the specified range of index values are examined either until one of the selection criteria has been satisfied or all queues specified have been searched. The direction of search is determined by the relative values of Starting Message Reference Index and Ending Message Reference Index. If the former value is smaller, then the search direction is in numerically (and chronologically) increasing order, while if the latter value is smaller the search direction is in the opposite direction.

Messages are examined starting with the message identified by *starting message reference index*, or if no such message exists in the queue, starting with the closest existing message in the direction of the search.

If *operand 3* specifies a system pointer to a queue space and a *source invocation offset* of -2, then the *starting and ending message reference indices* must be equal, otherwise a *scalar value invalid* (hex 3203) exception will be issued.

#### **Number of selection criteria**

A numerical value that specifies how many selection criteria fields are supplied. If *number of selection criteria* has a value of zero, then the first message in the index range will be materialized.

#### **Selected message reference index**

This value returns the message reference index of the message materialized. Zero is returned if no message satisfies the criteria.

**Selected message count**

This value indicates the number of messages selected: zero for no messages found, one if a message was found.

**Selection criterion**

This field contains the data used to select messages from a queue space. There is a variable number of criteria present in the template (the number present is in the number of selection criteria field). Each selection criterion may select a message, reject it, or take no action. Successive selection criteria are applied to each message until it is selected or rejected, or until selection criteria have been exhausted (in which case selection is the default).

**Selection type**

This field indicates the format of the selection criterion and what field in the message is compared.

**Selection action**

A bit-significant value indicating what actions to perform during the selection criteria processing.

- **Reject criterion** - If this bit is TRUE, a message is rejected if the selection criterion is satisfied. If this bit is FALSE, then a message is selected when the selection criterion is satisfied.
- **Reject message** - If this bit is TRUE, a message is rejected if the selection criteria is not satisfied. If this bit is FALSE, then a message is selected when the selection criteria not is satisfied.

**Message type mask**

A bit-significant value indicating types of messages that should be examined during selection criteria processing. The first 31 bits correspond to message types hex 00 through hex 1E respectively. The 32nd bit (bit 31) corresponds to all message types greater than hex 1E.

**Message status mask and message status complement**

These are bit-significant values indicating the message status attributes that will allow a message to be selected. These values are used to test a message as follows:

The *message status complement* is bit-wise exclusive-ORed with the message status value of a message. The result of this is then bit-wise ANDed with the *message status mask*. If the result is all FALSE bits, then the message does not satisfy this selection criterion. If the result is not all FALSE, bits then the message satisfies the selection criterion.

**Message ID**

A character value that is compared to the message ID of a message. If the values are equal the selection is satisfied.

**Interrupt class mask and interrupt class complement**

These are bit-significant values indicating the interrupt class attributes that will allow a message to be selected. These values are used to test a message as follows:

The *interrupt class complement* is bit-wise exclusive-ORed with the interrupt class value of a message. The result of this is then bit-wise ANDed with the *interrupt class mask*. If the result is all FALSE bits, then the message does not satisfy this selection criterion. If the result is not all FALSE bits, then the message satisfies the selection criterion.

**Invocation mark**

A binary number that is compared to the invocation mark of a message. If the values are equal the selection is satisfied.

**Activation group mark**

A binary number that is compared to the activation group mark of a message. If the values are equal the selection is satisfied.

**Authorization Required:** The following algorithm is used to determine authorization.

1. The invocation which invoked the MATPRMSG instruction must have authority to the invocation identified as the Source Invocation.
2. The Originating Invocation must have authority to the invocation identified as the Source Invocation or to the invocation directly called by the Source invocation.

If any of the authority checks fail then a *activation group access protection violation* (hex 2C12) exception will be signaled.

- Operational
  - Operand 3
- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

**Lock Enforcement**

- Materialize
  - Operand 3
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

**Exceptions**

| Exception  | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 06 Addressing  |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation                              | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment                                      | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 03 range   | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid                        | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                                      |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation                           | X        | X | X | X |       |
| 0A Authorization   |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 unauthorized for operation                              | X        |   |   |   | X     |
| 10 Damage encountered                                      |          |   |   |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state                              | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage                            | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 1A Lock state  |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 invalid lock state                                      | X        |   |   |   | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception                             |          |   |   |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded                          | X        |   |   |   | X     |
| 04 object storage limit exceeded                           | X        |   |   |   |       |

## Materialize Process Message (MATPRMSG)

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X | X | X |       |
|           | 03 pointer address invalid object                            | X        |   |   |   |       |
| 2C        | Program execution  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 12 activation group access protection violation              |          |   |   | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 46        | Queue space management                                       |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 queue space not associated with the process               |          |   | X |   |       |



---

## Extended Function Instructions

These instructions provide an extended set of functions which can be used to control and monitor the operation of the machine. Because of the more complicated nature of these instructions, they are more exposed to changes in their operation in different machine implementations than the basic function instructions. Therefore, it is recommended that, where possible, programs avoid using these extended function instructions to minimize the impacts which can arise in moving to different machine implementations.





---

# Chapter 16. Context Management Instructions

This chapter describes the instructions used for context management. These instructions are in alphabetic order. See Appendix A, "Instruction Summary," for an alphabetic summary of all the instructions.

Materialize Context (MATCTX) . . . . . 16-3



## Materialize Context (MATCTX)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2  | Operand 3               |
|---------------|-----------|--|-------------------------|
| 0133          | Receiver  | Permanent context, temporary context, or machine context | Materialization options |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* System pointer or null.

*Operand 3:* Character scalar.

### ILE access

```

MATCTX (
    receiver           : space pointer
    var context        : system pointer; OR
                       null operand;
    var materialization_options : aggregate
)

```

**Description:** Based on the contents of the materialization options specified by operand 3, the symbolic identification and/or system pointers to all or a selected set of the objects addressed by the context specified by operand 2 are materialized into the receiver specified by operand 1. If operand 2 is null, then the machine context is materialized.

The materialization options operand has the following format:

- Materialization control Char(2)
  - Information requirements (1 = materialize) Char(1)
    - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 0-3
    - Extended context attributes Bit 4
    - Validation Bit 5
      - 0 = Validate system pointers
      - 1 = No validation
    - System pointers Bit 6
    - Symbolic identification Bit 7
  - Selection criteria Char(1)
    - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 0-2
    - Modification date/time selection Bit 3
      - 0 = Do not select by *modification date/time*
      - 1 = Select by *modification date/time*
    - Object ID selection Bits 4-7
      - Hex 0—All entries
      - Hex 1—Type code selection
      - Hex 2—Type code/subtype code selection

- Hex 4 – Name selection
  - Hex 5 – Type code/name selection
  - Hex 6 – Type code/subtype code/name selection
  - Hex E – Context entries collating at and above the specified Type code/subtype code/name selection
- |   |          |
|---|----------|
| • Length of name to be used for search argument | Bin(2)   |
| • Type code                                     | Char(1)  |
| • Subtype code                                  | Char(1)  |
| • Name  | Char(30) |
| • Timestamp                                     | Char(8)  |

The materialization control **information requirements** field in the materialization options operand specifies the information to be materialized for each selected entry. Symbolic identification and system pointers identifying objects addressed by the context can be materialized based on the bit setting of this parameter.

If the *information requirements* field is binary 0, the context attributes are materialized with no context entries. In this case, the *selection criteria* field is meaningless.

If the *information requirements* field is set to just return the **extended context attributes**, the context attributes and extended attributes are materialized with no context entries. In this case, the *selection criteria* field is meaningless.

If the **validation attribute** indicates no validation is to be performed, no object validation occurs and a significant performance improvement results.

When *no validation* occurs, some of the following pointers may be erroneous:

- Pointers to destroyed objects
- Pointers to objects that are no longer in the context
- Multiple pointers to the same object

The materialization control **selection criteria** field specifies the context entries from which information is to be presented. The **type code**, **subtype code**, and **name** fields contain the selection criteria when a selective materialization is specified.

When *type code* or *type/subtype codes* are part of the selection criteria, only entries that have the specified codes are considered. When a **name** is specified as part of the selection criteria, the N characters in the search criteria are compared against the N characters of the context entry, where N is defined by the **length of name to be used for search argument** field in the materialization options. The remaining characters (if any) in the context entry are not used in the comparison.

*Selection criteria* value hex 00, when the number of bytes provided in the receiver does not allow for materialization of at least one context entry, requests that as much of the context attributes as will fit be materialized into the receiver and that an estimate of the the byte size correlating to the full list of context entries currently in the context be set into the number of bytes available for materialization field of the receiver. This capability of requesting an estimate of the size of a full materialization of the context provides a low overhead way of getting a close approximation of the amount of space that will be needed for an actual materialize of all context entries. This approximation may be either high or low by a few entries due to abnormal system terminations.

*Selection criteria* value hex 00, when the number of bytes provided in the receiver allow for materialization of at least one context entry, and values hex 01 through hex 06 request that all context entries matching the associated *type code/subtype code/name* criteria be materialized into the receiver. The number of bytes available for materialization field is set with the byte size correlating to the full list of context entries that matched the selection criteria whether or not the receiver provided enough room for the full list to be materialized.

*Selection criteria* value hex 0E requests that as many context entries as will fit which collate at or higher (are equal to or greater) than the specified *type code/subtype code/name* criteria be materialized into the receiver. The number of bytes available for materialization field is set with the byte size correlating to the list of context entries that were actually materialized into the receiver rather than the full list that may have been available in the context.

If **modification date/time** selection is specified, then entries are selected according to the time of last modification in addition to any object identification selection specified. The **timestamp** in the materialization control is used to determine which entries will be selected. Entries with modification timestamps greater than or equal to the *timestamp* specified in the control will be selected. Besides the additional selection done as above, the materialize will work the same as specified in the other controls.

**Programming note:** If the specified timestamp is for a date/time earlier than the date/time currently associated with the changed object list, all objects in the context will be inspected for their modification date. This may degrade system performance.

The format of the materialization (operand 1) is as follows:

- Materialization size specification
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Char(8)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Context identification
  - Object type Bin(4)
  - Object subtype Char(32)
  - Object name Char(1)
  - Object name Char(1)
  - Object name Char(30)
- Context options
  - Existence attributes Char(4)
    - 0 = Temporary
    - 1 = Permanent
  - Space attribute Bit 0
    - 0 = Fixed-length
    - 1 = Variable-length
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 1
  - Access group Bit 2
    - 0 = Not a member of access group
    - 1 = Member of access group
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 3
  - Recovery options Bits 4-31
    - 0 = Do not rebuild at IMPL Char(4)

1 = Rebuild at IMPL

- Size of space Bin(4)
- Initial value of space Char(1)
- Performance class Char(4)
- Space alignment Bit 0
  - 0 = The space associated with the object is allocated to allow proper alignment of pointers at 16-byte alignments within the space. If no space is specified for the object, this value must be specified for the performance class.
  - 1 = The space associated with the object is allocated to allow proper alignment of pointers at 16-byte alignments within the space as well as to allow proper alignment of input/output buffers at 512-byte alignments within the the space.
- Reserved (binary 0) Bits 1-4
- Main storage pool selection Bit 5
  - 0 = Process default main storage pool is used for object.
  - 1 = Machine default main storage pool is used for object.
- Reserved (binary 0) Bit 6
- Block transfer on implicit access state modification Bit 7
  - 0 = Transfer the minimum storage transfer size for this object. This value is 1 storage unit.
  - 1 = Transfer the machine default storage transfer size. This value is 8 storage units.
- Reserved (binary 0) Bits 8-31
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(7)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(16)
- Access group System pointer
- Extended Context Attributes (if requested) Char(1)
- Changed object list Bit 0
  - 0 - A changed object list does not exist
  - 1 - A changed object list does exist.
- Useable changed object list Bit 1
  - 0 - Changed object list is in a useable state
  - 1 - Changed object list is not in a useable state
- Reserved (binary 0) Bit 2-7
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(7)
- Current timestamp Char(8)
- Context entry (repeated for each selected entry) Char(16-48)
- Object identification (if requested) Char(32)
  - Type code Char(1)
  - Subtype code Char(1)
  - Name Char(30)
- Object pointer (if requested) System pointer

The first 4 bytes of the materialization output identify the total **number of bytes provided** for use by the instruction. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than 8 causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception to be signaled. The instruction materializes as many bytes and pointers as can be contained in the receiver. If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested for materialization, the excess bytes are unchanged. No exceptions are signaled in the event that the receiver contains insufficient area for the materialization, other than the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception described above.

See the Create Context (CRTCTX) for a description of the common object creation fields.

The **context entry object identification** information, if requested by the *materialization options* field, is present for each entry in the context that satisfies the search criteria. If both *system pointers* and *symbolic identification* are requested by the *materialization options* field, the *system pointer* immediately follows the *object identification* for each entry.

The order of the materialization of a context is by object type code, object subtype code, and object name, all in ascending sequence.

### Authorization Required

- Retrieve
  - Operand 2

### Lock Enforcement

- Materialization
  - Operand 2

### Exceptions

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Space addressing violation                              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment                                      | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Range   | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid                        | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation                           | X        | X | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Unauthorized for operation                              |          | X |   |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine context damage state                            |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 04 System object damage state                              | X        | X | X | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage                            | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Invalid lock state                                      |          | X |   |       |



| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded                            |          | X |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check   |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check  |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 Pointer addressing invalid object                         |          | X |   |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 Scalar attributes invalid                                 |          |   | X |       |
|           | 03 Scalar value invalid                                      |          |   | X |       |
| 36        | Space management   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 Materialization length exception                          | X        |   |   |       |

---

## Chapter 17. Authorization Management Instructions

This chapter describes the instructions used for authorization management. These instructions are in alphabetic order. For an alphabetic summary of all the instructions, see Appendix A, "Instruction Summary."

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| Materialize Authority (MATAU)             | 17-3  |
| Materialize Authority List (MATAL)        | 17-7  |
| Materialize Authorized Objects (MATAUOBJ) | 17-12 |
| Materialize Authorized Users (MATAUU)     | 17-20 |
| Materialize User Profile (MATUP)          | 17-25 |
| Test Authority (TESTAU)                   | 17-29 |
| Test Extended Authorities (TESTEAU)       | 17-34 |



## Materialize Authority (MATAU)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2     | Operand 3                          |
|---------------|-----------|---------------|------------------------------------|
| 0153          | Receiver  | System object | User profile or<br>Source Template |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* System pointer.

*Operand 3:* System pointer or Space pointer data object or null.

### ILE access

```

MATAU (
    receiver                : space pointer;
    var system_object        : system pointer;
    var user_profile_or_source_template : system pointer OR
                                   space pointer OR
                                   null operand
)

```

**Description:** This instruction materializes the specific types of authority for a system object available to the specified user profile. The private authorization that the user profile specified by operand 3 has to the permanent system object specified by operand 2, and the object's public authorization is materialized in operand 1. If operand 3 is null, then only the object's public authorization is materialized, and the *private authorization* field in the materialization is set to binary 0.

Except for certain special cases, the authority to be materialized is determined by first checking for direct authority to the object itself, then checking for indirect authority to the object through authority to an authorization list containing the object. The first source of authority found is materialized and the source is indicated in the materialization.

The special case of the operand 3 user profile having *all object special authority* overrides any explicit private authorities that the user profile might hold to the object or its containing authorization list and results in a materialization showing that the profile holds all private authorities directly to the object.

The special case of the operand 2 object being in an authorization list which has the *override specific object authority* attribute in effect results in the authorization or lack of authorization held to the authorization list completely overriding the explicit private authorities that the user profile might hold to the object. This case results in a materialization showing that the profile has just the private authorities it holds or doesn't hold to the authorization list. That is, if the user profile has private authority to the object, but doesn't have private authority to the authorization list, the materialization will show that the user does not have any private authority to the object. Similarly, if the user profile has both private authority to the object and to the authorization list, the materialization will show that the user has only the private authority through the authorization list. If operand 3 is null, then only the object's public authorization is materialized, and the private authorization field in the materialization is set to binary zeros.

Operand 3 may be specified as a system pointer which directly addresses the user profile to be checked as a source of authority or as a space pointer to a source template which identifies the source user profile. Specifying a template allows for additional controls over how the materialize operation is to be performed. The format of the source template is the following:

- Source flags

Char(2)

- Ignore all object special authority Bit 0
  - 0 = No
  - 1 = Yes
- Reserved (binary 0) Bit 1-15
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(14)
- User profile System pointer

The **ignore all object special authority** source flag specifies whether or not that special authority is to be ignored during the materialize operation. When yes is specified, just the explicitly held private authority that the specified user profile holds either directly to the object or indirectly to an authorization list containing the object will be materialized. When no is specified, the authority provided by all object special authority, if held by the source user profile, is included and results in a materialization showing that the profile holds all private authorities directly to the object. No is the default for this flag value when the source template is not specified.

The **user profile** field specifies the user profile to be checked as a source of authority.

The format of the materialization (operand 1) is as follows:

- Materialization size specification Char(8)
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Bin(4)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)  
(contains a value of 16 for this instruction)
- Private authorization (1 = authorized) Char(2)
  - Object control Bit 0
  - Object management Bit 1
  - Authorized pointer Bit 2
  - Space authority Bit 3
  - Retrieve Bit 4
  - Insert Bit 5
  - Delete Bit 6
  - Update Bit 7
  - Ownership (1 = yes) Bit 8
  - Excluded Bit 9
  - Authority List management Bit 10
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 11-15
- Public authorization (1 = authorized) Char(2)
  - Object control Bit 0
  - Object management Bit 1
  - Authorized pointer Bit 2
  - Space authority Bit 3
  - Retrieve Bit 4
  - Insert Bit 5
  - Delete Bit 6

- Update Bit 7
- Reserved (binary 0) Bit 8
- Excluded Bit 9
- Authority List management Bit 10
- Reserved (binary 0) Bit 11-15
- Private authorization source UBin(2)
  - 0 = authority to object
  - 1 = authority to authorization list
- Public authorization source UBin(2)
  - 0 = authority from object
  - 1 = authority from authorization list

The first 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes provided** for use by the instruction. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than 8 causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception.

The second 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes available** to be materialized (16 for this instruction). The instruction materializes as many bytes as can be contained in the area specified as the receiver. If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested, then the excess bytes are unchanged. No exceptions (other than the materialization length exception) are signaled in the event that the receiver contains insufficient area for the materialization.

Any of the four authorizations- **retrieve**, **insert**, **delete**, or **update**-constitute operational authority.

If this instruction references a temporary object, all public authority states are materialized. Private authority states are not materialized.

## Authorization Required

- Operational
  - Operand 3
- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

## Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Operand 2
  - Operand 3
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

## Exceptions

| Exception                     | Operands |   |   |       |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                               | 1        | 2 | 3 | Other |
| 06 Addressing                 |          |   |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment         | X        | X | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|           | 03 range   | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                          | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                             | X        | X | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                                |          | X | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine context damage state                              |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 04 system object damage state                                | X        | X | X | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  |          | X | X |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 pointer addressing invalid object                         |          | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 materialization length exception                          | X        |   |   |       |

## Materialize Authority List (MATAL)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2          | Operand 3               |
|---------------|-----------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 01B3          | Receiver  | Authorization List | Materialization Options |

Operand 1: Space pointer.

Operand 2: System pointer.

Operand 3: Space pointer.

### ILE access

```

MATAL (
  receiver           : space pointer
  var authorization_list : system pointer
  materialization_options : space pointer
)

```

**Description:** Based on the contents of the materialization options specified by operand 3, the symbolic identification and/or system pointers to all or a selected set of the objects contained in the authorization list specified by operand 2 are materialized into the receiver specified by operand 1.

The materialization options operand has the following format:

- Materialization control Char(2)
  - Information requirements Char(1)
    - 12 = Materialize count of entries matching the criteria.
    - 22 = Materialize identification of entries matching the criteria and return information using short description format
    - 32 = Materialize identification of entries matching the criteria and return information using long description format
  - Selection criteria Char(1)
    - 00 = All authorization list entries
    - 01 = Type code selection
    - 02 = Type code/subtype code selection
- Reserved (binary 0) Bin(2)
- Type code Char(1)
- Subtype code Char(1)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(30)

The **information requirements** field specifies the type of materialization, just a *count of entries*, *short descriptions*, or *long descriptions*, which is being requested.

The **selection criteria** field specifies the criteria to be used in selecting the authorization list entries for which information is to be presented. The **type code** and **subtype code** fields contain the selection criteria when a selective materialization is specified.



When *type code* or *type/subtype codes* are part of the selection criteria, only entries that have the specified codes are considered.

The format of the materialization (operand 1) is as follows:

|   |                |
|---|----------------|
| • Materialization size specification            | Char(8)        |
| — Number of bytes provided for materialization  | Bin(4)         |
| — Number of bytes available for materialization | Bin(4)         |
| • Authorization List identification             | Char(32)       |
| — Object type                                   | Char(1)        |
| — Object subtype                                | Char(1)        |
| — Object name                                   | Char(30)       |
| • Authorization List creation options           | Char(4)        |
| — Existence attributes                          | Bit 0          |
| 1 = Permanent (always permanent)                |                |
| — Space attribute                               | Bit 1          |
| 0 = Fixed length                                |                |
| 1 = Variable length                             |                |
| — Reserved (binary 0)                           | Bit 2-31       |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                           | Char(4)        |
| • Size of space                                 | Bin(4)         |
| • Initial value of space                        | Char(1)        |
| • Performance class                             | Char(4)        |
| • Reserved                                      | Char(7)        |
| • Context                                       | System pointer |
| • Reserved                                      | Char(16)       |
| • Authorization List attributes                 | Char(4)        |
| — Override specific object authority            | Bit 0          |
| 0 = No  |                |
| 1 = Yes   |                |
| — Reserved (binary 0)                           | Bit 1-31       |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                           | Char(28)       |
| • Entries header                                | Char(16)       |
| — Number of entries available                   | UBin(4)        |
| — Reserved                                      | Char(12)       |

If no description (*information requirements* = hex 12) is requested in the materialization options parameter, the above constitutes the information available for materialization. If a description (short or long) is requested by the materialization options operand, a description entry is present (assuming a sufficient size receiver) for each object materialized into the receiver. Either of the following entry formats may be selected.

|                           |          |
|---------------------------|----------|
| • Short description entry | Char(32) |
|---------------------------|----------|

|                              |                |
|------------------------------|----------------|
| — Type code                  | Char(1)        |
| — Subtype code               | Char(1)        |
| — Reserved                   | Char(14)       |
| — System object              | System pointer |
| • Long description entry     | Char(128)      |
| — Type code                  | Char(1)        |
| — Subtype code               | Char(1)        |
| — Object name                | Char(30)       |
| — Reserved                   | Char(16)       |
| — System object              | System pointer |
| — Object owning user profile | System pointer |
| — Context                    | Char(48)       |
| - Type code                  | Char(1)        |
| - Subtype code               | Char(1)        |
| - Context name               | Char(30)       |
| - Context pointer            | System pointer |

The first four bytes of the materialization output identify the total **number of bytes provided** for use by the instruction. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than 8 causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception to be signaled.

The second 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes available** to be materialized. The instruction materializes as many bytes and pointers as can be contained in the receiver. If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested for materialization, the excess bytes are unchanged. No exceptions are signaled in the event that the receiver contains insufficient area for the materialization, other than the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception signaled above.

Refer to the Create Authorization List instruction for a discussion of the creation attributes materialized in the above template.

The **number of entries available** field specifies the number of authorization list entries which satisfied the selection criteria and were therefore materialized. A value of zero indicates no entries were available.

The object identification information (in the short and long description entries), if requested by the materialization options parameter, is present for each entry in the authorization list that satisfies the search criteria.

The object pointer information (in the long description entry only), if requested by the materialization options parameter, is present for each entry in the authorization list that satisfies the search criteria.

If the object addressed by the system pointer is not addressed by a context, the *context type* field is set to hex 00 or if the object is addressed by the machine context, the *context type* field is set to hex 81. Additionally, in either of these cases, the *context pointer* is set to the system default "pointer does not exist" value.

**Authorization Required**

- Retrieve  
Operand 2

**Lock Enforcement**

- Materialization  
Operand 2

**Exceptions**

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06        | addressing   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                                | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment violation                              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 range   | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                          | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                             | X        | X | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                                |          | X |   |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage                                      |          | X |   | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              |          |   |   | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  |          | X |   |       |
| 1C        | Machine dependent exception                                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          | X |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|           | 03 pointer addressing invalid object   |          | X |   |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 scalar attributes invalid           |          |   | X |       |
|           | 03 scalar value invalid                |          |   | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 materialization length              | X        |   |   |       |

## Materialize Authorized Objects (MATAUOBJ)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2    | Operand 3                        |
|---------------|-----------|--------------|----------------------------------|
| 013B          | Receiver  | User profile | Materialization options/template |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* System pointer.

*Operand 3:* Character scalar (fixed length).

### ILE access

```

MATAUOBJ (
    receiver           : space pointer;
    var user_profile   : system pointer;
    var materialization_options : aggregate
)

```

**Description:** This instruction materializes the identification and the system pointers to all or selected system objects that are privately owned and/or authorized by a specified user profile. For the user profile (operand 2), the materialization options (operand 3) specify object selection criteria and the format and location of the object materialization data. The receiver space (operand 1) always indicates the number of objects materialized, and contains the object materialization data unless the materialization options specify an independent index to contain the data.

When the high-order bit of the materialization options is off, operand 3 is viewed as a Char(1) scalar. This option does not permit object selection by type and subtype, does not allow a continuation point to be specified, and returns all object materialization data in the receiver (operand 1). Following are the valid operand 3 values which may be used with the short template header format (operand 1):

| Value (hex) | Meaning  |
|-------------|--|
| 11          | Materialize count of owned objects.  |
| 12          | Materialize count of authorized objects.   |
| 13          | Materialize count of all authorized and owned objects.   |
| 21          | Materialize identification of owned objects using short description entry format.                    |
| 22          | Materialize identification of authorized objects using short description entry format.               |
| 23          | Materialize identification of all authorized and owned objects using short description entry format. |
| 31          | Materialize identification of owned objects using long description entry format.                     |
| 32          | Materialize identification of authorized objects using long description entry format.                |
| 33          | Materialize identification of all authorized and owned objects using long description entry format.  |

Following are the valid operand 3 values which may be used with the long template header format (operand 1):

| Value (hex) | Meaning   |
|-------------|---|
| 51-53       | These long template header materialization options are the same as the short template header materialization options 11-13 (hex).   |
| 61-63       | These long template header materialization options are the same as the short template header materialization options 21-23 (hex).   |
| 71-73       | These long template header materialization options are the same as the short template header materialization options 31-33 (hex) except that the context extension is materialized for each object as well. |

When the high-order bit of the materialization options is on, operand 3 is viewed as variable-length, must be 16-byte aligned in the space, and has the following format:

- Materialization options Char(1)  
Valid values are hex 91-93, A1-A3, B1-B3, D1-D3, E1-E3, and F1-F3. They have the same meanings as the corresponding values hex 11 through 73.
- Materialization flags Char(1)
  - Restrict information dcope Bit 0  
This is an input bit which only has meaning when materialization data is being returned in the operand 1 receiver template. When there is more data to be materialized than can be contained in the template, then when this bit is *on*, the *number of bytes available for materialization*, the *number of objects owned by the user profile*, and the *number of objects privately authorized by the user profile* output fields are restricted to reflect only the information returned in the template; when *off*, the output fields reflect the total amount of materialization data available, even though the template may not be large enough to contain it all.
  - More materialization data available Bit 1  
This output bit has meaning only when materialization data is being returned in the operand 1 receiver template. When *on*, it indicates that objects exist beyond those for which materialization data was returned in the template; when *off* it indicates the end of the objects was reached.
  - Continuation point specified Bit 2  
This is an input bit. When *on*, it indicates that a continuation point is specified in the *continuation point* field; when *off*, continuation processing is ignored.
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 3-7
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(30)
- Independent Index pointer System pointer  
If the pointer does not exist, the instruction returns all object materialization data in the receiver (operand 1). Otherwise it returns only the template header in the receiver and returns the object materialization data in the independent index.
- Continuation point Char(16) or  
System pointer  
If the *continuation point specified* bit is *on*, when the instruction begins, if this field contains a system pointer or the storage form of a system pointer, then materialization data is returned for objects found in the profile following the object identified by the continuation point; otherwise, materialization data is returned beginning with the object which is logically first.
- Object type/subtype range array Bin(2) dimension

Indicates the number of *object type/subtype ranges* specified in the array immediately following. If zero, objects of all types and subtypes are materialized. If larger than zero, only objects included in one or more of the *type/subtype ranges* specified in the array are materialized.

- Object type/subtype array n \* Char(4)

An array of object type/subtype ranges qualifying the objects materialized. Each array element represents a range of *object type/subtypes* and has the following format:

- Start of range Char(2)
  - Object type code Char(1)
  - Object subtype code Char(1)
- End of range Char(2)
  - Object type code Char(1)
  - Object subtype code Char(1)

All materialization options for owned objects with descriptions (hex 21, 23, 31, 33, 61, 63, 71, 73, A1, A3, B1, B3, E1, E3, F1, and F3) also verify the user profile's storage utilization, unless the extended form of operand 3 is used and a valid continuation point is specified.

The order of materialization is owned objects (if requested by the materialization options operand) followed by objects privately authorized to the user profile (if requested by the materialization options operand). No authorizations are stored in the system pointers that are returned.

The template identified by operand 1 must be 16-byte aligned in the space. For options hex 11 through hex 33 and hex 91 through hex B3, the **short template header** is materialized. It has the following format:

- Materialization size specification Char(8)
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Bin(4)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Number of objects owned by user profile Bin(2)
- Number of objects privately authorized to user profile Bin(2)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(4)

For options hex 51 through 77 and hex D1 through hex F7, the **long template header** is materialized. It has the following format:

- Materialization size specification Char(8)
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Bin(4)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Number of objects owned by user profile Bin(4)
- Number of objects privately authorized to user profile Bin(4)

The first 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes provided** for use by the instruction. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than 8 causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception to be signaled.

The second 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes available** to be materialized. The instruction materializes as many bytes as can be contained in the area specified as the

receiver. If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested, then the excess bytes are unchanged. No exceptions (other than the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception) are signaled in the event that the receiver contains insufficient area for the materialization. If the *restrict information scope* flag is 1, then the field contains the number of bytes materialized, rather than the number of bytes available to be materialized.

If the **restrict information scope** flag is 1, then the *number of objects owned by user profile* and the *number of objects privately authorized by user profile* fields reflect the number of objects for which complete materialization data is returned, rather than the total number of such objects.

If no description is requested in the *materialization options* field, the above constitutes the information available for materialization. If a description (short, long, or long with context extension) is requested by the *materialization options* field, a description entry is present for each object materialized into the receiver (assuming it is of sufficient size) or into the independent index. Object materialization data is in one of the following formats depending on the materialization options and the object into which it is materialized:

- Short description entry materialized into receiver Char(32)
  - Object type code Char(1)
  - Object subtype code Char(1)
  - Private authorization Char(2)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(12)
  - Object pointer System pointer
- Long description entry materialized into receiver Char(64)
  - Object type code Char(1)
  - Object subtype code Char(1)
  - Object name Char(30)
  - Private authorization Char(2)
  - Public authorization Char(2)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(12)
  - Object pointer System pointer
- Long description entry with context extension materialized into receiver Char(112)
  - Object type code Char(1)
  - Object subtype code Char(1)
  - Object name Char(30)
  - Private authorization Char(2)
  - Public authorization Char(2)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(12)
  - Object pointer System pointer
  - Context type code Char(1)
  - Context subtype code Char(1)
  - Context name Char(30)



|   |                |
|---|----------------|
| – Context pointer   | System pointer |
| • Short description entry materialized into independent index                       | Char(32)       |
| – Entry type code   | Char(1)        |
| hex 40 = Owned object   |                |
| hex 80 = Authorized object  |                |
| – Object type code  | Char(1)        |
| – Object subtype code   | Char(1)        |
| – Private authorization   | Char(2)        |
| – Reserved (binary 0)   | Char(11)       |
| – Object pointer  | System pointer |
| • Long description entry materialized into independent index                        | Char(64)       |
| – Entry type code   | Char(1)        |
| hex 40 = Owned object   |                |
| hex 80 = Authorized object  |                |
| – Object type code  | Char(1)        |
| – Object subtype code   | Char(1)        |
| – Object name   | Char(30)       |
| – Private authorization   | Char(2)        |
| – Reserved (binary 0)   | Char(2)        |
| – Public authorization  | Char(2)        |
| – Reserved (binary 0)   | Char(9)        |
| – Object pointer  | System pointer |
| • Long description entry with context extension materialized into independent index | Char(112)      |
| – Entry type code   | Char(1)        |
| hex 40 = Owned object   |                |
| hex 80 = Authorized object  |                |
| – Context type code   | Char(1)        |
| – Context subtype code  | Char(1)        |
| – Context name  | Char(30)       |
| – Object type code  | Char(1)        |
| – Object subtype code   | Char(1)        |
| – Object name   | Char(30)       |
| – Private authorization   | Char(2)        |
| – Reserved (binary 0)   | Char(2)        |
| – Public authorization  | Char(2)        |
| – Reserved (binary 0)   | Char(9)        |
| – Object pointer  | System pointer |

— Context pointer

System pointer

Following is the format of the authorization information:

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| • Private authorization<br>(1 = authorized) | Char(2)    |
| — Object Control                            | Bit 0      |
| — Object Management                         | Bit 1      |
| — Authorized Pointer                        | Bit 2      |
| — Space Authority                           | Bit 3      |
| — Retrieve                                  | Bit 4      |
| — Insert                                    | Bit 5      |
| — Delete                                    | Bit 6      |
| — Update                                    | Bit 7      |
| — Ownership (1 = yes)                       | Bit 8      |
| — Excluded                                  | Bit 9      |
| — Authority List management                 | Bit 10     |
| — Reserved (binary 0)                       | Bits 11-15 |
| • Public authorization (1 = authorized)     | Char(2)    |
| — Object Control                            | Bit 0      |
| — Object Management                         | Bit 1      |
| — Authorized Pointer                        | Bit 2      |
| — Space Authority                           | Bit 3      |
| — Retrieve                                  | Bit 4      |
| — Insert                                    | Bit 5      |
| — Delete                                    | Bit 6      |
| — Update                                    | Bit 7      |
| — Reserved (binary 0)                       | Bit 8      |
| — Excluded                                  | Bit 9      |
| — Authority List management                 | Bit 10     |
| — Reserved (binary 0)                       | Bits 11-15 |

When context information is materialized, if the object addressed by the system pointer is not addressed by a context, the *context type* field is set to hex 00 or if the object is addressed by the machine context, the *context type* field is set to hex 81. Additionally, in either of these cases, the *context pointer* is set to the system default pointer does not exist value.

When the **more materialization data available** flag is 1, the pointer to the object within the last entry in the operand 1 receiver template may be specified as the continuation point on a subsequent invocation of this instruction, to cause materialization to continue, starting with the "logically next" object. To determine whether the continuation point is within the owned or authorized objects, the *ownership bit* in the private authorizations of the last materialized object may be tested. This instruction does not guarantee an atomic snapshot of the user profile across a continuation request.

The following considerations apply when object materialization data is returned in an independent index:

- System pointers returned in index entries are not set unless the index is created to contain both pointer and scalar data.
- Entry data may be truncated or padded on the right with hex zeroes to conform to the index's key and/or fixed entry lengths.
- An entry is added to the index for each qualifying object. Previously existing entries which are thereby duplicated are replaced.
- In order to ensure that index entries inserted within the same execution of this instruction are not duplicates of each other, the *index entry length* (if fixed) and *key length* (if keyed) must be sufficiently large to include the object pointer within the entry data.

## Authorization Required

- Operational
  - Operand 2
- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution
  - Operand 2 if materializing owned objects
- Insert
  - Independent index if identified by operand 3

## Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution
  - Operand 2 if materializing owned objects
- Modify
  - Independent index if identified by operand 3

## Exceptions

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment                                      | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 range   | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                           | X        | X | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                              |          | X | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine context damage state                            |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 04 system object damage state                              | X        | X | X | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object |          |   | X | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                            | X        | X | X | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  |          | X | X |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 object storage limit exceeded                             |          |   | X |       |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        |   | X |       |
|           | 04 object not eligible for operation                         | X        | X |   |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   | X | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 pointer addressing invalid object                         |          | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   | X | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 scalar value invalid                                      |          |   | X |       |
| 36        | Space management   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid                                    |          |   | X |       |
|           | 03 materialization length exception                          | X        |   |   |       |

## Materialize Authorized Users (MATAUU)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2     | Operand 3               |
|---------------|-----------|---------------|-------------------------|
| 0143          | Receiver  | System object | Materialization options |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* System pointer.

*Operand 3:* Character(1) scalar (fixed-length).

### ILE access

```
MATAUU (
    receiver                : space pointer;
    var system_object       : system pointer;
    var materialization_options : aggregate
)
```

**Description:** The instruction materializes the authorization states and the identification of the user profile(s). The materialization options (operand 3) for the system object (operand 2) are returned in the receiver (operand 1). The materialization options for operand 3 have the following format:

| Value (Hex) | Meaning  |
|-------------|--|
| 11          | Materialize public authority.  |
| 12          | Materialize public authority and number of privately authorized profiles.                                    |
| 21          | Materialize identification of owning profile using short description entry format.                           |
| 22          | Materialize identification of privately authorized profiles using short description entry format.            |
| 23          | Materialize identification of owning and privately authorized profiles using short description entry format. |
| 31          | Materialize identification of owning profile using long description entry format.                            |
| 32          | Materialize identification of privately authorized profiles using long description entry format.             |
| 33          | Materialize identification of owning and privately authorized profiles using long description entry format.  |

The order of materialization is an entry for the owning user profile (if requested by the materialization options operand) followed by a list (0 to n entries) of entries for user profiles having private authorization to the object (if requested by the materialization options operand). The authorization field within the system pointers will not be set.

The template identified by operand 1 must be 16-byte aligned in the space and has the following format:

- Materialization size specification
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Char(8)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Public authorization Bin(4)
- Public authorization Char(2)

(1 = authorized)

- |  |            |
|--|------------|
| – Object control                               | Bit 0      |
| – Object management                            | Bit 1      |
| – Authorized pointer                           | Bit 2      |
| – Space authority                              | Bit 3      |
| – Retrieve                                     | Bit 4      |
| – Insert                                       | Bit 5      |
| – Delete                                       | Bit 6      |
| – Update                                       | Bit 7      |
| – Reserved (binary 0)                          | Bit 8      |
| – Excluded                                     | Bit 9      |
| – Authority List management                    | Bit 10     |
| – Reserved (binary 0)                          | Bits 11-15 |
| • Number of privately authorized user profiles | Bin(2)     |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                          | Char(4)    |

The first 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes provided** for use by the instruction. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than 8 causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception.

The second 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes available** to be materialized. The instruction materializes as many bytes as can be contained in the area specified as the receiver. If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested, then the excess bytes are unchanged. No exceptions (other than the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception) are signaled in the event that the receiver contains insufficient area for the materialization.

If no description is requested by the *materialization options* field, the template identified by operand 1 constitutes the information available for materialization. If a description (short or long) is requested by the *materialization options* field, a description entry is present (assuming there is a sufficient sized receiver) for each user profile materialized or available to be materialized into the receiver. Either of the following entry types may be selected.

- |  |          |
|--|----------|
| • Short description entry                | Char(32) |
| – User profile type code                 | Char(1)  |
| – User profile subtype code              | Char(1)  |
| – Private authorization (1 = authorized) | Char(2)  |
| – Object control                         | Bit 0    |
| – Object management                      | Bit 1    |
| – Authorized pointer                     | Bit 2    |
| – Space authority                        | Bit 3    |
| – Retrieve                               | Bit 4    |
| – Insert                                 | Bit 5    |
| – Delete                                 | Bit 6    |

|  |                |
|--|----------------|
| - Update                                 | Bit 7          |
| - Ownership (1 = yes)                    | Bit 8          |
| - Excluded                               | Bit 9          |
| - Authority List management              | Bit 10         |
| - Reserved (binary 0)                    | Bits 11-15     |
| - Reserved (binary 0)                    | Char(12)       |
| - User profile                           | System pointer |
| • Long description entry                 | Char(64)       |
| - User profile type code                 | Char(1)        |
| - User profile subtype code              | Char(1)        |
| - User profile name                      | Char(30)       |
| - Private authorization (1 = authorized) | Char(2)        |
| - Object control                         | Bit 0          |
| - Object management                      | Bit 1          |
| - Authorized pointer                     | Bit 2          |
| - Space authority                        | Bit 3          |
| - Retrieve                               | Bit 4          |
| - Insert                                 | Bit 5          |
| - Delete                                 | Bit 6          |
| - Update                                 | Bit 7          |
| - Ownership (1 = yes)                    | Bit 8          |
| - Excluded                               | Bit 9          |
| - Authority List Management              | Bit 10         |
| - Reserved (binary 0)                    | Bits 11-15     |
| - Reserved (binary 0)                    | Char(14)       |
| - User profile                           | System pointer |

If this instruction references a temporary object, all public authority states are materialized. The privately authorized user and owner profile(s) descriptions are not materialized (binary 0).

## Authorization Required

- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution
- Object management or ownership
  - Operand 2 object (when object is not an authorization list)
- Authorization list management or ownership
  - Operand 2 object (when object is an authorization list)

**Lock Enforcement**

- Materialize
  - Operand 2
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

**Exceptions**

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                                | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 range   | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                          | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                             | X        | X | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                                |          | X |   |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                                | X        | X | X | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  |          | X |   |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification   |          |   |   |       |



## Materialize Authorized Users (MATAUU)

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|           | 03 scalar value invalid             |          |   | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                    |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation       |          |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification              |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 materialization length exception | X        |   |   |       |

## Materialize User Profile (MATUP)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2    |
|---------------|-----------|--------------|
| 013E          | Receiver  | User profile |

Operand 1: Space pointer.

Operand 2: System pointer.

### ILE access

```

MATUP (
    receiver      : space pointer;
    var user_profile : system pointer
)

```

**Description:** The attributes of the user profile specified by operand 2 are materialized into the receiver specified by operand 1.

The receiver identified by operand 1 must be 16-byte aligned in the space. The following is the format of the materialized information:

- |   |            |
|---|------------|
| • Materialization size specification            | Char(8)    |
| — Number of bytes provided for materialization  | Bin(4)     |
| — Number of bytes available for materialization | Bin(4)     |
| • Object identification                         | Char(32)   |
| — Object type                                   | Char(1)    |
| — Object subtype                                | Char(1)    |
| — Object name                                   | Char(30)   |
| • Object creation options                       | Char(4)    |
| — Existence attribute                           | Bit 0      |
| 1 = Permanent                                   |            |
| — Space attribute                               | Bit 1      |
| 0 = Fixed-length                                |            |
| 1 = Variable-length                             |            |
| — Reserved (binary 1)                           | Bit 2      |
| — Reserved (binary 0)                           | Bits 3-12  |
| — Initialize space                              | Bit 13     |
| — Reserved (binary 0)                           | Bits 14-31 |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                           | Char(4)    |
| • Size of space                                 | Bin(4)     |
| • Initial value of space                        | Char(1)    |
| • Performance class                             | Char(4)    |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                           | Char(7)    |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                           | Char(16)   |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| • Reserved (binary 0)                         | Char(16)   |
| • Privileged instructions<br>(1 = authorized) | Char(4)    |
| — Create Logical Unit Description             | Bit 0      |
| — Create Network Description                  | Bit 1      |
| — Create Controller Description               | Bit 2      |
| — Create User Profile                         | Bit 3      |
| — Modify User Profile                         | Bit 4      |
| — Diagnose                                    | Bit 5      |
| — Terminate Machine Processing                | Bit 6      |
| — Initiate Process                            | Bit 7      |
| — Modify Resource Management Controls         | Bit 8      |
| — Create Mode Description                     | Bit 9      |
| — Create Class of Service Description         | Bit 10     |
| — Reserved (binary 0)                         | Bits 11-31 |
| • Special authorizations<br>(1 = authorized)  | Char(4)    |
| — All object authority                        | Bit 0      |
| — Load (unrestricted)                         | Bit 1      |
| — Dump (unrestricted)                         | Bit 2      |
| — Suspend object (unrestricted)               | Bit 3      |
| — Load (restricted)                           | Bit 4      |
| — Dump (restricted)                           | Bit 5      |
| — Suspend object (restricted)                 | Bit 6      |
| — Process control                             | Bit 7      |
| — Reserved (binary 0)                         | Bit 8      |
| — Service authority                           | Bit 9      |
| — Auditor authority                           | Bit 10     |
| — Spool control                               | Bit 11     |
| — Reserved (binary 0)                         | Bit 12-23  |
| — Modify machine attributes                   | Bits 24-31 |
| - Group 2                                     | Bit 24     |
| - Group 3                                     | Bit 25     |
| - Group 4                                     | Bit 26     |
| - Group 5                                     | Bit 27     |
| - Group 6                                     | Bit 28     |
| - Group 7                                     | Bit 29     |
| - Group 8                                     | Bit 30     |
| - Group 9                                     | Bit 31     |

**Note:** Group 1 requires no authorization.

- Storage authorization Bin(4)  
The maximum amount of auxiliary storage (in units of 1024 bytes) that can be allocated for the storage of objects owned by this user profile
- Storage utilization Bin(4)  
The current amount of auxiliary storage (in units of 1024 bytes) allocated for the storage of objects owned by this user profile
- User profile status Char(2)
  - Verify storage utilization Bit 0 1 = Storage utilization has not been verified and may not be correct. The Materialize Authorized Objects instruction can be used to verify the storage utilization.
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 1-15
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(1)
- Object audit level Char(1)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 0-5
  - Audit object changes for this user Bit 6
  - Audit object reads for this user Bit 7
- User Audit level 1 Char(4)
- User Audit level 2 Char(4)
  - Audit program adoption (1=audit) Bit 0
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 1-31
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(4)

The first 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes provided** for use by the instruction. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than 8 causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception to be signaled.

The second 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes available** to be materialized. The instruction materializes as many bytes as can be contained in the area specified as the receiver. If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested, then the excess bytes are unchanged. No exceptions (other than the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception) are signaled in the event that the receiver contains insufficient area for the materialization.

The attributes that the instruction can materialize are described in the Create User Profile instruction.

## Authorization Required:

- Operational
  - Operand 2

## Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Operand 2

## Exceptions

| Exception |  | Operands |   |       |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | Other |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                                | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 range   | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                          | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                             | X        | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                                |          | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine context   |          |   | X     |
|           | 04 system object damage state                                | X        | X | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              | X        | X | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  |          | X |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 pointer addressing invalid object                         |          | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   | X     |
| 36        | Space management   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                                       |          |   |       |
|           | 03 materialization length exception                          | X        |   |       |

## Test Authority (TESTAU)

| Op Code (Hex)          | Extender             | Operand 1                                     | Operand 2                                | Operand 3                           | Operand [4-5]     |
|------------------------|----------------------|---|--|-------------------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>TESTAU</b><br>10F7  |                      | Available<br>authority tem-<br>plate receiver | System object<br>or object tem-<br>plate | Required<br>authority tem-<br>plate |                   |
| <b>TESTAUB</b><br>1CF7 | Branch options       | Available<br>authority tem-<br>plate receiver | System object<br>or object tem-<br>plate | Required<br>authority tem-<br>plate | Branch targets    |
| <b>TESTAUI</b><br>18F7 | Indicator<br>options | Available<br>authority tem-<br>plate receiver | System object<br>or object tem-<br>plate | Required<br>authority tem-<br>plate | Indicator targets |

*Operand 1:* Character(2) variable scalar (fixed length) or null.

*Operand 2:* System pointer or space pointer data object.

*Operand 3:* Character(2) scalar (fixed length).

*Operand 4-5:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

### ILE access

```
TESTAU (
  var receiver          : aggregate; OR
                        null operand;
  var system_object_or_template : pointer;
  var required_authority   : aggregate;
) : signed binary /* return_code */
```

The return code will be set as follows:

| Return_Code | Meaning         |
|-------------|-----------------|
| 1           | Authorized.     |
| 0           | Not Authorized. |

**Description:** This instruction verifies that the object authorities and/or ownership rights specified by operand 3 are currently available to the process for the object specified by operand 2.

If operand 1 is not null, all of the authorities and/or ownership specified by operand 3 that are currently available to the process are returned in operand 1.

If an object template is not specified (i.e. operand 2 is a system pointer), then authority verification is performed relative to the invocation executing this instruction. If an object template is specified (i.e. operand 2 is a space pointer), then authority verification is performed relative to the invocation specified in the template. Specifying an invocation causes the invocations subsequent to it to be bypassed in the authority verification process. This has the influence of excluding the program adopted user profiles for any of these excluded invocations from acting as a source of authority to the authority verification process.

The required authorities and/or ownership are specified by the required authority template of operand 3. This template includes a test option that indicates whether all of the specified authorities are required or whether any one or more of the specified authorities is sufficient. This option can be used, for example, to test for operational authority by coding a template value of hex 0F01 in operand 3. Using the *any* option does not affect what is returned in operand 1. If operand 1 is not null and the *any* option is specified, all of the authorities specified by operand 3 that are available to the process are returned in operand 1.

If the required authority is available, one of the following occurs:

- Branch form indicated
  - Conditional transfer of control to the instruction indicated by the appropriate branch target operand.
- Indicator form specified
  - The leftmost byte of each of the indicator operands is assigned the following values.
    - Hex F1- If the result of the test matches the corresponding indicator option
    - Hex F0- If the result of the test does not match the corresponding indicator option

If no branch options are specified, instruction execution proceeds to the next instruction. If operand 1 is null and neither the branch or indicator form is used, an invalid operand type exception is signaled.

The format for the available authority template (operand 1) is as follows: (1 = authorized)

- |                             |            |
|-----------------------------|------------|
| • Authorization template    | Char(2)    |
| — Object control            | Bit 0      |
| — Object management         | Bit 1      |
| — Authorized pointer        | Bit 2      |
| — Space authority           | Bit 3      |
| — Retrieve                  | Bit 4      |
| — Insert                    | Bit 5      |
| — Delete                    | Bit 6      |
| — Update                    | Bit 7      |
| — Ownership (1 = yes)       | Bit 8      |
| — Excluded                  | Bit 9      |
| — Authority List management | Bit 10     |
| — Reserved (binary 0)       | Bits 11-15 |

If operand 2 is a system pointer, it identifies the object for which authority is to be tested. If operand 2 is a space pointer, it provides addressability to the object template. The format for the optional object template is as follows:

- |                       |                |
|-----------------------|----------------|
| • Object template     | Char(32)       |
| — Relative invocation | Bin(2)         |
| — Reserved (binary 0) | Char(14)       |
| — System object       | System pointer |

The **relative invocation** field in the object template identifies an invocation relative to the current invocation at which the authority verification is to be performed. The value of the relative invocation field must be less than or equal to zero. A value of zero identifies the current invocation, -1 identifies the prior invocation, -2, the invocation prior to that, and so on. A value larger than the number of invoca-

tions currently on the invocation stack or a positive value results in the signaling of the *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception. The program adopted and propagated user profiles for the identified invocation and older invocations will be included in the authority verification process. Program adopted user profiles for invocations newer than the identified invocation will not be included in the authority verification process. If the current invocation is specified, its program adopted user profile is included whether or not it is to be propagated.

The **system object** field specifies a system pointer which identifies the object for which authority is to be tested.

The format for the required authority template (operand 3) is as follows: (1 = authorized)

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| • Authorization template                                      | Char(2)    |
| — Object control  | Bit 0      |
| — Object management   | Bit 1      |
| — Authorized pointer  | Bit 2      |
| — Space authority   | Bit 3      |
| — Retrieve  | Bit 4      |
| — Insert  | Bit 5      |
| — Delete  | Bit 6      |
| — Update  | Bit 7      |
| — Ownership (1 = yes)   | Bit 8      |
| — Excluded  | Bit 9      |
| — Authority List management                                   | Bit 10     |
| — Reserved (binary 0)   | Bits 11-14 |
| — Test option   | Bit 15     |
| 0 = All of the above authorities must be present.             |            |
| 1 = Any one or more of the above authorities must be present. |            |

This instruction will tolerate a damaged object referenced by operand 2 when the reference is a resolved pointer. The instruction will not tolerate damaged contexts or programs when resolving pointers. Damaged user profiles encountered during the authority verification processing result in the signaling of the authority verification terminated due to damaged object exception.

#### **Resultant Conditions**

- Authorized - the required authority is available.
- Unauthorized - the required authority is not available.

#### **Authorization Required:**

- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

#### **Lock Enforcement**

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

#### **Exceptions**



| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                                | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 range   | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                          | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                             | X        | X | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                                |          | X |   |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine context damage state                              |          | X |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                                | X        | X | X | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  |          | X |   |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X | X |       |
| 2C        | Program execution  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 invalid branch target                                     |          |   |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                                       | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 scalar value invalid                                      |          |   | X |       |
| 36        | Space management   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   |   | X     |

**Exception**

38      Template specification  
         01 template value invalid

| Operands |   |   | Other |
|----------|---|---|-------|
| 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|          | X |   |       |

## Test Extended Authorities (TESTEAU)

| Op Code (Hex)<br>TESTEAU<br>10FB | Extender             | Operand 1<br>Available<br>authority tem-<br>plate receiver | Operand 2<br>Required<br>authority tem-<br>plate | Operand 3<br>Relative invo-<br>cation | Operand [4-5]     |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|--|--|---------------------------------------|-------------------|
| TESTEaub<br>1CFB                 | Branch options       | Available<br>authority tem-<br>plate receiver              | Required<br>authority tem-<br>plate              | Relative invo-<br>cation              | Branch targets    |
| TESTEauI<br>18FB                 | Indicator<br>options | Available<br>authority tem-<br>plate receiver              | Required<br>authority tem-<br>plate              | Relative invo-<br>cation              | Indicator targets |

*Operand 1:* Character(8) variable scalar (fixed length) or null

*Operand 2:* Character(8) scalar (fixed length)

*Operand 3:* Binary(2) variable scalar (fixed length) or constant, or null

*Operand 4-5:*

- *Branch Form*-Branch point, instruction pointer, relative instruction number, or absolute instruction number.
- *Indicator Form*-Numeric variable scalar or character variable scalar.

### ILE access

```
TESTEAU (
  var receiver          : aggregate; OR
                        null operand;
  var required_authority : aggregate;
  var relative_invocation : signed binary; OR
                        null operand;
) : signed binary /* return_code */
```

The return code will be set as follows:

| Return_Code | Meaning         |
|-------------|-----------------|
| 1           | Authorized.     |
| 0           | Not Authorized. |

**Description:** This instruction verifies that the privileged instructions and special authorities specified by operand 2 are currently available to the process.

If operand 1 is not null, all of the privileged instructions and special authorities specified by operand 2 that are currently available to the process are returned in operand 1.

**Note:** The term *authority verification* refers to the testing of the required privileged instruction and special authorities.

If operand 3 is null, the authority verification is performed relative to the invocation executing this instruction. If an operand 3 is specified, the authority verification is performed relative to the invocation specified. Specifying an invocation causes the invocations subsequent to it to be bypassed in the authority verification process. This has the influence of excluding the program adopted user profiles

for any of these excluded invocations from acting as a source of authority to the authority verification process.

The required privileged instructions and special authorities are specified by the required authority template of operand 2.

If the required authority is available, one of the following occurs:

- Branch form indicated
  - Conditional transfer of control to the instruction indicated by the appropriate branch target operand.
- Indicator form specified
  - The leftmost byte of each of the indicator operands is assigned the following values.
    - Hex F1- If the result of the test matches the corresponding indicator option
    - Hex F0- If the result of the test does not match the corresponding indicator option

If no branch options are specified, instruction execution proceeds to the next instruction. If operand 1 is null and neither the branch or indicator form is used, an invalid operand type exception is signaled.

The format for the available authority template (operand 1) is as follows: (1 = authorized)

- Authority template
  - Privileged instruction template
    - Create Logical Unit Description
    - Create Network Description
    - Create Controller Description
    - Create User Profile
    - Modify User Profile
    - Diagnose
    - Terminate Machine Processing
    - Initiate Process
    - Modify Resource Management Control
    - Create Mode Description
    - Create Class of Service Description
    - Reserved (binary 0)
  - Special authority template
    - All object
    - Load (unrestricted)
    - Dump (unrestricted)
    - Suspend (unrestricted)
    - Load (restricted)
    - Dump (restricted)
    - Suspend (restricted)
    - Process control
    - Reserved (binary 0)

Char(8)

Char(4)

Bit 0

Bit 1

Bit 2

Bit 3

Bit 4

Bit 5

Bit 6

Bit 7

Bit 8

Bit 9

Bit 10

Bits 11-31

Char(4)

Bit 0

Bit 1

Bit 2

Bit 3

Bit 4

Bit 5

Bit 6

Bit 7

Bit 8

|                             |           |
|-----------------------------|-----------|
| - Service                   | Bit 9     |
| - Auditor authority         | Bit 10    |
| - Spool control             | Bit 11    |
| - Reserved (binary 0)       | Bit 12-23 |
| - Modify Machine Attributes | Bit 24-31 |
| • Group 2                   | Bit 24    |
| • Group 3                   | Bit 25    |
| • Group 4                   | Bit 26    |
| • Group 5                   | Bit 27    |
| • Group 6                   | Bit 28    |
| • Group 7                   | Bit 29    |
| • Group 8                   | Bit 30    |
| • Group 9                   | Bit 31    |

The format for the required authority template (operand 2) is as follows: (1 = authorized)

|                                       |            |
|---------------------------------------|------------|
| • Required authority                  | Char(8)    |
| - Privileged instruction template     | Char(4)    |
| - Create Logical Unit Description     | Bit 0      |
| - Create Network Description          | Bit 1      |
| - Create Controller Description       | Bit 2      |
| - Create User Profile                 | Bit 3      |
| - Modify User Profile                 | Bit 4      |
| - Diagnose                            | Bit 5      |
| - Terminate Machine Processing        | Bit 6      |
| - Initiate Process                    | Bit 7      |
| - Modify Resource Management Control  | Bit 8      |
| - Create Mode Description             | Bit 9      |
| - Create Class of Service Description | Bit 10     |
| - Reserved (binary 0)                 | Bits 11-31 |
| - Special authority template          | Char(4)    |
| - All object                          | Bit 0      |
| - Load (unrestricted)                 | Bit 1      |
| - Dump (unrestricted)                 | Bit 2      |
| - Suspend (unrestricted)              | Bit 3      |
| - Load (restricted)                   | Bit 4      |
| - Dump (restricted)                   | Bit 5      |
| - Suspend (restricted)                | Bit 6      |
| - Process control                     | Bit 7      |
| - Reserved (binary 0)                 | Bit 8      |
| - Service                             | Bit 9      |
| - Auditor authority                   | Bit 10     |

|                             |           |
|-----------------------------|-----------|
| - Spool control             | Bit 11    |
| - Reserved (binary 0)       | Bit 12-23 |
| - Modify Machine Attributes | Bit 24-31 |
| • Group 2                   | Bit 24    |
| • Group 3                   | Bit 25    |
| • Group 4                   | Bit 26    |
| • Group 5                   | Bit 27    |
| • Group 6                   | Bit 28    |
| • Group 7                   | Bit 29    |
| • Group 8                   | Bit 30    |
| • Group 9                   | Bit 31    |

The **relative invocation** operand (operand 3) identifies an invocation relative to the current invocation at which the authority verification is to be performed. The value of the *relative invocation* field must be less than or equal to zero. A value of zero identifies the current invocation, -1 identifies the prior invocation, -2, the invocation prior to that, and so on. A value larger than the number of invocations currently on the invocation stack or a positive value results in the signaling of the *scalar value invalid* (hex 3203) exception.

An immediate value is not allowed for operand 3.

The program adopted and propagated user profiles for the identified invocation and older invocations will be included in the authority verification process. Program adopted user profiles for invocations newer than the identified invocation will not be included in the authority verification process. If the current invocation is specified, its program adopted user profile is included whether or not it is to be propagated.

Damaged user profiles encountered during the authority verification processing result in the signaling of the authority verification terminated due to damaged object exception.

#### Resultant Conditions

- Authorized - the required authority is available.
- Unauthorized - the required authority is not available.

#### Authorization Required:

- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

#### Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

#### Exceptions

| Exception |                               | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |                               | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                    |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment         | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 range                      | X        | X | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                          | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                             | X        | X | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                                |          | X |   |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine context damage state                              |          | X |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                                | X        | X | X | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  |          | X |   |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X | X |       |
| 2C        | Program execution  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 invalid branch target                                     |          |   |   | X     |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                                       | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 scalar value invalid                                      |          |   | X |       |
| 36        | Space management   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid                                    |          | X |   |       |

---

## Chapter 18. Process Management Instructions

This chapter describes instructions used for process management. These instructions are in alphabetic order. For an alphabetic summary of all the instructions, See Appendix A, "Instruction Summary."

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| Materialize Process Activation Groups (MATPRAGP) . . . . . | 18-3  |
| Materialize Process Attributes (MATPRATR) . . . . .        | 18-5  |
| Wait On Time (WAITTIME) . . . . .                          | 18-18 |





**Materialize Process Activation Groups (MATPRAGP)**

|                      |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|
| <b>Op Code (Hex)</b> | <b>Operand 1</b> |
| 0331                 | Receiver         |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer

**ILE access**

```

MATPRAGP (
    receiver : space pointer
)

```

**Warning:** The following information is subject to change from release to release. Use it with caution and be prepared to adjust for changes with each new release.

**Description:** This instruction provides a list of the activation groups which exist in the current process. Operand 1 locates a template which receives information.

The materialization template identified by operand 1 must be 16-byte aligned in the space. This materialization template has the following format:

- Number of bytes provided for materialization Bin(4)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
  - Activation group count Bin(4)
  - Activation group list UBin(4)
- array(1..activation group count) of

The Materialize Activation Group Attributes instruction can be used to examine the attributes of an individual activation group.

The first 4 bytes of the materialization template specify the **number of bytes provided** for use by the instruction. In all cases if the number of bytes provided is less than 8 then a *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception will be signaled.

The second 4 bytes of the instruction indicate the actual **number of bytes available** to be returned. In no case does the instruction return more bytes of information than those available.

**activation group count**

This is the number of activation groups within the process. It is also the extent of the activation group list which follows.

**activation group list**

This is the list of activation groups which exist within the current process.

This is an array of activation group mark values. Each entry denotes an activation group currently existent within the process.

**Authorization:** n/a

**Lock Enforcement:** n/a

**Exceptions**

| Exception |                                     | Operands |       |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | Other |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation       | X        |       |
|           | 03 range                            | X        |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  | X        |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation    | X        |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                  |          |       |
|           | 44 partial system object damage     | X        | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception         |          |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded   |          | X     |
|           | 04 object storage limit exceeded    |          | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                     |          |       |
|           | 02 machine check                    |          | X     |
|           | 03 function check                   |          | X     |
| 38        | Template specification              |          |       |
|           | 03 Materialization length           | X        |       |
| 44        | Domain specification                |          |       |
|           | 01 Domain Violation                 | X        |       |

## Materialize Process Attributes (MATPRATR)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2             | Operand 3               |
|---------------|-----------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| 0333          | Receiver  | Process control space | Materialization options |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* System pointer or null.

*Operand 3:* Character scalar(1).

### ILE access

```

MATPRATR (
    receiver                : space pointer;
    var process_control_space : system pointer; OR
                           null operand;
    var materialization_options : aggregate
)

```

**Description:** The instruction causes either one specific attribute or all the attributes of the designated process to be materialized.

Operand 1 specifies a space that is to receive the materialized attribute values. The space pointer specified in operand 1 must address a 16-byte aligned area.

Operand 2 is a system pointer identifying the process control space associated with the process whose attributes are to be materialized. If operand 2 is null, the process issuing the instruction is the subject process. If the subject process's attributes are being materialized by another process, that process must be the original initiator of the subject process or the governing user profile(s) must have process control special authorization.

Operand 3 is a character scalar(1) specifying which process attribute is to be materialized. A value of hex 00 results in all the attributes of a process being materialized in the format described in the Initiate Process instruction for the process definition template. Other options allow materialization of specialized process attributes.

A summary of the allowable hex values for operand 3 follows.

|       |  |
|-------|--|
| 00    | Entire original PDT                                    |
| 01-0B | Entire Char(4) <i>process control attributes</i> field |
| 0C    | Signal event control mask                              |
| 0D    | Number of event monitors                               |
| 0E    | Priority   |
| 0F    | Main storage pool id                                   |
| 10    | Maximum temporary auxiliary storage allowed            |
| 11    | Time slice interval                                    |
| 12    | Default time-out interval                              |
| 13    | Maximum processor time allowed                         |
| 14    | Multiprogramming level class ID                        |
| 15    | Modification control indicators                        |
| 16    | User profile pointer                                   |
| 17    | Process communication object (PCO) pointer             |
| 18    | Process name resolution list space pointer             |

- 19 Initiation phase program pointer
- 1A Termination phase program pointer
- 1B Problem phase program pointer
- 1C Process default exception handler (PDEH) program pointer
- 1F Process access group pointer
- 20 Process status indicators
- 21 Process resource usage attributes
- 22 Subordinate processes identification attributes
- 23 Performance status attributes
- 24 Execution status attributes
- 25 Process control space system pointer
- 26 Adopted user profile list space pointer
- 27 Entire Char(4) *process control attributes* field
- 28 Process category
- 29 Queue space system pointer

Note that there exist differences in the operand 3 value definitions between this instruction and the Modify Process Attributes instruction.

The materialization template has the following general format when a process scalar attribute is materialized:

- Materialization size specification Char(8)
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Bin(4)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Process scalar attributes Char(\*)

The materialization template has the following general format when a process pointer attribute is materialized:

- Materialization size specification Char(8)
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Bin(4)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(8)
- Process pointer attribute System pointer  
or  
Space pointer

**Note:** The values of the entry associated with an asterisk (\*) are ignored by this instruction.

The following attributes require materialization targets of varying lengths. The attributes to be materialized and their operand 3 materialization option values follow.

- Process control attributes Char(4)
 

Values hex 01 through hex 0B or hex 27 cause the 4-byte process control attributes value to be placed in the byte area identified by operand 1. The individual attributes and the corresponding values are as follows:

  - Process type Bit 0
    - 0 = Dependent process
    - 1 = Independent process
  - Instruction wait access state control Bit 1
    - 0 = Access state modification is not allowed
    - 1 = Access state modification is allowed if specified

- Time slice end access state control
Bit 2

0 = Access state modification is not allowed

1 = Access state modification is allowed if specified
- Time slice end event option
Bit 3

0 = Time slice expired without entering instruction wait event is not signaled

1 = Time slice expired without entering instruction wait event is signaled
- Reserved (binary 0)
Bit 4
- Initiation phase program option
Bit 5

0 = No initiation phase program specified (do not enter initiation phase)

1 = Initiation phase program specified (enter initiation phase)
- Problem phase program option
Bit 6

0 = No problem phase program specified (do not enter problem phase)

1 = Problem phase program specified (enter problem phase)
- Termination phase program option
Bit 7

0 = No termination phase program specified (do not enter termination phase)

1 = Termination phase program specified (enter termination phase)
- Process default exception handler option
Bit 8

0 = No process default exception handler

1 = Process default exception handler specified
- Process NRL (name resolution list) option
Bit 9

0 = No process NRL specified

1 = Process NRL specified
- Process access group option
Bit 10

0 = No process access group specified

1 = Process access group specified
- Process adopted user profile list option
Bit 11

0 = No process adopted user profile list specified

1 = Process adopted user profile list specified
- Process category specified
Bit 12

0 = No process category specified when the process was initiated

1 = A process category was specified when the process was initiated
- Recycling control for process  
storage addresses used by user state programs
Bit 13

0 = Process storage addresses used by user state programs are not recycled within the process

1 = Process storage addresses used by user state programs are recycled within the process
- Implicitly created activation group's  
automatic storage access group membership control
Bit 14

0 = The machine is free to create automatic storage areas of implicitly created activation groups within the process access group

**Note:** This in no way guarantees that the automatic areas will in fact be access group members. This is an advisory flag informing the machine that the MI user would prefer these areas to be access group members.

1 = Implicitly created activation group's automatic storage areas will not be created within the process access group

- Implicitly created activation group's static storage access group membership control Bit 15

0 = The machine is free to create static storage areas of implicitly created activation groups within the process access group

**Note:** This in no way guarantees that the static areas will in fact be access group members. This is an advisory flag informing the machine that the MI user would prefer these areas to be access group members.

1 = Implicitly created activation group's static storage areas will not be created within the process access group

- Implicitly created activation group's default heap storage access group membership control Bit 16

0 = The machine is free to create default heap storage areas of implicitly created activation groups within the process access group

**Note:** This in no way guarantees that the activation group default heap areas will in fact be access group members. This is an advisory flag informing the machine that the MI user would prefer these areas to be access group members.

1 = Implicitly created activation group's default heap storage areas will not be created within the process access group

- Reserved (binary 0) Bits 17-31

- Signal event control mask

The materialization of the control mask is as follows:

- Hex 0C = Signal event control mask Char(2)

- Number of event monitors

The materialization of this attribute is as follows:

- Hex 0D = Number of event monitors Bin(2)

The resource management attributes and data types are as follows:

- Hex 0E = Process priority Char(1)
- Hex 0F = Process storage pool ID Char(1)
- Hex 10 = Maximum temporary auxiliary storage allowed Bin(4)
- Hex 11 = Time slice interval Char(8)
- Hex 12 = Default time-out interval Char(8)
- Hex 13 = Maximum processor time allowed Char(8)
- Hex 14 = Process multiprogramming level class ID Char(1)
- Hex 15 = Modification control indicators Char(8)

The *modification control indicators* are materialized when the operand 3 value is hex 15. Each indicator specifies the modification options allowed to a process upon itself by the initiating process. The possible values of each *modification control indicator* are as follows:

00 = Modification of the attribute is not allowed.

01 = Modification is allowed in the initiation or termination phases only.

11 = Modification is allowed in all phases (initiation, problem, and termination).

The bit assignments of the *modification control indicators* are as follows:

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| • Instruction wait access state control  | Bits 0-1   |
| • Time slice end access state control  | Bits 2-3   |
| • Time slice event option  | Bits 4-5   |
| • Reserved (binary 0)  | Bits 6-7   |
| • Problem phase program option   | Bits 8-9   |
| • Termination phase program option   | Bits 10-11 |
| • Process default exception handler option                                       | Bits 12-13 |
| • Process NRL option   | Bits 14-15 |
| • Signal event control mask  | Bits 16-17 |
| • Process priority   | Bits 18-19 |
| • Process storage pool identification  | Bits 20-21 |
| • Maximum temporary auxiliary storage allowed                                    | Bits 22-23 |
| • Time slice interval  | Bits 24-25 |
| • Default time-out interval  | Bits 26-27 |
| • Maximum processor time allowed   | Bits 28-29 |
| • Process MPL class ID   | Bits 30-31 |
| • User profile pointer   | Bits 32-33 |
| • Reserved   | Bits 34-35 |
| • Process NRL pointer  | Bits 36-37 |
| • Termination phase program pointer  | Bits 38-39 |
| • Problem phase program pointer  | Bits 40-41 |
| • Process default exception handler  | Bits 42-43 |
| • Process adopted user profile list  | Bits 44-45 |
| • Process adopted user profile list option                                       | Bits 46-47 |
| • Process category   | Bits 48-49 |
| • Recycling control for process<br>storage addresses used by user state programs | Bits 50-51 |
| • Reserved (binary 0)  | Bits 52-63 |

The process pointer attributes which may be materialized are the following:

- Hex 16 = Process user profile pointer

The system pointer with addressability to the user profile is placed into the space addressed by operand 1. If the materialization option (hex 00) is specified in operand 3, a reserved Char(9) field is included at this point. This user profile is the process user profile assigned by the Initiate Process or Modify Process Attribute instruction.

- Hex 17 = Process communication object (PCO) pointer

The PCO pointer is placed in the space addressed by operand 1.

- Hex 18 = Process name resolution list

The space pointer to the NRL is placed in the space addressed by operand 1.



- Hex 19 = Initiation phase program pointer

The system pointer to the program is placed in the space addressed by operand 1.

- Hex 1A = Termination phase program pointer

The system pointer to the program is placed in the space addressed by operand 1.

- Hex 1B = Problem phase program pointer

The system pointer to the program is placed in the space addressed by operand 1.

- Hex 1C = PDEH (process default exception handler program)

The system pointer to the program is placed in the space addressed by operand 1.

- Hex 1F = Process access group

The system pointer with addressability to the PAG is placed in the space addressed by operand 1.

- Hex 20 = Process status indicators

*Process status indicators* are materialized when the value of operand 3 is hex 20. The format and associated values of this attribute are as follows:

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| – Process states                               | Char(2)    |
| – External existence state                     | Bits 0-2   |
| 000 = Suspended                                |            |
| 010 = Suspended, in instruction wait           |            |
| 100 = Active, in ineligible wait               |            |
| 101 = Active, in current MPL                   |            |
| 110 = Active, in instruction wait              |            |
| – Invocation exit active                       | Bit 3      |
| – Reserved (binary 0)                          | Bits 4-7   |
| – Internal processing phase                    | Bits 8-10  |
| 001 = Initiation phase                         |            |
| 010 = Problem phase                            |            |
| 100 = Termination phase                        |            |
| – Reserved (binary 0)                          | Bits 11-15 |
| – Process interrupt status (1 = pending)       | Char(2)    |
| – Time slice end pending                       | Bit 0      |
| – Transfer lock pending                        | Bit 1      |
| – Asynchronous lock retry pending              | Bit 2      |
| – Suspend process pending                      | Bit 3      |
| – Resume process pending                       | Bit 4      |
| – Resource management attribute modify pending | Bit 5      |
| – Process attribute modify pending             | Bit 6      |
| – Terminate machine processing pending         | Bit 7      |
| – Terminate process pending                    | Bit 8      |
| – Wait time-out pending                        | Bit 9      |
| – Event schedule pending                       | Bit 10     |
| – Machine service pending                      | Bit 11     |
| – Cancel Long Running MI Instruction           | Bit 11     |

- Reserved (binary 0) Bits 13-15
- Process initial internal termination status Char(3)
  - Initial internal termination reason Bits 0-7
    - Hex 80 = Return from first invocation in problem phase.
    - Hex 40 = Return from first invocation in initiation phase, and no problem phase program specified.
    - Hex 20 = Terminate Process instruction issued by this process to itself.
    - Hex 10 = Exception was not handled by the process.
    - Hex 00 = Process terminated externally.
  - Initial internal termination code Bits 8-23
 

The code is assigned in one of the following ways:

    1. If the termination is caused by a Return External instruction from the first invocation, then this code is binary 0's.
    2. The code is assigned by operand 2 of the Terminate Process instruction. This code is also given to subordinate processes involved in the termination.
    3. The code is assigned by the original exception code that caused process termination to commence. This code is also given to subordinate processes involved in the termination.
- Process initial external termination status Char(3)
  - Initial external termination reason: Bits 0-7
    - Hex 80 = Terminate Process instruction issued explicitly to this process from another process.
    - Hex 40 = A superordinate process has been terminated.
    - Hex 00 = Process terminated internally.
  - Initial external termination code: Bits 8-23
 

This code is supplied by the termination code in operand 2 of the Terminate Process instruction.
- Process final termination status Char(3)
  - Final termination reason: Bits 0-7
    - Hex 80 = Return instruction from first invocation.
    - Hex 40 = Terminate Process instruction issued by the process being materialized.
    - Hex 20 = Terminate Process instruction issued to the process being materialized by another process.
    - Hex 10 = Exception not handled by this process.
    - Hex 08 = Terminate Process instruction issued to superordinate of the process being materialized.
    - Hex 04 = Superordinate process of the process being materialized completed termination phase.
  - Final termination code is assigned in one of the following ways: Bits 8-23
    1. If the termination is caused by a Return External instruction from first invocation, then this code is binary 0's.
    2. The termination code is assigned by the Terminate Process instruction.
    3. The termination code is assigned by the original exception code that caused process termination.

The process final termination status is presented as event-related data in the terminate process event. Usually the event is the only source of the process final termination status since the process will cease to exist before its attributes can be materialized.

- Hex 21 = Process resource usage attributes

*Process resource usage attributes* are materialized when the value of operand 3 is hex 21. The format and associated values of this attribute are as follows:

- Total temporary auxiliary storage used Bin(4)
- Total processor time used Char(8)
- Number of locks currently held by the process (including implicit locks) Bin(2)

- Hex 22 Subordinate processes identification attributes *Subordinate processes identification attributes* are materialized when the value of operand 3 is hex 22. The format and associated values of this attribute are as follows:

- Materialization size specification Char(8)
  - Number of bytes provided for matialization Bin(4)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Number of immediately subordinate processes Bin(2)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(6)
- System pointer to the process control space System pointer(s) for each subordinate process (repeated for each immediately subordinate process)

- Hex 23 = Process performance attributes *Process performance attributes* are materialized when the value of operand 3 is hex 23. The format and associated values of this attribute are as follows:

- Materialization size specification Char(8)
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Bin(4)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Number of synchronous page reads into main storage associated with data base Bin(4)
- Number of synchronous page reads into main storage not associated with data base Bin(4)
- Total number of synchronous page writes from main storage. This includes writes associated with and not associated with data base. Bin(4)
- Number of transitions into ineligible wait state UBin(2)
- Number of transitions into an instruction wait UBin(2)
- Number of transitions into ineligible wait state from an instruction wait UBin(2)
- Timestamp of materialization Char(8)
- Number of asynchronous reads into main storage associated with data base Bin(4)
- Number of asynchronous reads into main storage not associated with data base Bin(4)
- Number of synchronous writes from main Bin(4)

|   |        |
|---|--------|
| storage associated with data base   |        |
| — Number of synchronous writes from main storage not associated with data base                                      | Bin(4) |
| — Number of asynchronous writes from main storage associated with data base   | Bin(4) |
| — Number of asynchronous writes from main storage not associated with data base                                     | Bin(4) |
| — Total number of writes from main storage of permanent objects   | Bin(4) |
| — Total reads and writes performed for checksum updating due to writes of checksum protected objects                | Bin(4) |
| — Number of page faults on process access group objects   | Bin(4) |
| — Number of internal effective address overflow exceptions  | Bin(4) |
| — Number of internal binary overflow exceptions   | Bin(4) |
| — Number of internal decimal overflow exceptions  | Bin(4) |
| — Number of internal floating point overflow exceptions   | Bin(4) |
| — Number of times a page fault occurred on an address that was currently part of an auxiliary storage I/O operation | Bin(4) |
| — Number of times the process explicitly waited for outstanding asynchronous I/O operations to complete             | Bin(4) |

Each of the Bin(2) counters has a limit of 32 767. If this limit is exceeded, the count is set to 0, and no exception is signaled.

The process performance attributes are not supplied with materialization option hex 00.

The first 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes provided** for use by the instruction. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than 8 causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception to be signaled.

The second 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes available** to be materialized. The instruction materializes as many bytes as can be contained in the area specified as the receiver. If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested, then the excess bytes are unchanged. No exceptions (other than the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception described previously) are signaled in the event that the receiver contains insufficient area for the materialization.

- Hex 24 = Process execution status attributes

*Process execution status attributes* are materialized when the value of operand 3 is hex 24. The format and associated values of this attribute are as follows:

|  |         |
|--|---------|
| — Process priority   | Char(2) |
| - Machine interface priority   | Char(1) |
| - Machine adjusted priority  | Char(1) |
| Normal value is hex 80. This value is dynamically modified by the machine. |         |
| — Pending interruptions  | Char(2) |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| - Time slice end   | Bit 0      |
| - Transfer lock  | Bit 1      |
| - Asynchronous lock retry  | Bit 2      |
| - Suspend process  | Bit 3      |
| - Resume process   | Bit 4      |
| - Modify resource management attribute   | Bit 5      |
| - Modify process attribute   | Bit 6      |
| - Terminate machine processing   | Bit 7      |
| - Terminate process  | Bit 8      |
| - Wait time-out  | Bit 9      |
| - Event  | Bit 10     |
| - Machine service pending  | Bit 11     |
| - Cancel Long Running MI Instruction   | Bit 11     |
| - Reserved (binary 0)  | Bits 13-15 |
| — Execution status   | Char(2)    |
| - Suspended  | Bit 0      |
| - Instruction wait   | Bit 1      |
| - In MPL   | Bit 2      |
| - Ineligible wait  | Bit 3      |
| - Reserved (binary 0)  | Bits 4-15  |
| — Wait status  | Char(2)    |
| - Wait on event  | Bit 0      |
| - Dequeue  | Bit 1      |
| - Lock   | Bit 2      |
| - Wait on time   | Bit 3      |
| - Wait to start a commit cycle   | Bit 4      |
| - Reserved (binary 0)  | Bits 5-15  |
| — Process class identification   | Char(2)    |
| - Storage pool class   | Char(1)    |
| - MPL class  | Char(1)    |
| — Processor time used  | Char(8)    |
| — Performance attributes   | Char(78)   |
| - Number of synchronous reads into main storage associated with data base  | Bin(4)     |
| - Number of synchronous reads into main storage not associated with data base  | Bin(4)     |
| - Total number of synchronous page writes from main storage. This includes writes associated with and not associated with data base. | Bin(4)     |
| - Transitions to ineligible wait   | UBin(2)    |

- Transitions to instruction wait UBin(2)
  - Transitions to ineligible from instruction wait UBin(2)
  - Number of asynchronous reads into main storage associated with data base Bin(4)
  - Number of asynchronous reads into main storage not associated with data base Bin(4)
  - Number of synchronous writes from main storage associated with data base Bin(4)
  - Number of synchronous writes from main storage not associated with data base Bin(4)
  - Number of asynchronous writes from main storage associated with data base Bin(4)
  - Number of asynchronous writes from main storage not associated with data base Bin(4)
  - Total number of writes from main storage of permanent objects Bin(4)
  - Total reads and writes performed for checksum updating due to writes of checksum protected objects Bin(4)
  - Number of page faults on process access group objects Bin(4)
  - Number of internal effective address overflow exceptions Bin(4)
  - Number of internal binary overflow exceptions Bin(4)
  - Number of internal decimal overflow exceptions Bin(4)
  - Number of internal floating point overflow exceptions Bin(4)
  - Number of times a page fault occurred on an address that was currently part of an auxiliary storage I/O operation Bin(4)
  - Number of times the process explicitly waited for outstanding asynchronous I/O operations to complete Bin(4)
- Hex 25 = Process control space pointer
 

A system pointer to the *process control space* is materialized when the value of operand 3 is hex 25. If a process control space pointer is supplied in operand 2, it is ignored. A pointer to the process that is executing the MATPRATR instruction is always materialized.
  - Hex 26 = Adopted user profile list attributes
 

A materialization option's value of hex 26 causes the *adopted user profile list attributes* to be materialized as follows:

    - Materialization size specification Char(8)
      - Number of bytes provided for materialization Bin(4)
      - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
    - Reserved (binary 0) Char(8)
    - Pointer to the adopted user profile list Space pointer

last used to set this attribute

- Number of user profiles in the encapsulated adopted user profile list Bin(2)
- Reserved Char(14)
- List of user profiles in the encapsulated adopted user profile list (one system pointer to each user profile in the list) System pointers

Due to verifications performed on the user profiles specified in an adopted process user profile list input to either the Initiate Process or Modify Process instructions, the encapsulated adopted user profile list may differ from the input list. When verification of an input user profile fails, it is not included in the encapsulated list.

The adopted user profile list attributes are not supplied with materialization option hex 00.

- Hex 27 = Process control attributes

A materialization option's value of hex 27 causes the process control attributes to be materialized. Refer to the description of this materialization provided in prior text for this instruction.

- Hex 28 = Process category Char(2)

- Hex 29 = Queue Space system pointer

The system pointer with addressability to the Queue Space is placed in the space addressed by operand 1.

## Authorization Required

- Process control special authorization
  - For materializing a process other than the one executing this instruction
- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

## Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

## Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X | X |   |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X | X |   |       |
|           | 03 range                            | X        | X | X |   |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X | X |   |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X | X |   |       |
| 0A        | Authorization                       |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation       |          | X |   |   |       |
|           | 04 unauthorized for process control |          | X |   |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                                | X        | X | X | X | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              | X        | X | X | X | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  |          |   |   | X |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X | X |   |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X | X |   |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X | X |   |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   |   |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X | X |   |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X | X |   |       |
|           | 03 pointer addressing invalid object                         |          | X |   |   |       |
| 28        | Process state  |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 02 process control space not associated with a process       |          | X |   |   |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 03 scalar value invalid                                      |          | X |   |   |       |
| 36        | Space management   |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                                       |          |   |   |   |       |
|           | 03 materialization length exception                          | X        |   |   |   |       |



**Wait On Time (WAITTIME)**

|                      |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|
| <b>Op Code (Hex)</b> | <b>Operand 1</b> |
| 0349                 | Wait template    |

Operand 1: Character(16) scalar (fixed-length)

**ILE access**

```
WAITTIME (
  var wait_template : aggregate
)
```

**Description:** This instruction causes the process to wait for a specified time interval. The current process is placed in wait state for the amount of time specified by the wait template in accordance with the specified wait options.

The format of the wait template for operand 1 is:

- Wait time interval Char(8)
- Wait options Char(2)
  - Access state control for entering wait Bit 0
    - 0 = Do not modify access state
    - 1 = Modify access state
  - Access state control for leaving wait Bit 1
    - 0 = Do not modify access state
    - 1 = Modify access state
  - MPL (multiprogramming level) control during wait Bit 2
    - 0 = Do not remain in current MPL set
    - 1 = Remain in current MPL set
  - Reserved Bits 3-15
- Reserved Char(6)

The format of the **wait time interval** value is that of a 64-bit unsigned binary value where bit 41 is equal to 1024 microseconds, assuming the bits are numbered from 0 to 63.

The **access state control** options control whether the process access group (PAG) will be explicitly transferred between main and auxiliary storage when entering and leaving a wait as a result of execution of this instruction. Specification of *modify access state* requests that the PAG be purged from main to auxiliary storage for entering a wait and requests that the PAG be transferred from auxiliary to main storage for leaving a wait. Specification of *do not modify access state* requests that the PAG not be explicitly transferred between main and auxiliary storage as a result of executing this instruction.

The access state of the PAG is modified when entering the wait if the process' *instruction wait initiation access state control* attribute specifies *allow access state modification*, if the *access state control for entering wait* option specifies *modify access state*, and if the *MPL control during wait* option specifies *do not remain in current MPL set*.

The **MPL control during wait** option controls whether the process will be removed from the current MPL (multiprogramming level) set or remain in the current MPL set when the process enters a wait as a result of executing this instruction.

When the *MPL control during wait option specifies remain in current MPL set* and the *access state control for entering wait option specifies do not modify access state*, the process will remain in the current MPL set for a maximum of 2 seconds. After 2 seconds, the process will automatically be removed from the current MPL set. The automatic removal does not change or affect the total wait time specified for the process in the wait time interval.

## Exceptions

| Exception  | Operands |   |   |   |       |
|--|----------|---|---|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | 3 | 4 | Other |
| 06 Addressing  |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation                                | X        |   |   |   |       |
| 02 boundary alignment  | X        |   |   |   |       |
| 03 range   | X        |   |   |   |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid                          | X        |   |   |   |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter  |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation                             | X        |   |   |   |       |
| 10 Damage encountered  |          |   |   |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state                                |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage                              |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support   |          |   |   |   |       |
| 02 machine check   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 03 function check  |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 22 Object access   |          |   |   |   |       |
| 02 object destroyed  | X        |   |   |   |       |
| 03 object suspended  | X        |   |   |   |       |
| 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 08 object compressed   |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification                                     |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        |   |   |   |       |
| 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        |   |   |   |       |
| 2E Resource control limit                                    |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   |   |   | X     |
| 32 Scalar specification                                      |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 scalar type invalid                                       | X        |   |   |   |       |
| 02 scalar attributes invalid                                 | X        |   |   |   |       |
| 03 scalar value invalid                                      | X        |   |   |   |       |
| 36 Space management  |          |   |   |   |       |
| 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   |   |   | X     |



---

## Chapter 19. Resource Management Instructions

This chapter describes the storage and resource management instructions. These instructions are in alphabetic order. For an alphabetic summary of all the instructions, see Appendix A, "Instruction Summary."

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| Ensure Object (ENSOBJ) . . . . .                        | 19-3  |
| Materialize Access Group Attributes (MATAGAT) . . . . . | 19-5  |
| Materialize Resource Management Data (MATRMD) . . . . . | 19-9  |
| Set Access State (SETACST) . . . . .                    | 19-31 |



**Ensure Object (ENSOBJ)**

**Op Code (Hex)**  
0381

**Operand 1**  
System pointer

*Operand 1:* System pointer.

**ILE access**

```
ENSOBJ (
  var system_pointer : system_pointer
)
```

**Description:** The object identified by operand 1 is protected from volatile storage loss. The machine ensures that any changes made to the specified object are recorded on nonvolatile storage media. The access state of the object is not changed by this instruction. If operand 1 addresses a temporary object, no operation is performed because temporary objects are not preserved during a machine failure. No exception is signaled if temporary objects are referenced.

**Authorization Required**

- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

**Lock Enforcement**

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

**Exceptions**

| Exception |  | Operands |       |
|-----------|--|----------|-------|
|           |  | 1        | Other |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                              | X        |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment                                      | X        |       |
|           | 03 range   | X        |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                        | X        |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                           | X        |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                              | X        |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                              | X        |       |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object |          | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                            | X        | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |       |
|-----------|--|----------|-------|
|           |  | 1        | Other |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  | X        |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        |       |
|           | 04 object not eligible for operation                         | X        |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        |       |
|           | 03 pointer addressing invalid object                         | X        |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          | X     |
| 30        | Journal management   |          |       |
|           | 02 entry not journaled                                       | X        |       |
| 32        | Scalar specification   |          |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                                       | X        |       |
| 36        | Space management   |          |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          | X     |

## Materialize Access Group Attributes (MATAGAT)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2    |
|---------------|-----------|--------------|
| 03A2          | Receiver  | Access group |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* System pointer.

### ILE access

```

MATAGAT
    receiver      : space pointer;
    var access_group : system pointer
)

```

**Description:** The attributes of the access group and the identification of objects currently contained in the access group are materialized into the receiving object specified by operand 1.

Objects requested to be in the access group may:

- exist entirely in the access group,
- exist partially in the access group and partially outside the access group,
- or exist entirely outside the access group.

The machine may also use the access group for enabling programs to run within a process. In this case, the Process Control Space (PCS) object is considered to exist partially in the access group, even if the access group membership was not requested when the PCS was created.

Only objects which exist wholly or partially in the access group will be materialized.

The materialization must be aligned on a 16-byte boundary. The format is:

- |   |          |
|---|----------|
| • Materialization size specification            | Char(8)  |
| — Number of bytes provided for materialization  | Bin(4)   |
| — Number of bytes available for materialization | Bin(4)   |
| • Object identification                         | Char(32) |
| — Object type                                   | Char(1)  |
| — Object subtype                                | Char(1)  |
| — Object name                                   | Char(30) |
| • Object creation options                       | Char(4)  |
| — Existence attributes                          | Bit 0    |
| 0 = Temporary                                   |          |
| 1 = Reserved                                    |          |
| — Space attribute                               | Bit 1    |
| 0 = Fixed-length                                |          |
| 1 = Variable-length                             |          |
| — Context                                       | Bit 2    |
| 0 = Addressability not in context               |          |



|  |                |
|--|----------------|
| 1 = Addressability in context  |                |
| – Reserved (binary 0)  | Bits 3-12      |
| – Initialize space   | Bit 13         |
| – Reserved (binary 0)  | Bits 14-31     |
| • Reserved (binary 0)  | Char(4)        |
| • Size of space  | Bin(4)         |
| • Initial value of space   | Char(1)        |
| • Performance class  | Char(4)        |
| – Space alignment  | Bit 0          |
| 0 = The space associated with the object is allocated to allow proper alignment of pointers at 16-byte alignments within the space. If no space is specified for the object, this value must be specified for the performance class.     |                |
| 1 = The space associated with the object is allocated to allow proper alignment of pointers at 16-byte alignments within the space as well as to allow proper alignment of input/output buffers at 512-byte alignments within the space. |                |
| – Reserved (binary 0)  | Bits 1-4       |
| – Default main storage pool  | Bit 5          |
| 0 = Process main storage pool is used for this object.   |                |
| 1 = Machine default main storage pool is used for this object.   |                |
| – Reserved (binary 0)  | Bit 6          |
| – Block transfer on implicit access state modification   | Bit 7          |
| 0 = Minimum storage transfer size for this object is transferred. This value is 1 storage unit.  |                |
| 1 = Machine default storage transfer size is transferred. This value is 8 storage units.   |                |
| – Reserved (binary 0)  | Bits 8-31      |
| • Reserved (binary 0)  | Char(7)        |
| • Context  | System pointer |
| • Reserved (binary 0)  | Char(16)       |
| • Access group size  | UBin(4)        |
| • Available space in the access group  | UBin(4)        |
| • Number of objects in the access group  | UBin(4)        |
| • Reserved (binary 0)  | Char(4)        |
| • Access group object system pointer<br>(repeated for each object currently contained in the access group)   | System pointer |

The receiver space contains the access group's attributes (as defined by the Create Access Group instruction), the current status of the access group, and a system pointer to each object assigned to the access group.

The **access group size** represents the total amount of space that has been allocated to the access group.

The **amount of available space** represents the amount of space that is available in the access group for additional objects.

The **number of objects in the access group** is a count of the number of objects that are currently contained in the access group. This value is also the number of times that the *access group object system pointer* below is repeated.

There is one **access group object system pointer** for each object currently assigned to the access group. The authorization field within each system pointer is not set.

### Authorization Required

- Retrieve
  - Operand 2
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Operand 2
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Exceptions

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment                                      | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 range   | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                        | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                           | X        | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                              |          | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                              | X        | X | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object |          |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                            | X        | X | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state                                      |          | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                          |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X |       |

| Exception  | Operands |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 02 object destroyed  | X        | X |       |
| 03 object suspended  | X        | X |       |
| 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   | X     |
| 08 object compressed   |          |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification                                     |          |   |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X |       |
| 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X |       |
| 03 pointer addressing invalid object                         |          | X |       |
| 2E Resource control limit                                    |          |   |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   | X     |
| 36 Space management  |          |   |       |
| 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   | X     |
| 38 Template specification                                    |          |   |       |
| 03 materialization length exception                          | X        |   |       |

**Materialize Resource Management Data (MATRMD)**

|                      |                  |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|------------------|
| <b>Op Code (Hex)</b> | <b>Operand 1</b> | <b>Operand 2</b> |
| 0352                 | Receiver         | Control data     |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* Character(8) scalar

**ILE access**

```

MATRMD (
    receiver      : space pointer;
    var control_data : aggregate
)

```

**Description:** The data items requested by operand 2 are materialized into the receiving object specified by operand 1. Operand 2 is an 8-byte character scalar. The first byte identifies the generic type of information being materialized, and the remaining 7 bytes further qualify the information desired.

Operand 1 contains the materialization and has the following format:

- Materialization size specification Char(8)
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Bin(4)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Time of day Char(8)
- Resource management data Char(\*)

The remainder of the materialization depends on operand 2 and on the machine implementation. The following values are allowed for operand 2:

- Selection option Char(1)
  - Hex 01 = Materialize processor utilization data
  - Hex 03 = Materialize storage management counters
  - Hex 04 = Materialize storage transient pool information
  - Hex 08 = Materialize machine address threshold data
  - Hex 09 = Materialize main storage pool information
  - Hex 0A = Materialize MPL control information
  - Hex 0C = Materialize machine reserved storage pool information
  - Hex 11 = Materialize user storage area 1
  - Hex 12 = Materialize auxiliary storage information
  - Hex 13 = Materialize multiprocessor utilizations
  - Hex 14 = Materialize Storage pool tuning

- Reserved (binary 0) Char(7)

The following defines the formats and values associated with each of the above materializations of resource management data.

**Processor Utilization (Hex 01):**

- Processor time since IPL (initial program load) Char(8)

**Processor time since IPL** is the total amount of processor time used, both by instruction processes and internal machine functions, since IPL. The significance of bits within the field is the same as that defined for the time-of-day clock.

On a machine with more than one active processor, the value returned will be the average of the processor time used since IPL by all active processors.

## Storage Management Counters (Hex 03):

|                                   |        |
|-----------------------------------|--------|
| • Access pending                  | Bin(2) |
| • Storage pool delays             | Bin(2) |
| • Directory look-up operations    | Bin(4) |
| • Directory page faults           | Bin(4) |
| • Access group member page faults | Bin(4) |
| • Microcode page faults           | Bin(4) |
| • Microtask read operations       | Bin(4) |
| • Microtask write operations      | Bin(4) |
| • Reserved                        | Bin(4) |

**Access pending** is a count of the number of times that a paging request must wait for the completion of a different request for the same page.

**Storage pool delays** is a count of the number of times that processes have been momentarily delayed by the unavailability of a main storage frame in the proper pool.

**Directory look-up operations** is a count of the number of times that auxiliary storage directories were interrogated, exclusive of storage allocation or deallocation.

**Directory page faults** is a count of the number of times that a page of the auxiliary storage directory was transferred to main storage, to perform either a look-up or an allocation operation.

**Access group member page faults** is a count of the number of times that a page of an object contained in an access group was transferred to main storage independently of the containing access group. This occurs when the containing access group has been purged or because portions of the containing access group have been displaced from main storage.

**Microcode page faults** is a count of the number of times a page of microcode was transferred to main storage.

**Microtask read operations** is a count of the number of transfers of one or more pages of data from auxiliary main storage on behalf of a microtask rather than a process.

**Microtask write operations** is a count of the number of transfers of one or more pages of data from main storage to auxiliary storage on behalf of a microtask, rather than a process.

## Storage Transient Pool Information (Hex 04):

|  |        |
|--|--------|
| • Storage pool to be used for the transient pool | Bin(2) |
|--|--------|

The pool number materialized is the number of the main storage pool, which is being used as the transient storage pool. A value of 0 indicates that the transient pool attribute is being ignored.

## Machine Address Threshold Data (Hex 08):

|                                      |         |
|--------------------------------------|---------|
| • Total permanent addresses possible | Char(8) |
| • Total temporary addresses possible | Char(8) |
| • Permanent addresses remaining      | Char(8) |
| • Temporary addresses remaining      | Char(8) |

- Permanent addresses threshold Char(8)
- Temporary addresses threshold Char(8)

**Total permanent addresses possible** is the maximum number of permanent addresses that can exist on the machine.

**Total temporary addresses possible** is the maximum number of temporary addresses that can exist on the machine.

**Permanent addresses remaining** is the number of permanent addresses that can still be created before address regeneration must be run.

**Temporary addresses remaining** is the number of temporary addresses that can still be created before address regeneration must be run.

**Permanent addresses threshold** is a number that, when it exceeds the number of permanent addresses remaining, causes the *machine address threshold exceeded* (hex 000C,05,01) event to be signaled. When the event is signaled, the threshold is reset to 0.

**Temporary addresses threshold** is a number that, when it exceeds the number of temporary addresses remaining, causes the *machine address threshold exceeded* (hex 000C,05,01) event to be signaled. When the event is signaled, the threshold is reset to 0.

#### Main Storage Pool Information (Hex 09):

- Machine minimum transfer size Bin(2)
- Maximum number of pools Bin(2)
- Current number of pools Bin(2)
- Main storage size Bin(4)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(2)
- Pool 1 minimum size Bin(4)
- Individual main storage pool information Char(32)  
(repeated once for each pool, up to the current number of pools)
  - Pool size Bin(4)
  - Pool maintenance Bin(4)
  - Process interruptions (data base) Bin(4)
  - Process interruptions (nondata base) Bin(4)
  - Data transferred to pool (data base) Bin(4)
  - Data transferred to pool (nondata base) Bin(4)
  - Amount of pool not assigned to virtual addresses Bin(4)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(4)

**Machine minimum transfer size** is the smallest number of bytes that may be transferred as a block to or from main storage.

**Maximum number of pools** is the maximum number of storage pools into which main storage may be partitioned. These pools will be assigned the logical identification beginning with 1 and continuing to the *maximum number of pools*.

**Current number of pools** is a user-specified value for the number of storage pools the user wishes to utilize. These are assumed to be numbered from 1 to the number specified. This number is fixed by the machine to be equal to the maximum number of pools.

**Main storage size** is the amount of main storage, in units equal to the *machine minimum transfer size*, which may be apportioned among main storage pools.

**Pool 1 minimum size** is the amount of main storage, in units equal to the *machine minimum transfer size*, which must remain in pool 1. This amount is machine and configuration dependent.

**Individual main storage pool information** is data in an array that is associated with a main storage pool by virtue of its ordinal position within the array. In the descriptions below, data base refers to all other data, including internal machine fields. *Pool size*, *pool maintenance*, *amount of pool not assigned to virtual addresses* and *data transferred information* is expressed in units equal to the *machine minimum transfer size* described above.

**Pool size** is the amount of main storage assigned to the pool.

**Pool maintenance** is the amount of data written from a pool to secondary storage by the machine to satisfy demand for resources from the pool. It does not represent total transfers from the pool to secondary storage, but rather is an indication of machine overhead required to provide primary storage within a pool to requesting processes.

**Process interruptions** (data base and nondata base) is the total number of interruptions to processes (not necessarily assigned to this pool) which were required to transfer data into the pool to permit instruction execution.

**Data transferred to pool** (data base and nondata base) is the amount of data transferred from auxiliary storage to the pool to permit instruction execution and as a consequence of set access state, implicit access group movement, and internal machine actions.

The **amount of the pool not assigned to virtual addresses** represents the storage available to be used for new transfers into the main storage pool without displacing any virtual data already in the pool. After a pool's size has been modified (via the Modify Resource Management Controls instruction), this value will be inaccurate until a Modify Resource Management Controls instruction, option hex 0D, is issued to flush the modified pool. After which time, this value will be accurate until the pool size is again modified. The value returned will not include any storage that has been reserved for load/dump sessions active in the pool.

## Multiprogramming Level Control Information (Hex 0A):

- Machine-wide MPL control Char(16)
  - Machine maximum number of MPL classes Bin(2)
  - Machine current number of MPL classes Bin(2)
  - MPL (max) Bin(2)
  - Ineligible event threshold Bin(2)
  - MPL (current) Bin(2)
  - Number of processes in ineligible state Bin(2)
  - Reserved Char(4)
- MPL class information (repeated for each MPL class, from 1 to the current number of MPL classes) Char(16)
  - MPL (max) Bin(2)

|   |        |
|---|--------|
| – Ineligible event threshold            | Bin(2) |
| – Current MPL                           | Bin(2) |
| – Number of processes ineligible state  | Bin(2) |
| – Number of processes assigned to class | Bin(2) |
| – Transitions (active to ineligible)    | Bin(2) |
| – Transitions (active to MI wait)       | Bin(2) |
| – Transitions (MI wait to ineligible)   | Bin(2) |

## **Machine-Wide MPL Control:**

**Maximum number of MPL classes** is the largest number of MPL classes allowed in the machine. These are assumed to be numbered from 1 to the maximum.

**Current number of MPL classes** is a user-specified value for the number of MPL classes in use. They are assumed to be numbered from 1 to the current number.

**MPL (max)** is the maximum number of processes which may concurrently be in the active state in the machine.

**Ineligible event threshold** is a number which, if exceeded by the *machine number of ineligible processes* defined below, will cause the *machine ineligible threshold exceeded* (hex 000C,04,01) event to be signaled. When the event is signaled, this value is set by the machine to 65,535.

**MPL (current)** is the current number of processes in the active state.

**Number of processes in the ineligible state** is the number of processes not currently active because of enforcement of both the machine and class MPL rules.

## **MPL Class Information**

*MPL class information* is data in an array that is associated with an MPL class by virtue of its ordinal position within the array.

**MPL (max)** is the number of processes assigned to the class which may be concurrently active.

**Ineligible event threshold**, **MPL (current)**, and **number of processes in ineligible state** are as defined above but apply only to processes assigned to the class.

**Number of processes assigned to class** is the total number of processes, in any state, assigned to the pool.

**Transitions count** is the total number of transitions by processes assigned to a class as follows:

1. Active state to ineligible state
2. Active state to wait
3. Wait state to ineligible state

Note that transitions from wait state to active state can be derived as (2 - 3) and transitions from ineligible state to active state as (1 + 3). These numbers are Bin(2) and are maintained by the machine without regard to overflow conditions.

## **Machine Reserved Storage Pool Information (Hex 0C):**

|  |          |
|--|----------|
| • Current number of pools  | Bin(2)   |
| • Reserved   | Char(6)  |
| • Individual main storage pool information<br>(repeated once for each pool, up to the current number of pools) | Char(16) |
| – Pool size  | Bin(4)   |
| – Machine portion of the pool  | Bin(4)   |



## Materialize Resource Management Data (MATRMD)

- Number of load/dump sessions
- Reserved

Bin(2)

Char(6)

**Pool size** is the amount of main storage assigned to the pool (including the machine reserved portion).

**Machine portion of the pool** specifies the amount of storage from the pool that is dedicated to machine functions.

*User storage area 1 (Hex 11):*

- User data

Char(\*)

The **user data** previously stored internally in the machine through usage of the corresponding option on the Modify Resource Management Controls instruction is materialized into the receiver. The operand 1 template, for this option, must start on a 16 byte boundary and any pointers contained in the user data are preserved in the materialization.

The length value materialized in the number of bytes available for materialization field of operand 1 specifies the length of the entire operand 1 template and is limited, through checks performed on the modify operation, to a maximum value of 65,504 (64K-32) bytes. The actual length of the user data materialized is calculated by subtracting 16 from the length value for the total template length.

*Auxiliary Storage Information (Hex 12):*

The **auxiliary storage information** describes the ASPs (auxiliary storage pools) which are configured within the machine and the units of auxiliary storage currently allocated to an ASP or known to the machine but not allocated to an ASP.

Note that contrary to the normal case of being able to modify the values materialized by this option through use of the Modify Resource Management Controls instruction, modification of most of the auxiliary storage configuration is performed using functions available in the Dedicated Service Tool (DST).

Also note that through appropriate setting of the number of bytes provided field for operand 1, the amount of information to be materialized for this option can be reduced thus avoiding the processing for unneeded information. As an example, by setting this field to only provide enough bytes for the common 16 byte header, plus the option Hex 12 control information, plus the system ASP entry of the ASP information, you can get just the information up through the system ASP entry returned and avoid the overhead for the user ASPs and unit information.

Control information

(occurs just once)

Char(64)

- Number of ASPs
  - Number of allocated auxiliary storage units
- Note: Number of configured, non-mirrored units + number of mirrored pairs

Bin(2)

Bin(2)

- Number of unallocated auxiliary storage units
- Control flags
  - Main storage dump area unavailable
  - Reserved (binary 0)
- Reserved (binary 0)

Bin(2)

Char(1)

Bit 0

Bits 1-7

Char(1)

Char(8)

Char(8)

Bin(4)

- Maximum unprotected space used
- Current unprotected space in use
- Checksum main storage

|                                      |           |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|
| • Unit information offset            | Bin(4)    |
| • Number of pairs of mirrored units  | Bin(2)    |
| • Mirroring main storage             | Bin(4)    |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                | Char(2)   |
| • Total temporary space including LS | Char(8)   |
| • Number of bytes in a page          | Bin(4)    |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                | Char(12)  |
| ASP information                      | Char(160) |

(Repeated once for each ASP. Located immediately after the control information above. ASP 1, always configured, is first. Configured user ASPs follow in ascending numerical order.)

|   |          |
|---|----------|
| • ASP number                            | Char(2)  |
| • ASP control flags                     | Char(1)  |
| — Suppress threshold exceeded event     | Bit 0    |
| — User ASP overflow                     | Bit 1    |
| — Checksum protection                   | Bit 2    |
| — Unprotected space overflow            | Bit 3    |
| — ASP mirrored                          | Bit 4    |
| — User ASP MI State                     | Bit 5    |
| — ASP overflow storage available        | Bit 6    |
| — Reserved (binary 0)                   | Bit 7    |
| • ASP overflow recovery result          | Char(1)  |
| — Successful                            | Bit 0    |
| — Failed due to insufficient free space | Bit 1    |
| — Cancelled                             | Bit 2    |
| — Reserved (binary 0)                   | Bits 3-7 |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                   | Char(4)  |
| • ASP media capacity                    | Char(8)  |
| • Reserved                              | Char(8)  |
| • ASP space available                   | Char(8)  |
| • ASP event threshold                   | Char(8)  |
| • ASP event threshold percentage        | Bin(2)   |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                   | Char(6)  |
| • ASP system storage                    | Char(8)  |
| • ASP overflow storage                  | Char(8)  |
| • Space allocated to the Error log      | Bin(4)   |
| • Space allocated to the machine log    | Bin(4)   |
| • Space allocated to the machine trace  | Bin(4)   |
| • Space allocated for main store dump   | Bin(4)   |
| • Space allocated to the microcode      | Bin(4)   |

|  |          |
|--|----------|
| • Reserved                                   | Char(12) |
| • ASP checksum information                   | Char(64) |
| — Protected space capacity                   | Char(8)  |
| — Unprotected space capacity                 | Char(8)  |
| — Protected space available                  | Char(8)  |
| — Unprotected space available                | Char(8)  |
| — Unprotected space on each checksummed unit | Bin(4)   |
| — Reserved                                   | Char(28) |

## Unit information

Char(208)

(Consists of one entry each for the configured, non-mirrored units and one unit of the mirrored pairs, the non-configured units, and the other unit of the mirrored pairs.)

An allocated storage unit (ASU) is either an allocated, non-mirrored unit or a mirrored pair. Note that the mirrored pair counts only as one ASU. When used without qualification, the term unit refers to an ASU.

Unit information start may be located by the Unit Information Offset in the control information.)

|                                |          |
|--------------------------------|----------|
| • Device type                  | Char(8)  |
| — Disk Type                    | Char(4)  |
| — Disk Model                   | Char(4)  |
| • Device identification        | Char(8)  |
| — Unit number                  | Char(2)  |
| — Serial number                | Char(4)  |
| — Reserved                     | Char(2)  |
| • Unit relationship            | Char(4)  |
| — Reserved                     | Char(1)  |
| — Bus information              | Char(1)  |
| - Bus number                   | Bits 0-2 |
| - Bus unit (IOP)               | Bits 3-7 |
| — Controller identification    | Char(1)  |
| — Actuator identification      | Char(1)  |
| • Unit ASP number              | Char(2)  |
| • Logical mirrored pair status | Char(1)  |
| — Unit mirrored                | Bit 0    |
| — Mirrored unit protected      | Bit 1    |
| — Mirrored pair reported       | Bits 2   |
| — Reserved                     | Bits 3-7 |
| • Mirrored unit status         | Char(1)  |
| • Unit media capacity          | Char(8)  |
| • Unit storage capacity        | Char(8)  |
| • Unit space available         | Char(8)  |
| • Unit reserved system space   | Char(8)  |
| • Unit relationship            | Char(6)  |

- Bus information Char(2)
  - Bus number Char(1)
  - Bus unit (IOP) Char(1)
- Unit address Char(4)
  - Controller identification Char(1)
  - Actuator identification Char(1)
  - Reserved Char(2)

- Unit control flags Char(2)
  - Unit in checksummed ASP Bit 0
  - Unit is device parity protected Bit 1
  - Subsystem is active Bit 2
  - Unit in subsystem has failed Bit 3
  - Other unit in subsystem has failed Bit 4
  - Subsystem runs in degraded mode Bit 5
  - Hardware failure Bit 6
  - Device parity protection is being rebuilt Bit 7
  - Unit is not ready Bit 8
  - Unit is write protect Bit 9
  - Unit is busy Bit 10
  - Unit is not operational Bit 11
  - Status is not recognizable Bit 12
  - Status is not available Bit 13
  - Unit is Read/Write protected Bit 14
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 15
- Bits 2 to 14 are mutually exclusive.

- Reserved Char(16)
- Unit checksum information Char(64)
  - Unit redundancy space Char(8)
  - Unit protected space capacity Char(8)
  - Unit protected space available Char(8)
  - Unit unprotected space capacity Char(8)
  - Unit unprotected space available Char(8)
  - Unit checksum set number Char(2)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(22)
- Unit usage information Char(64)
  - Blocks transferred to main storage Bin(4)
  - Blocks transferred from main storage Bin(4)
  - Requests for data transfer to main storage Bin(4)
  - Requests for data transfer from main storage Bin(4)
  - Permanent blocks transferred from main storage Bin(4)

- Requests for permanent data transfer from main storage Bin(4)
- Redundancy blocks transferred from main storage Bin(4)
- Requests for redundancy data transfer from main storage Bin(4)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(32)

**Number of ASPs** is the number of ASPs configured within the machine. One, the minimum value, indicates just the system ASP exists and that there are no user ASPs configured. Up to 15 user ASPs can be configured. Values greater than one indicate how many user ASPs are configured in addition to the system ASP. The system ASP always exists.

**Number of allocated auxiliary storage units** is the number of configured units logically addressable by the system as units. This is the number of configured, non-mirrored units plus the number of mirrored pairs allocated to the ASPs. The total number of units (actuator arms) on the system is the sum of the allocated auxiliary storage units plus the number of unallocated auxiliary storage units plus the number of pairs of mirrored units. For example, each 9335 enclosure represents two units. Information on these units is materialized as part of the unit information. Any two units of the same type and size may be associated to form a mirrored pair. Association of two units as a mirrored pair reduces the amount of logically available storage by the number of bytes contained on one of the mirrored units in the mirrored pair.

**Number of unallocated auxiliary storage units** is the number of auxiliary storage units that are currently not allocated to an ASP. Information on these units is materialized as part of the unit information.

The **main storage dump area unavailable** flag indicates whether or not the main storage dump area on disk is unavailable. A value of binary 1 indicates it is unavailable; binary 0 indicates it is available. The condition where it is unavailable can arise when main storage is added to the machine, but during subsequent IPL processing the machine can not free up space on the load source disk unit for the additional dump area needed. This occurs when there is insufficient space available on the other disk units in the system ASP to allow for movement of object allocations off of the load source unit. The corrective action is to free up space in the system ASP and relPL the machine so the allocation of additional space to the dump area can be completed.

The main storage dump area is important for recovery and diagnostic purposes. It is used by the machine during certain hardware and power failures to capture a main storage dump which is used to minimize the object damage which can result. It is also used by the machine during certain software logic failures to capture a main storage dump which is used to determine the cause of the failure.

**Maximum unprotected space used** (Checksum field) is the largest number of bytes of unprotected storage used at any one time since the last IPL of the machine. When checksum protection is not in effect for the system ASP, this field describes the amount of unprotected storage that would have been used if checksum protection had been in effect.

**Current unprotected space used** (Checksum field) is the current number of bytes of unprotected storage in use. When checksum protection is not in effect for the system ASP, this field describes the amount of unprotected storage that would be in use if checksum protection was in effect.

**Checksum main storage** (Checksum field) is the number of bytes of main storage reserved in the machine storage pool for checksum usage.

**Unit information offset** is the offset, in bytes, from the start of the operand 1 materialization template to the start of the unit information. This value can be added to a space pointer addressing the start of operand 1 to address the start of the unit information.

**Number of pairs of mirrored units** represents the number of mirrored pairs in the system. Each mirrored pair consists of two mirrored units; however, only one of the two mirrored units is guaranteed to be operational.

**Mirroring main storage** is the number of bytes of main storage in the machine storage pool used by mirroring. This increases when mirror synchronization is active. This amount of storage is directly related to the number of mirrored pairs.

**Total temporary space including LS** is the number of bytes of temporary storage allocated on the system. This includes the temporary storage allocated on the load source unit.

**Number of bytes in a page** is the number of bytes in a single page. This can be used to convert fields that are given in pages into the correct number of bytes.

**ASP information** is repeated once for each ASP configured within the machine. The number of ASPs configured is specified by the *number of ASPs* field. ASP 1, the system ASP is materialized first. Because the system ASP always exists, its materialization is always available. The user ASPs which are configured are materialized after the system ASP in ascending numerical order. There may be gaps in the numerical order. That is, if just user ASPs 3 and 5 are configured, only information for them is materialized producing information on just ASP 1, ASP 3 and ASP 5 in that order.

**ASP number** uniquely identifies the auxiliary storage pool. The ASP number may have a value from 1 through 16. A value of 1 indicates the system ASP. A value of 2 through 16 indicates a user ASP.

**Suppress threshold exceeded event flag** indicates whether or not the machine is suppressing signaling of the related event when the event threshold in effect for this ASP has been exceeded. A value of binary 1 indicates that the signaling is being suppressed; binary 0 indicates that the signaling is not being suppressed. The default after each IPL of the machine is that the signaling is not suppressed; i.e. default is binary 0. For the system ASP, this flag is implicitly set to binary 1 by the machine when the *machine auxiliary storage threshold exceeded* (hex 000C,02,01) event is signaled. For a user ASP, this flag is implicitly set to binary 1 by the machine when the *user auxiliary storage threshold exceeded* (hex 000C,02,02) event is signaled. This is done to avoid repetitive signaling of the event when the threshold exceeded condition occurs. Option Hex 12 of the Modify Resource Management Controls instruction can be used to explicitly reset the suppression of the threshold exceeded event when it is desirable to again have the machine detect the threshold exceeded condition and signal the related event.

**User ASP overflow flag** (Checksum field) indicates whether or not object allocations directed into the user ASP have overflowed into the system ASP. A value of binary 1 indicates overflow; binary 0 indicates no overflow. This flag does not apply to the system ASP, and is always set to a binary 0 for it.

**Checksum protection flag** specifies whether or not the ASP is under checksum protection. A value of binary 1 indicates that checksum protection is in effect; a value of binary 0 indicates it is not.

**Unprotected space overflow flag** (Checksum field) specifies whether or not allocations for unprotected data in the ASP have exceeded the unprotected space capacity and overflowed into the area normally used for allocation of protected data. A value of binary 1 indicates that such overflow has occurred; a value of binary 0 indicates it has not. This status is set when the *ASP unprotected space overflow* (hex 000C,02,04) event is signaled; it is reset automatically on the subsequent IMPL of the machine. Because unprotected storage is used primarily for allocation of temporary objects which are automatically deallocated as part of the IPL process, the overflowed allocations are freed up at IPL, providing for the automatic reset of the overflow condition. Because unprotected storage is only allowed for the system ASP, this flag is only applicable to the system ASP.

**ASP mirrored flag** specifies whether or not the ASP is configured to be mirror protected. A value of binary 1 indicates that ASP mirror protection is configured. Refer to the mirror unit protected flag to

determine if mirror protection is active for each mirrored pair. A value of binary 0 indicates that none of the units associated with the ASP are mirrored.

**User ASP MI State** indicates the state of the User ASP. A value of binary 1 indicates that the User ASP is in the 'new' state. This means that a context may be allocated in this User ASP. A value of binary 0 indicates that the User ASP is in the 'old' state. This means that there are no contexts allocated in this User ASP. This flag has no meaning for the System ASP and will always be set to binary 0 for it.

**ASP overflow storage available flag** indicates whether or not the amount of auxiliary storage that has overflowed from the user ASP into the system ASP is available. A value of binary 1 indicates that the amount is maintained by the machine and available in the *ASP overflow storage* field. A value of binary 0 indicates that the amount is not available.

**ASP overflow recovery result flags** indicate the result of the ASP overflow recovery operation which is performed during an IPL upon request by the user. When this operation is requested, the machine attempts to recover the user ASP from an overflow condition by moving overflowed auxiliary storage from the system ASP back to the user ASP during the Storage Management recovery step of an IPL. The successful flag is set to a value of binary 1 when all the overflowed storage was successfully moved. The failed due to insufficient free space flag is set to a value of binary 1 when there is not sufficient free space in the user ASP to move all the overflowed storage. The cancelled flag is set to a value of binary 1 when the operation was cancelled prior to completion (e.g., system power loss, user initiated IPL).

**ASP media capacity** specifies the total space, in number of bytes of auxiliary storage, on the storage media allocated to the ASP. This is just the sum of the unit media capacity fields for (1) the units allocated to the ASP or (2) the mirrored pairs in the ASP.

**ASP space available** is the number of bytes of auxiliary storage that is not currently assigned to objects or internal machine functions, and therefore, is available for allocation in the ASP when the ASP is not under checksum protection. Note that a mirrored pair counts for only one unit. When the ASP is under checksum protection, this value is meaningless and the ASP checksum information describes the space available values.

**ASP event threshold** specifies the minimum value for the number of bytes of auxiliary storage available in the ASP prior to the signaling of the appropriate threshold exceeded event. The threshold exceeded condition occurs when either the protected space available value or the ASP space available value, depending upon whether checksum protection is or isn't in effect for the ASP, becomes equal to or less than the ASP event threshold value. This condition causes either the *auxiliary storage threshold exceeded* (hex 000C,02,01) event, for the system ASP, or the *user ASP threshold exceeded event* (hex 000C,02,02), for a user ASP, to be signaled. Redundant signaling of these events is suppressed as indicated by the setting of the suppress threshold exceeded event flag. Refer to the definition of the suppress threshold exceeded event flag for more information.

The *ASP event threshold* value is calculated from the the ASP event threshold percentage value by multiplying either the protected space capacity value or the ASP media capacity value, depending upon whether checksum protection is or isn't in effect for the ASP, by the ASP event threshold percentage and subtracting the product from that same capacity value.

*ASP event threshold percentage* specifies the auxiliary storage space utilization threshold as a percentage of either the protected space capacity or the ASP media capacity, depending upon whether checksum protection is or isn't in effect for the ASP. This value is used, as described above, to calculate the ASP event threshold value. This value can be modified through use of Dedicated Service Tool DASD configuration options.

**ASP system storage** specifies the amount of system storage currently allocated in the ASP in bytes. This storage will not be calculated when determining if the user ASP MI state can be changed.

**ASP overflow storage** indicates the number of bytes of auxiliary storage that have overflowed from the user ASP into the system ASP. This value is valid only if the ASP overflow storage available flag is set to a value of binary 1.

**Space allocated to the Error log** this is the number of pages of auxiliary storage that are allocated to the error log. This field only applies to the System ASP.

**Space allocated to the machine log** this is the number of pages of auxiliary storage that are allocated to the machine log. This field only applies to the System ASP.

**Space allocated to the machine trace** this is the number of pages of auxiliary storage that are allocated to the machine trace. This field only applies to the System ASP.

**Space allocated for Main Store Dump** this is the number of pages of auxiliary storage that are allocated to the main store dump space. The contents of main store are written to this location for some system terminations. This field only applies to the System ASP.

**Space allocated to microcode** this is the number of pages of auxiliary storage that are allocated for microcode and space used by the microcode. The space allocated to the error log, machine log, machine trace, and main store dump space is not included in this field. This field only applies to the System ASP.

**ASP checksum information** (Checksum field) specifies capacity and space available values that apply when the ASP is under checksum protection. In this case, the units of auxiliary storage allocated to ASP are formatted with areas for protected data, unprotected data, and redundancy data. Information on the protected and unprotected space is provided both here in these fields on an ASP basis and under unit information on a per unit basis. Information on redundancy space is only provided under unit information on a per unit basis. When the ASP is not under checksum protection, the values of these fields are meaningless.

**Protected space capacity** (Checksum field) specifies the total number of bytes of auxiliary storage formatted for the storage of protected data in the ASP.

**Unprotected space capacity** (Checksum field) specifies the total number of bytes of auxiliary storage formatted for storage of unprotected data in the ASP. Since unprotected space is only allowed in the system ASP, this information is only applicable to the system ASP.

**Protected space available** (Checksum field) specifies the number of bytes of auxiliary storage formatted for storage of protected data that are not currently assigned to objects or internal machine functions, and therefore, are available for allocation in the ASP.

**Unprotected space available** (Checksum field) specifies the number of bytes of auxiliary storage formatted for storage of unprotected data that are not currently assigned to objects or internal machine functions, and therefore, are available for allocation in the ASP. Since unprotected space is only allowed in the system ASP, this information is only applicable to the system ASP.

**Unprotected space on each checksummed unit** (Checksum field) specifies the number of megabytes (millions of bytes) of auxiliary storage formatted for storage of unprotected data on each unit allocated to a checksum set in the ASP. Using the Dedicated Service Tool to modify this value provides for altering the relation of the protected versus unprotected space capacity values. Since unprotected space is only allowed in the system ASP, this information is only applicable to the system ASP.

**Unit information** is materialized in the following order:

Group 1: Configured units consisting of non-mirrored units and mirrored units.

Group 2: Non-configured units



Group 3: Configured units consisting of mirrored units.

The **unit information** is located by the **unit information offset** field which specifies the offset from the beginning of the operand 1 template to the start of the unit information. The number of entries for each of the three groups listed above is defined as follows:

Group 1: Number of non-mirrored, configured units + number of mirrored pairs

Group 2: Number of non-configured storage units

Group 3: Number of mirrored pairs

For unallocated units, the device type, device identification, unit relationship, and unit media capacity fields contain meaningful information. The remaining fields have no meaning for unallocated units because the units are not currently in use by the system. Mirrored unit entries contain either current or last known information. The last known data consists of the mirrored unit status, disk type, disk model, unit ASP number, disk serial number, and unit address. Last known information is provided when the Mirrored Unit Reported field is a binary zero.

**Disk type** identifies the type of disk enclosure containing this auxiliary storage unit. This is the four byte character field from the vital product data for the disk device which identifies the type of drive. For example, the value is character string '9332' for a 9332 device and '9335' for a 9335 device.

**Disk model** identifies the model of the type of disk enclosure containing this auxiliary storage unit. This is the four byte character field from the vital product data for the disk device which identifies the model of the drive. For example, the value is character string '0200' for a model 200 9332 device and '0400' for a model 400 9332 device.

**Unit number** uniquely identifies each non-mirrored unit or mirrored pair among the configured units. Both mirrored units of a mirrored pair have the same unit number. The value of the unit number is assigned by the system when the unit is allocated to an ASP. For unallocated units, the unit number is set to binary zero.

**Serial number** specifies the serial number of the device containing this auxiliary storage unit. This is the four byte serial number field from the vital product data for the disk device.

**Bus number** identifies the I/O Bus to which the disk device containing this auxiliary storage unit is connected.

**Bus unit (IOP)** identifies the I/O Processor used to access the controller for the disk device containing this auxiliary storage unit.

**Controller identification** specifies the controller for the disk device containing this auxiliary storage unit.

**Actuator identification** specifies the actuator associated with this auxiliary storage unit in the disk device containing it.

**Unit ASP number** specifies the ASP to which this unit is currently allocated. A value of 1 specifies the system ASP. A value from 2 through 16 specifies a user ASP and correlates to the user ASP number field in the user ASP information entries. A value of 0 indicates that this unit is currently unallocated.

**Unit mirrored flag** indicates that this unit number represents a mirrored pair. This bit is materialized with both mirrored units of a mirrored pair.

**Mirrored unit protected flag** indicates the mirror status of a mirrored pair. A value of 1 indicates that both mirrored units of a mirrored pair are active. A 0 indicates that one mirrored unit of a mirrored pair is not active. Active means that both units are on line and fully synchronized (ie. the data is identical on both mirrored units).

**Mirrored unit reported flag** indicates that a mirrored unit reported as present. The mirrored unit reported present during or following IMPL. Current attachment of a mirrored unit to the system **cannot** be inferred from this bit. A 0 indicates that the mirrored unit being materialized is missing. The last known information pertaining to the missing mirrored unit is materialized. A 1 indicates that the mirrored unit being materialized has reported. The information for this reported unit is current to the last time it reported status to the system.

**Mirrored unit status** indicates mirrored unit status.

A value of 1 indicates that this mirrored unit of a mirrored pair is active (ie. on-line with current data).

A value of 2 indicates that this mirrored unit is being synchronized.

A value of 3 indicates that this mirrored unit is suspended.

*Mirrored unit status* is stored as binary data and is valid only when the unit mirrored flag is on.

**Unit media capacity** is the space, in number of bytes of auxiliary storage, on the non-mirrored unit or mirrored pair, that is, the capacity of the unit prior to any formatting or allocation of space by the system it is attached to. For a mirrored pair, this space is the number of bytes of auxiliary storage on either one of the mirrored units. The space is identical on both of the mirrored units. Caution, do not attempt to add the capacities of the two units of a mirrored pair together.

**Unit space available** is the number of bytes of secondary storage space that is not currently assigned to objects or internal machine functions, and therefore, is available for allocation on the unit (or the mirrored pair) when the ASP containing it is not under checksum protection. When the ASP containing the unit is under checksum protection, this value is meaningless and the Unit checksum information describes the space available values. For a mirrored pair, this space is the number of bytes of auxiliary storage available on either one of the mirrored units. The space is identical on both of the mirrored units. Caution, do not attempt to add the capacities of the two units of a mirrored pair together.

**Unit reserved system space** is the total number of bytes of auxiliary storage on the unit reserved for use by the machine. This storage is not available for storing objects, redundancy data, and other internal machine data. When the unit is not in a checksum set, the unit checksum set number contains a value of zero, this reserved space is included in the ASP and unit media capacity fields and reduces the corresponding space available values. When the unit is in a checksum set, the unit checksum set number is nonzero, this reserved space is not included in the ASP and unit checksum information fields which provide capacity and space information and, therefore, does not reduce the corresponding space available values.

**Bus number** identifies the I/O Bus to which the disk device containing this auxiliary storage unit is connected.

**Bus unit (IOP)** identifies the I/O Processor used to access the controller for the disk device containing this auxiliary storage unit.

**Controller identification** specifies the controller for the disk device containing this auxiliary storage unit.

**Actuator identification** specifies the actuator associated with this auxiliary storage unit in the disk device containing it.

**Unit in checksummed ASP** - a value of 1 indicates that this unit is configured in an ASP that is checksummed. It does not indicate whether or not the unit is in a checksum set.

**Unit is device parity protected** - a value of 1 indicates that this unit is device parity protected.

**Subsystem is active** indicates whether the array subsystem is active.

- | If the **unit in subsystem has failed** field is 1, the unit in an array subsystem being addressed has failed. Data protection for this subsystem is no longer in effect.
- | If the **other unit in subsystem has failed** field is 1, the unit being addressed is operational, but another unit in the array subsystem has failed. Data protection for this subsystem is no longer in effect.
- | If the **subsystem runs in degraded mode** field is 1, the array subsystem is operational and data protection for this subsystem is in effect, but a failure that may affect performance has occurred. It must be fixed.
- | If the **hardware failure** field is 1, the array subsystem is operational and data protection for this subsystem is in effect, but hardware failure has occurred. It must be fixed.
- | If the **device parity protection is being rebuilt** field is 1, the device parity protection for this device is being rebuilt following a repair action.
- | If the **unit is not ready** field is 1, the unit being addressed is not ready for I/O operation.
- | If the **unit is write protected** field is 1, the write operation is not allowed on the unit being addressed.
- | If the **unit is busy** field is 1, the unit being addressed is busy.
- | If the **unit is not operational** field is 1, the unit being addressed is not operational. The status of the device is not known.
- | If the **unit is not recognizable** field is 1, the unit being addressed has an unexpected status. I.e. the unit is operational, but its status returned to Storage Management from IOP is not one of those previously described.
- | If the **status is not available** field is 1, the machine is not able to communicate with I/O processor. The status of the device is not known.
- | If the **unit is Read/Write protected** is 1, a DASD array may be in the read/write protected state when there is problem, such as cache problem, configuration problem, or some other array problems that could create a data integrity exposure.

**Unit checksum information** (Checksum field) specifies capacity and space available values that apply when the ASP containing the unit is under checksum protection. In this case, when the unit is in a checksum set, the unit checksum set number is nonzero, the unit is formatted with areas for protected data, unprotected data, and redundancy data and these fields provide information relating to those areas. If the unit is not allocated to a checksum set, the unit checksum set number contains a value of zero, it is only formatted for the storage of unprotected data and the other capacity values will be zero. When the ASP containing the unit is not under checksum protection, the values of these fields are meaningless, except that the unit checksum set number field will contain a zero value.

**Unit redundancy space** (Checksum field) is the total number of bytes of auxiliary storage on the unit formatted for use for redundancy data. This storage is not available for storing objects and other internal machine data.

**Unit protected space capacity** (Checksum field) is the number of bytes of auxiliary storage formatted for storage of protected data on the unit. This field is only nonzero if this unit is allocated to a checksum set. Units not allocated to a checksum set contain no protected storage area. This value does not include the size of any data redundancy area which may have been formatted on the unit as well.

**Unit protected space available** (Checksum field) is the number of bytes of protected space on secondary storage available for allocation on the unit; that is, not currently assigned to objects or internal machine functions. This field is only nonzero if this unit is allocated to a checksum set. Units not

allocated to a checksum set contain no protected storage area, unless they are mirrored. All space of a mirrored pair is protected.

**Unit unprotected space capacity** (Checksum field) is the number of bytes of auxiliary storage formatted for storage of unprotected data on the unit. This value does not include the size of any data redundancy area which may have been formatted on the unit as well. Since unprotected space is only allowed in the system ASP, this information is only applicable to units allocated to the system ASP.

**Unit unprotected space available** (Checksum field) is the number of bytes of unprotected space on secondary storage that are not currently assigned to objects or internal machine functions, and therefore, are available for allocation on the unit. Since unprotected space is only allowed in the system ASP, this information is only applicable to units allocated to the system ASP.

**Unit checksum set number** (Checksum field) specifies the checksum set to which this unit is currently allocated. A nonzero value specifies the number of the checksum set. A zero value specifies that the unit is currently not assigned to a checksum set.

**Unit usage information** specifies statistics relating to usage of the unit. For unallocated units, these fields are meaningless.

**Blocks transferred to/from main storage fields** specify the number of 512-byte blocks transferred for the unit since the last IMPL. These values wrap around to zero and continue counting in the case of an overflow of the field with no indication of the overflow having occurred.

**Requests for data transfer to/from main storage fields** specify the number of data transfer (I/O) requests processed for the unit since the last IMPL. These values wrap around to zero and continue counting in the case of an overflow of the field with no indication of the overflow having occurred. These values are not directly related to the number of blocks transferred for the unit because the number of blocks to be transferred for a given transfer request can vary greatly.

**Permanent blocks transferred from main storage** specifies the number of 512-byte blocks of permanent data transferred from main storage to auxiliary storage for the unit since the last IMPL. In the case of an overflow of the field, this value wraps around back to zero and continues counting, with no indication of the overflow condition having occurred.

**Requests for permanent data transfer from main storage** specifies the number of transfer (I/O) requests for transfers of permanent data from main storage to auxiliary storage that have been processed for the unit since the last IMPL. In the case of an overflow of the field, this value wraps around back to zero and continues counting, with no indication of the overflow condition having occurred. This value is not directly related to the permanent blocks transferred from main storage value for the unit ASP because the number of blocks to be transferred for any particular transfer request can vary greatly.

**Redundancy blocks transferred from main storage** (Checksum field) specifies the number of 512-byte blocks of redundancy data transferred from main storage to auxiliary storage for the unit since the last IMPL. In the case of an overflow of the field, this value wraps around back to zero and continues counting, with no indication of the overflow condition having occurred. This field is only meaningful for a unit in a checksum set.

**Requests for redundancy data transfer from main storage** (Checksum field) specifies the number of transfer (I/O) requests for transfers of redundancy data from main storage to auxiliary storage that have been processed for the unit since the last IMPL. In the case of an overflow of the field, this value wraps around back to zero and continues counting, with no indication of the overflow condition having occurred. This value is not directly related to the redundancy blocks transferred from main storage value for the unit because the number of blocks to be transferred for any particular transfer request can vary greatly. This field is only meaningful for a unit in a checksum set.

## *Multiprocessor utilizations (Hex 13):*

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| • Number of processors configured on the machine  | Bin(2)    |
| • Number of configured processors currently active on the machine                                 | Bin(2)    |
| • Bit map of processors currently active on the machine   | Char(2)   |
| — Processor 1 is active   | Bit 0     |
| — Processor 2 is active   | Bit 1     |
| — Processor 3 is active   | Bit 2     |
| — Processor 4 is active   | Bit 3     |
| — Processor 5 is active   | Bit 4     |
| — Processor 6 is active   | Bit 5     |
| — Processor 7 is active   | Bit 6     |
| — Processor 8 is active   | Bit 7     |
| — Processor 9 is active   | Bit 8     |
| — Processor 10 is active  | Bit 9     |
| — Processor 11 is active  | Bit 10    |
| — Processor 12 is active  | Bit 11    |
| — Processor 13 is active  | Bit 12    |
| — Processor 14 is active  | Bit 13    |
| — Processor 15 is active  | Bit 14    |
| — Processor 16 is active  | Bit 15    |
| • Reserved  | Char(2)   |
| • Array of CHAR(8) processor time used since IPL values. Repeated once for each active processor. | Char(128) |
| — Processor 1 time busy since IPL   | Char(8)   |
| — Processor 2 time busy since IPL   | Char(8)   |
| — Processor 3 time busy since IPL   | Char(8)   |
| — Processor 4 time busy since IPL   | Char(8)   |
| — Processor 5 time busy since IPL   | Char(8)   |
| — Processor 6 time busy since IPL   | Char(8)   |
| — Processor 7 time busy since IPL   | Char(8)   |
| — Processor 8 time busy since IPL   | Char(8)   |
| — Processor 9 time busy since IPL   | Char(8)   |
| — Processor 10 time busy since IPL  | Char(8)   |
| — Processor 11 time busy since IPL  | Char(8)   |
| — Processor 12 time busy since IPL  | Char(8)   |
| — Processor 13 time busy since IPL  | Char(8)   |
| — Processor 14 time busy since IPL  | Char(8)   |

- Processor 15 time busy since IPL Char(8)
- Processor 16 time busy since IPL Char(8)

The **number of active processors** will always be less than or equal to the **number of configured processors**. The **active processor bit map** will only indicate active processors within the first (leftmost) *number of configured processors* number of bits. The significance of bits within the time busy fields are the same as that defined for the time-of-day clock. This option always returns a *number of bytes available for materialization* equal to the length of the entire structure detailed above (it does not vary with the number of configured or active processors).

## Storage pool tuning (Hex 14):

- Control information Char(16)  
(occurs just once)
- Current number of pools Bin(2)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(14)
- Pool information Char(104)  
(repeated once for each pool)
  - Type of pool tuning Char(1)
    - Hex 00 = No tuning is being done for the pool
    - Hex 10 = Static tuning
    - Hex 20 = Dynamic tuning of transfers to main storage
    - Hex 30 = Dynamic tuning of transfers to main storage and to auxiliary storage
  - Changed page handling Char(1)
    - Hex 00 = System page replacement algorithm handles changed pages
    - Hex 10 = Periodically transfer changed pages to auxiliary storage
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(14)
  - Nondatabase objects Char(8)
    - Blocking factor Char(2)
      - Hex 0000 = Use the default system value
      - Hex 0008 = Transfer data between main storage and auxiliary in blocks of 4K.
      - Hex 0010 = Transfer data between main storage and auxiliary in blocks of 8K.
      - Hex 0020 = Transfer data between main storage and auxiliary in blocks of 16K.
      - Hex 0040 = Transfer data between main storage and auxiliary in blocks of 32K.
    - Reserved (binary 0) Char(6)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(16)
  - Handling of database objects by class Char(8)  
(repeat for each of the four classes).
    - Blocking factor Char(2)
      - Hex 0000 = Use the default system value
      - Hex 0008 = Transfer data between main storage and auxiliary in blocks of 4K.
      - Hex 0010 = Transfer data between main storage and auxiliary in blocks of 8K.
      - Hex 0020 = Transfer data between main storage and auxiliary in blocks of 16K.

- Hex 0040 = Transfer data between main storage and auxiliary in blocks of 32K.
- Hex 0080 = Transfer data between main storage and auxiliary in blocks of 64K.
- Hex 0100 = Transfer data between main storage and auxiliary in blocks of 128K.
- Allow exchange operations Char(1)
  - Hex 00 = Use the default system value
  - Hex C5 = Allow exchange operations
  - Hex D5 = Disable exchange operations
  - Hex D9 = Indicate that objects are good candidates for replacement
- Handling of requests to transfer object to auxiliary storage Char(1)
  - Hex 00 = Use the default system value
  - Hex D5 = Use the system page replacement algorithm
  - Hex D7 = Purge the objects from main storage
  - Hex D9 = Indicate the objects are good candidates for replacement
  - Hex E6 = Write the objects to auxiliary storage
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(4)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(32)

**Current number of pools** is a user-specified value for the number of storage pools the user wishes to utilize. These are assumed to be numbered from 1 to the number specified. This number is fixed by the machine to be equal to the maximum number of pools.

**Type of pool tuning** determines what the system is doing to tune the performance of a storage pool.

When *tuning is not being done for a pool* (hex 00), the system tries to minimize the amount of main storage that is used by each of the jobs in the system independent of the amount of main storage that exists in a pool. The values returned for nondatabase objects and database objects by class will be all zeros to represent that the default values are being used.

If *static tuning* is being done. (hex 10), the system will use the values specified for pool information to determine the amount of data to transfer to main storage and auxiliary storage. The values returned for database objects by class and nondatabase objects will be the values previously specified on the MODRMC instructions.

When *dynamic tuning of transfers to main storage* is being done (hex 20), the system bases the amount of data to transfer to main storage based on the demand for storage in the storage pool, the size of the pool, the number of active users in the pool and other performance attributes. The values returned for database objects by class and nondatabase objects is the current value being used by the system to handle the objects.

When *dynamic tuning of transfers to main storage and auxiliary storage* is being done (hex 30), the system bases the amount of data to transfer to main storage and to auxiliary storage based on the demand for storage in the storage pool, the size of the pool, the number of active users in the pool and other performance attributes. The values returned for database objects by class and nondatabase objects is the current value being used by the system to handle the objects.

When tuning is requested (hex 10, 20 or 30), the system periodically categorizes database objects into four different performance classes. The class are:

**Class 1** Object access appears to be very random - a disk access is required for nearly each record that is accessed

**Class 2** Some locality of reference detected, several records are being accessed per disk access

**Class 3** High locality of reference detected, object is being processed in a sequential manner, references are highly clustered, large portions of the object are resident in memory.

**Class 4** See following explanation.

The class of a database object is adjusted if the objects size is small in comparision to the available storage in the storage pool. This class adjustment involves adding 1 to the class number, so a class 3 database object (as defined above) would be treated as a class 4 if it is small in comparision to the available storage in the storage pool.

Reference information for determining a object's class is collected periodically and by storage pool so an object's class will vary over time and by storage pool.

**Change page handling** effects when the system will write changed pages to auxilliary storage. When the *system page replacement algorithm* (hex 00) is specified as the change page handling mechanism, the system will transfer changed pages to auxilliary storage when:

- Explicitly requested to transfer the page (for example, Set Access State (SETACST) instruction)
- There is a demand for pages in the pool

When the *periodically transfer changed pages* option (hex 10) is specified as the change page handling mechanism, the system will transfer changed pages to auxilliary storage when:

- Explicitly requested to transfer the page (for example, Set Access State (SETACST) instruction)
- There is a demand for pages in the pool
- Periodically look for changed pages in a pool and transfer the changed pages to auxilliary storage

**Blocking factor** determines how much data should be brought into main storage when the objects is needed in main storage.

**Allow exchange operations** controls which method the system should use to find main storage to hold data. With the *exchange method* (hex C5), the system uses the page frames associated with a specific object to satisfy the request. If *exchange operations are disabled* (hex D5), the system will use the normal page replacement algorithm to find page frames for the request. If *objects should be treated as good candidates for replacement* (hex D9), the system makes the page frames associated with the object being exchanged a good replacement candidate but uses the normal page replacement algorithm to find page frames for the request.

**Handling of requests to transfer objects to auxilliary storage** determines when the data is transferred to auxilliary storage and when the page frames containing the object are available to contain other data. If *purging is active* (hex D7) and a request is made to purge the object to auxilliary storage, the system will immediately schedule the request to transfer the data and when the transfer is completed, the page frames containing the data just written will be made available to hold other objects. If *writing is active* (hex E6) and a request is made to purge the object to auxilliary storage, the system will immediately schedule the request to transfer the data and the page frames are not made good candidates to be reused. If *objects are good candiates for replacement* (hex D9), the objects are likely to be removed from main storage by transferring the objects to auxilliary storage when the system needs to transfer other objects into main storage. If the *system page replacement algorithm* is used (hex D5), the system decides when the object should be transferred from main storage to auxilliary storage.

## Exceptions

| Exception     | Operands |   | Other |
|---------------|----------|---|-------|
|               | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06 Addressing |          |   |       |



| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation          | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment                  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 range                               | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                     |          |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation       | X        | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state          | X        |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        | X        | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |       |
|           | 02 scalar attribute invalid            |          | X |       |
|           | 03 scalar value invalid                | X        |   |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                 |          |   |       |
|           | 03 materialization length exception    | X        |   |       |

## Set Access State (SETACST)

|                      |                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>Op Code (Hex)</b> | <b>Operand 1</b>      |
| 0341                 | Access state template |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

### ILE access

```
SETACST (
    access_state : space pointer
)
```

**Description:** The instruction specifies the access state (which specifies the desired speed of access) that the issuing process has for a set of objects or subobject elements in the execution interval following the execution of the instruction. The specification of an access state for an object momentarily preempts the machine's normal management of an object.

**Note:** This instruction should be used with caution when the pointer to object entry in the template below points to a process space (i.e. static storage, automatic storage, and heap space storage). These process spaces may be shared by other programs in the activation group, so explicit access management may affect those other programs.

The Set Access State instruction template must be aligned on a 16-byte boundary. The format is:

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| • Number of objects to be acted upon                                   | Bin(4)                             |
| • Reserved (binary 0)  | Char(12)                           |
| • Access state specifications<br>(repeated as many times as necessary) | Char(32)                           |
| — Pointer to object whose<br>access state is to be changed             | Space pointer<br>or system pointer |
| — Access state code  | Char(1)                            |
| — Reserved (binary 0)  | Char(3)                            |
| — Access state parameter   | Char(12)                           |
| - Access pool ID   | Char(4)                            |
| - Space length   | Bin(4)                             |
| - Operational object size  | Bin(4)                             |

**Note:** This value is returned for some of the access state code options.

The **number of objects** field specifies how many objects are potential candidates for access state modification. An **access state specification** is included for each object to be acted upon.

The **pointer to object** field identifies the object or space which is to be acted upon. For the space associated with a system object, the space pointer may address any byte in the space. This pointer is followed by parameters that define in detail the action to be applied to the object.

The **access state code** designates the desired access state. The allowed values are as follows:

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| <b>Access State</b> |  |
| <b>Code (Hex)</b>   | <b>Function and Required Parameter</b> |
| 00                  | No operations are performed.           |

Access State  
Code (Hex)

## Function and Required Parameter

- 01 Associated object is moved into main storage (if not already there) synchronously with the execution of the instruction.
- 02 Associated object is moved into main storage (if not already there) asynchronously with the execution of the instruction.
- 03 Associated object is placed in main storage without regard to the current contents of the object. This causes access to secondary storage to be reduced or eliminated. For this access state code, a space pointer must be provided.
- 04 Associated object is removed from main storage in a manner which reduces or eliminates access to secondary storage. Content of the object is unpredictable after this operation. For this access state code, a space pointer must be provided.
- 10 The object is synchronously ensured (changes written to auxiliary storage) and then removed from main storage.
- This option returns a number in the *operational object size* field. The unit assumed is the machine minimum transfer size (page size). The value returned is the total size of the operational parts of the object examined/processed, including the associated space (if there is one).
- Note:** This number is not the number of pages written or removed, but rather, is the total size of the object being processed. Some, all or none of the object may be in mainstore prior to the execution of the instruction.
- The *space length* field must be zero for this operation. The entire associated space, if any, will be processed with the rest of the object's storage.
- The *access pool ID* field is ignored for this operation.
- The associated pointer to the object must be a system pointer.
- 18 This operation essentially combines the functions of a 10 code followed by asynchronously bringing the operational parts of the object into main storage. The object is brought into the main storage pool identified by the *access pool ID* field).
- Note:** Because this function first removes the object from main storage and then brings it into main storage, this can be used to "move" an object from one main storage pool to another.
- This option returns a number in the *operational object size* field. The unit assumed is the machine minimum transfer size (page size). The value returned is the total size of the object processed.
- Note:** If this value is larger than the size of the main storage pool being used, unpredictable parts of the object will be resident in the main storage pool following processing.
- A preceding access code of 40 is ignored for this operation.
- The *space length* field must be zero for this operation. The entire associated space, if any, will be processed with the rest of the object's storage.
- The *access pool ID* field must be specified for this access code (it must be value 1 though 16, decimal).
- The associated pointer to the object must be a system pointer.
- 20 Associated object attributes are moved into main storage synchronous with the instruction's execution. The associated attributes are the attributes that are common to all system objects. The associated pointer to object must be a resolved system pointer.
- The "space length" field is ignored for this access code.
- 21 Associated object attributes are moved into main storage asynchronous with the instruction's execution. The associated attributes are the attributes that are common to all system objects. The associated pointer to object must be a resolved system pointer.
- The "space length" field is ignored for this access code.

**Access State  
Code (Hex)**  
22

**Function and Required Parameter**

Common associated object attributes plus some specified amount of object-specific attributes are moved into main storage synchronous with the instruction's execution. The common associated attributes are the attributes that are common to all system objects. The object-specific attributes are attributes that vary from one object type to another. The amount of these attributes brought into main storage is controlled by the *space length* field.

**Note:** This use of *space length* is not consistent with the name of the field. For this code, the *space length* field does not control the size of any associated space processing, it controls the length of object-specific attributes processed.

The *space length* field works in the following manner: it specifies the amount of storage above and beyond the common object attributes which will be synchronously brought into storage. Therefore, a *space length* of 0 is valid, and results in an operation identical to access code 20.

The associated pointer to object must be a resolved system pointer.

23

Common associated object attributes plus some specified amount of object-specific attributes are moved into main storage asynchronous with the instruction's execution. The common associated attributes are the attributes that are common to all system objects. The object-specific attributes are attributes that vary from one object type to another. The amount of these attributes brought into main storage is controlled by the *space length* field.

**Note:** This use of *space length* is not consistent with the name of the field. For this code, the *space length* field does not control the size of any associated space processing, it controls the length of object-specific attributes processed.

The *space length* field works in the following manner: it specifies the amount of storage above and beyond the common object attributes which will be asynchronously brought into storage. Therefore, a *space length* of 0 is valid, and results in an operation identical to access code 21.

The associated pointer to object must be a resolved system pointer.

30

The associated space of the object is moved into main storage (if not already there) synchronously with the execution of the instruction. The *space length* field is honored for this operation. The associated pointer to the object must be a system pointer.

31

The associated space of the object is moved into main storage (if not already there) asynchronously with the execution of the instruction. The *space length* field is honored for this operation. The associated pointer to the object must be a system pointer.

40

Perform no operation on the associated object. The main storage occupied by this object is to be used, if possible, to satisfy the request in the next access state specification entry. Either a space or system pointer may be provided for this access state code.

41

Wait for any previously issued but incomplete hex 81 or hex 91' access state code operations to complete. This includes all previous hex 81 and hex 91 operations that may have been performed on previous Set Access State instructions within the current process as well as those that may have been issued in previous access state specification entries in the current instruction. The pointer is ignored for this access state code entry.

80

Object should be written and it is not needed in main storage by issuing process. Object is written to nonvolatile storage synchronously with the execution of the instruction. Any main storage that the object occupied is then marked as to make it quickly available for replacement.

81

Object should be written and it is not needed in main storage by issuing process. Object is written to nonvolatile storage asynchronously with the execution of the instruction. Any main storage that the object occupied is then marked as to make it quickly available for replacement.

If desired, the process can synchronize with any outstanding hex 81 access state operations by issuing a hex 41 access state operations either within the current instruction or during a subsequent Set Access State instruction.

**Access State  
Code (Hex)**  
90

**Function and Required Parameter**

Associated object must be insured, but is still needed in main storage. Object is written to nonvolatile storage synchronously with the execution of the instruction. Unlike access state codes hex 80 and hex 81, this access state code does not mark any main storage occupied by the object as to make it quickly available for replacement.

91

Associated object must be insured, but is still needed in main storage. Object is written to nonvolatile storage asynchronously with the execution of the instruction. Unlike access state codes hex 80 and hex 81, this access state code does not mark any main storage occupied by the object as to make it quickly available for replacement.

If desired, the process can synchronize with any outstanding hex 91 access state operations by issuing a hex 41 access state operations either within the current instruction or during a subsequent Set Access State instruction.

*Access state codes* hex 03 and hex 04 may be used for spaces only. The pointer to the object in the access state specification must be a space pointer. Otherwise, the *pointer type invalid* (hex 2402) exception is signaled.

Access state code hex 40 may be used in conjunction with access state codes hex 01, hex 02, or hex 03. The access state specification entry with access state code hex 40 must immediately precede the access state specification entry with access state code hex 01, hex 02, or hex 03 with which it is to be combined. The pointer to the object in both entries must be a space pointer. Otherwise, the *pointer type invalid* (hex 2402) exception is signaled. The *access state parameter* field in the *access state specification entry* with code hex 40 is ignored. The *access pool ID* and the *space length* in the entry with access state code hex 01, hex 02, or hex 03 are used.

The **access pool ID** field indicates the desired main storage pool in which the object is to be placed (0-16). The storage pool ID entry is treated as a 4-byte logical binary value. When a 0 storage pool ID is specified, the storage pool associated with the issuing process is used.

The **space length** field designates the part of the space associated with the object to be operated on. If the pointer to the object entry is a system pointer, the operation begins with the first byte of the space. If the pointer to the object entry is a space pointer that specifies a location, the operation proceeds for the number of storage units that are designated. No exception is signaled when the number of referenced bytes of the space are not allocated. When operations on objects are designated by system pointers, this operation is performed in addition to the access state modification of the object. This entry is ignored for *access state codes* hex 20 and hex 21. This entry will be truncated to a maximum of 65536 for *access state codes* immediately following access state code 40.

The **operational object size** field is a value which is ignored upon input to the instruction and is set by the instruction for access codes 10 and 18. It represents, in units of minimum machine transfer size, the total size of the object which could/did participate in the operation. The parts of an object which are considered "operational" are decided by the machine and does include the associated space, if any.

### Authorization Required

- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

**Exceptions**

| Exception |  | Operands |       |
|-----------|--|----------|-------|
|           |  | 1        | Other |
| 04        | Access state   |          |       |
|           | 01 access state specification invalid                        | X        |       |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                                | X        |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment  | X        |       |
|           | 03 range   | X        |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                          | X        |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                             | X        |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                                | X        |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                                | X        |       |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              | X        | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  | X        |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        |       |
|           | 03 pointer addressing invalid object                         | X        |       |
|           | 04 pointer not resolved                                      | X        |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          | X     |
| 36        | Space management   |          |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          | X     |

Exception

38      Template specification  
         01 template value invalid

| Operands |       |
|----------|-------|
| 1        | Other |
|          |       |
| X        |       |

---

## Chapter 20. Dump Space Management Instructions

This chapter describes all the instructions used for dump space management. These instructions are arranged in alphabetical order. For an alphabetic summary of all the instructions, see Appendix A, "Instruction Summary."

|  |      |
|--|------|
| Materialize Dump Space (MATDMPS) . . . . . | 20-3 |
|--|------|





## Materialize Dump Space (MATDMPS)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2  |
|---------------|-----------|------------|
| 04DA          | Receiver  | Dump space |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* System pointer.

### ILE access

```
MATDMPS(
    receiver : space pointer
    var dump_space : system pointer
)
```

**Description:** The current attributes of the dump space specified by operand 2 are materialized into the receiver specified by operand 1.

The template identified by operand 1 must be 16-byte aligned in the space. The format of the materialization is as follows:

- Materialization size specification
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Char(8)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization (always 128 for this instruction) Bin(4)
- Object identification Char(32)
  - Object type Char(1)
  - Object subtype Char(1)
  - Object name Char(30)
- Object creation options Char(4)
  - Existence attributes Bit 0
    - 0 = Temporary
    - 1 = Permanent
  - Space attribute Bit 1
    - 0 = Fixed length
    - 1 = Variable length
  - Context Bit 2
    - 0 = Addressability not in context
    - 1 = Addressability in context
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 3-12
  - Initialize space Bit 13
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 14-31
- Recovery options Char(4)
- Size of space Bin(4)
- Initial value of space Char(1)

|                        |                |
|------------------------|----------------|
| • Performance class    | Char(4)        |
| • Reserved             | Char(7)        |
| • Context              | System pointer |
| • Reserved             | Char(16)       |
| • Dump Space size      | Char(4)        |
| • Dump data size       | Char(4)        |
| • Dump data size limit | Char(4)        |
| • Reserved             | Char(20)       |

The first 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes provided** for use by the instruction. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than eight causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception to be signaled.

The second 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total *number of bytes available* to be materialized. The instruction materializes as many bytes as can be contained in the area specified as the receiver. If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested, then the excess bytes are unchanged. No exceptions are signaled in the event that the receiver contains insufficient area for the materialization, other than the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception described previously.

The **dump space size** field is set with the current size value for the number of 512-byte blocks of space allocated for storage of dump data within the dump space.

The **dump data size** field is set with the current size value for the number of 512-byte blocks of dump data contained in the dump space. This value specifies the number of blocks from the start of the dump space through the block of dump data which has been placed into the dump space at the largest dump space offset value. A value of zero indicates that the dump space currently contains no dump data.

The **dump data size limit** field is set with the current size limit for the number of 512-byte blocks of dump data which may be stored in the dump space. A value of zero indicates that no explicit limitation is placed on the amount of dump data which may be stored in the dump space. The machine implicitly places a limit on the maximum size of a dump space. This value of this limitation is dependent upon the specific implementation of the machine.

### Authorization Required

- Operational
  - Operand 2
- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Operand 2
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Exceptions

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                                | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment violation                              | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 range   | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                          | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                             | X        | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                                |          | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered   |          |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                                |          | X | X     |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              |          |   | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  |          | X |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 pointer addressing invalid object                         |          | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                                       | X        | X |       |
| 36        | Space management   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid                                    | X        |   |       |

**Exception**

03 materialization length exception

**Operands**

1  
X

2

**Other**

## Chapter 21. Machine Observation Instructions

This chapter describes all instructions used for machine observation. These instructions are arranged alphabetically. For an alphabetic summary of all the instructions, see Appendix A, "Instruction Summary."

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| Find Relative Invocation Number (FNDRINVN)   | 21-3  |
| Materialize Instruction Attributes (MATINAT) | 21-8  |
| Materialize Invocation (MATINV)              | 21-14 |
| Materialize Invocation Attributes (MATINVAT) | 21-18 |
| Materialize Invocation Entry (MATINVE)       | 21-28 |
| Materialize Invocation Stack (MATINVS)       | 21-32 |
| Materialize Pointer (MATPTR)                 | 21-37 |
| Materialize Pointer Locations (MATPTL)       | 21-46 |
| Materialize System Object (MATSOBJ)          | 21-48 |



## Find Relative Invocation Number (FNDRINVN)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1                  | Operand 2    | Operand 3                 |
|---------------|----------------------------|--------------|---------------------------|
| 0543          | Relative invocation number | Search range | Search criterion template |

*Operand 1:* Signed binary(4) variable scalar

*Operand 2:* Character(48) scalar (fixed length) or null

*Operand 3:* Space pointer

## ILE access

```
FNDRINVN (
  var relative_invocation_number : signed binary;
  var search_range                : aggregate; OR
                                null operand;
  search_criterion_template      : space pointer
)
```

**Description:** The invocations identified by operand 2 are searched in the order specified by operand 2 until an invocation is found which satisfies the search criterion specified in the operand 3 template. The identity of the first invocation (in search order) to satisfy the search criterion is returned in operand 1. If no invocation in the specified range satisfies the search criterion, then either an exception is signaled, or a value of zero is returned in operand 1, depending on the modifiers specified in the operand 3 template.

Operand 1 is returned as a signed binary(4) value identifying the first invocation found that satisfies the specified search criterion. It is specified relative to the starting invocation identified by operand 2. A positive number indicates a displacement in the direction of newer invocations, while a negative indicates a displacement in the direction of older invocations. A zero value indicates that no invocation in the specified range matched the specified criterion. Operand 1 is not modified in the event that the instruction terminates with an exception.

Note that a modifier in the operand 3 template determines if the starting invocation identified by operand 2 is to be skipped. If the starting invocation is skipped during the search then a result of zero in operand 1 always indicates failure to find an invocation that satisfies the criterion. If the starting invocation is not skipped, then a failure to find an invocation that satisfies the criterion results in an exception.

Operand 2 identifies the starting invocation and the range of the search. If operand 2 is specified as a null operand, then operand 2 is assumed to identify a range starting with the current invocation and proceeding through all existing older invocations.

Operand 3 is a space pointer to a template that identifies the search criterion and search modifiers for the find operation.

**Operand 2:** The value specified by *operand 2* identifies the range of invocations to be searched. This operand can be null (which indicates the range which starts with the current invocation and proceeds through all existing older invocations), or it can contain either an invocation pointer to an invocation or a null pointer (which indicates a range starting with the current invocation).

*Operand 2* has the following format:



|   |                    |
|---|--------------------|
| • Starting invocation offset              | Bin(4)             |
| • Originating invocation offset (ignored) | Bin(4)             |
| • Invocation range                        | Bin(4)             |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                     | Char(4)            |
| • Starting invocation pointer             | Invocation pointer |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                     | Char(16)           |

If a non-null pointer is specified for *starting invocation pointer*, then *operand 2* must be 16-byte aligned in the space.

#### Terminology:

##### Requesting invocation

The invocation executing the **FNDRINVN** instruction. Note that, in many cases, this invocation belongs to a system or language run-time procedure/program, and the instruction is actually being executed on behalf of another procedure or program.

##### Starting invocation

The invocation which serves as the starting point for the search.

#### Field descriptions

##### **Starting invocation offset**

A signed numerical value indicating an invocation relative to the invocation located by the *starting invocation pointer*. A value of zero denotes the invocation addressed by the *starting invocation pointer*, with increasingly positive numbers denoting increasingly later invocations in the stack, and increasingly negative numbers denoting increasingly earlier invocations in the stack.

If the *starting invocation pointer* is valid or null, but the invocation identified by this offset does not exist in the stack, an *invocation offset outside of current stack* (hex 2C1A) exception will be signaled.

##### **Originating invocation offset**

This field is used by other instructions but is ignored by **FNDRINVN**.

##### **Invocation range**

*Invocation range* is a signed numerical value which specifies the direction of the search and the maximum number of invocations to be examined. The magnitude of *invocation range* specifies the maximum number of invocations to be searched *exclusive* of the starting invocation. It is not an error if this magnitude is greater than the number of existing invocations in the specified direction. If the sign of *invocation range* is positive (and non-zero), the search is performed in the direction of newer invocations, while if the sign is negative, the search is performed in the direction of older invocations.

Note that the *bypass starting invocation* modifier in *operand 3* affects how the starting invocation is treated. If this modifier is false, then the starting invocation is the first invocation examined. If *invocation range* is zero in this case then *only* the starting invocation is examined. If, on the other hand, *bypass starting invocation* is true, then the starting invocation *does not* participate in the search, and, if *invocation range* is zero, no invocations are searched and a value of zero is returned for operand 1.

##### **Starting invocation pointer**

An invocation pointer to an invocation. If null, then the current invocation is indicated. If not null, then *operand 2* must be 16-byte aligned in the space.

If the pointer identifies an invocation in another process, a *process object access invalid* (hex 2C11) exception will be signaled. If the invocation identified by this pointer does not exist in the stack, an *object destroyed* (hex 2202) exception will be signaled.

**Usage note:** In cases where *starting invocation pointer* is null, *operand 2* may be a constant.

**Operand 3:** The search criterion template identified by *operand 3* must be aligned on a 16-byte boundary. The template is a 32-byte value with the following format:

- Reserved (binary 0) Char(8)
- Search option Bin(4)
- Search modifiers Char(4)
  - Bypass starting invocation Bit 0
    - 0 = The starting invocation identified by *operand 2* is the first invocation tested. A *invocation not found* (hex 1E02) exception is signaled if the search criterion is not satisfied.
    - 1 = The starting invocation identified by *operand 2* is skipped and no exception is signaled if the search criterion is not satisfied.
  - Compare for mismatch Bit 1
    - 0 = The instruction identifies the first invocation (in specified search order) which *matches* the specified search criterion
    - 1 = The instruction identifies the first invocation (in specified search order) which *does not match* the specified search criterion
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bit 1
- Search argument Char(16)

#### Search option

Specifies the invocation attribute to be examined:

- 1 Routine type. *Search argument* is a one-byte routine type, left aligned. Allowed *search argument* values are:
  - Hex 01 OPM Program
  - Hex 02 NPM Program Entry Procedure (PEP)
  - Hex 03 NPM Procedure
- 2 Invocation type. *Search argument* is a one-byte invocation type, left aligned. Allowed *search argument* values are:
  - Hex 01 Call external
  - Hex 02 Transfer control
  - Hex 03 Event handler
  - Hex 04 External exception handler (for OPM program)
  - Hex 05 Initial program in process problem state
  - Hex 06 Initial program in process initiation state
  - Hex 07 Initial program in process termination state
  - Hex 08 Invocation exit (for OPM program)
  - Hex 09 Return or return/XCTL trap handler
  - Hex 0A Call program
  - Hex 0B Cancel handler (NPM only)
  - Hex 0C Exception handler (NPM only)
  - Hex 0D Call bound procedure/call with procedure pointer
  - Hex 0E Process Default Exception Handler

- 3 Invocation status. *Search argument* consists of two four-byte fields, left aligned. The invocation status of each examined invocation is ANDed with the first field and then compared to the second field.
- 4 Invocation mark. *Search argument* is a four-byte invocation mark, left aligned. If the search is in the direction of older invocations, the result identifies the first invocation found with an invocation mark less than or equal to the search argument. If the search is in the direction of newer invocations, the result identifies the first invocation found with an invocation mark greater than or equal to the search argument. If *invocation range* is zero, then the search is satisfied only if the invocation mark of the *starting invocation* exactly matches the search argument, and this can occur only if *bypass starting invocation* is false.  
For this option *compare for mismatch* is ignored.
- 5 Activation mark. *Search argument* is a four-byte activation mark, left aligned. The activation mark of the program or module activation corresponding to each examined invocation is compared to *search argument*. Invocations with no activation (ie, the invocations of OPM reentrant programs, and the invocation stack base entry) are considered to have an activation mark of binary zero.
- 6 Activation group mark. *Search argument* is a four-byte activation group mark, left aligned. The activation group mark of each examined invocation is compared to *search argument*.
- 7 Program pointer. *Search argument* is a system pointer to a program. The program corresponding to each examined invocation is compared to the program identified by the pointer.

**Bypass starting invocation**

If *bypass starting invocation* is false, then the starting invocation specified by *operand 2* is the first invocation examined. In this case, if the *invocation range* of *operand 2* is exhausted without satisfying the search criterion then a *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception is signaled, with the *search argument* field of *operand 3* identified as the erroneous field.

If *bypass starting invocation* is true, then the starting invocation specified by *operand 2* is skipped, and a failure to satisfy the search criterion is indicated by returning a binary zero value in *operand 1*.

**Compare for mismatch**

If *compare for mismatch* is false, then the search criterion is satisfied when an invocation is found whose attribute *matches* the *search argument*.

If *compare for mismatch* is true, however, then the search criterion is satisfied when an invocation is found whose attribute *does not match* the *search argument*.

**Search argument**

A value of between one and 16 bytes as described above. Unused bytes are ignored.

**Authorization Required:** None

**Lock Enforcement:** None

**Exceptions**

| Exception                     | Operands |   |   |       |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|---|-------|
|                               | 1        | 2 | 3 | Other |
| 06 Addressing                 |          |   |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment         |          | X | X |       |
| 03 range                      | X        | X | X |       |

| Exception   | Operands |   |   |  | Other |
|---|----------|---|---|--|-------|
|   | 1        | 2 | 3 |  |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid                 | X        | X | X |  |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                               |          |   |   |  |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation                    | X        | X | X |  |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                               |          |   |   |  |       |
| 04 system object damage state                       |          |   |   |  | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage                     |          |   |   |  | X     |
| 16 Exception management                             |          |   |   |  |       |
| 03 invalid invocation address                       |          | X |   |  |       |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception                      |          |   |   |  |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded                   |          |   |   |  | X     |
| 1E Machine observation                              |          |   |   |  |       |
| 02 invocation not found                             |          | X |   |  |       |
| 20 Machine support                                  |          |   |   |  |       |
| 02 machine check                                    |          |   |   |  | X     |
| 03 function check                                   |          |   |   |  | X     |
| 22 Object access                                    |          |   |   |  |       |
| 02 object destroyed                                 | X        | X | X |  |       |
| 03 object suspended                                 | X        | X | X |  |       |
| 08 object compressed                                |          |   |   |  | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification                            |          |   |   |  |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist                           | X        | X | X |  |       |
| 02 pointer type invalid                             | X        | X | X |  |       |
| 2C Program execution                                |          |   |   |  |       |
| 11 Process object access invalid                    |          | X |   |  |       |
| 1A Invocation offset outside range of current stack |          | X |   |  |       |
| 2E Resource control limit                           |          |   |   |  |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded              |          |   |   |  | X     |
| 32 Scalar specification                             |          |   |   |  |       |
| 03 scalar value invalid                             |          | X |   |  |       |
| 36 Space management                                 |          |   |   |  |       |
| 01 space extension/truncation                       |          |   |   |  | X     |
| 38 Template specification                           |          |   |   |  |       |
| 01 template value invalid                           |          |   | X |  |       |

## Materialize Instruction Attributes (MATINAT)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2             |
|---------------|-----------|-----------------------|
| 0526          | Receiver  | Selection information |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* Character scalar (fixed length).

**Description:** This instruction materializes the attributes of the instruction that are selected in operand 2 and places them in the receiver (operand 1).

Operand 2 is a 16-byte template. Only the first 16 bytes are used. Any excess bytes are ignored. Operand 2 has the following format:

- Selection template
  - Invocation number
  - Instruction number
  - Reserved (binary 0)

Char(16)

Bin(2)

Bin(4)

Char(10)

The **invocation number** is a specific identifier for the target invocation, in the process, that is to be materialized. This program must be observable or the *program not observable* (hex 1E01) exception is signaled.

The **instruction number** specifies the instruction in the specified program invocation that is to be materialized.

Operand 1 is a space pointer that addresses a 16-byte aligned template where the materialized data is placed. The format of the data is as follows:

- Materialization size specification
  - Number of bytes provided by the user
  - Number of bytes available to be materialization
- Object identification
  - Program type
  - Program subtype
  - Program name
- Offset to instruction attributes
- Reserved (binary 0)
- Instruction attributes
  - Instruction type
    - Instruction version
    - Reserved (binary 0)
  - Instruction length as input

Char(8)

Bin(4)

Bin(4)

Char(32)

Char(1)

Char(1)

Char(30)

Bin(4)

Char(8)

Char(\*)

Char(2)

Bits 0-3

Bits 4-15

Bin(2)

to Create Program

- Offset to instruction form specified as input to Create Program Bin(4)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(4)
- Number of instruction operands Bin(2)
- Operand attributes offsets Char(\*)
  - An offset is materialized for each of the the operands of the instruction specifying the offset to the attributes for the operand Bin(4)
- Instruction form specified as input to Create Program Char(\*)
  - Instruction operation code Char(2)
  - Optional extender field and operand fields Char(\*)
- Operand attributes Char(\*)

A set of attributes following this format is materialized for each of the operands of the instruction. Compound operand references result in materialization of only one set of attributes for the operand which describe the substring or array element as is appropriate. See the specific format described below for each operand type.

- Operand type Bin(2)
  - 1 = Data object
  - 2 = Constant data object
  - 3 = Instruction number reference
  - 4 = Argument list
  - 5 = Exception description
  - 6 = Null operand
  - 7 = Space pointer machine object
- Operand specific attributes Char(\*)

See descriptions below for detailed formats. Nothing is provided for null operands.

- Data object Char(32)

For a data object, the following operand attributes are materialized.

- Operand type = 1 Bin(2)
- Data object specific attributes Char(7)
  - Element type Char(1)
    - Hex 00 = Binary
    - Hex 01 = Floating-point
    - Hex 02 = Zoned decimal
    - Hex 03 = Packed decimal
    - Hex 04 = Character
    - Hex 08 = Pointer
  - Element length Char(2)
    - If binary, or character, or floating-point:
      - Length Bits 0-15
    - If zoned decimal or packed decimal:
      - Fractional digits Bits 0-7
      - Total digits Bits 8-15
    - If pointer:

|  |               |
|--|---------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length = 16</li> </ul>  | Bits 0-15     |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Array size <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If scalar, then value of 0.</li> <li>If array, then number of elements.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  | Bin(4)        |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reserved (binary 0)</li> </ul>  | Char(6)       |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Data object addressability <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Addressability indicator <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hex 00 = Addressability was not established</li> <li>Hex 01 = Addressability was established</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>   | Char(17)      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Space pointer to the object if addressability could be established</li> </ul>   | Char(1)       |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Constant data object</li> </ul> <p>For a constant data object, the following operand attributes are materialized (immediate operands as constants, signed immediates as binary, and unsigned immediates as character).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Operand type = 2</li> <li>Constant specific attributes <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Element type <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hex 00 = Binary</li> <li>Hex 01 = Floating-point</li> <li>Hex 02 = Zoned decimal</li> <li>Hex 03 = Packed decimal</li> <li>Hex 04 = Character</li> </ul> </li> <li>Element length <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If binary, or character, or floating-point: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length</li> </ul> </li> <li>If zoned decimal or packed decimal: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fractional digits</li> <li>Total digits</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>Reserved (binary 0)</li> <li>Reserved (binary 0)</li> <li>Constant value</li> </ul> </li> </ul> | Space pointer |
|  | Char(*)       |
|  | Char(2)       |
|  | Char(7)       |
|  | Char(1)       |
|  | Char(2)       |
|  | Bits 0-15     |
|  | Bits 0-7      |
|  | Bits 8-15     |
|  | Bin(4)        |
|  | Char(7)       |
|  | Char(*)       |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Instruction references</li> </ul> <p>For instruction references, either through instruction definition lists or immediate operands, the following operand attributes are materialized.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Operand type = 3</li> <li>Number of instruction reference elements <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 = Single instruction reference</li> <li>&gt; 1 = Instruction definition list</li> </ul> </li> <li>Reserved (binary 0)</li> <li>Reference list</li> </ul> <p>The instruction number of each instruction reference is materialized in the order in which they are defined.</p>  | Char(*)       |
|  | Bin(2)        |
|  | Bin(2)        |
|  | Char(12)      |
|  | Char(*)       |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Argument list</li> </ul>  | Char(*)       |

For an argument list, the following operand attributes are materialized.

- Operand type = 4 Bin(2)
- Argument list specific attributes Char(4)
  - Actual number of list entries Bin(2)
  - Maximum number of list entries Bin(2)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(10)
- Addressability to list entries Char(\*)
- Space pointer to each list entry for the Space pointer  
number of actual list entries. A value of all zeros is materialized if addressability could not be  
established.

- Exception description Char(48)

For an exception description, the following operand attributes are materialized.

- Operand type = 5 Bin(2)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(10)
- Control flags Char(2)
  - Exception handling action Bits 0-2
    - 000 = Ignore occurrence of exception and continue processing
    - 001 = Disabled exception description
    - 010 = Continue search for an exception description by resignaling the exception to the  
immediately preceding invocation
    - 100 = Defer handling
    - 101 = Pass control to the specified exception handler
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 3-15
- Compare value length Bin(2)
- Compare value Char(32)

- Space pointer machine object Char(32)

For a space pointer machine object, the following operand attributes are materialized.

- Operand type = 7 Bin(2)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(13)
- Pointer addressability Char(17)
  - Pointer value indicator Char(1)
    - Hex 00 = Addressability value is not valid
    - Hex 01 = Addressability value is valid
- Space pointer data object containing the Space pointer  
space pointer machine object value if addressability value is valid.

The first 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes provided** for use by the instruction. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than 8 causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception to be signaled.

The second 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes available** to be materialized. The instruction materializes as many bytes as can be contained in the area specified as the receiver. If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested, then excess bytes are unchanged.



The materialization available for an instruction depends on the execution status of the program that the instruction is in. If the program has not executed to the point of the instruction, little or no meaningful information about the instruction can be materialized. If the program executes the instruction multiple times, the materialization will vary with each execution.

No exceptions are signaled in the event that the receiver contains insufficient area for the materialization, other than the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception described previously.

This instruction is valid only when the program to be materialized is an OPM program. If the invocation indicated by *operand 2* is an invocation of an NPM program or procedure, then an *instruction not valid for invocation type* (hex 2C1C) exception is signaled.

## Exceptions

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                                   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Space addressing violation                | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Boundary alignment                        | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 Range                                     | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 Optimized addressability invalid          | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/Parameter                           |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Parameter reference violation             | X        | X |       |
| 10        | Damage Encountered                           |          |   |       |
|           | 04 System object damage state                |          |   | X     |
|           | 44 Partial system object damage              |          |   | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-Dependent Exception                  |          |   |       |
|           | 03 Machine storage limit exceeded            |          |   | X     |
| 1E        | Machine Observation                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Program not observable                    |          | X |       |
| 20        | Machine Support                              |          |   |       |
|           | 02 Machine check                             |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 Function check                            |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object Access                                |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Object not found                          |          | X |       |
|           | 02 Object destroyed                          | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 Object suspended                          | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                         |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer Specification                        |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Pointer does not exist                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Pointer type invalid                      | X        | X |       |
| 2C        | Program Execution                            |          |   |       |
|           | 1C Instruction not valid for invocation type |          | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource Control Limit                       |          |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 01 User Profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar Specification                   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Scalar type invalid                 | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 Scalar attributes invalid           | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 Scalar value invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 36        | Space Management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Space Extension/Truncation          |          |   | X     |
| 38        | Template Specification                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 Template value invalid              |          | X |       |
|           | 03 Materialization length exception    | X        |   |       |

## Materialize Invocation (MATINV)

|                      |                  |                       |
|----------------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>Op Code (Hex)</b> | <b>Operand 1</b> | <b>Operand 2</b>      |
| 0516                 | Receiver         | Selection information |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* Space pointer.

### ILE access

```

MATINV (
    receiver          : space pointer;
    selection_information : space pointer
)

```

**Description:** The attributes of the invocation selected through operand 2 are materialized into the receiver designated by operand 1.

Operand 2 is a space pointer that addresses a template that has the following format:

- Control information Char(2)
  - Template extension Bit 0\*
    - 0 = Template extension is not present.
    - 1 = Template extension is present.
  - Invocation number Bits 1-15
- Offset to list of parameters Bin(4)\*
- Number of parameter ODV numbers Char(2)\*
- Offset to list of exception descriptions Bin(4)\*
- Number of exception description ODV numbers\* Char(2)
- Template extension (optional) Char(14)\*
  - Offset to list of space pointer machine objects\* Bin(4)
  - Number of space pointer machine object ODV numbers\* Char(2)
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(8)

**Note:** Fields annotated with an (\*) must be set to all binary zeroes if the invocation is for a bound program. The *template extension* field must also be set to zero. A *template value invalid* (hex 3801) exception is signaled if the invocation is a bound program invocation and the fields are not set to binary zeroes.

The offset to the list of space pointer machine objects, offset to the list of parameters, and the offset to the list of exception descriptions are relative to the start of the operand 2 template. Each list is an array of Char(2) ODV numbers. The number of space pointer machine object ODV numbers, number of parameter ODV numbers, and the number of exception description ODV numbers define the sizes of the arrays.

Operand 1 is a space pointer that addresses a 16-byte aligned template into which the materialized data is placed. The format of the data is:

- Materialization size specification Char(8)
  - Number of bytes provided by the user Bin(4)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Object identification Char(32)
  - Program type Char(1)
  - Program subtype Char(1)
  - Program name Char(30)
- Trace specification Char(2)
  - Invocation trace status Bit 0
    - 0 = Not tracing new invocations
    - 1 = Tracing new invocations
  - Return trace Bit 1
    - 0 = Not tracing returns
    - 1 = Tracing returns
  - Invocation trace propagation Bit 2
    - 0 = Not propagating invocation trace
    - 1 = Propagating invocation trace
  - Return trace propagation Bit 3
    - 0 = Not propagating return trace
    - 1 = Propagating return trace
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 4-15

| The following fields are returned only for non-bound program invocations.

- Instruction number UBin(2)
- Offset to parameter values Bin(4)
- Offset to exception description value Bin(4)
- Offset to space pointer machine object values Bin(4)  
(Optional-This data is present only if the template extension is present in the selection information.)
- Space pointer machine objects Char(\*)  
(Optional-This data is present only if the template extension is present in the selection information.)
  - For each ODV number specified for a space pointer machine object, the value of the space pointer machine object is materialized as follows: Char(32)
    - Reserved (binary 0) Char(15)
    - Pointer value indicator Char(1)
      - 00 = Addressability value is not valid
      - 01 = Addressability value is valid
    - Space pointer data object containing the space pointer machine object value if addressability value is valid. Space pointer
- Parameters Char(\*)
  - For each parameter ODT number specified, Space pointer

the address of the parameter data is materialized (If no parameter ODT numbers are materialized, this parameter is binary 0.)

- Exception description Char(\*)
  - For each exception description ODT number specified, the following is materialized: Char(36)
  - Control flags Char(2)
    - Exception handling action Bits 0-2
      - 000 = Ignore occurrence of exception and continue processing
      - 001 = Disabled exception description
      - 010 = Continue search for an exception description by resignaling the exception to the immediately preceding invocation
      - 100 = Defer handling
      - 101 = Pass control to the specified exception handler
    - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 3-15
  - Compare value length Bin(2)
  - Compare value Char(32)

The first 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes provided** for use by the instruction. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than 8 causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception to be signaled.

The second 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes available** to be materialized. The instruction materializes as many bytes as can be contained in the area specified as the receiver. If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested, then excess bytes are unchanged.

No exceptions (other than the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception) are signaled in the event that the receiver contains insufficient area for the materialization.

The instruction number returned depends on how control was passed from the invocation:

| Exit Type     | Instruction Number                                |
|---------------|---|
| Call External | Locates the Call External instruction             |
| Event         | Locates the next instruction to execute           |
| Exception     | Locates the instruction that caused the exception |

The space pointers that address parameter values are returned in the same order as the corresponding ODT numbers in the input array. The same is true for the exception description values.

If the *offset to the list of parameters* or the *number of parameter ODT numbers* is 0, no parameters are returned and the *offset to parameters* value is 0. If any parameters are returned, they are 16-byte aligned. If the *offset to list of exception descriptions* or the *number of exception description ODT numbers* is 0, no exception descriptions are returned and the *offset to exception description values* are 0.

## Exceptions

| Exception                     | Operands |   |       |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|                               | 1        | 2 | Other |
| 06 Addressing                 |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation | X        | X |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment                  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 range                               | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                     |          |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation       | X        | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state          | X        | X | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        | X        | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          | X |       |
| 1E        | Machine observation                    |          |   |       |
|           | 01 program not observable              |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    |          | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                 | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 scalar attributes invalid           | X        | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid              |          | X |       |
|           | 03 materialization length exception    | X        |   |       |

## Materialize Invocation Attributes (MATINVAT)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2                 | Operand 3                    |
|---------------|-----------|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 0533          | Receiver  | Invocation identification | Attribute selection template |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* Character(48) scalar (fixed length) or null.

*Operand 3:* Space pointer.

### ILE access

```

MATINVAT (
    receiver          : space pointer
    var invocation_identification : aggregate; OR
                                null operand;
    attribute_selection_template : space pointer
)

```

**Description:** The attributes specified by operand 3 of the invocation specified by operand 2 are materialized into the receiver specified by operand 1. In addition to specifying the attributes to be materialized, operand 3 controls how they are arranged in the operand 1 receiver.

Operand 1 is a space pointer to an area that is to receive the materialized attribute values. The format of this area is determined by the value of the attribute selection template.

Operand 2 identifies the source invocation whose attributes are to be materialized. It also identifies the originating invocation whose activation group access right to the source invocation's activation group is to be verified. If operand 2 is null, the invocation issuing the instruction is both the source invocation and the originating invocation.

Operand 3 is a space pointer to a template that selects the invocation attributes to be materialized and specifies how they are to be arranged in the receiver template.

### Operand 2

The value specified by *operand 2* identifies the source and originating invocations. This operand can be null (which indicates the current invocation is to be used for the source and originating invocations) or it can contain either a invocation pointer to an invocation or a null pointer (which indicates the current invocation).

*Operand 2* has the following format:

- Source invocation offset Bin(4)
- Originating invocation offset Bin(4)
- Invocation range (ignored) Bin(4)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(4)
- Source invocation pointer Invocation pointer
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(16)

If a non-null pointer is specified for *source invocation pointer*, then *operand 2* must be 16-byte aligned in the space.

*Terminology:***Requesting invocation**

The invocation executing the **MATINVAT** instruction. Note that, in many cases, this invocation belongs to a system or language run-time procedure/program, and the instruction is actually being executed on behalf of another procedure or program.

**Originating invocation**

The invocation on whose behalf the instruction is being executed. It may be necessary to identify this invocation since its "activation group access rights" may need to be checked. This allows, for example, the requesting invocation to be a system state invocation with the instruction still performing an "activation group access rights" check that reflects the rights of the user.

**Source invocation**

The invocation whose attributes are to be materialized.

**Activation group access rights**

The rights that invocations executing in one activation group may have to access and modify the resources of another activation group.

*Field descriptions:***Source invocation offset**

A signed numerical value indicating an invocation relative to the invocation located by the source invocation pointer. A value of zero denotes the invocation addressed by the source invocation pointer, with increasingly positive numbers denoting increasingly later invocations in the stack, and increasingly negative numbers denoting increasingly earlier invocations in the stack.

If the source invocation pointer is not valid or the invocation identified by this offset does not exist in the stack, an *invocation offset outside range of current stack* (hex 2C1A) exception will be signaled.

**Originating invocation offset**

A signed numerical value identifying the originating invocation relative to the current invocation. Since this is an offset relative to the current invocation, only zero or negative values are allowed.

If the invocation identified by this offset does not exist in the stack, an *invocation offset outside range of current stack* (hex 2C1A) exception will be signaled.

**Invocation range**

This field is used by **FNDRINVN** and is ignored by this instruction.

**Source invocation pointer**

An *invocation pointer* to an invocation. If null, then the current invocation is indicated.

If the pointer identifies an invocation in another process, a *process object access invalid* (hex 2C11) exception will be signaled. If the invocation identified by this pointer does not exist in the stack, an *object destroyed* (hex 2202) exception will be signaled.

**Activation group access rights checking:** This instruction sometimes (depending on the attributes materialized) requires that activation group access rights to the activation group of the source invocation be verified. In such cases, the *originator offset* field of *operand 2* identifies the invocation whose right of access is to be checked. (That is, it identifies the invocation which is considered to have originated the request and on whose behalf the instruction is being executed.)

If *originator offset* is not zero, then the activation group of the requesting invocation must have the right to access the activation group of the invocation identified by *originator offset*. This check is made whether or not access rights to the source invocation need to be checked.



In the event that appropriate access rights are not found, an *activation group access violation* (hex 2C12) exception is signaled.

**Note:** The originating invocation identified by the originating invocation offset must be equal to or "newer" than the invocation identified as the source invocation. Otherwise, an *invalid origin invocation* (hex 2C19) exception will be signaled.

**Usage note:** In cases where *source invocation pointer* is null, *operand 2* may be a constant.

**Operand 3:** The attribute selection template has the following format:

- Selection template header
  - Number of attributes Char(16)
  - Control flags Bin(4)
  - Attribute index indirect Char(1)
  - Attribute index indirect Bit 0
    - 0 = *Offset to attribute index* specifies directly the location of the attribute index value
    - 1 = *Offset to attribute index* specifies the location of a space pointer which in turn specifies the location of the attribute index value
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 1-7
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(3)
  - Offset to attribute index Bin(4)
  - Length of attribute index Bin(4)
- Attribute selection entries Char(\*)

The attribute selection entries are each 16 bytes long and have the following format:

- Attribute ID Bin(4)
- Control flags Char(1)
  - Indirect Bit 0
    - 0 = *Offset to receiver* specifies directly the location of the attribute value
    - 1 = *Offset to receiver* specifies the location of a space pointer which in turn specifies the location of the attribute value
  - Return length Bit 1
    - 0 = A length field is not present with the attribute
    - 1 = A length field precedes the attribute
  - Return status Bit 2
    - 0 = A status field is not present with the attribute
    - 1 = A status field precedes the attribute
  - Pad Bit 3
    - 0 = No pad field is assumed to precede the attribute
    - 1 = A pad field of zero, eight, or twelve bytes is assumed to precede the attribute
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 4-7
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(3)
- Offset to receiver Bin(4)
- Length of receiver Bin(4)

**Basic structure:** The "attribute selection template" allows the user of **MATINVAT** considerable flexibility in deciding what invocation attributes are to be materialized and where their materializations are to be returned. This flexibility is achieved by having the "attribute selection template" consist of a header, followed by a series of entries, each of which identifies an attribute to be materialized, the location where it is to be materialized, and the amount of space reserved for its materialization.

The template header specifies the number of attribute entries present in the template, and it also allows the specification of an optional *attribute index* field. The *attribute index* field, if present, identifies the first *attribute selection entry* to be processed (causing entries prior to that one to be skipped). In addition, if the *attribute index* field is present, it is updated upon the normal or abnormal completion of the instruction to contain either zero (if completion is normal) or the number of the entry being processed (if the instruction ends with an exception).

Each *attribute selection entry* identifies the attribute to be materialized and the area where the materialization is to be returned. The attribute may be returned directly into the area addressed by the *operand 1* space pointer, or it may be returned into an area addressed by a space pointer which is, in turn, contained in the area addressed by the *operand 1* space pointer. These two cases are distinguished by the *indirect* bit.

In addition, each *attribute selection entry* contains:

- An offset value which is the offset relative to the *operand 1* space pointer where either the attribute's materialization area or the pointer to the attributes' materialization area is contained.
- A length value identifying the maximum number of bytes of data to be materialized for the attribute.
- A flag indicating whether the length of the attribute is to be materialized.
- A flag indicating whether the status of the attribute is to be materialized.
- A flag indicating whether a pad field precedes the attribute (or its pointer, if *indirect* is specified). If present, the length of this "pad" field is automatically adjusted so that the combined length of the length, status, and pad fields is either zero or 16, maintaining the relative quadword alignment of the modification value if the length and/or status fields are present.

Note that, for the sake of regularity, the fields of the *attribute selection template* header are arranged in the same general fashion as those in the *attribute selection entries*.

#### *Field descriptions:*

##### **Number of attributes**

Specifies how many 16-byte *attribute selection entries* follow.

##### **Attribute index indirect**

If *attribute index indirect* is binary zero, then *offset to attribute index* specifies the location where the attribute index is stored as an offset from the location addressed by the *operand 1* space pointer. If *attribute index indirect* is binary one, then the location identified by *attribute index offset* must be quadword aligned and must contain a space pointer. This space pointer in turn addresses the location where the attribute index value is stored.

##### **Offset to attribute index**

Specifies the offset to the attribute index or the offset to a pointer to the attribute index, depending on the value of *attribute index indirect*.

##### **Length of attribute index**

Specifies the length of the area where the attribute index value is stored. This field must have a value of either zero or four.

If this field has a value of zero, then the first attribute entry to be processed is the first attribute entry in the template, and no feedback is given as to which attribute entry was being processed at the time of an exception. *Attribute index indirect* and *attribute index offset* are ignored.

If this field has a value of four, then the value of the attribute index, treated as a signed bin(4) value, must be greater than or equal to one and less than or equal to *number of attributes*. In this case the attribute index identifies the attribute entry to be processed first (with the first entry in the template having an index of one), and, in the event of an exception, the attribute index value is modified by this instruction such that it identifies the attribute entry being processed at the time of the exception. If the instruction completes without an exception, then the attribute index value is set to zero.

### Attribute ID

Specifies the attribute to be materialized. Values that may be specified are:

- 1 Invocation pointer to specified invocation. (16 bytes, quadword aligned.)
- 2 Automatic storage pointer. Space pointer to the automatic storage for this invocation. If no automatic storage exists for this invocation, then a null pointer is returned. (16 bytes, quadword aligned, access rights required.)
- 3 Static storage pointer. Space pointer to the static storage for this invocation (OPM invocations only). If no static storage exists for this invocation, or if the invocation is an NPM invocation, then a null pointer is returned. (16 bytes, quadword aligned, access rights required.)  
**Note:** For NPM invocations there is no single "distinguished" static storage area, but instead there may be multiple static storage areas. The list of static storage areas corresponding to the invocation's activation can be obtained by using the **Materialize Activation Attributes** instruction.
- 4 Parameter list pointer. Space pointer to the parameter list passed to this invocation (NPM procedure invocations only). If the procedure for this invocation does not expect a parameter list, or if this is an NPM entry routine or an OPM program, then a null pointer is returned. (16 bytes, quadword aligned, access rights required.)
- 6 Program pointer. System pointer to the program for this invocation. If the program no longer exists then a null pointer is returned. (16 bytes, quadword aligned, access rights required.)
- 7 Space pointer to *module* associated space. For NPM procedures, this space pointer addresses the secondary associated space in the NPM program that was propagated from the primary associated space of the NPM module. For OPM programs, this space pointer addresses the program's primary associated space. If the appropriate associated space does not exist in the program or if the program no longer exists, then a null pointer is returned. For both NPM and OPM invocations the requesting invocation must have space authority to the program. (16 bytes, quadword aligned, access rights required.)
- 8 Pointer to containing scope. If the specified invocation is in a nested scope, then this is an invocation pointer to the invocation of the containing scope. Otherwise a null pointer is returned. (16 bytes, quadword aligned.)
- 9 Relative invocation offset to containing scope. If the specified invocation is in a nested scope, then this is the relative invocation offset to the invocation of the containing scope. Otherwise, a value of zero is returned. Note that the relative invocation offset will be a negative number and is relative to the specified invocation. (4 bytes.)
- 10 Lexical level number. Outer procedures have a lexical level number of 1. (4 bytes.)
- 11 Invocation number. (2 bytes.)
- 12 Invocation mark. (4 bytes.)
- 13 Activation mark. If no activation exists for this invocation, then a zero value is returned. (4 bytes.)

**14** Activation group mark. (4 bytes.)

**15** Invocation type. The possible values for invocation type are:

Hex 01 Call external

Hex 02 Transfer control

Hex 03 Event handler

Hex 04 External exception handler (for OPM program)

Hex 05 Initial program in process problem state

Hex 06 Initial program in process initiation state

Hex 07 Initial program in process termination state

Hex 08 Invocation exit (for OPM program)

Hex 09 Return or return/XCTL trap handler

Hex 0A Call program

Hex 0B Cancel handler (NPM only)

Hex 0C Exception handler (NPM only)

Hex 0D Call bound procedure/call with procedure pointer

Hex 0E Process Default Exception Handler

(1 byte.)

**16** Routine type. The possible values for routine type are:

Hex 01 OPM Program

Hex 02 NPM Program Entry Procedure (PEP)

Hex 03 NPM Procedure

(1 byte.)

**17** State invocation was invoked with. (2 bytes.)

**18** State for invocation. (2 bytes.)

**19** Invocation status of the specified invocation (including invocation flags).

**Bit 0** Cancelled

**Bit 1** Ending -- a return operation has been initiated from within the invocation or the actual termination of a cancelled invocation has begun.

**Bit 2** Invocation interrupted by exception

**Bit 3** Invocation interrupted by event (reserved)

**Bit 4** Invocation is an OPM CALLX exception handler

**Bit 5** Invocation contains an OPM CALLI exception handler

**Bit 6** Invocation contains a signalled OPM branchpoint handler

**Bit 7** Retry not allowed

**Bit 8** Resume not allowed

**Bit 9** Resume point has been modified

**Bit 10** Invocation is a program entry procedure and is marked as the oldest in the activation group

**Bits 11-15** Reserved

**Bits 16-31** Invocation flags

(4 bytes.)

**Performance consideration:** When the only invocation status information required is the invocation flags, there may be a significant performance advantage if the following attribute is materialized instead of this one.

- 20 Invocation flags of the specified invocation. This attribute has the same format as the *invocation status* attribute, except that the first two bytes are returned as zero. (4 bytes.)
- 23 Cancel reason of the specified invocation. (4 bytes.)
- 24 Suspend point. Suspend pointer identifying the location within the invocation's routine where execution was suspended due to a call, interrupt, or machine operation. If the program no longer exists then a null pointer is returned. (16 bytes, quadword aligned, access rights required.)
- 25 Resume point.  
A suspend pointer identifying the location within the invocation's routine where execution will resume if execution is allowed to resume in the invocation. If the invocation is suspended for some cause that permits resumption, then this is initially set to the location that logically follows the suspend point. If the invocation is suspended for some cause that does not permit resumption, then this is initially set to be a null pointer. If the resume point is modified via **Modify Invocation Attributes** then a suspend pointer (or null pointer) corresponding to the modified resume point is returned. If the program no longer exists or if the invocation is cancelled or ending, then a null pointer is returned. (16 bytes, access rights required, quadword aligned.)
- 26 Interrupt message invocation. If the invocation is interrupted due to an exception interrupt, and the message causing the interrupt has not been removed or modified to a non-interrupt state, then this is an invocation pointer which addresses the invocation to which the interrupt message is enqueued. If no interrupt cause currently exists, then a null pointer is returned. (16 bytes, quadword aligned.)
- 27 Interrupt message reference key. If the invocation is interrupted due to an exception interrupt, and the message causing the interrupt has not been removed or modified to a non-interrupt state, then this is the message reference key of the interrupt cause message. If no interrupt cause currently exists, then a value of zero is returned. (4 bytes.)
- 28 External exception handler's monitoring invocation. If the specified invocation is an external exception handler for an OPM program, then this is an invocation pointer identifying the invocation which enabled the handler (also the invocation where the exception message is currently enqueued). Otherwise, a null pointer is returned. (16 bytes, quadword aligned.)
- 29 External exception handler's message reference key. If the specified invocation is an external exception handler for an OPM program, then this is the message reference key of the corresponding exception message. Otherwise, a zero value is returned. (4 bytes.)
- 30 OPM internal exception handler's message reference key. If the specified invocation is an OPM invocation with an internal exception handler active, then this is the message reference key of the exception message corresponding to the currently active internal exception handler. Otherwise, a zero value is returned. (4 bytes.)
- 31 OPM branchpoint exception handler's message reference key. If the specified invocation is an OPM invocation with a branchpoint exception handler in a signalled state, then this is the message reference key of the exception message corresponding to the most recently signalled branchpoint exception handler. Otherwise, a zero value is returned. (4 bytes.)

- 32** Trap handler's message reference key. If the specified invocation was invoked as a trap handler, then this is the message reference key of the corresponding trap message. (Note that the trapped invocation is, by definition, the immediately preceding invocation.) Otherwise, a zero value is returned. (4 bytes.)

Where "access rights required" is specified above, the activation group of the invocation identified as the originating invocation must have activation group access rights to the activation group of the source invocation or else an *activation group access violation* (hex 2C12) exception is signaled.

The invocation with an invocation number of 1 is always the first invocation in the stack.

#### Indirect

If *indirect* is binary zero, then *offset to receiver* specifies the location where the selected attribute value is to be materialized as an offset from the location addressed by operand 1. If *indirect* is binary one, then the location identified by *offset to receiver*, after accounting for any length, status, or pad fields specified, must be quadword aligned and must contain a space pointer. This space pointer in turn addresses the location where the selected attribute value is to be materialized.

#### Return length

If *return length* and *return status* are both binary zero, then only the attribute itself is materialized. If *return length* is binary one, then the attribute (or attribute pointer, if *indirect* is true) is preceded by a four-byte value which specifies the length of the attribute (exclusive of the length value itself, and the status and pad fields, if present).

#### Return status

If *return status* is binary one, then the attribute (or attribute pointer, if *indirect* is true) is preceded by a four-byte value which contains the status of the attribute.

If the status value is returned, it has the following format:

**Bits 0-2** Reserved (binary 0)

**Bit 3** Attribute unavailable at this time. (Eg, asking for the system pointer to a destroyed OPM program.) The result returned is zeros for the minimum length defined.

**Bit 4** Attribute not defined in this context. (Eg, asking for lexical level number from OPM invocation.) The result returned is zeros for the minimum length defined.

**Bit 5** Attribute not defined at this time. (Eg, asking for interrupt message invocation when the invocation is not interrupted.) The result returned is zeros for the minimum length defined.

**Bit 6** Attribute defined but null. (Eg, when asking for the resume point for an invocation for which resume is not currently allowed.) The result returned is zeros for the minimum length defined.

**Bit 7** Attribute truncated. Indicates that the specified *length of receiver* was too small to allow the entire attribute to be returned. The truncated result is returned, as described earlier.

**Bits 8-31** Reserved (binary 0)

If *return length* and *return status* are both binary one then the length field comes first, followed immediately by the status field.

#### Pad

If either *return length* or *return status* is binary one, and *pad* is also binary one, then twelve bytes of pad are assumed between the length or status value and the attribute (or attribute pointer, if *indirect* is true). If both *return length* and *return status* are binary one, and *pad* is also binary one, then eight bytes of pad are assumed between the status value and the attribute (or attribute pointer). If *return length* and *return status* are both binary zero, then no padding occurs, regardless of the value of *pad*. The area occupied by the pad is not modified by this instruction.

**Note:** *Pad* makes it easier to quadword align the area to receive the materialized attribute (if *indirect* is false) or the area containing the attribute pointer (if *indirect* is true) when *return status* and/or *return length* are also specified.

#### Offset to receiver

Specifies the offset to the location where the selected attribute value is to be materialized, or the offset to a pointer to the location, depending on the value of *indirect*.

#### Length of receiver

Specifies the length of the area where the attribute value is to be materialized.

This length indicates the length of the actual area available for materializing the attribute, and *does not* include the length of any length, status, or pad field. If the number of bytes of attribute data available to be materialized (exclusive of the status, length, and pad fields, if any) exceeds *length of receiver*, then only *length of receiver* bytes of data are returned. No exception is signalled in this case.

If *indirect* is a binary zero, then *length of receiver* indicates the length of the area located by *offset to receiver*. If *indirect* is a binary one, then *length of receiver* indicates the length of the area located by the indirect space pointer identified by *offset to receiver*.

In the case that *length of receiver* is sufficient to receive only part of a field in an attribute structure, then the partial field may or may not be materialized.

Individual attribute entries are processed in order, with the attributes specified by each entry being materialized before processing of the next entry begins. If an exception occurs while processing an attribute entry, then the attributes materialized due to the preceding attribute entries will still be present in their specified result locations.

For attributes which include pointers, the specified direct or indirect value location, after accounting for any length, status, or pad fields, must be quadword aligned or a *boundary alignment* (hex 0602) exception may occur. (The exception is not guaranteed to occur, eg, in the case where *length of receiver* is insufficient to include the materialized pointer, or when a null pointer is returned.)

If the value locations of individual attribute entries overlap, then the values will be overlaid in the sequence implied by the attribute entry order. If the value location of a non-indirect result overlays the location of the space pointer for an indirect result, then the validity of the space pointer will depend on the order of the associated entries.

#### Authorization Required

- Activation group access
  - From the activation group of the invocation issuing the instruction to the activation group of the originating invocation identified by operand 2
  - When an attribute annotated with "access rights required" is specified: From the activation group of the originating invocation identified by operand 2 to the activation group of the source invocation identified by operand 2
- Space authority
  - For the module associated space option, the requesting invocation must have space authority to the program executing in the source invocation identified by operand 2

**Lock Enforcement:** None

#### Exceptions

| Exception |   | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|---|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |   | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06        | Addressing  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                       | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment                               | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 range  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                    | X        | X | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization                                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 Unauthorized for operation                       |          |   |   | X     |
| 10        | Damage encountered                                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                     |          |   |   | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                         |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                                    |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                                 | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                                 | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                                |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                               |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                           | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                             | X        | X | X |       |
| 2C        | Program execution                                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 11 Process object access invalid                    |          | X |   |       |
|           | 12 Activation group access violation                |          | X |   |       |
|           | 19 Invalid origin invocation                        |          | X |   |       |
|           | 1A Invocation offset outside range of current stack |          | X |   |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                              |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded              |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                                |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 scalar value invalid                             |          | X |   |       |
| 36        | Space management                                    |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                       |          |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                              |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 template value invalid                           |          |   | X |       |



## Materialize Invocation Entry (MATINVE)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2             | Operand 3               |
|---------------|-----------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| 0547          | Receiver  | Selection information | Materialization options |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar (fixed length)

*Operand 2:* Character(8) scalar (fixed length) or null.

*Operand 3:* Character(1) scalar (fixed length) or null.

**Description:** This instruction materializes the attributes of the specified invocation entry within the process issuing the instruction. The attributes specified by operand 3 of the invocation selected through operand 2 are materialized into the receiver designated by operand 1.

Operand 2 is an 8-byte template or a null operand. If operand 2 is null, it indicates that the attributes of the current invocation are to be materialized. If operand 2 is not null, it must be an 8-byte template which specifies the invocation to be materialized. Only the first 8 bytes are used. Any excess bytes are ignored. It has the following format:

- Selection information
  - Relative invocation number
  - Reserved

Char(8)

Char(2)

Char(6)

If operand 2 is not null, it is restricted to a constant with the **relative invocation number** field specifying a value of zero, which indicates that the attributes of the current invocation are to be materialized.

Operand 3 is a 1-byte value or a null operand. If operand 3 is null, it indicates that the attributes for a materialization option value of hex 00 are to be materialized. If operand 3 is not null, it must be a 1-byte value which specifies the type of materialization to be performed. Option values that are not defined below are reserved values and may not be specified. Only the first byte is used. Any excess bytes are ignored. It has the following format:

- Materialization options

Char(1)

Hex 00 = Long materialization

Hex 01 = Short materialization type 1

Hex 02 = Short materialization type 2

Hex 03 = Short materialization type 3

Hex 04 = Short materialization type 4

Hex 05 = Short materialization type 5

If operand 3 is not null, it is restricted to a constant character scalar or an immediate value.

Operand 1 specifies a receiver into which the materialized data is placed. It must specify a character scalar with a minimum length which is dependent upon the materialization option specified for operand 3. If the length specified for operand 1 is less than the required minimum, an exception is signaled. Only the bytes up to the required minimum length are used. Any excess bytes are ignored. For the materialization options which produce pointers in the materialized data, 16-byte space alignment is required for the receiver. The data placed into the receiver differs depending upon the materialization option specified. The following descriptions detail the formats of the optional materializations.

**Long Materialization:** For a materialization option value of hex 00, the minimum length for the receiver is 144 bytes. It has the following format:

|  |                |
|--|----------------|
| • Hex 00 = Long materialization  | Char(144)      |
| — Reserved   | Char(12)       |
| — Mark counter   | Bin(4)         |
| — Reserved   | Char(32)       |
| — Associated program pointer<br>(zero for data base select/omit program) | System pointer |
| — Invocation number  | Bin(2)         |
| — Invocation type  | Char(1)        |
| Hex 00 = Data base select/omit program                                   |                |
| Hex 01 = Call external   |                |
| Hex 02 = Transfer control  |                |
| Hex 03 = Event handler   |                |
| Hex 04 = External exception handler                                      |                |
| Hex 05 = Initial program in process problem state                        |                |
| Hex 06 = Initial program in process initiation state                     |                |
| Hex 07 = Initial program in process termination state                    |                |
| Hex 08 = Invocation exit   |                |
| Hex 09 = Return trap handler or return/XCTL trap handler                 |                |
| Hex 0A = Call program  |                |
| Hex 0B = Reserved  |                |
| Hex 0C = Reserved  |                |
| Hex 0D = Reserved  |                |
| Hex 0E = Process Default Exception Handler                               |                |
| — Reserved (binary 0)  | Char(1)        |
| — Invocation mark  | Bin(4)         |
| — State invocation was invoked with                                      | Char(2)        |
| — State for invocation   | Char(2)        |
| — Reserved   | Char(4)        |
| — Automatic storage frame (ASF) pointer                                  | Space pointer  |
| — Static storage frame (SSF) pointer                                     | Space pointer  |
| — Reserved   | Char(32)       |

**Short Materialization Type 1:** For a materialization option value of hex 01, the minimum length for the receiver is 16 bytes. It has the following format:

|  |                |
|--|----------------|
| Hex 01 = Short materialization type 1                                    | Char(16)       |
| • Associated program pointer<br>(null for data base select/omit program) | System pointer |

**Short Materialization Type 2:** For a materialization option value of hex 02, the minimum length for the receiver is 4 bytes. It has the following format:

|                                       |         |
|---------------------------------------|---------|
| Hex 02 = Short materialization type 2 | Char(4) |
| • Invocation mark                     | Bin(4)  |

**Short Materialization Type 3:** For a materialization option value of hex 03, the minimum length for the receiver is 16 bytes. It has the following format:

Hex 03 = Short materialization type 3

Char(16)

- ASF pointer

Space pointer

**Short Materialization Type 4:** For a materialization option value of hex 04, the minimum length for the receiver is 16 bytes. It has the following format:

Hex 04 = Short materialization type 4

Char(16)

- SSF pointer

Space pointer

**Short Materialization Type 5:** For a materialization option value of hex 05, the minimum length for the receiver is 4 bytes. It has the following format:

Hex 05 = Short materialization type 5

Char(4)

- State invocation was invoked with

Char(2)

- State for invocation

Char(2)

The **mark counter** value represents the current value of a counter used by the machine to mark all activations and a subset of the invocations created during the execution of a process with a unique value. This mark indicates the point at which the specific entry was allocated relative to the sequence of all activations and invocations that have been created over time within the process. That is, older activations will be identified by a *mark value* of lesser value, and newer activations and invocations will be identified by a *mark value* of higher value. The *mark counter* is just the highest number assigned so far as a unique id. It does not act as a counter of how many activations and invocations have been created in the process. This is because invocations are assigned a *mark value* only as needed by the machine to ensure the visible function of the mark count. That is, any invocation *mark value* which is supplied to the user of the machine does indeed uniquely identify the invocation and indicate its creation sequence relative to the activations and invocations currently existing in the process, but it is not an absolute counter.

The **associated program pointer** is a system pointer that locates the program associated with the invocation entry.

The **invocation number** is the stack depth of the invocation within the invocation stack. The *invocation number* of a new invocation entry is one more than that in the calling invocation. The first invocation in the current process has an invocation number of one.

The **invocation type** indicates how the associated program was invoked.

The **invocation mark** captures the current mark counter value to uniquely identify the invocation within the process. An activation implicitly created on behalf of the invocation will be identified by a mark value of equal value.

The **state invocation was invoked with** value represents the state in which the machine was running when the program was called or transferred to.

**State for invocation value** represents the state in which the machine is running the program.

The **ASF pointer** is a space pointer that is set to address the start of the ASF, associated with the invocation. The associated program's automatic data starts 64 bytes after the area addressed by this pointer.

The **SSF pointer** is a space pointer that is set to address the start of the SSF (static storage frame) associated with the invocation. The associated program's static data starts 64 bytes after the area

addressed by this pointer. This pointer will be set to a value of all zeros if the invoked program does not have static data.

The fields labeled reserved in the descriptions of the optional materializations are currently reserved for future use. These fields may be altered by this instruction depending upon the particular implementation of the machine. Any values set into these fields are meaningless.

## Exceptions

| Exception                              | Operands |   |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06 Addressing                          |          |   |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation          | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment                  | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 range                               | X        | X | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter                  |          |   |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                  |          |   |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state          |          |   |   | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage        |          |   |   | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception         |          |   |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                     |          |   |   |       |
| 02 machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
| 03 function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22 Object access                       |          |   |   |       |
| 01 object not found                    | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
| 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification               |          |   |   |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2E Resource control limit              |          |   |   |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32 Scalar specification                |          |   |   |       |
| 01 scalar type invalid                 | X        | X | X |       |
| 02 scalar attributes invalid           | X        | X | X |       |
| 03 scalar value invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 36 Space management                    |          |   |   |       |
| 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |

**Materialize Invocation Stack (MATINVS)**

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|
| 0546          | Receiver  | Process   |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* System pointer or null.

**ILE access**

```

MATINVS (
    receiver : space pointer;
    var process : system pointer OR
                 null operand
)

```

**Description:** This instruction materializes the current invocation stack within the specified process.

The attributes of the invocation entries currently on the invocation stack of the process specified by operand 2 are materialized into the template specified by operand 1.

Operand 2 is a system pointer or a null operand. If operand 2 is null, it indicates that the invocation stack of the current process is to be materialized. If operand 2 is not null, it is a system pointer identifying the process control space associated with the process for which the invocation stack is to be materialized. If the subject process, identified by operand 2, is different from the process executing this instruction, the executing process must be the original initiator of the subject process or must have process control special authorization to the process control space associated with the subject process.

Operand 1 is a space pointer that addresses a 16-byte aligned template into which is placed the materialized data. The format of the data is:

- Materialization size specification
  - Number of bytes provided by the user Char(8)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Number of invocation entries Bin(4)
- Mark counter Bin(4)\*
- Invocation entries Char(\*)  
 (An invocation entry is materialized for each of the invocations currently on the invocation stack of the specified process.)

The invocation entries materialized are each 128 bytes long and have the following format:

- Reserved Char(32)
- Associated program pointer System pointer  
 (null for data base select/omit program or a destroyed program)
- Invocation number Bin(2)
- Invocation mechanism Char(1)
  - Hex 01 Call external
  - Hex 02 Transfer control

Hex 03 Event handler  
 Hex 04 External exception handler (for OPM program)  
 Hex 05 Initial program in process problem state  
 Hex 06 Initial program in process initiation state  
 Hex 07 Initial program in process termination state  
 Hex 08 Invocation exit (for OPM program)  
 Hex 09 Return or return/XCTL trap handler  
 Hex 0A Call program  
 Hex 0B Cancel handler (NPM only)  
 Hex 0C Exception handler (NPM only)  
 Hex 0D Call bound procedure/call with procedure pointer  
 Hex 0E Process Default Exception Handler

- Invocation type Char(1)
  - Hex 01 OPM Program
  - Hex 02 NPM Program Entry Procedure (PEP)
  - Hex 03 NPM Procedure
- Invocation mark Bin(4)\*
- Instruction identifier Bin(4)  
(zero for data base select/omit program, destroyed, damaged, or suspended program)
- Activation group mark Bin(4)
- Suspend point Suspend pointer  
(null for data base select/omit program or destroyed program)
- Reserved Char(48)

**Note:** Values annotated with an asterisk (\*) may not be materialized if operand 2 identifies a process other than the one executing this instruction. Unmaterialized fields are set to binary zeros.

Values annotated with a double asterisk (\*\*) are materialized only if operand 2 is null or identifies the process executing this instruction, and the program executing this instruction is in system state. Unmaterialized fields are set to binary zeros.

The **number of invocations** value specifies the number of invocation entries provided in the materialization.

The **mark counter** value represents the current value of a counter used by the machine to mark all activations and invocations created during the execution of a process with a unique value. This mark indicates the point at which the specific entry was allocated relative to the sequence of all activations and invocations that have been created over time within the process.

The **associated program pointer** is a system pointer that locates the program associated with the invocation entry.

The **invocation number** is a number that uniquely identifies each invocation in the invocation stack. When an invocation is allocated, the invocation number of the new invocation entry is one more than that in the calling invocation. The first invocation in the current process state has an invocation number of one.

The **invocation type** indicates how the associated program was invoked.

The **invocation mark** indicates the point at which this invocation entry was allocated relative to the sequence of all activations and invocations that have been created over time within the process. This is set from the incremented mark counter value for each new invocation added to the invocation stack.

If the invocation type is a non-bound program the instruction id field will contain the instruction number which specifies the number of the instruction last being executed when the invocation passed control to the next invocation on the stack. If the invocation type is a bound program entry or a procedure, the instruction id field will contain the statement identifier, which is a compiler supplied number which allows the compiler to identify the source statement associated with a particular sequence of instructions.

**Note:** If the program is damaged or destroyed or if a statement identifier was not supplied by the compiler, a value of 0 is set.

The **suspend point** is a suspend pointer which identifies the instruction last being executed when the invocation passed control to the next invocation on the stack.

The fields labeled reserved are currently reserved for future use. These fields may be altered by this instruction depending upon the particular implementation of the machine. Any values set into these fields are meaningless.

The first 4 bytes of the materialization identifies the total **number of bytes provided** for use by the instruction. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than 8 causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception to be signaled.

The second 4 bytes of the materialization identifies the total **number of** bytes available to be materialized. The instruction materializes as many bytes as can be contained in the area specified as the receiver. If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested, the excess bytes are unchanged.

No exceptions are signaled in the event that the receiver contains insufficient area for the materialization, other than the materialization length exception described previously.

When the materialization is performed for a process other than the one executing this instruction, the instruction attempts to interrogate, snapshot, the invocation stack of the other process concurrently with the ongoing execution of that process. In this case, the interrogating process and subject process may have interleaving usage of the processor resource. Due to this, the accuracy and integrity of the materialization is relative to the state, static or dynamic, of the invocation stack in the subject process over the time of the interrogation. If the invocation stack in the subject process is in a very static state, not changing over the period of interrogation, the materialization may represent a good approximation of a snapshot of its invocation stack. To the contrary, if the invocation stack in the subject process is in a very dynamic state, radically changing over the period of interrogation, the materialization is potentially totally inaccurate and may describe a sequence of invocations that was never an actual sequence that occurred within the process. In addition to the above exposures to inaccuracy in attempting to take the snapshot, the ongoing status of the invocation stack of the subject process may substantially differ from that reflected in the materialization, due to its continuing execution after completion of this instruction.

When the materialization is performed for the process executing this instruction, it does provide an accurate reflection of the status of the process' invocation stack. In this case, concurrent execution of this instruction with execution of other instructions in the process is precluded.

**Authorization Required**

- Process control special authorization
  - For materializing a different process than the one executing this instruction
- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

**Lock Enforcement**

- Materialization
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

**Exceptions**

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation                          | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment                                  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 range   | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid                    | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                                     |          |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation                       | X        | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation                          | X        | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                                     |          |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state                          |          |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                        |          |   | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                            |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                      |          | X |       |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                                       |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                                      |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                                    | X        | X |       |
| 24        | Pointer specification                                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                | X        | X |       |
| 28        | Process state  |          |   |       |
|           | 02 process control space not associated with a process |          | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                 |          |   |       |



| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                 | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 scalar attributes invalid           | X        | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                 |          |   |       |
|           | 03 materialization length              | X        |   |       |

## Materialize Pointer (MATPTR)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|
| 0512          | Receiver  | Pointer   |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* System pointer, space pointer data object, data pointer, instruction pointer, invocation pointer, procedure pointer, label pointer, or suspend pointer.

### ILE access

```
MATPTR (
    receiver : space pointer;
    var pointer : pointer
)
```

**Description:** The materialized form of the pointer object referenced by operand 2 is placed in operand 1.

The format of the materialization is:

- Materialization size specification
  - Number of bytes provided for materialization Char(8)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Pointer type Char(1)
  - Hex 01 = System pointer
  - Hex 02 = Space pointer
  - Hex 03 = Data pointer
  - Hex 04 = Instruction pointer
  - Hex 05 = Invocation pointer
  - Hex 06 = Procedure pointer
  - Hex 07 = Label pointer
  - Hex 08 = Suspend pointer
- Pointer description Char(\*)

Pointer description depends on the pointer type. One of the following pointer type formats is used.

- System pointer description Char(68)

The system pointer description identifies the object addressed by the pointer and the context which the object specifies as its addressing context.

- Context identification Char(32)
  - Context type Char(1)
  - Context subtype Char(1)
  - Context name Char(30)
- Object identification Char(32)
  - Object type Char(1)
  - Object subtype Char(1)
  - Object name Char(30)
- Pointer authorization Char(2)

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| - Object control                            | Bit 0     |
| - Object management                         | Bit 1     |
| - Authorization pointer                     | Bit 2     |
| - Space authority                           | Bit 3     |
| - Retrieve                                  | Bit 4     |
| - Insert                                    | Bit 5     |
| - Delete                                    | Bit 6     |
| - Update                                    | Bit 7     |
| - Ownership                                 | Bit 8     |
| - Reserved (binary 0)                       | Bits 9-15 |
| — Pointer target information                | Char(2)   |
| - Pointer target accessible from user state | Bit 0     |
| - Reserved (binary 0)                       | Bits 1-15 |

The first 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes provided** for use by the instruction. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than 8 causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception to be signaled.

The second 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes available** to be materialized. The instruction materializes as many bytes as can be contained in the area specified as the receiver. If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested, then the excess bytes are unchanged. No exceptions (other than the materialization length exception) are signaled in the event that the receiver contains insufficient area for the materialization.

**Note:** If the object addressed by the system pointer specifies that it is not addressed by a context or if the context is destroyed, the **context identification** field is hex 00. If the object is addressed by the machine context, a *context type* field of hex 81 is returned. No verification is made that the specified context actually addresses the object.

The following lists the *object type* codes for system object references:

| Value<br>(Hex) | Object Type                   |
|----------------|-------------------------------|
| 01             | Access group                  |
| 02             | Program                       |
| 03             | Module                        |
| 04             | Context                       |
| 06             | Byte string space             |
| 07             | Journal space                 |
| 08             | User profile                  |
| 09             | Journal port                  |
| 0A             | Queue                         |
| 0B             | Data space                    |
| 0C             | Data space index              |
| 0D             | Cursor                        |
| 0E             | Index                         |
| 0F             | Commit block                  |
| 10             | Logical unit description      |
| 11             | Network description           |
| 12             | Controller description        |
| 13             | Dump space                    |
| 14             | Class of service description  |
| 15             | Mode Description              |
| 16             | Network interface description |
| 17             | Connection list               |

|    |                       |
|----|-----------------------|
| 18 | Queue space           |
| 19 | Space                 |
| 1A | Process control space |
| 1B | Authorization list    |
| 1C | Dictionary            |

**Note:** Only the authority currently stored in the system pointer is materialized.

If the **pointer target accessible from user state** field has a value of 1, then the system pointer addresses an object that is in user domain. If the *pointer target accessible from user state* field has a value of 0, then the system pointer addresses an object that is not in user domain.

- Data pointer description Char(75)

The data pointer description describes the current scalar and array attributes and identifies the space addressability contained in the data pointer.

- Scalar and array attributes Char(7)

- Scalar type Char(1)

Hex 00 = Signed binary  
 Hex 01 = Floating-point  
 Hex 02 = Zoned decimal  
 Hex 03 = Packed decimal  
 Hex 04 = Character  
 Hex 06 = Onlyns  
 Hex 07 = Onlys  
 Hex 08 = Either  
 Hex 09 = Open  
 Hex 0A = Unsigned binary

- Scalar length Char(2)

If binary, character, floating-point, Onlyns, Onlys, Either, or Open:

- Length Bits 0-15

If zoned decimal or packed decimal:

- Fractional digits Bits 0-7
    - Total digits Bits 8-15

- Reserved (binary 0) Bin(4)

- Data pointer space addressability Char(68)

- Context identification Char(32)

- Context type Char(1)
    - Context subtype Char(1)
    - Context name Char(30)

- Object identification Char(32)

- Object type Char(1)
    - Object subtype Char(1)
    - Object name Char(30)

- Offset into space Bin(4)

**Note:** If the object containing the space addressed by the data pointer is not addressed by a context, the **context** field is hex 00. If the object is addressed by the machine context, a *context type* field of hex 81 is returned.

Support for usage of a Data Pointer describing an Onlyns, Onlys, Either, or Open scalar value is limited. For more information, refer to the Copy Extended Characters Left Adjusted With Pad, Set Data Pointer Attributes, and Create Cursor instructions.

- Space pointer description

Char(70)

The space pointer description describes space addressability contained in the space pointer.

- Context identification

Char(32)

- Context type

Char(1)

- Context subtype

Char(1)

- Context name

Char(30)

- Object identification

Char(32)

- Object type

Char(1)

- Object subtype

Char(1)

- Object name

Char(30)

- Offset into space

Bin(4)

- Pointer target information

Char(2)

- Pointer target accessible from user state

Bit 0

- Reserved (binary 0)

Bits 1-15

If the **pointer target accessible from user state** field has a value of 1, then the space pointer addresses a space that is in user domain and is writeable when the process is running in user state. If the *pointer target accessible from user state* field has a value of 0, then the space referenced by the pointer is either not in user domain or it is not writeable when the process is running in user state.

**Note:** If the object containing the space addressed by the space pointer is not addressed by a context, the **context** field is hex 00. If the object is addressed by the machine context, a *context type* field of hex 81 is returned.

- Instruction pointer description

Char(68)

The instruction pointer description describes instruction addressability contained in the instruction pointer.

- Context identification

Char(32)

- Context type

Char(1)

- Context subtype

Char(1)

- Context name

Char(30)

- Program identification

Char(32)

- Program type

Char(1)

- Program subtype

Char(1)

- Program name

Char(30)

- Instruction number

Bin(4)

If the program containing the instruction currently being addressed by the instruction pointer is not addressed by a context, the *context* field is hex 00.

- Invocation pointer description

Char(23)

The invocation pointer description describes invocation addressability contained in the invocation pointer.

- Pointer status

Char(1)

- Process object no longer exists
- Pointer is from another process
- Reserved (binary 0)

Bit 0

Bit 1

Bits 2-7

- Reserved (binary 0)

Char(6)

- Containing process

System pointer

**Process object no longer exists**

If this bit has a value of 1, then the process object (invocation) referenced by the pointer no longer exists.

**Pointer is from another process**

If this bit has a value of 1, then the process object (invocation) referenced by the pointer exists but belongs to a process other than the current one.

**Containing process**

A system pointer to the process control space object to which the process object belongs. A null pointer is returned if the process object (invocation) no longer exists.

- Procedure pointer description

Char(55)

The procedure pointer description describes the activation and procedure addressability contained in the procedure pointer.

- Pointer status

Char(1)

- Process object no longer exists
- Pointer is from another process
- Referenced program cannot be accessed
- Reserved (binary 0)

Bit 0

Bit 1

Bit 2

Bits 3-7

- Reserved (binary 0)

Char(6)

- Module number

Ubin(4)

- Procedure number

Ubin(4)

- Activation mark

Ubin(4)

- Activation group mark

Ubin(4)

- Containing program

System pointer

- Containing process

System pointer

**Process object no longer exists**

If this bit has a value of 1, then the process object referenced by the pointer (the activation) no longer exists. All of the remaining information is returned as binary zeros.

**Pointer is from another process**

If this bit has a value of 1, then the process object referenced by the pointer belongs to a process other than the current one. With the exception of the containing process pointer, all of the remaining information is returned as binary zeros.

**Referenced program cannot be accessed**

If this bit has a value of 1, then the program referenced by the pointer could not be accessed to extract the program-related information. This may be because the program is damaged, sus-

pended, compressed, or destroyed. The program pointer, module number, and procedure number are returned as binary zeros.

**Module number**

Index in the module list of the bound program for the module whose activation the pointer addresses.

**Procedure number**

Index in the procedure list of the module for the procedure addressed by the pointer.

**Activation mark**

The activation mark of the activation that contains the activated procedure. Zero if the program activation no longer exists.

**Activation group mark**

An activation group mark of the activation group that contains the activated procedure. Zero if the program activation no longer exists.

**Containing program**

A system pointer to the program object that contains the procedure. Null if the program activation no longer exists.

**Containing process**

A system pointer to the process control space object which contains the procedure's activation group. A null pointer is returned if the process control space object no longer exists, or if it is no longer possible to determine the containing process for a destroyed activation group.

• **Label pointer description**

Char(\*)

The label pointer description describes instruction addressability contained in the label pointer.

|   |                |
|---|----------------|
| — Pointer status  | Char(1)        |
| - Reserved (binary 0)   | Bit 0          |
| - Reserved (binary 0)   | Bit 1          |
| - Referenced program is damaged, suspended, compressed or destroyed | Bit 2          |
| - Reserved (binary 0)   | Bits 3-7       |
| — Reserved (binary 0)   | Char(6)        |
| — Module number   | Ubin(4)        |
| — Procedure number  | Ubin(4)        |
| — Number of statement IDs   | Ubin(4)        |
| — Internal identifier   | Char(4)        |
| — Containing program  | System pointer |
| — Statement ID (repeated)   | Ubin(4)        |

**Referenced program is damaged, suspended, compressed, or destroyed**

If this bit has a value of 1, then the program referenced by the pointer could not be accessed to extract the remaining information. The remainder of the template is binary zeros with the exception of the program pointer, which will be binary zeros if the program has been destroyed or so seriously damaged that its identity cannot be determined.

**Module number**

Index in the module list of the bound program for the module containing the label.

**Procedure number**

Index in the procedure list of the module for the procedure containing the label.

**Number of statement IDs**

Number of entries in the statement ID list. (Multiple statement IDs may be associated with a single location in the created program due to optimizations that combine similar code sequences.)

**Internal identifier**

A machine-dependent value which identifies the label relative to the the internal structure of the program. For use by service personnel.

**Containing program**

A system pointer to the program object that contains the label.

**Statement ID**

Each statement ID is a compiler-supplied unsigned Bin(4) number which allows the compiler to identify the source statement associated with a particular sequence of instructions.

- Suspend pointer description Char(\*)

The suspend pointer description describes instruction addressability contained in the suspend pointer.

|   |                |
|---|----------------|
| — Pointer status  | Char(1)        |
| - Reserved (binary 0)   | Bit 0          |
| - Reserved (binary 0)   | Bit 1          |
| - Referenced program is damaged, suspended, compressed or destroyed | Bit 2          |
| - Reserved (binary 0)   | Bits 3-7       |
| — Reserved (binary 0)   | Char(6)        |
| — Module number   | Ubin(4)        |
| — Procedure number  | Ubin(4)        |
| — Number of statement IDs   | Ubin(4)        |
| — Internal identifier   | Char(4)        |
| — Containing program  | System pointer |
| — Statement ID (repeated)   | Ubin(4)        |

**Referenced program is damaged, suspended, compressed, or destroyed**

If this bit has a value of 1, then the program referenced by the pointer could not be accessed to extract the remaining information. The remainder of the template is binary zeros with the exception of the program pointer, which will be binary zeros if the program has been destroyed or so seriously damaged that its identity cannot be determined.

**Module number**

Index in the module list of the bound program for the module containing the suspend point.

**Procedure number**

Index in the procedure list of the module for the procedure containing the suspend point.

**Number of statement IDs**

Number of entries in the statement ID list. (Multiple statement IDs may be associated with a single location in the created program due to optimizations that combine similar code sequences.)

**Internal identifier**

A machine-dependent value which locates the suspend point relative to the the internal structure of the program. For use by service personnel.



**Containing program**

A system pointer to the program object that contains the suspend point.

**Statement ID**

Each statement ID is a compiler-supplied unsigned Bin(4) number which allows the compiler to identify the source statement associated with a particular sequence of MI instructions.

**Note:** For suspend pointers which address non-bound programs, module number and procedure number are returned as binary zeros, and the statement ID list is returned with one value which is the MI instruction number of the suspend point.

If the pointer is a system pointer or a data pointer and is initialized but unresolved, the pointer is resolved before the materialization occurs.

This instruction will tolerate a damaged object referenced by operand 2 when operand 2 is a resolved pointer. The instruction will not tolerate a damaged context(s) or damaged programs when resolving pointers. Also, as a result of damage or abnormal machine termination, this instruction can indicate that an object is addressed by a context, when in fact the context will not show this as an addressed object.

A space pointer machine object cannot be specified for operand 2.

**Exceptions**

| Exception  | Operands |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06 Addressing  |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation                                | X        | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment  | X        | X |       |
| 03 range   | X        | X |       |
| 04 external data object not found                            |          | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid                          | X        | X |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter  |          |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation                             | X        | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered  |          |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state                                | X        | X | X     |
| 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage                              | X        | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception                               |          |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support   |          |   |       |
| 02 machine check   |          |   | X     |
| 03 function check  |          |   | X     |
| 22 Object access   |          |   |       |
| 01 object not found  | X        | X |       |
| 02 object destroyed  | X        | X |       |
| 03 object suspended  | X        | X |       |
| 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   | X     |

| Exception                              | Operands |   | Other |
|--|----------|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24 Pointer specification               |          |   |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
| 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2E Resource control limit              |          |   |       |
| 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 32 Scalar specification                |          |   |       |
| 01 scalar type invalid                 | X        |   |       |
| 36 Space management                    |          |   |       |
| 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |
| 38 Template specification              |          |   |       |
| 03 materialization length exception    | X        |   |       |

## Materialize Pointer Locations (MATPTRL)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 | Operand 3 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 0513          | Receiver  | Source    | Length    |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* Space pointer.

*Operand 3:* Binary scalar.

### ILE access

```

MATPTRL (
    receiver : space pointer;
    source   : space pointer;
    var length : signed binary
)

```

**Description:** This instruction finds the pointers in a subset of a space and produces a bit mapping of their relative locations.

The area addressed by the operand 2 space pointer is scanned for a length equal to that specified in operand 3. A bit in operand 1 is set for each 16 bytes of operand 2. The bit is set to binary 1 if a pointer exists in the operand 2 space, or the bit is set to binary 0 if no pointer exists in the operand 2 space.

Operand 1 is a space pointer addressing the receiver area. One bit of the receiver is used for each 16 bytes specified by operand 3. If operand 3 is not a 16-byte multiple, then the bit position in operand 1 that corresponds to the last (odd) bytes of operand 2 is set to 0. Bits are set from left to right (bit 0, bit 1,...) in operand 1 as 16-byte areas are interrogated from left to right in operand 2. The number of bits set in the receiver is always a multiple of 8. Those rightmost bits positions that do not have a corresponding area in operand 2 are set to 0.

The format of the operand 1 receiver is:

- Template size specification
  - Number of bytes provided by the user Char(8)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Pointer locations Char(\*)

Operand 2 must address a 16-byte aligned area; otherwise, a *boundary alignment* (hex 0602) exception is signaled. If the value specified by operand 3 is not positive, the *scalar value invalid* (hex 3203) exception is signaled.

The first 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes provided** for use by the instruction. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than 8 causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception to be signaled.

The second 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes available** to be materialized. The instruction materializes as many bytes as can be contained in the area specified as the receiver. If the byte area identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested, then the excess bytes are unchanged. No exceptions (other than the *materialization*

*length* (hex 3803) exception) are signaled in the event that the receiver contains insufficient area for materialization.

## Exceptions

| Exception |  | Operands |   |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 | 3 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                             |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation          | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment                  | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 range                               | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid    | X        | X | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation       | X        | X | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                     |          |   |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state          | X        | X | X | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage        | X        | X | X | X     |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception            |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded      |          |   |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support                        |          |   |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check                       |          |   |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check                      |          |   |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    |          |   | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 scalar value invalid                |          |   | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                 |          |   |   |       |
|           | 03 materialization length exception    |          |   | X |       |

## Materialize System Object (MATSOBJ)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|
| 053E          | Receiver  | Object    |

*Operand 1:* Space pointer.

*Operand 2:* System pointer.

### ILE access

```
MATSOBJ (
    receiver : space pointer;
    var object : system pointer
)
```

**Description:** This instruction materializes the identity and size of a system object addressed by the system pointer identified by operand 2. It can be used whenever addressability to a system object is contained in a system pointer.

The format of the materialization is:

- Materialization size specification
  - Number of bytes provided by the user Char(8)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Object state attributes Char(2)
  - Suspended state Bit 0
    - 0 = Not suspended
    - 1 = Suspended
  - Damage state Bit 1
    - 0 = Not damaged
    - 1 = Damaged
  - Partial damage state Bit 2
    - 0 = No partial damage
    - 1 = Partial damage
  - Existence of addressing context Bit 3
    - 0 = Not addressed by a temporary context
    - 1 = Addressed by a temporary context
  - Dump for previous release permitted Bit 4
    - 0 = Dump for previous release not permitted.
    - 1 = Dump for previous release permitted.
  - Object compressed Bit 5
    - 0 = Object not compressed
    - 1 = Object compressed (partially or completely)
  - ASP overflow Bit 6
    - 0 = No part of the object has overflowed its ASP

1 = Some part of the object has overflowed its ASP

- Reserved (binary 0) Bits 7-15
- Context identification Char(32)
  - Context type Char(1)
  - Control subtype Char(1)
  - Context name Char(30)
- Object identification Char(32)
  - Object type Char(1)
  - Object subtype Char(1)
  - Object name Char(30)
- Timestamp of creation Char(8)
- Size of associated space Bin(4)
- Object size Bin(4)
- Owning user profile identification Char(32)
  - User profile type Char(1)
  - User profile subtype Char(1)
  - User profile name Char(30)
- Timestamp of last modification Char(8)
- Recovery options Char(4)
- Performance class Char(4)
- Initial value of space Char(1)
- Object audit attribute Char(1)
  - | Hex 00 = No audit for this object
  - | Hex 02 = Audit change for this object
  - | Hex 03 = Audit read and change for this object
  - | Hex 04 = Audit read and change for this object if the user profile is being audited
- Reserved Char(2)
- Object authorization list (AL) status Bin(2)
  - 0 = Object not in an AL
  - 1 = Object in AL
- Authorization list identification Char(48)
  - Authorization list (AL) status Bin(2)
    - 0 = Valid AL
    - 1 = Damaged AL
    - 2 = Destroyed AL (no name below)
  - Reserved Char(14)
  - Authorization list type Char(1)
  - Authorization list subtype Char(1)
  - Authorization list name Char(30)
- Dump for previous release reason code Bit(64)

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| • Maximum possible associated space size  | Bin(4)     |
| • Timestamp of last use of object         | Char(8)    |
| • Count of number of days object was used | Ubin(2)    |
| • Program attributes                      | Char(2)    |
| — Program state provided                  | Bit 0      |
| 0 = No program state value                |            |
| 1 = Program state value present           |            |
| — Reserved (binary 0)                     | Bits 1-7   |
| — Type of program                         | Char(1)    |
| Hex 00 = Original program                 |            |
| Hex 01 = Bound program                    |            |
| Hex 02 = Service program                  |            |
| • Domain of object                        | Char(2)    |
| • Program state for program or module     | Char(2)    |
| • MI-supplied information                 | Char(8)    |
| • Earliest compatible release             | Char(2)    |
| — Reserved                                | Bits 0-3   |
| — Version                                 | Bits 4-7   |
| — Release                                 | Bits 8-11  |
| — Modification level                      | Bits 12-15 |
| • Object size in pages                    | Ubin(4)    |
| • Reserved                                | Char(110)  |

**Additional Description::** This instruction will tolerate a damaged object referenced by operand 2 when operand 2 is a resolved pointer. The instruction will not tolerate a damaged context(s) or damaged programs when resolving pointers. Also, as a result of damage or abnormal machine termination, this instruction can indicate that an object is addressed by a context, when in fact the context will not show this as an addressed object. The Modify Addressability instruction can be used to correct this problem.

The **existence of addressing context** field indicates whether the previously (or currently) addressing context was (is) temporary. This field is 0 if the object was (is) not addressed by a temporary context.

The **dump for previous release permitted** field will indicate if the object is eligible for a Request I/O instruction in which a dump for previous is requested<sup>1</sup>. When this field indicates that the object is not eligible, the **dump for previous release reason code** can be used to determine why the object is not eligible.

The **object compressed** field indicates whether the encapsulated part of the object is either partially or completely compressed. The encapsulated part(s) of some object types can be compressed by object-specific create or modify instructions. For example, the executable and observation parts of a program object can be compressed and decompressed by the Modify Program instruction, and can also be decompressed implicitly by machine operation (see the Modify Program instruction for details). Use the object-specific materialization instruction for this type of object (for example, the Materialize

<sup>1</sup> 'Previous release' refers to the previous mandatory release. This is release N-1, mod level zero when release N is the current release. (For version 2, release 1.1, the previous mandatory release is version 1, release 3.0.)

Program instruction for program objects) to determine exactly which part(s) of the object are compressed.

The **ASP overflow** field indicates whether any part of the object is stored in an ASP other than the ASP specified at the time the object was created. If any object created in one ASP has parts that are in a different ASP (due to lack of sufficient available storage in the original ASP), then none of the objects in the first ASP are protected in the event of a failure of any other ASP in the system. By deleting objects that have overflowed, however, it may be possible to eliminate the ASP overflow condition and restore the protection that ASPs provide. Use the object-specific materialization instruction for this type of object to determine what ASP was specified at the time the object was created.

If the object addressed by the system pointer specifies that it is not addressed by a context or if the context is destroyed, the *context type* field is hex 00. If the object is addressed by the machine context, a *context type* field of hex 81 is returned. No verification is made that the specified context actually addresses the object.

Valid **object type** fields and their meanings are:

| Value<br>(Hex) | Object Type                   |
|----------------|-------------------------------|
| 01             | Access group                  |
| 02             | Program                       |
| 03             | Module                        |
| 04             | Context                       |
| 06             | Byte string space             |
| 07             | Journal space                 |
| 08             | User profile                  |
| 09             | Journal port                  |
| 0A             | Queue                         |
| 0B             | Data space                    |
| 0C             | Data space index              |
| 0D             | Cursor                        |
| 0E             | Index                         |
| 0F             | Commit block                  |
| 10             | Logical unit description      |
| 11             | Network description           |
| 12             | Controller description        |
| 13             | Dump space                    |
| 14             | Class of Service Description  |
| 15             | Mode Description              |
| 16             | Network interface description |
| 17             | Connection list               |
| 18             | Queue space                   |
| 19             | Space                         |
| 1A             | Process control space         |
| 1B             | Authorization List            |
| 1C             | Dictionary                    |

The **timestamp** field is materialized as an 8-byte unsigned binary number in which bit 41 is equal to 1024 microseconds. The **timestamp of creation** field is implicitly set when an object is created.

If the object has an associated space, the **maximum possible associated space size** field will be returned with a value which represents the maximum size to which the associated space can be extended. This value depends on the internal packaging of the object and its associated space as well



as (possibly) the maximum space size field as optionally specified during the create of the object (or on the Create Duplicate Object instruction, if that is how the object was created).

The **object size** field will contain the size of the object in bytes up to a value of 2G-1 (2147483647). If the object's size is greater than this, a value of zero will be returned in the *object size* field. In this case, the **object size in pages** field should be used to get the object's actual size. This field will always contain the object's true size in number of pages.

If the object is a temporary object and is, therefore, owned by no user profile, the *user profile type* field is assigned a value of hex 00.

The **timestamp of last modification** field is explicitly set by the Modify System Object instruction. It is implicitly set, except for the objects restricted below, by any instruction or IMPL function that modifies or attempts to modify an object attribute value or an object state. The timestamp of last modification field is only ensured as part of the normal ensuring of objects.

Implicit setting of the timestamp of last modification field is restricted for the following objects and will only occur for generic, nonobject specific, operations on them such as Rename Object for example.

- Logical unit description
- Controller description
- Network description
- Access group
- Queue

No modification time stamp will be provided for the following objects and a value of zero will be returned in the materialization template for the *modification time stamp*.

- Process control space

The **object authorization list status** field indicates whether or not the object is contained in an authorization list. If it is, the **authorization list identification information** provides the name of the authorization list, except when the authorization list is indicated as destroyed, in which case, the name information is meaningless.

The **dump for previous release reason code** can be used to determine why the object is not eligible according to the *dump for previous release permitted* field. Currently reason codes are only architected for programs. The reason code structure for programs is mapped as follows. Note that more than one reason may be returned.

- Program dump for previous release reason code Bit(64)
  - Language version and release reason Bit 0
    - 0 = Language version and release is not a reason
    - 1 = Language version and release is one reason
  - Level of machine instructions used reason Bit 1
    - 0 = The level of machine instructions used in the program is not a reason
    - 1 = Machine instructions not available in the previous release are used
  - Program observability reason Bit 2
    - 0 = Lack of program observability is not a reason
    - 1 = Program is not observable and must be to be moved to previous release
  - Reserved Bits 3-63

The **timestamp of last use of object** field and the **count of number of days object was used** field are set by the Modify System Object instruction or by the Call External or Transfer Control instructions on the objects first use on that day. The timestamp value is only good for the date. The time value obtained from this timestamp is not accurate.

The type of program field indicates the Program Model of a program object, which is determined by how the program was created. It is only present when operand 2 points to a program object. This field is necessary since the object type and object subtype do not provide enough information to identify the Program Model of a program object. Knowing the program type is useful in selecting appropriate program specific instructions.

The **domain of object** field contains the value of the state under which a program or procedure must be running to access this object.

The **program state for program or module** field contains the state under which the program runs. It is only present when the **program state provided** flag is on.

The **MI-supplied information** is simply an 8 byte character field which can be set into an object with the Modify System Object (MODSOBJ) instruction and materialized with the Materialize System Object (MATSOBJ) instruction. The machine has no knowledge or dependencies on the content of this field.

The **earliest compatible release** field contains the earliest release that in which the object can be used in.

### Authorization Required

- Retrieve
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Lock Enforcement

- Materialize
  - Operand 2
  - Contexts referenced for address resolution

### Exceptions

| Exception |                                     | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|           |                                     | 1        | 2 |       |
| 06        | Addressing                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space addressing violation       | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 boundary alignment               | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 range                            | X        | X |       |
|           | 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        | X |       |
| 08        | Argument/parameter                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 parameter reference violation    | X        | X |       |
| 0A        | Authorization                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 unauthorized for operation       |          | X |       |
| 10        | Damage encountered                  |          |   |       |
|           | 04 system object damage state       | X        | X | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 05 authority verification terminated due to damaged object   |          |   | X     |
|           | 44 partial system object damage                              | X        | X | X     |
| 1A        | Lock state   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 invalid lock state  |          | X |       |
| 1C        | Machine-dependent exception                                  |          |   |       |
|           | 03 machine storage limit exceeded                            |          |   | X     |
| 20        | Machine support  |          |   |       |
|           | 02 machine check   |          |   | X     |
|           | 03 function check  |          |   | X     |
| 22        | Object access  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found  | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed  | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended  | X        | X |       |
|           | 07 authority verification terminated due to destroyed object |          |   | X     |
|           | 08 object compressed   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist                                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                                      | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded                       |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                                       | X        | X |       |
| 36        | Space management   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation                                |          |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                                       |          |   |       |
|           | 03 materialization length exception                          | X        |   |       |

---

## Chapter 22. Machine Interface Support Functions Instructions

This chapter describes all instructions used for machine interface support functions. These instructions are arranged in alphabetic order. For an alphabetic summary of all the instructions, see Appendix A,

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| Materialize Machine Attributes (MATMATR) . . . . . | 22-4  |
| Materialize Machine Data (MATMDATA) . . . . .      | 22-30 |



"Instruction Summary."

## Materialize Machine Attributes (MATMATR)

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1       | Operand 2          |
|---------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| 0636          | Materialization | Machine attributes |

Operand 1: Space pointer.

Operand 2: Character(2) scalar or Space pointer.

### ILE access

```

MATMATR1 (
    materialization    : space pointer;
    var machine_attributes : aggregate
)
OR
MATMATR2 (
    materialization    : space pointer;
    machine_attributes : space pointer
)

```

**Warning:** The following information is subject to change from release to release. Use it with caution and be prepared to adjust for changes with each new release.

**Description:** The instruction makes available the unique values of machine attributes. The values of various machine attributes are placed in the receiver.

Operand 2 specifies options for the type of information to be materialized. Operand 2 is specified as an attribute selection value (Character(2) scalar).

The machine attributes are divided into nine groups. Byte 0 of the attribute selection operand specifies from which group the machine attributes are to be materialized. Byte 1 of the options operand selects a specific subset of that group of machine attributes.

Operand 1 specifies a space pointer to the area where the materialization is to be placed. The format of the materialization is as follows:

- Materialization size specification
  - Number of bytes provided by the user Char(8)
  - Number of bytes available for materialization Bin(4)
- Attribute specification Bin(4)
  - (as defined by the attribute selection) Char(\*)

The first 4 bytes of the materialization (operand 1) identify the total **number of bytes provided** for use by the instruction. This value is supplied as input to the instruction and is not modified by the instruction. A value of less than 8 causes the *materialization length* (hex 3803) exception to be signaled.

The second 4 bytes of the materialization identify the total **number of bytes available** to be materialized. The instruction materializes as many bytes as can be contained in the area specified as the receiver. If the byte are identified by the receiver is greater than that required to contain the information requested for materialization, then the excess bytes are unchanged. No exceptions (other than the

*materialization length* (hex 3803) exception) are signaled in the event that the receiver contains insufficient area for the materialization.

The machine attributes selected by operand 2 are materialized according to the following selection values:

| Selection Value | Attribute Description |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
|-----------------|-----------------------|

Hex 0004 Machine serial identification

The machine serial identification that is materialized is an 8-byte character field that contains the unique machine identifier.

Hex 0100 Time-of-day clock

The time-of-day clock provides a consistent measure of elapsed time. The maximum elapsed time the clock can indicate is approximately 143 years.

The time-of-day clock is a 64-bit unsigned binary counter with the following format:

0.....41 42 reserved 63

The bit positions of the clock are numbered from 0 to 63.

The clock is incremented by adding a 1 in bit position 41 every 1024 microseconds. Bit positions 42 through 63 are used by the machine and have no special meaning to the user. Note that these bits (42-63) may contain either binary 1's or binary 0's.

The maximum unsigned binary value that the time of day clock can be modified to contain is hex DFFFFFFFFFFFFFFF.

Hex 0104 Primary Initial process definition template

The primary initial process definition template is used by the machine to perform an initial process load.

No check is made and no exception is signaled if the values in the template are invalid; however, the next initial process load will not be successful.

Hex 0108 Machine initialization status record

The MISR (machine initialization status record) is used to report the status of the machine. The status is initially collected at IPL and then updated as system status changes.

The materialize format of the MISR is as follows:

- |   |         |
|---|---------|
| • MISR status   | Char(8) |
| — Restart IMPL  | Bit 0   |
| 0 = IMPL was not initiated by the Terminate instruction |         |
| 1 = IMPL was initiated by the Terminate instruction     |         |
| — Manual power on                                       | Bit 1   |
| 0 = Power on not due to Manual power on                 |         |
| 1 = Manual power on occurred                            |         |
| — Timed power on  | Bit 2   |
| 0 = Power on not due to Timed power on                  |         |
| 1 = Timed power on occurred                             |         |
| — Remote power on                                       | Bit 3   |
| 0 = Power on not due to Remote power on                 |         |
| 1 = Remote power on occurred                            |         |
| — Auto-power restart power on                           | Bit 4   |



- 0 = Power on not due to Auto-power restart power on

1 = Auto-power restart power on occurred

Bit 5
- Uninterrupted power supply (UPS) battery low

0 = UPS battery not low

1 = UPS battery low

Bit 6
- Uninterrupted power supply (UPS) bypass active

0 = UPS bypass not active

1 = UPS bypass active

Bit 7
- Utility power failed, running on UPS

0 = Running on utility power

1 = Running on UPS

Bit 8
- Uninterrupted power supply installed

0 = UPS not installed

1 = UPS installed, ready for use

Bit 9
- Operation Panel battery failed

0 = Operation Panel battery good

1 = Operation Panel battery failed

Bit 10
- Operation Panel self test failed

0 = Operation Panel self test successful

1 = Operation Panel self test failed

Bit 11
- Console status

0 = Console is operative

1 = Console is inoperative

Bit 12
- Console state

0 = Console is not ready

1 = Console is ready

Bit 13
- OS Level mismatch

0 = Machine and OS version levels match.

1 = Machine and OS version levels mismatch

Bit 14
- Reserved

Bit 15
- Primary console status

0 = Not using Primary console

1 = Using Primary console

Bit 16
- Reserved

Bit 17
- ASCII console status

0 = Not using ASCII console

1 = Using ASCII console

Bit 18
- Termination status

0 = Normal (TERMMPR)

1 = Abnormal

Bit 19
- Duplicate user profile

Bit 19

- (AIPL only)
  - 0 = Not duplicate, new user profile created
  - 1 = Duplicate found and used by AIPL
- Damaged user profile Bit 20
  - (AIPL only)
  - 0 = Not damaged, user profile used
  - 1 = Damaged user profile, profile deleted and recreated
- Damaged machine context Bit 21
  - 0 = Not damaged
  - 1 = Machine context damaged
- Object recovery list status Bit 22
  - 0 = Complete
  - 1 = Incomplete
- Recovery phase completion Bit 23
  - 0 = Complete
  - 1 = Incomplete
- Most recent machine termination Bit 24
  - 0 = Objects ensured
  - 1 = Object(s) not ensured at most recent machine termination
- Last MISR reset Bit 25
  - 0 = Object(s) ensured on every machine termination
  - 1 = Object(s) not ensured on every machine termination since last MISR reset
- Reserved Bit 26-27
- IPL Mode Bit 28-29
  - (can be materialized and modified)
  - 00 = DST and BOSS in unattended mode
  - 10 = DST and BOSS is attended mode
- Service Processor power on Bit 30
  - 0 = Not first service processor power on
  - 1 = First service processor power on
- MISR damage Bit 31
  - 0 = MISR not damaged
  - 1 = MISR damaged, information reset to default values
- Auto keylock position Bit 32
  - 0 = Keylock not in auto position
  - 1 = Keylock in auto position
- Normal keylock position Bit 33
  - 0 = Keylock not in normal position
  - 1 = Keylock in normal position
- Manual keylock position Bit 34
  - 0 = Keylock not in manual position
  - 1 = Keylock in manual position
- Secure keylock position Bit 35

- 0 = Keylock not in secure position
- 1 = Keylock in secure position
- Tower two presence on 9404 system unit Bit 36
  - 0 = Tower two not present
  - 1 = Tower two present
- Battery status for tower one on 9404 system unit Bit 37
  - 0 = Battery good for tower one
  - 1 = Battery low for tower one
- Battery status for tower two on 9404 Bit 38
  - 0 = Battery good for tower two
  - 1 = Battery low for tower two
- Termination due to utility power failure and user specified delay time exceeded Bit 39
  - 0 = Delay time not exceeded
  - 1 = Utility failure and delay time exceeded
- Termination due to utility power failure and battery low Bit 40
  - 0 = Battery not low
  - 1 = Utility failure and battery low
- Termination due to forced microcode completion Bit 41
  - 0 = Not forced microcode completion
  - 1 = Termination due to forced microcode completion
- Auto power restart disabled due to utility failure Bit 42
  - 0 = Auto power restart not disabled
  - 1 = Auto power restart disabled
- Reserved Bit 43
- Spread the Operating System Bit 44
  - 0 = Do not spread the Operating System
  - 1 = Spread the Operating System
- Install from Disk/Tape Bit 45
  - 0 = Install from tape
  - 1 = Install from disk
- Use Primary/Alternate PDT Bit 46
  - 0 = Use Primary Process Definition Template
  - 1 = Use Alternate Process Definition Template
- Time/Date source Bit 47
  - 0 = Time/Date is accurate
  - 1 = Time/Date default value used
- Install Type Bin(2)

0 = Normal IPL

1 = Manual Install

2 = Automated Install

- Number of damaged main storage units Bin(2)
- National language index Bin(2)  
(Can be materialized and modified)
- Number of entries in object recovery list Bin(4)
- Tape sequence number for an AIPL Bin(4)
- Tape volume number for an AIPL Bin(4)
- Address of object recovery list Space pointer
- Process control space created as the result of IPL or AIPL System pointer
- Queue Space object created as the result of an IPL or AIPL System pointer
- Reserved Char(16)
- Console Information list Char(400)  
(Array of five entries each 80 bytes in size)  
(1st = Primary, 2-5 = Reserved)
  - Console entry Char(80)
    - Display LUD System pointer
    - Display CD System pointer
    - Controller model Char(4)
    - Controller type Char(4)
    - Controller serial number Char(4)
    - Controller object data Char(12)
      - Direct select address Char(2)
        - IOP bus number Char(1)
        - IOP card, board structure Char(1)
          - IOP card number Bits 0-3
          - IOP board number Bits 4-7
      - Logical bus address Char(1)
      - IOP unit address Char(2)
      - Resource Identifier Char(4)
      - Reserved Char(3)
    - Work station object data Char(12)
      - Direct select address Char(2)
        - IOP bus number Char(1)
        - IOP card board structure Char(1)
          - IOP card number Bits 0-3
          - IOP board number Bits 4-7
      - Logical bus address Char(1)
      - Device unit address Char(2)

|   |                |
|---|----------------|
| - Port  | Char(1)        |
| - Switch Setting  | Char(1)        |
| • Reserved  | Char(7)        |
| - Device type   | Char(4)        |
| - Device model  | Char(4)        |
| - Flags   | Char(1)        |
| • Information valid in entry  | Bit 0          |
| • Reserved  | Bit 1-7        |
| - Console keyboard type   | Char(1)        |
| - Console extended keyboard type  | Char(1)        |
| - Reserved  | Char(1)        |
| • Load/Dump Tape device information list<br>(Array of two entries each 48 bytes in size)<br>(1st=LUD information, 2nd=CD information) | Char(96)       |
| - Load/Dump tape device entry   | Char(48)       |
| - Reserved  | Char(16)       |
| - LUD/CD information  | Char(12)       |
| • Direct select address   | Char(2)        |
| - IOP bus number  | Char(1)        |
| - IOP card board structure  | Char(1)        |
| - IOP card number   | Bits 0-3       |
| - IOP board number  | Bits 4-7       |
| • Logical bus address   | Char(1)        |
| • Device unit address   | Char(2)        |
| • Flags   | Char(1)        |
| - Information valid in entry  | Bit 0          |
| - Reserved  | Bit 1-7        |
| • Reserved  | Char(6)        |
| - Device type   | Char(4)        |
| - Device model  | Char(4)        |
| - Reserved  | Char(12)       |
| • Recovery object list<br>(located by recovery object list pointer)   | Char(*)        |
| - Recovery entry<br>(repeated for number of entries)  | Char(32)       |
| - Object pointer  | System pointer |
| - Object type   | Char(1)        |
| - Object status   | Char(15)       |

**Restart IMPL** indicates that a Terminate Machine Processing instruction was issued with the restart option set to yes. The machine performed an IMPL without powering down the machine.

**Manual power** on indicates the power switch on the operation panel was pressed to power the system on.

**Timed power on** indicates the system was powered on using the system value specified by the customer. This option will only be honored when the Timed power on function is enabled.

**Remote power on** indicates the system was power on by a phone call placed by the customer. This option will only be honored when the Remote power on function is enabled.

**Auto-power restart** indicates the system was automatically powered on after a utility failure occurred and power was restored. This option will only be honored when the Auto-power restart function is enabled.

**UPS battery low** indicates that a UPS battery is installed on the system and the battery is low.

**UPS bypass active** indicates that the UPS has been bypassed. If a utility power failure occurs, the UPS will not supply power.

**UPS power failed** indicates that a utility failure has occurred and the system is currently running on battery power.

**UPS installed** indicates that a Uninterrupted Power Supply is installed on the system and is available for use should the power fail.

**Operation Panel battery failure** indicates the battery in the operation panel has failed and the system will not be able to determine the correct time and date upon the next IMPL. An approximate time and date will be given to the customer for verification.

**Operation Panel self test failed** indicates the Operation Panel is possibly bad and some function concerning the operation panel may not work correctly.

**Console status** indicates whether the selected console is functioning normally or is inoperative.

**Console state** indicates whether the selected console is ready to be used.

**Primary console status** is set when the customer selected primary console is being used as the system console.

**ASCII console status** is set when a ASCII console is being used as the system console.

**Termination status** indicates how the previous IMPL was terminated. If *normal*, the Terminate Machine Processing instruction successfully terminated the previous IMPL. If *abnormal*, the Terminate Machine Processing instruction did not successfully terminate the previous IMPL. This also implies that some cleanup of permanent objects may be required by the user.

The **duplicate user profile** is valid only for AIPL and indicates if a user profile that is the same as the AIPL user profile to be created already exists in the machine context. The machine in this instance does not create the user profile for AIPL but rather uses the one located with the same name.

**Damaged AIPL user profile** indicates if the currently existing user profile was detected as damaged and a new user profile was created as specified in the AIPL user profile creation template.

**Damaged machine context** indicates if damage was detected in the machine context when an attempt was made to locate the duplicate user profile or to insert addressability to a newly created user profile. In either case, all current addressability is removed from the machine context, the new AIPL user profile is created, its addressability is inserted into the machine context, and the AIPL continues. Objects whose addressability was removed may have it reinserted using the Reclaim instruction for all objects or the Modify Addressability instruction for a specific object.

The **object recovery list status** field indicates that the status is complete unless one of the following conditions is true:

- The recovery list was lost.
- More objects were to be placed in the list but there was insufficient space.

The **recovery phase completion** field indicates that the status is complete unless one of the following conditions occurs:

- An object to be recovered and/or inserted into the object recovery list no longer exists.
- The objects to be recovered could not be determined due to loss of internal machine indicators that specified which objects were in use at machine termination.

The **most recent machine termination** field is set to 0 unless all objects were not ensured at the most recent machine termination.

The **last MISR reset** field is set to 0 if all objects were ensured at every machine termination since the MISR was last reset (to 0) using the Modify Machine Attributes instruction.

**IPL mode** indicates which mode DST and the OS will be IPLed. Either both will be attended or both will be unattended.

**Service Processor power on** indicates if this is the first time the service processor card has been powered on.

**MISR Damage** indicates if the machine detected that the MISR was damaged and it's contents has to be reset to the default system values.

**Auto keylock position** indicates if the keylock was is the auto position on the operation panel on the most recent IMPL.

**Normal keylock position** indicates if the keylock was is the normal position on the operation panel on the most recent IMPL.

**Manual keylock position** indicates if the keylock was is the manual position on the operation panel on the most recent IMPL.

**Secure keylock position** indicates if the keylock was is the secure position on the operation panel on the most recent IMPL.

**Tower two present on 9404 system unit** indicates if the system has second tower when the system is a 9404 system unit.

**Battery status for tower one on 9404 system unit** indicates if a UPS battery is installed on the first tower of a 9404 system unit, the battery is low.

**Battery status for tower two on 9404 system unit** indicates if a UPS battery is installed on the second tower of a 9404 system unit, the battery is low.

**Termination due to utility power failure and user specified delay time exceeded** indicates the last termination of the system was due to a utility power failure and the system value specified by the delay time had elapsed so the system was terminated.

**Termination due to utility power failure** and battery low indicates the last termination of the system was due to a utility power failure and while running on battery power the voltage dropped below a level to continue to power the system so the system was terminated.

**Termination due to forced microcode completion** indicates that the system when down by the user selecting power down from DST or the delayed power off switch was pressed on the operation panel.

**Auto power restart disabled due to a utility failure** indicates the microcode disabled the auto power restart option when a condition was detected that would prevent the auto power restart to function properly.

**Reset utility power bits** indicates that the power bits should be reset. This bit is only looked at when modifying the MISR.

**Spread the operating system** indicates to spread the operating system on the next install instead of overlaying the existing objects. This bit is set to spread after a new dasd has been added.

**Install from Disk/Tape** indicates when performing an install to use the initial OS/400 install program off of disk or to load the initial OS/400 install program off of tape.

**Primary/Alternate Process Definition Template** indicates on IPL to initiate the initial OS/400 process using the Primary or the Alternate Process Definition Template.

**Time/Date source** informs OS/400 if the machine was able to determine the correct time/date or if it was forced to use the default time/date.

**Install type** is set indicate whether an IPL or install was performed and if an install was performed, what type of install occurred.

The **number of damaged main storage transfer blocks** field indicates the number of main storage transfer blocks that were detected as damaged by the machine during IMPL.

**National language index** is the value used to index to the the National language array kept by the system.

The **number of entries in the object recovery list** field indicates how many objects are listed in the space located by the *address of object recovery list* field.

The **tape sequence number** is set by the machine to allow the OS to perform their install.

The **tape volume number** is set by the machine to allow the OS to perform their install.

The **address of object recovery list** field contains a space pointer to the list of the potentially damaged objects that were identified during machine initialization. The number of such objects is indicated by the *number of entries in the object recovery list* field.

The **process control space created as a result of IPL or AIPL** is identified by a system pointer returned in this field.

The **Queue Space object pointer** addresses the queue space object that was implicitly created by the machine for use by the initial process. This is created for both an IPL or an AIPL. During IPL or AIPL processing, before the queue space is created by the machine, the machine will attempt to destroy the queue space addressed by the MISR (this will be the queue space used on the previous IPL or AIPL). If the destroy fails (the MI user may have destroyed it sometime in the previous IPL), no error is reported and the IPL or AIPL processing continues with the creation of the new queue space. The queue space is a permanent object, owned by the user profile used to initiate the initial process and is not addressed by a context.

The **console information list** contains information for each console device as obtained from the Resource Configuration Record or set by the customer.

The **Load/Dump tape device information** is information needed to build a Logical Unit Description and Controller Description object for the device used to install the operating system.

The **recovery object list** identifies objects that required some activity performed on the object(s) during IPL. The list is located by the *recovery object list pointer*.

Each entry in the list has the following general format:

- |                  |                |
|------------------|----------------|
| • Object         | System pointer |
| • Object type    | Char(1)        |
| • Object status  | Char(15)       |
| — General status | Char(2)        |
| - Damaged        | Bit 0          |



- 0 = Object not damaged
  - 1 = Object damaged
- Reserved Bit 1
- Suspended Bit 2
  - 0 = Object not suspended
  - 1 = Object suspended
- Partially damaged Bit 3
  - 0 = Object not partially damaged
  - 1 = Object partially damaged
- Journal synchronization Bit 4
  - 0 = Synchronization complete or not necessary
  - 1 = Synchronization failure
- Reserved Bits 5-6
- IPL detected damage Bit 7
  - 0 = Any indicated damage was not detected by directory recovery
  - 1 = Indicated damage was detected by directory recovery
- Reserved Bits 8-15
- Object specific status Char(13)
 

(The format for the IPL recovery status for this portion of the object recovery list entries is different for each object type. A description of each follows by object type.)
- Commit block status Char(2)
  - Decommit Bit 0
    - 0 = The journal has successfully been read backwards until either a start commit or a decommit entry was found. An attempt has been made to decommit all the data base changes but the attempt may not have been successful if the data space is damaged or if the function check flag is on.
    - 1 = The journal has not successfully been read backwards to a start commit or decommit entry and all the changes have not been decommitted.
  - Journal read errors Bit 1
    - 0 = No journal read errors
    - 1 = Journal read errors occurred during decommit
  - Journal write errors Bit 2
    - 0 = No journal write errors
    - 1 = Journal write errors occurred during decommit
  - Partial damage to data space
    - 0 = No partial damage encountered
    - 1 = Partial damage encountered on 1 or more data spaces
  - Damage to data space Bit 4
    - 0 = No damage encountered
    - 1 = Damage encountered on 1 or more data spaces
  - Function check Bit 5
    - 0 = No function check encountered

- 1 = Function check encountered
- Reserved Bit 6
- Data space during IMPL Bit 7
- 0 = Data space is synchronized with the journal
- 1 = Data space is not synchronized with the journal. All changes may not be decommitted.
- Decommit reason code Bits 8-10
  - 000 = Decommit not performed
  - 001 = Decommit at IPL
  - 010 = Process termination
  - 100 = Decommit instruction (all other values reserved)
- System initiated MI DECOMMIT Bit 11
  - 0 = Operating system did not initiate the decommit
  - 1 = Operating system did initiate the decommit
- Reserved Bits 12-15
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(7)
- Start commit journal Bin(4)
- Sequence number
- Data space
  - Status Char(13)
    - Indexes detached from data space Bit 0
      - 0 = Indexes remain attached
      - 1 = All indexes detached from this data space
    - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 1-15
  - Reserved (binary 0) Char(7)
  - Ordinal entry number of last entry Bin(4)
- Data space index
  - Status Char(13)
    - Invalidated Bit 0
      - 0 = Not invalidated
      - 1 = Invalidated
    - Recovered by journal Bit 1
      - 0 = Not recovered
      - 1 = Recovered
    - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 2-15
    - .Reserved (binary 0) Char(11)
- Journal port
  - Status Char(13)
    - Synchronization status Bit 0
      - 0 = All objects synchronized

- 1 = Not all objects synchronized
- Reserved Bits 1-7
- Reserved Char(10)
- Number of journal spaces attached Bin(2)
- Journal space
  - Status Char(13)
    - Journal space usable Bit 0
      - 0 = Journal space is usable
      - 1 = Journal space is not usable
    - Threshold reached Bit 1
      - 0 = Threshold has not been reached
      - 1 = Threshold has been reached
    - Reserved Bits 2-7
  - Reserved Char(4)
  - First journal sequence number Bin(4)
  - Last journal sequence number Bin(4)

All objects-Any damage detected during IPL is reported in the **general status** information. If this damage is detected as a result of special processing performed during directory rebuild, it is indicated in the **IPL detected damage** field. A **journal synchronization** failure indicates the designated object was not made current with respect to the journal. Subsequent attempts to apply journal changes from the journal to this object will not be allowed.

Commit block-All commit blocks that were attached to an active process during the previous IPL are interrogated at the following IPL. The system attempts to decommit any uncommitted changes referenced through these commit blocks. The results of this attempted decommit is reported in the status field. The system also returns the *journal entry sequence number* of the start commit journal entry (hex 0500) last created for this commit block if there were any uncommitted changes. If the number is not returned, a value of binary zero is returned.

Data space-If object damage was detected during IPL, the object is marked as damaged, damage is indicated in the object status field, and an event is signaled. In this case, the highest ordinal entry number is 0. In certain situations, the data space indexes over the data space become detached and therefore must be recreated. If the object is not damaged, the data space is usable and the highest ordinal entry number is set. The ordinal entry number of last entry indicates the last entry in the data space. Updates are not guaranteed. Updates may be out of sequence or partially applied and must be verified by the user for correctness.

Data space index-If object damage was detected during IPL, the object is marked as damaged, damage is indicated in the object status field, and an event is signaled. If the object was invalidated because changes were made in a data space addressed by the data space index, the data space index is included in the list and marked as invalidated. The *ASP number* of the data space index is indicated in the list. The associated data space is also included elsewhere in the object recovery list. Only damaged or invalidated data space indexes are included in the list.

Journal port-Each journal port in the system is interrogated at IPL. The status field contains the result of this checking and also the result of the attempt to synchronize the objects (if

necessary) being journaled through the indicated journal port. A default journal port is specified when created, and indicates the port is to be used by the machine in implicitly journaling objects. The system also returns the number of journal spaces attached to the journal port after IPL is complete.

**Journal space**—Each journal space that was attached to a journal port or used by the system to synchronize an object which was being journaled at the time of the previous machine termination is interrogated during IPL. The status field reports the results of this interrogation and synchronization use. Journal spaces are referenced by the object recovery list if this IPL was preceded by an abnormal failure, some unexpected condition was discovered during the IPL, or the journal space is a default journal space. The first journal sequence number on the journal space is returned. The last usable entry on the journal space is also identified. If the journal space is damaged, these fields will contain zeroes.

Hex 0118 Uninterruptible power supply delay time and calculated delay time. Note: The UPS delay time is meaningful only if a UPS is installed.

The format of the template for the uninterruptible power supply delay time (including the 8-byte prefix) is as follows:

- Number of bytes available Bin(4)
- Number of bytes provided Bin(4)
- UPS Delay time Bin(4)
- Calculated UPS Delay time Bin(4)

The delay time interval is the amount of time the system waits for the return of utility power. If a utility power failure occurs, the system will continue operating on the UPS supplied power. If utility power does not return within the user specified delay time, the system will perform a quick power down. The delay time interval is set by the customer. The calculated delay time is determined by the amount of main storage and DASD that exists on the system. Both values are in seconds.

Hex 012C Vital Product Data

The VPD (vital product data) is a template that contains information for memory card VPD, processor VPD, columbia/Colomis VPD, central electronic complex (CEC) VPD and the panel VPD.

The materialize format of the VPD (Including the 8-byte prefix) is as follows:

- Number of bytes available Bin(4)
- Number of bytes provided Bin(4)
- Reserved Char(8)
- System VPD location Char(48)
  - Offset to memory VPD Bin(4)
  - Offset to Processor VPD Bin(4)
  - Offset to Columbia/Colomis Bin(4)
  - Offset to CEC VPD Bin(4)
  - Offset to Panel VPD Bin(4)
  - Reserved Char(28)
- Main store memory VPD Char(1040)
  - Usable memory installed Bin(2)  
(In megabytes)

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| — Minimum memory required<br>(In megabytes)                    | Bin(2)     |
| — Reserved   | Char(12)   |
| — Memory array<br>(An array of 16, 64-byte entries)            | Char(1024) |
| - Memory status  | Char(2)    |
| • Memory card status   | Bit(2)     |
| • Invalid memory card  | Bit 0      |
| • Unrecognized card  | Bit 1      |
| • Memory not supported   | Bit 2      |
| • Card/model mismatch  | Bit 3      |
| • Interface error  | Bit 4      |
| • Refresh error  | Bit 5      |
| • Addressing error   | Bit 6      |
| • 1st Nonterminating FRU                                       | Bit 7      |
| • 2nd Nonterminating FRU                                       | Bit 8      |
| • 3rd Nonterminating FRU                                       | Bit 9      |
| • Reserved   | Bits 10-15 |
| - Memory card size<br>(In megabytes)                           | Bin(2)     |
| - Number of CCINS for this card                                | Char(1)    |
| - Array of CCINS for this card<br>(Array of 8, 4-byte entries) | Char(32)   |
| - Physical slot # of this card                                 | Char(1)    |
| - Reserved   | Char(26)   |
| • Processor VPD<br>(An array of 16, 80-byte entries)           | Char(1280) |
| — Processor status   | Char(4)    |
| - Processor card status  | Bits 0-1   |
| - Reserved   | Bits 2-31  |
| — Processor CCIN number  | Char(4)    |
| — Processor model number                                       | Char(4)    |
| — Processor part number  | Char(12)   |
| — Processor serial number                                      | Char(4)    |
| — Processor manufacturing ID                                   | Char(4)    |
| — Processor load identifier                                    | Char(4)    |
| — Reserved   | CHAR(44)   |
| • Columbia/Colomis VPD   | Char(32)   |

(An array of 2, 64-byte entries)

(1st entry is Columbia, 2nd is Colomis)

- Card status Char(4)
  - Card usability status Bits 0-1
  - Reserved Bits 2-31
- Card CCIN number Char(4)
- Card model number Char(4)
- Card part number Char(12)
- Card serial number Char(4)
- Card manufacturing ID Char(4)
- Reserved Char(32)
- CEC VPD Char(32)
  - Status of last CEC read Char(4)
  - System manufacturing ID Char(4)
  - System serial number Char(4)
  - System type Char(4)
  - System model number Char(4)
  - Pseudo model number Char(4)
  - System Password Char(8)
- Panel VPD Char(64)
  - Panel VPD entry status Char(2)
    - Panel VPD is usable Bit 0
    - Reserved Bits 1-15
  - Panel type Char(4)
  - Panel model number Char(3)
  - Panel part number Char(12)
  - Panel serial number Char(4)
  - Panel manufacturing ID Char(4)
  - Alterable ROS part number Char(12)
  - Alterable ROS card number Char(10)
  - Alterable ROS ID Char(1)
  - Alterable ROS flag Char(1)
  - Alterable ROS fix ID Char(1)
  - Reserved Char(10)

The **system VPD location information** is used to determine where each of the separate VPD sections start relative to the beginning of the VPD materialization template.

The **usable memory installed** field contains the amount of memory (in megabytes) which the system recognizes as being valid.

The **minimum memory required** field contains the amount of memory (in megabytes) which is required for the system to run at optimum performance.

The remainder of the memory VPD is an array of 16, 64 byte entries which contains specific information about each memory card installed on the system. The **memory card status** field should be interpreted in the following way:

- 00 = Memory card usable, no failures
- 01 = Memory card usable, but has failures
- 10 = Memory card is not installed
- 11 = Memory card is not usable due to critical failure

The remaining status bits will have a value of 1 if the condition is true or a value of 0 if the condition is not true.

The **memory card size** is a two byte field which will contain the number of megabytes of main store this card represents.

The **number of CCINs** field for this card contains a count of the number of CCINs which were found for this card. This number should be used to determine how many CCIN entries follow in the array of CCINs for this card field. This is a 32 byte field which is divided into 8, 4-byte entries. Each entry contains a CCIN number for this memory card.

The **Processor VPD** is an array of 16 entries, each 80 bytes in length. Each entry corresponds to a processor card. To determine the status of a processor card, the **processor card status** field should be interpreted in the following way:

- 00 = Processor usable, no failures
- 01 = Processor usable, but has failures
- 10 = Processor is not installed
- 11 = Processor is not usable due to critical failure

The **Columbia/Colomis VPD** is an array of 2 entries, each 64 bytes in length. The first entry contains information concerning the Columbia card, the second entry contains information concerning the Colomis card. To determine the status of either card, the status field should be interpreted in the following way:

- 00 = Card usable, no failures
- 01 = Card usable, but has failures
- 10 = Card is not installed
- 11 = Card is not usable due to critical failure

The **Panel VPD** may or may not be filled in on a particular system depending upon what type of panel is installed, to determine if the panel VPD information is valid, the **panel VPD usable bit** must be 1. If this field is 0, the panel VPD information is not valid.

## Hex 0130 Network Attributes

(can be materialized and modified)

(only allowed in attribute selection value)

The Network Attributes is a template that contains information concerning APPN network attributes.

The materialize format of the Network attributes is as follows:

- Network Data Char(190)
  - System name Char(8)
  - System name length Bin(2)

|  |                     |
|--|---------------------|
| — New System name  | Char(8)             |
| — New System name length   | Bin(2)              |
| — Local system network identification  | Char(8)             |
| — Local system network identification length   | Bin(2)              |
| — End node data compression  | Bin(4)              |
| — Intermediate node data compression   | Bin(4)              |
| — Reserved   | Char(2)             |
| — Local system control point name  | Char(8)             |
| — Local system control point name length   | Bin(2)              |
| — Reserved   | Char(10)            |
| — Default local location name  | Char(8)             |
| — Default local location name length   | Bin(2)              |
| — Default mode name  | Char(8)             |
| — Default mode name length   | Bin(2)              |
| — Maximum number of intermediate sessions  | Bin(2)              |
| — Maximum number of conversations per APPN LUD   | Bin(2)              |
| — Local system node type   | Char(1)             |
| — Reserved   | Char(1)             |
| — Route addition resistance  | Bin(2)              |
| — List of network server network ID's<br>(An array of five entries each 8 bytes in size)               | Char(40)            |
| — List of network server network ID lengths<br>(An array of five entries each 2 bytes in size)         | Char(10)            |
| — List of network server control point names<br>(An array of five entries each 8 bytes in size)        | Char(40)            |
| — List of network server control point name lengths<br>(An array of five entries each 2 bytes in size) | Char(10)            |
| — Alert flags  | Char(1)             |
| - Alert priority focal point   | Bit 0               |
| - Alert default focal point  | Bits 1-7            |
| - Reserved   | Bit(6)              |
| — Network Attribute Flags  | Char(1)             |
| (Materializable only)  |                     |
| - Network attributes   | Bit 0 initialized   |
| - Pending system name<br>system name   | Bits 1 made current |
| - Reserved   | Bit(2-7)            |

The **machine system name** is defaulted to the system serial number with a 'S' in the first position. Thereafter, it may be modified to any value of 1 through 8 characters with the first character alphabetic.



The machine system name length is kept to determine how long the system name is. The default value for the length is eight.

The **new system name** is a tentative new value chosen for the machine system name. This value will become the machine system name at the next IPL. The initial value is null and the syntax rules are the same as those for the machine system name.

The **new system name length** is kept to determine how long the new system name is. The default value for the length is zero.

The **local system network identification** default is 'APPN' and the default **local system network identification length** is four.

The **end node data compression** field controls whether the machine will allow data compression when it's an end node. This value is used when the mode description is equal to \*NETATR. If one of the values listed in the table below is not specified, then the value specified is equal to the maximum line speed that data should be compressed. Any configuration with a line speed slower than what is specified here will cause the data to be compressed. Valid values range from 1 bits-per-second through 2147483647.

0 = \*NONE (default)

No data compression will be done.

-1 = \*REQUEST

Data compression is requested on the session.

-2 = \*ALLOW

Data compression is allowed, but not requested for this session.

-3 = \*REQUIRE

Data compression is required on this session.

The **intermediate node data compression** field controls whether data compression will be requested by the machine when it's an intermediate node. This value is used when the mode description is equal to \*NETATR. If one of the values listed in the table below is not specified, then the value specified is equal to the maximum line speed that data should be compressed. Any configuration with a line speed slower than what is specified here will cause the data to be compressed. Valid values range from 1 bits-per-second through 2147483647.

0 = \*NONE (default)

No data compression will be done.

-1 = \*REQUEST

Data compression is requested on the session.

The **local system control point name** default is the system serial number with a character 'S' in the first position and the default **control point name length** is eight.

The **local location name** default is the system serial number with a character 'S' in the first position and the default **local location name length** is eight.

The **mode name** default is all blanks and the default **mode length** is eight.

The **maximum number of intermediate sessions** default is 200.

The **maximum number of conversations per APPN LUD** is 64.

The **local system node type** default is hex 01.

The **route addition resistance** default is 128.

All entries of the **network server network IDs** are defaulted to blanks with all entries of the **network server network IDs lengths** defaulting to zero.

All entries of the **network server control point names** are defaulted to blanks with all entries of the **network server control point name lengths** defaulting to zero.

#### Hex 0134 Date Format

The date format is the format in which the date will be presented to the customer. The possible values are YMD, MDY, DMY, JUL where Y = Year, M = Month, D = Day and JUL = Julian.

The format of the template for date format is as follows:

- Number of bytes available Bin(4)
- Number of bytes provided Bin(4)
- Date Format Char(3)

#### Hex 0138 Leap Year Adjustment

The leap year adjustment is added to the leap year calculations to determine the year in which the leap should occur. The valid values are 0, 1, 2, 3.

The format of the template for leap year adjustment is as follows:

- Number of bytes available Bin(4)
- Number of bytes provided Bin(4)
- Leap year adjustment Bin(2)

#### Hex 013C Timed Power On

The timed power on is the time and date at which the system should automatically power on if it is not already powered on.

The format of the template for timed power on is as follows:

- Number of bytes available Bin(4)
- Number of bytes provided Bin(4)
- Minute Bin(2)
- Hour Bin(2)
- Day Bin(2)
- Month Bin(2)
- Year Bin(2)

#### Hex 0140 Timed Power On Enable/Disable

The timed power on enable/disable allows the timed power on function to be queried to determine if the function is enabled or disabled.

The format of the template for timed power on enable/disable is as follows:

- Number of bytes available Bin(4)
- Number of bytes provided Bin(4)
- Enable/Disable Bin(2)

Hex 8000-indicates timed power on is enabled

Hex 0000-indicates timed power on is disabled

#### Hex 0144 Remote Power On Enable/Disable

The remote power on enable/disable allows the remote power on function to be queried to determine if the function is enabled or disabled.

The format of the template for remote power on enable/disable is as follows:

- Number of bytes available Bin(4)

- Number of bytes provided Bin(4)
- Enable/Disable Bin(2)

Hex 8000-indicates remote power on is enabled

Hex 0000-indicates remote power on is disabled

## Hex 0148 Auto power restart Enable/Disable

The auto power restart enable/disable allows the auto power restart function to be queried to determined if the function is enabled or disabled.

The format of the template for auto power restart enable/disable is as follows:

- Number of bytes available Bin(4)
- Number of bytes provided Bin(4)
- Enable/Disable Bin(2)

Hex 8000-indicates auto power restart is enabled

Hex 0000-indicates auto power restart is disabled

## Hex 014C Date separator

The date separator is used when the date is presented to the customer. The valid values are a slash(/), dash(-), period(.), comma(,) and a blank( ).

The format of the template for the date separator is as follows:

- Number of bytes available Bin(4)
- Number of bytes provided Bin(4)
- Date Separator Char(1)

## Hex 0164 Uninterruptible power supply type

Note: The *UPS type* is meaningful only if a UPS is installed.

The uninterruptible power supply type option allows the MI user to tell the machine how much of the system is powered by a UPS (ie, what type of UPS is installed). A *full UPS* will power all racks in the system. A *mini UPS* will power the racks containing the CEC and the load source.

The format of the template for UPS Type is as follows:

- Number of bytes available Bin(4)
- Number of bytes provided Bin(4)
- UPS Type Bin(2)

Hex 0000-indicates a full UPS is installed (all racks have a UPS installed)

Hex 8000-indicates a mini UPS is installed (only the minimum number of racks are powered)

## Hex 0168 Panel Status Request

The Panel Status Request option allows BOSS to determine what current status of the operations panel.

The format of the template for Panel Status Request is as follows (including the usual 8-byte prefix):

- Number of bytes available Bin(4)
- Number of bytes provided Bin(4)
- Current IPL type Char(1)

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| • Panel status                                   | Char(2)   |
| – Uninterrupted power supply installed           | Bit 0     |
| 0 = UPS not installed                            |           |
| 1 = UPS installed, ready for use                 |           |
| – Utility power failed, running on UPS           | Bit 1     |
| 0 = Running on utility power                     |           |
| 1 = Running on UPS                               |           |
| – Uninterrupted power supply (UPS) bypass active | Bit 2     |
| 0 = UPS bypass not active                        |           |
| 1 = UPS bypass active                            |           |
| – Uninterrupted power supply (UPS) battery low   | Bit 3     |
| 0 = UPS battery not low                          |           |
| 1 = UPS battery low                              |           |
| – Auto keylock position                          | Bit 4     |
| 0 = Keylock not in auto position                 |           |
| 1 = Keylock in auto position                     |           |
| – Normal keylock position                        | Bit 5     |
| 0 = Keylock not in normal position               |           |
| 1 = Keylock in normal position                   |           |
| – Manual keylock position                        | Bit 6     |
| 0 = Keylock not in manual position               |           |
| 1 = Keylock in manual position                   |           |
| – Secure keylock position                        | Bit 7     |
| 0 = Keylock not in secure position               |           |
| 1 = Keylock in secure position                   |           |
| – Reserved                                       | Bits 8-15 |
| • Reserved                                       | Char(5)   |
| • Most recent IPL type                           | Char(1)   |

The **current IPL type** is the state of the IPL type at the operations panel. Possible values are A, B, C, D.

**UPS installed** indicates that a Uninterrupted Power Supply is installed on the system and is available for use should the power fail.

**UPS power failed** indicates that a utility failure has occurred and the system is currently running on battery power.

**UPS bypass active** indicates that the UPS has been bypassed. If a utility power failure occurs, the UPS will not supply power.

**UPS battery low** indicates that a UPS battery is installed on the system and the battery is low.

**Auto keylock position** indicates that the keylock is currently in the auto position on the operation panel.

**Normal keylock position** indicates that the keylock is currently in the normal position on the operation panel.

**Manual keylock position** indicates that the keylock is currently in the manual position on the operation panel.

**Secure keylock position** indicates that the keylock is currently in the secure position on the operation panel.

The **most recent IPL type** is the type of IPL that was performed on the most recent IPL. Possible values are A, B, C, D.

## Hex 016C Extended machine initialization status record

The XMISR (extended machine initialization status record) is used to report the status of the machine.

The materialize format of the XMISR is as follows:

- Number of bytes available Bin(4)
- Number of bytes provided Bin(4)
- Save storage status Char(4)
  - Checksumming status Bit 0
    - 0 = Checksumming was not stopped
    - 1 = Checksumming was stopped
  - Completion status Bit 1
    - 0 = Save storage did not complete
    - 1 = Save storage completed
  - System restored status Bit 2
    - 0 = Save storage did not restore the system
    - 1 = Save storage restored the system
  - Save storage attempted Bit 3
    - 0 = Save storage not attempted
    - 1 = Save storage was attempted
  - Unreadable sectors Bit 4
    - 0 = Unreadable sectors were not found
    - 1 = Unreadable sectors were found during save operation
  - Check for active files on save storage media Bit 5
    - 0 = Do not check for active files on save storage media
    - 1 = Check for active files on save storage media
  - Reserved Bits 6-31
- Save storage information Char(118)
  - Tape device information Char(18)
    - Number of tape device entries UBin(2)
    - Tape device address Char(16)
    - (Array of four entries, each 4 bytes in size)
      - Tape device IOP address Char(2)

|   |          |
|---|----------|
| — Tape device<br>device address                               | Char(2)  |
| - Tape volume names<br>structure                              | Char(62) |
| • Number of tape<br>volume entries                            | UBin(2)  |
| • Tape volume names   | Char(60) |
| • (Array of ten entries, each 6 bytes in size)                |          |
| - Tape expiration date  | Char(6)  |
| - Bad sector count  | Char(4)  |
| - Date from save tape   | Char(6)  |
| - Time last successful<br>save started                        | Char(8)  |
| - Reserved  | Char(14) |
| • Install tape Volume ID                                      | Char(6)  |
| • IPL sequence number ID                                      | Bin(4)   |
| • Physical address of tape device used<br>for last D-type IPL | Char(4)  |

## Hex 0170 Alternate initial process definition template

The alternate initial process definition template is used by the machine when performing an automated install.

No check is made and no exception is signaled if the values in the template are invalid; however, the next automated install will not be successful.

## Hex 0178 Hardware storage protection state

Note: Hardware storage protection is meaningful only on version 2 hardware or later.

The hardware storage protection state indicates if the machine will honor the protection state of objects on the system. When it is active, references by user state programs to protected objects will result in *object access denied* (hex 4401) exceptions. When hardware storage protection is inactive, or when running on version 1 hardware, accesses of protected objects by user state programs will go undetected.

The format of the template for hardware storage protection state option is as follows (including the usual 8-byte prefix):

|                                     |        |
|-------------------------------------|--------|
| • Number of bytes available         | Bin(4) |
| • Number of bytes provided          | Bin(4) |
| • Hardware storage protection state | Bin(2) |

Hex 0000-indicates hardware storage protection is inactive

Hex 8000-indicates hardware storage protection is active

## Hex 0180 Time separator

The time separator is used when the time is presented to the customer. The valid values are a colon(:), period(.), comma(,) and a blank( ).

The format of the template for the time separator is as follows:

|                             |         |
|-----------------------------|---------|
| • Number of bytes available | Bin(4)  |
| • Number of bytes provided  | Bin(4)  |
| • Time separator            | Char(1) |

## Hex 0184 Software Error Logging

The software error logging machine attribute is used to allow the MI user to determine whether or not software error logging is active for the machine

The format of the template for software error logging is as follows:

- Number of bytes available Bin(4)
- Number of bytes provided Bin(4)
- Software error logging Bin(2)

Hex 8000-indicates software error logging is active

Hex 0000-indicates software error logging is not active

## Hex 0188 Machine task termination event control option (can be materialized and modified).

The machine task termination event option controls if the machine will signal a machine wide event when machine tasks terminate. The default, which is established every IPL, is to not signal machine task termination events. The machine task termination event id is hex 0016,05,01.

The format of the template for the machine task termination event option is as follows:

- Number of bytes available Bin(4)
- Number of bytes provided Bin(4)
- VLIC task termination event option Bin(2)

Hex 8000-indicates machine task termination events will be signaled.

Hex 0000-indicates machine task terminations events will not be signaled.

**Limitations:** Data-pointer-defined scalars are not allowed as a primary operand for this instruction. An invalid operand type exception is signaled if this occurs.

## Exceptions

| Exception                                      | Operands |   |       |
|--|----------|---|-------|
|  | 1        | 2 | Other |
| 06 Addressing                                  |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation                  | X        | X |       |
| 02 boundary alignment                          | X        | X |       |
| 03 range                                       | X        | X |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid            | X        | X |       |
| 10 Damage encountered                          |          |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state                  | X        | X | X     |
| 44 partial system object damage                | X        | X | X     |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception                 |          |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded              |          |   | X     |
| 0A service processor unable to process request |          |   | X     |
| 20 Machine support                             |          |   |       |
| 02 machine check                               |          |   | X     |
| 03 function check                              |          |   | X     |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
| 22        | Object access                          |          |   |       |
|           | 01 object not found                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 object destroyed                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 object suspended                    | X        | X |       |
|           | 08 object compressed                   |          |   | X     |
| 24        | Pointer specification                  |          |   |       |
|           | 01 pointer does not exist              | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        | X |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                 | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 scalar attributes invalid           |          | X |       |
|           | 03 scalar value invalid                |          | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |
| 38        | Template specification                 |          |   |       |
|           | 03 materialization length exception    | X        |   |       |



**Materialize Machine Data (MATMDATA)**

| Op Code (Hex) | Operand 1 | Operand 2               |
|---------------|-----------|-------------------------|
| 0522          | Receiver  | Materialization options |

*Operand 1:* Character variable scalar (fixed length)

*Operand 2:* Character(2) or unsigned binary(2) scalar or immediate (fixed length)

**ILE access**

```

MATMDATA (
    receiver           : space pointer;
    materialization_options : aggregate
)

OR

MATMOD (
    var time_of_day : aggregate
)

```

**Description:** This instruction makes available the unique values of machine data. The values of various machine data are placed in the receiver.

Operand 2 is a 2-byte value. The value of operand 2 determines which machine data are materialized. Operand 2 is restricted to a constant character or unsigned binary scalar or an immediate value.

- Materialization options Char(2)
  - Hex 0000 = Materialize time of day clock
  - Hex 0001 = Materialize system parameter integrity validation flag
  - Hex 0002 through FFFF Reserved

Operand 1 specifies a receiver into which the materialized data is placed. It must specify a character scalar with a minimum length which is dependent upon the materialization option specified for operand 2. The receiver may be substringed. The start position of the substring may be a variable. However, the length of the substring must be an immediate or constant. If the length specified for operand 1 is less than the required minimum, an exception is signaled. Only the bytes up to the required minimum length are used. Any excess bytes are ignored.

The data placed into the receiver differs depending upon the materialization option specified. The following descriptions detail the formats of the optional materializations.

- Hex 0000 = Materialize time of day clock  
minimum receiver length is 8

Time-of-day clock

Char(8)

The time-of-day clock provides a consistent measure of elapsed time. The maximum elapsed time the clock can indicate is approximately 143 years.

The time-of-day clock is a 64-bit unsigned binary counter with the following format:

0.....41 42 reserved 63

The bit positions of the clock are numbered from 0 to 63.

The clock is incremented by adding a 1 in bit position 41 every 1024 microseconds. Bit positions 42 through 63 are used by the machine and have no special meaning to the user. Note that these bits (42-63) may contain either binary 1's or binary 0's.

Unpredictable results occur if the time of day is materialized before it is set.

The maximum unsigned binary value that the time of day clock can be modified to contain is hex DFFFFFFFFFFFFFFF.

- Hex 0001 = Materialize system parameter integrity validation flag  
minimum receiver length is 1

System parameter integrity validation flag

Char(1)

This option returns the value of the machine attribute which specifies whether additional validation of parameters passed to programs which run when the process is in system state is to be performed, such as for U. S. government's Department of Defense security ratings.

A value of hex 01 indicates this additional checking is being performed. A value of hex 00 is returned otherwise.

Performance note: The time of day clock and the system parameter integrity validation flag may be materialized both with this instruction and also with the Materialize Machine Attributes instruction. The performance of this instruction is considerably better.

## Exceptions

| Exception                           | Operands |   |       |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
|                                     | 1        | 2 | Other |
| 06 Addressing                       |          |   |       |
| 01 space addressing violation       | X        |   |       |
| 02 boundary alignment               | X        |   |       |
| 03 range                            | X        |   |       |
| 06 optimized addressability invalid | X        |   |       |
| 08 Argument/parameter               |          |   |       |
| 01 parameter reference violation    | X        |   |       |
| 10 Damage encountered               |          |   |       |
| 04 system object damage state       | X        |   |       |
| 44 partial system object damage     | X        |   |       |
| 1C Machine-dependent exception      |          |   |       |
| 03 machine storage limit exceeded   | X        |   |       |
| 20 Machine support                  |          |   |       |
| 02 machine check                    |          |   | X     |
| 03 function check                   |          |   | X     |
| 22 Object access                    |          |   |       |
| 01 object not found                 | X        |   |       |
| 02 object destroyed                 | X        |   |       |
| 03 object suspended                 | X        |   |       |
| 24 Pointer specification            |          |   |       |
| 01 pointer does not exist           | X        |   |       |

| Exception |  | Operands |   | Other |
|-----------|--|----------|---|-------|
|           |  | 1        | 2 |       |
|           | 02 pointer type invalid                | X        |   |       |
| 2E        | Resource control limit                 |          |   |       |
|           | 01 user profile storage limit exceeded |          |   | X     |
| 32        | Scalar specification                   |          |   |       |
|           | 01 scalar type invalid                 | X        | X |       |
|           | 02 scalar attributes invalid           | X        | X |       |
|           | 03 scalar value invalid                |          | X |       |
| 36        | Space management                       |          |   |       |
|           | 01 space extension/truncation          |          |   | X     |

---

## **New MI Built-In Functions**

These instructions are functions built into the NMI.



---

## Instruction support interfaces



---

## Chapter 23. Exception Specifications

This chapter describes the exceptions which can be signaled by the machine. Exception generation is the only facility for synchronously communicating error conditions that are a direct result of AS/400 instruction processing. Machine exceptions identify error conditions that require processing before the next sequential AS/400 instruction is executed. Instructions that cause a particular exception may not function identically before execution is stopped; however, each instruction produces consistent results. These results ensure machine integrity and reliability. The results are inherent in a particular exception definition or in the detailed instruction definition.

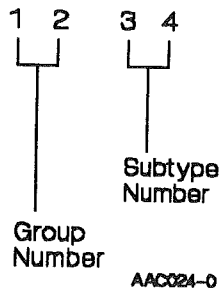
The user can monitor any number of exceptions. There are three basic techniques for the user to handle an exception. One technique is to provide detailed handling specified by a program defined exception description object. The second technique is to provide a default exception handler for the process. This exception handler is invoked whenever an invocation fails to handle an exception. The third technique is to accept the machine default of process termination by not providing an appropriate exception handling mechanism.



## Machine Interface Exception Data

Exception data is communicated across the machine interface through a Retrieve Exception Data instruction. Certain information is available for all exceptions when an appropriate exception description has been defined by the user. That information includes the following:

- Exception identification—This is a 2-byte hexadecimal field formed by concatenating to the high-order 1-byte exception group number a low-order 1-byte exception subtype number. The format of the exception identification is as follows:



- Compare value length
- Compare value (machine signaled have a compare value of hex 00000000 with a length of 4)
- Exception-specific data
- Signaling program invocation address
- Signaled program invocation address
- Signaling program instruction address
- Signaled program instruction address
- Machine-dependent data identifying the component that generated the exception

The exception-specific data provides additional pointers and data that may be required for an individual exception.

---

## Exception List

The following is a list of all exceptions in alphabetic and numeric order by group. The subtypes within each group are in numeric order.

- 02 Access Group
  - 01 Object ineligible for access group
- 04 Access State
  - 01 Access state specification invalid
- 06 Addressing
  - 01 Space addressing violation
  - 02 Boundary alignment
  - 03 Range
  - 04 External data object not found
  - 05 Invalid space reference
  - 06 Optimized addressability invalid
- 08 Argument/Parameter
  - 01 Parameter reference violation
  - 02 Argument list length violation
  - 03 Argument list length modification violation
- 0A Authorization
  - 01 Unauthorized for operation
  - 02 Privileged instruction
  - 03 Attempt to grant/retract authority state to an object that is not authorized
  - 04 Special authorization required
  - 05 Create/modify user profile beyond level of authorization
  - 06 Grant/retract authority invalid.
- 0C Computation
  - 01 Conversion
  - 02 Decimal data
  - 03 Decimal point alignment
  - 04 Edit digit count
  - 05 Edit mask syntax
  - 06 Floating-point overflow
  - 07 Floating-point underflow
  - 08 Length conformance
  - 09 Floating-point invalid operand
  - 0A Size
  - 0B Zero divide
  - 0C Invalid floating-point conversion

- 0D Floating-point inexact result
- 0E Floating-point zero divide
- 0F Master key not defined
- 10 Weak key not valid
- 11 Key parity invalid
- 12 Invalid extended character data
- 13 Invalid extended character operation
- 14 Invalid compressed data
- 15 Date boundary overflow
- 16 Date format error
- 17 Date value error
- 18 Date boundary underflow
- 19 Space pointer operands do not point to the same space object
- 0E Context Operation
  - 01 Duplicate object identification
  - 02 Object ineligible for context
- 10 Damage Encountered
  - 02 Machine context damage state
  - 04 System object damage state
  - 05 Authority verification terminated due to damaged object
  - 44 Partial system object damage state
- 12 Data Base Management
  - 01 Conversion mapping error
  - 02 Key mapping error
  - 03 Cursor not set
  - 04 Data space entry limit exceeded
  - 05 Data space entry already locked
  - 06 Data space entry not found
  - 07 Data space index invalid
  - 08 Incomplete key description
  - 09 Duplicate key value in existing data space entry
  - 0A End of path
  - 0B Duplicate key value detected while building unique data space index
  - 0D No entries locked
  - 0F Duplicate key value in uncommitted data space entry
  - 13 Invalid mapping template
  - 14 Invalid selection template
  - 15 Data space not addressed by index

- 16 Data space not addressed by cursor
- 17 Key changed since set cursor
- 18 Invalid key value modification
- 19 Invalid rule option
- 1A Data space entry size exceeded
- 1B Logical space entry size limit exceeded
- 1C Key size limit exceeded
- 1D Logical key size limit exceeded
- 21 Unable to maintain a unique key data space index
- 25 Invalid data base operation
- 26 Data space index with invalid floating-point field build termination
- 27 Data space index key with invalid floating-point field
- 30 Specified data space entry rejected
- 32 Join value changed
- 33 Data space index with non-user exit selection routine build termination
- 34 Non-user exit selection routine failure
- 36 No mapping code specified
- 37 Operation not valid with join cursor
- 38 Derived field operation error
- 39 Derived field operation error during build index
- 40 Invalid entry definition table
- 41 ISV parameter value in runtime data pointer array not correct
- 42 Unique fanout join failed
- 43 DDAT had an error
- 62 Parent index cannot be used to create new index
- 16 Exception Management
  - 01 Exception description status invalid
  - 02 Exception state of process invalid
  - 03 Invalid invocation address
  - 04 Resume/retry invalid
  - 05 No inquiry message found for reply message
- 18 Independent Index
  - 01 Duplicate key argument in index
- 1A Lock State
  - 01 Invalid lock state
  - 02 Lock request not grantable
  - 03 Invalid unlock request
  - 04 Invalid object lock transfer request

- 05 Invalid space location unlock
- 1C Machine-Dependent Exception
  - 01 Machine-dependent request invalid
  - 02 Program limitation exceeded
  - 03 Machine storage limit exceeded
  - 04 Object storage limit exceeded
  - 06 Lock limit exceeded
  - 07 Modify main storage pool controls invalid
  - 08 Requested function not valid
  - 09 Auxiliary storage pool number invalid
  - 0A Service Processor unable to process request
- 1E Machine Observation
  - 01 Program not observable
  - 02 Invocation not found
  - 03 Machine storage limit exceeded
  - 04 DBGINT error
  - 05 DBGINT error
- 20 Machine Support
  - 01 Diagnose
  - 02 Machine check
  - 03 Function check
- 22 Object Access
  - 01 Object not found
  - 02 Object destroyed
  - 03 Object suspended
  - 04 Object not eligible for operation
  - 05 Object not available to process
  - 06 Object not eligible for destruction
  - 07 Authority verification terminated due to destroyed object
  - 08 Object Compressed
  - 0A Program not eligible for operation
- 24 Pointer Specification
  - 01 Pointer does not exist
  - 02 Pointer type invalid
  - 03 Pointer addressing invalid object
  - 04 Pointer not resolved
- 26 Process Management
  - 02 Queue full

## 28 Process State

- 01 Process ineligible for operation
- 02 Process control space not associated with a process
- 0A Process attribute modification invalid

## 2A Program Creation

- 01 Program header invalid
- 02 ODT syntax error
- 03 ODT relational error
- 04 Operation code invalid
- 05 Invalid op code extender field
- 06 Invalid operand type
- 07 Invalid operand attribute
- 08 Invalid operand value range
- 09 Invalid branch target operand
- 0A Invalid operand length
- 0B Invalid number of operands
- 0C Invalid operand ODT reference
- 0D Reserved bits are not zero
- | 10 Automatic storage for procedure exceeds maximum
- | 11 Machine automatic storage exceeds maximum
- | 12 Data type or length of initial value not valid
- | 14 Static data initialized to address of automatic data
- | 15 Initial value for static data not valid
- | 16 Number of procedures exceeds maximum allowed
- | 17 Type table entry not valid
- | 18 Alias table entry not valid
- | 19 Size of constants exceeds maximum
- | 1A Procedure size exceeds maximum
- | 1B Instruction stream not valid
- | 1C Size of literals exceeds maximum
- | 1D Dictionary entry not valid
- | 1E Level of machine interface not supported on target release
- | 1F Size of dictionary exceeds maximum
- | 20 Internal machine operation not valid
- | 21 Size of internal binding table exceeds maximum
- | 5E An error was detected in a static storage definition or initialization
- | 5F Overlapping initializations not valid
- | 60 Dictionary ID is not valid

- | 61 Binding specification value not valid
- | 62 Copyright component value not valid
- | 63 Module limitation exceeded
- | A0 Attempt to delete part that may not be deleted
- | B0 Object list referential extension not valid
- | B1 Symbol resolution list referential extension not valid
- | B2 Service program export list referential extension not valid
- | B3 Secondary associated spaces list referential extension not valid
- | B4 Program limitation exceeded
- | C0 Attempt to delete part that may not be deleted

## 2C Program Execution

- 01 Return instruction invalid
- 02 Return point invalid
- | 03 <D>
- 04 Branch target invalid
- 05 Activation in use by invocation
- 06 Instruction cancellation
- 07 Instruction termination
- | 08 Branch target defined by label pointer not valid
- | 10 Process object destroyed
- | 11 Process object access invalid
- | 12 Activation group access violation
- | 13 Activation group not found
- | 14 Activation group in use
- | 15 Invalid operation for program
- | 16 Program activation not found
- | 17 Default activation group not destroyed
- | 18 Invalid source invocation
- | 19 Invalid origin invocation
- | 1A Invocation offset outside range of current stack
- | 1B Invocation not eligible for operation
- | 1C Instruction not valid for invocation type
- | 1D automatic storage overflow
- | 1E activation access violation
- | 1F program signature violation
- | 20 static storage overflow
- | 21 program import invalid
- | 22 data reference invalid

- | 23 imported object invalid
- | 24 activation group export conflict
- | 25 import not found
- 2E Resource Control Limit
  - 01 User profile storage limit exceeded
  - 02 Security audit journal full or other failure
- 30 Journal
  - 01 Apply journal changes failure
  - 02 Entry not journaled
  - 03 Maximum objects through a journal port limit exceeded
  - 04 Invalid journal space
  - 05 Maximum journal spaces attached
  - 06 Journal space not at a recoverable boundary
  - 07 Journal ID not unique
  - 08 Object already being journaled
  - 09 Transaction limit list exceeded
  - 0A Data space index currently journaled
  - 0B Data space index currently in force mode
  - 0C Underlying data space not journaled to same journal
- 32 Scalar Specification
  - 01 Scalar type invalid
  - 02 Scalar attributes invalid
  - 03 Scalar value invalid
- 34 Source/Sink Management
  - 01 Source/sink configuration invalid
  - 02 Source/sink physical address invalid
  - 03 Source/sink object state invalid
  - 04 Source/sink resource not available
- 36 Space Management
  - 01 Space extension/truncation
  - 02 Invalid space modification
- 38 Template Specification
  - 01 Template value invalid
  - 02 Template size invalid
  - 03 Materialization length exception
- 3A Wait Time-Out
  - 01 Dequeue
  - 02 Lock



- 03 Wait on event
- 04 Space location lock wait
- 3C Service
  - 01 Invalid service session state
  - 02 Unable to start service session
- 3E Commitment Control
  - 01 Invalid commit block status change
  - 03 Commit block is attached to process
  - 04 Commit block controls uncommitted changes
  - 06 Commitment control resource limit exceeded
  - 08 Object under commitment control being incorrectly journaled
  - 10 Operation not valid under commitment control
  - 11 Process has attached commit block
  - 12 Objects under commitment control
  - 13 Commit block not journaled
  - 14 Errors during decommit
  - 15 Object ineligible for commitment control
  - 16 Object ineligible for removal from commitment control
- 40 Dump Space Management
  - 01 Dump data size limit exceeded,,
  - 02 Invalid dump data insertion
  - 03 Invalid dump space modification
  - 04 Invalid dump data retrieval
- 44 Domain Violation
  - 01 Object Domain error
- 45 Heap Space
  - 01 Heap identifier invalid for the current activation group
  - 02 The requested heap space operation is invalid
  - 03 The heap space has reached it's maximum allowable size
  - 04 The requested heap space allocation or reallocation size is invalid
  - 05 Heap space destroyed
  - 06 Invalid heap space condition detected
  - 07 The supplied mark identifier is invalid
- 46 Queue Space
  - 01 Queue Space not associated with the process
  - 02 Cannot modify queue space
  - 03 Invalid message reference key
  - 04 Queue Space not eligible for destruction

## 02 Access Group

### 0201 Object Ineligible for Access Group

An attempt was made to insert an object into an access group. The operation could not be performed for one of the following reasons:

- The object is temporary, or the object is permanent and the access group is temporary.
- The object is restricted by the machine from membership in an access group.

#### *Information Passed:*

- |   |                |
|---|----------------|
| • Access group  | System pointer |
| • Object to be inserted<br>(binary 0 for objects not yet created) | System pointer |

#### *Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Any create instruction that specifies an access group in the create template
- Signal Exception

## 04 Access State

### 0401 Access State Specification Invalid

An access state not supported by the machine was specified for an object.

#### *Information Passed*

- The invalid access state

Char(1)

#### *Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Set Access State
- Signal Exception

## 06 Addressing

### 0601 Space Addressing Violation

An attempt has been made to operate outside the current extent of a space.

*Information Passed:*

**Note:** IPS stands for "implicit process space".

- |   |                |
|---|----------------|
| • System object affiliated with the space   | System pointer |
| • Space offset reference attempted<br>This value may be zero when not available.  | Bin(4)         |
| • Space class   | Char(1)        |
| Hex 00 = Primary associated space (includes space objects)  |                |
| Hex 01 = Secondary associated space   |                |
| Hex 02 = IPS used for automatic storage   |                |
| Hex 03 = IPS used for static storage  |                |
| Hex 04 = IPS used for heap storage  |                |
| • Reserved (binary 0)   | Char(1)        |
| • Secondary associated space number<br>This value will be zero when not available, such as when the space is not a secondary associated space.        | UBin(2)        |
| • Activation group mark<br>This value will be zero when not available, such as when the space is not an implicit process space.                       | UBin(4)        |
| • Heap space identifier<br>This value will be zero when not available, such as when the space is not an implicit process space used by a heap space.  | UBin(4)        |
| • Pointer to start of IPS used for allocation<br>This value will be zero when not available, such as when the space is not an implicit process space. | Space pointer  |

Different information is supplied for different space classes. Fields which are not used for a given space class will contain zero values. Here is a summary of the information returned (i.e. the field values set) for each space class.

hex 00 (primary associated space, including space objects)

- system pointer to the object
- offset
- space class

hex 01 (secondary associated space)

- system pointer to the object
- offset
- space class
- secondary space number

hex 02 (auto)

- system pointer to the Process Control Space
- offset
- space class
- activation group mark
- space pointer to the start of the IPS from which the allocation was taken

hex 03 (static)

- system pointer to the Process Control Space
- offset

- space class
- activation group mark
- space pointer to the start of the IPS from which the allocation was taken

hex 04 (heap)

- system pointer to the Process Control Space
- offset
- space class
- activation group mark
- heap space identifier
- space pointer to the start of the IPS from which the allocation was taken.

- Note: If the heap space was created to force a new IPS on each allocation this field will contain a space pointer to the start of the allocation.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Any instruction using a pointer or scalar as an operand
- Any instruction using a scalar as an index, a length suboperand, or a space pointer as a base suboperand
- Signal Exception

**0602 Boundary Alignment**

A program object has been referenced, and it does not have the proper alignment relative to the beginning of a space. Pointers must always be 16-byte aligned. Program objects that are not pointers must have at least the alignment specified by the ODT entry.

*Information Passed:*

- Addressability to pointer or template Space pointer

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Any instruction having a pointer operand or a template operand that requires a specific boundary alignment

**0603 Range**

A subscript value in a compound operand array reference is outside the range defined for the array. A subscript value of less than 1 or greater than the number of elements defined by the array causes this exception.

A reference to a string has a position and/or length that exceeds the bounds of the string. A compound operand that defines a character string that does not completely fall within the bounds of the base character string was referenced. A substring with position (P) e1 and length (L) e1 does not meet the following constraint (n is the length of the base string):

$$P + L - 1 \leq n$$

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- All instructions that use scalar or pointer operands
- Signal Exception

**0604 External Data Object Not Found**

An unsuccessful attempt was made to resolve a data pointer. The external data object specified by the initial value of the data pointer was not found in the process activations. If a program name was specified in the symbolic address, then only that program's activation is considered for resolution. If no program was specified, then all of the programs with activations in the process are considered for data pointer resolution.

*Information Passed:*

- External data object name Char(32)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Any instruction that references an external data object through a data pointer.
- Any instruction where a data pointer is used as the scalar value for an index of a length suboperand. This includes scalar and pointer operands that may be subscripted.
- Signal Exception
- Compare Pointer Addressability
- Compare Pointer for Space Addressability
- Convert Character to Numeric
- Convert External Form to Numeric
- Convert Numeric to Character
- Copy Bytes Left Adjusted
- Copy Bytes Left Adjusted With Pad
- Copy Bytes Right Adjusted
- Copy Bytes Right Adjusted With Pad
- Copy Numeric Value
- Edit
- Materialize Pointer
- Resolve Data Pointer
- Set Data Pointer Addressability
- Set Data Pointer Attributes
- Set Space Pointer From Pointer
- Set System Pointer From Pointer

**0605 Invalid Space Reference**

An attempt was made to address a space contained in an object that has no space.

*Instruction Causing Exception:*

- Set Space Pointer from Pointer

**0606 Optimized Addressability Invalid**

An instruction attempted to use the internally optimized value of a space pointer that was invalid due to the failure of a prior instruction in trying to access the pointer's value.

The machine may optimize the retrieval of a pointer's value by using the value retrieved on one instruction for use by multiple instructions that have need to reference the pointer's value. This avoids the overhead of continually retrieving the pointer's value from storage for every instruction that would have need to use it. If, in attempting to retrieve the pointer's value, an exception is detected, the machine marks the internally optimized value as invalid. This is done to provide for detecting the invalid addressability upon subsequent execution of instructions that depend on the internally optimized value. These instructions have no provision for retrieving the pointer's value from storage. These instructions will not redetect the original exception, but instead detect the optimized addressability invalid exception for this condition. This condition can occur when an exception is detected during an attempt to retrieve a pointer's value and the exception is ignored which causes execution of the program to continue without successfully retrieving the pointer's value.

This exception may not be detected on certain cases of internal machine optimizations that may be performed on references to space pointer machine objects. A reference to the space data addressed by the pointer is necessary to ensure consistent detection of this exception. Although the exception may not be detected for initial operations, it will be detected on any subsequent operation that references the space data addressed by the space pointer machine objects.

The optimization of retrieving a pointer's value can be prevented by specifying the abnormal attribute for the pointer.

This exception may not be detected on the operations listed below under certain cases of internal machine optimizations which may be performed on references to space pointer machine objects. The operations listed below refer to the value of a space pointer machine object, but do not have need to reference the space data the pointer addresses. A reference to the space data addressed by the pointer is necessary to insure consistent detection of this exception. Although the exception may not be detected for these operations, it will be detected upon any subsequent operation which references the space data addressed by the space pointer machine object.

The following instructions may not detect this exception upon references to a space pointer machine object.

- Add Space Pointer
- Compare Pointer for Space Addressability
- Compare Pointers for Equality
- Compare Space Addressability
- Set Space Pointer
- Set Space Pointer with Displacement
- Set Space Pointer from Pointer
- Subtract Space Pointer Offset
- Subtract Space Pointers For Offset

See the particular instruction description for more detail.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Any instruction using a pointer or scalar as an operand
  - Signal Exception

## 08 Argument/Parameter

### 0801 Parameter Reference Violation

An attempt was made to reference an internal or an external parameter for which no corresponding argument was passed.

This exception may not be signaled for operations which refer to the value of a space pointer machine object, but which do not attempt to reference the space data the pointer addresses. The following instructions may not signal this exception upon references to a space pointer machine object.

- Add Space Pointer
- Compare Pointers for Equality
- Compare Space Addressability
- Set Space Pointer
- Set Space Pointer with Displacement
- Set Space Pointer from Pointer
- Subtract Space Pointer Offset
- Subtract Space Pointers For Offset

See the particular instruction description for more detail. *Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Any instruction that references a parameter operand
- Signal Exception

### 0802 Argument List Length Violation

An argument list does not properly correspond to the length required by the parameter list.

*Information Passed:*

- |                                       |         |
|---------------------------------------|---------|
| • Minimum number of arguments allowed | Char(2) |
| • Maximum number of arguments allowed | Char(2) |
| • Actual number of arguments allowed  | Char(2) |

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Call External
- Transfer Control
- Signal Exception

### 0803 Argument List Length Modification Violation

An attempt was made to change the length of a variable-length argument list to a value less than 0 or greater than the maximum size of the argument list.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Set Argument List Length
- Signal Exception



## 0C Computation

### 0C01 Conversion

A scalar value cannot be converted to the necessary type in this instruction.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Convert Character to Hex
- Convert External Form to Numeric
- Convert SNA to Character
- Convert MRJE to Character
- Convert BSC to Character
- Signal Exception

### 0C02 Decimal Data

The sign or digit codes of a decimal operand, either packed or zoned, contain an invalid value. For packed and zoned format, either the sign is outside the valid range of A through F or a digit field is outside the range 0 through 9.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Add Numeric
- Compare Numeric Value
- Convert Character to Numeric
- Convert Decimal Form to Floating-Point
- Convert Numeric to Character
- Copy Numeric Value
- Divide
- Divide With Remainder
- Edit
- Extract Magnitude
- Multiply
- Negate
- Remainder
- Scale
- Search
- Subtract Numeric
- Sum
- Signal Exception

### 0C03 Decimal Point Alignment

The value of a numeric operand cannot be aligned in a 31-digit decimal field. Decimal point alignment was attempted by padding with 0's on the right. Nonzero digits would have to be truncated on the left to fit the aligned value into a 31-digit decimal field.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Add Numeric

- Compare Numeric Value
- Subtract Numeric
- Signal Exception

**0C04 Edit Digit Count**

The number of digit position characters in the mask operand of an Edit instruction is not equal to the number of digits in the source operand value.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Edit
- Signal Exception

**0C05 Edit Mask Syntax**

The characters of the mask operand do not follow the valid syntax rules for an Edit instruction.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Edit
- Signal Exception

**0C06 Floating-Point Overflow**

The result of a floating-point operation is finite and not an invalid value, but its exponent is too large for the target floating-point format. The signed exponent has exceeded 127 in short format or 1023 in long format.

*Information Passed:*

- |   |                    |
|---|--------------------|
| • Floating-point value attributes           | Char(1)            |
| — Normal bias                               | Bit 0              |
| — Modified bias                             | Bit 1              |
| — Rounded to short floating-point precision | Bit 2              |
| — NaN                                       | Bit 3              |
| — Reserved (binary 0)                       | Bits 4-7           |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                       | Char(7)            |
| • Overflowed floating-point value           | Floating-(8) point |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                       | Char(16)           |

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Add Numeric
- Compute Math Function Using One Input Value
- Compute Math Function Using Two Input Values
- Convert Character to Numeric
- Convert Numeric to Character
- Convert Decimal Form to Floating-Point
- Copy Numeric Value
- Divide
- Extract Magnitude
- Multiply

- Negate
- Scale
- Subtract Numeric
- Signal Exception

**0C07 Floating-Point Underflow**

The result of a floating-point operation is not zero but has too small an exponent for the destination's format without being denormalized. The signed exponent is less than -126 in short format or less than -1022 in long format.

*Information Passed:*

- |   |                    |
|---|--------------------|
| • Floating-point value attributes           | Char(1)            |
| — Normal bias                               | Bit 0              |
| — Modified bias                             | Bit 1              |
| — Rounded to short floating-point precision | Bit 2              |
| — NaN                                       | Bit 3              |
| — Reserved (binary 0)                       | Bits 4-7           |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                       | Char(7)            |
| • Underflowed floating-point value          | Floating-(8) point |
| • Reserved (binary 0)                       | Char(16)           |

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Add Numeric
- Compute Math Function Using One Input Value
- Compute Math Function Using Two Input Values
- Convert Character to Numeric
- Convert Numeric to Character
- Convert Decimal Form to Floating-Point
- Copy Numeric Value
- Divide
- Extract Magnitude
- Multiply
- Negate
- Scale
- Subtract Numeric
- Signal Exception

**0C08 Length Conformance**

The operand lengths or resultant value length or both do not conform to the rules of the instruction:

- |       |  |
|-------|--|
| CVTHC | Twice the length of the source operand must be less than or equal to the length of the receiver operand. |
|-------|--|

|        |  |
|--------|--|
| CVTCH  | The length of the operand must be less than or equal to twice the length of the receiver operand.  |
| CVTMC  | The length of a record in the receiver was not enough to contain the converted form of a record from the source.                                   |
| EDIT   | The length of the resultant edited value must be equal to the length of the receiver operand.  |
| SCAN   | The length of the compare operand must not be greater than the length of the base string.  |
| SEARCH | The length of the find operand plus the value of the location operand must be less than or equal to the length of an element of the array operand. |
| XLATE  | The source and receiver operands must be the same length.  |

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Convert Character to Hex
- Convert Hex to Character
- Convert MRJE to Character
- Edit
- Extended Character Scan
- Scan
- Search
- Signal Exception
- Translate

**0C09 Floating-Point Invalid Operand**

A floating-point invalid operand condition is caused by one of the following conditions:

- A source operand is an unmasked NaN.
- Addition of infinities of different signs and subtraction of infinities of the same sign.
- Multiplication of zero times infinity.
- Division of zero by zero or infinity by infinity.
- Computing the sine, cosine, or tangent function for infinity.
- Computing the arc tangent, exponential, logarithm, square root, or power function for infinity when in projective infinity mode.
- Floating-point values compared unordered and no branch or indicator options are specified for the unordered, negation of unordered, equal, or negation of equal conditions on compare numeric value.
- An unordered resultant condition occurred on a computational instruction because the result was NaN, and branch or indicator conditions are specified but unordered, negation of unordered, zero, or negation of zero conditions are not specified.

*Information Passed:*

- Exception type Char(1)  
 Hex 00 = Invalid arithmetic operation or operand is unmasked NaN.  
 Hex 01 = Invalid branch or indicator conditions.  
 Hex 02 through hex FF are reserved.
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(31)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Add Numeric
- Compare Numeric Value
- Compute Math Function Using One Input Value
- Compute Math Function Using Two Input Values
- Convert Character to Numeric
- Convert Floating-Point to Decimal Form
- Convert Numeric to Character
- Copy Numeric Value
- Divide
- Extract Magnitude
- Multiply
- Negate
- Scale
- Subtract Numeric
- Signal Exception

**0C0A Size**

An operand was too small to contain a result. This condition is detected only when a fixed-point result is too large to be assigned to a fixed-point receiver. The receiver operand is set with the result of the operation truncated to the receiver size.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Add Numeric
- Compute Math Function Using One Input Value
- Compute Math Function Using Two Input Values
- Convert Character to Numeric
- Convert External Form
- Convert Numeric to Character
- Copy Numeric Value
- Divide
- Divide With Remainder
- Extract Magnitude
- Multiply
- Negate
- Remainder
- Scale
- Subtract Numeric
- Sum
- Signal Exception
- Trim Length

**0C0B Zero Divide**

An attempt was made to divide by 0 on a fixed-point divide operation.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Divide
- Divide With Remainder
- Remainder
- Signal Exception

**0C0C Invalid Floating-Point Conversion**

This exception is detected on a conversion from binary floating-point to other than a binary floating-point format because overflow, infinity, or NaN is detected before conversion is complete.

*Information Passed:*

- |                                   |                    |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------|
| • Floating-point value attributes | Char(1)            |
| — Normal bias                     | Bit 0              |
| — Modified bias                   | Bit 1              |
| — Reserved (binary 0)             | Bit 2              |
| — NaN                             | Bit 3              |
| — Infinity                        | Bit 4              |
| — Reserved (binary 0)             | Bits 5-7           |
| • Reserved (binary 0)             | Char(7)            |
| • Invalid floating-point value    | Floating-point (8) |
| • Reserved (binary 0)             | Char(16)           |

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Add Numeric
- Compute Math Function Using One Input Value
- Compute Math Function Using Two Input Values
- Convert Character to Numeric
- Convert Floating-Point to Decimal Form
- Convert Numeric to Character
- Copy Numeric Value
- Divide
- Multiply
- Negate
- Scale
- Subtract Numeric
- Signal Exception

**0C0D Floating-Point Inexact Result**

This exception is signaled when the rounded result of an operation is not exact because of one of the following conditions:

- The rounded result of an operation is not exact because a value is modified (rounded) to fit in a receiver operand and nonzero fraction digits are lost.
- The occurrence of a floating-point overflow condition when that condition is masked and the result is no longer exact because it is set to infinity.

*Information Passed:*

- Reserved (binary 0)

Char(32)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Add Numeric
- Compare Numeric Value
- Compute Math Function Using One Input Value
- Compute Math Function Using Two Input Values
- Convert Character to Numeric
- Convert Decimal Form to Floating-Point
- Convert Floating-Point to Decimal Form
- Copy Numeric Value
- Divide
- Extract Magnitude
- Multiply
- Negate
- Scale
- Subtract Numeric
- Signal Exception

**0C0E Floating-Point Zero Divide**

This exception is signaled for a floating-point division operation if the divisor is zero and the dividend is a finite nonzero number.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Compute Math Function Using Two Input Values
- Divide
- Signal Exception

**0C0F Master Key Not Defined**

The cipher operation requested use of the master key but the master key has not been defined by the Modify Machine Attributes instruction or is invalid.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Cipher
- Cipher Key
- Signal Exception

**0C10 Weak Key Not Valid**

The key supplied in the template is a weak key and cannot be accepted by the cipher operation.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Cipher

- Cipher Key
- Modify Machine Attributes
- Signal Exception

**0C11 Key Parity Invalid**

The key supplied in the template does not have odd parity in each byte and is, therefore, unacceptable for the cipher operation.

*Information Passed:*

- Offset (byte) to the key field Bin(2)
- Reserved Char(6)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Cipher
- Modify Machine Attributes
- Signal Exception

**0C12 Invalid Extended Character Data**

The character codes in an extended character data field contain an invalid value.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Copy Extended Characters Left Adjusted With Pad
- Signal Exception

**0C13 Invalid Extended Character Operation**

The operand data types specified for an extended character operation are incompatible.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Copy Extended Characters Left Adjusted With Pad
- Signal Exception

**0C14 Invalid Compressed Data**

The data to be decompressed contains an invalid *signature*.

*Information Passed:*

- Actual Result Data Length Bin(4)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Decompress Data
- Signal Exception

**0C15 Date boundary overflow**

The end result of a date calculation or conversion, for a date exceeds the end of the time line of the DDAT

*Instructions Causing Exception:***0C15 Data format error**

The format of the data does not conform to the format that is described in the DDAT.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*



0C15 Data value error

The data value of a date, time, or timestamp is not valid with respect to the calendar specified in the DDAT.

Instructions Causing Exception:

0C15 Date boundary underflow

The end result of a date calculation or conversion, the date, precedes the beginning of the time line described in the DDAT.

Instructions Causing Exception:

| 0C19 Space pointer operands do not point to the same space object

| The program that was running attempted to subtract two space pointers from each other, but the  
| pointers did not point to the same space.

| Change the program so that the space pointers point to the same space.

| Information Passed:

- |                        |               |
|------------------------|---------------|
| • First space pointer  | Space pointer |
| • Second space pointer | Space pointer |

| Instructions Causing Exception:

- | • Signal Exception

## 0E Context Operation

### 0E01 Duplicate Object Identification

An attempt was made to place addressability in a context to an object having the same name, type, and subtype as an existing entry in the context.

#### Information Passed:

- System pointer to the existing object
- Object identification Char(32)
  - Object type Char(1)
  - Object subtype Char(1)
  - Object name Char(30)

#### Instructions Causing Exception:

- All create instructions
- Modify Addressability
- Rename Object
- Signal Exception

### 0E02 Object Ineligible For Context

An attempt was made to delete addressability to an object of a type that may be addressed only by the machine context, or an attempt was made to place addressability to an object in a temporary or permanent context that may be addressed only by the machine context.

#### Information Passed:

- System pointer to object
- Object identification Char(32)
  - Object type Char(1)
  - Object subtype code Char(1)
  - Object name Char(30)

#### Instructions Causing Exception:

- Modify Addressability
- Signal Exception

## 10 Damage

### 1002 Machine Context Damage State

The machine context cannot be referenced because it is in the damaged state. The machine context rebuild option of the Reclaim instruction can be used to correct the problem or an IPL can correct the problem.

#### Information Passed:

- Reserved (binary 0) Char(16)
- VLOG dump ID Char(8)
- Error class Bin(2)
- The error class codes for the type of damage detected are as follows:
  - Hex 0000 = Previously marked damaged
  - Hex 0001 = Detected abnormal condition
  - Hex 0002 = Locally invalid device sector
  - Hex 0003 = Device failure
- Auxiliary storage device failure Bin(2)
 

This field is defined for error classes hex 0002 and hex 0003. It is the unit number of the failing device or 0 for a main storage failure.
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(100)

#### Instructions Causing Exception:

- Materialize Context
- Resolve System Pointer
- Any instruction that resolves a system object that is located by the machine context
- Signal Exception

### 1004 System Object Damage State

A system object cannot be accessed because it is in the damaged state.

#### Information Passed:

- System pointer to the damaged object System pointer
- VLOG dump ID Char(8)
- Error class Bin(2)
- The error class codes for the type of damage detected are as follows:
  - Hex 0000 = Previously marked damaged
  - Hex 0001 = Detected abnormal condition
  - Hex 0002 = Locally invalid device sector
  - Hex 0003 = Device failure
- Auxiliary storage device indicator Bin(2)
 

This field is defined for error classes hex 0002 and hex 0003. It is the unit number of the failing device or 0 for a main storage failure.
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(100)

#### Instructions Causing Exception:

- Any instruction that references a system object
- Signal Exception

**1005 Authority verification terminated due to damaged object**

Authority verification processing terminated due to a damaged user profile or authorization list found during the check of authority for a permanent system object.

*Information Passed*

- System Pointer to the object for which authority was being checked System pointer
- Reason Code Bin(2)
  - 0 = Damaged User Profile
  - 1 = Damaged Authorization List
  - (all other values reserved)
- Reserved Char(14)
- System Pointer to the damaged User Profile or Authorization List System pointer

*Instructions Causing Exception*

- Any instruction with operands or operand lists that refer to a permanent system object
- Signal Exception

**1044 Partial System Object Damage**

Partial damage to a system object has been detected.

*Information Passed:*

- System pointer to the damaged object System pointer
- VLOG dump ID Char(8)
- Error Class Bin(2)
- The error class codes for the type of damage detected are as follows:
  - Hex 0000 = Previously marked damaged
  - Hex 0001 = Detected abnormal condition
  - Hex 0002 = Locally invalid device sector
  - Hex 0003 = Device failure
- Auxiliary storage device indicator Bin(2)

This field is defined for error classes hex 0002 and hex 0003. It is the unit number of the failing device or 0 for a main storage failure.
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(100)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Any instruction that references a system object
- Signal Exception

*Meaning and recovery:*

- For a user profile, partial damage occurs when internal processing is unable to complete due to insufficient machine storage. When the system is IPLed, if there is then sufficient storage, the internal processing is completed and the partial damage condition is reset.

## 12 Data Base Management

### 1201 Conversion Mapping Error

During conversions of a field from one data representation to another, an error occurred. The specific error is indicated in the error type value, below.

#### Information Passed:

The following data is provided:

- Cursor System pointer
- Data space number Bin(2)
- Ordinal entry number Bin(4)  
(0 if signaled during an Insert Data Space Entry or an Insert Sequential Data Space Entries instruction)
- Number of fields in error Bin(2)
- Field data (repeated for each field that is in error)
  - Field number Bin(2)
  - Error type Char(2)
- Tolerate all mapping errors exception data
  - Status bits Char(2)
    - Bitmap is specified Bit 0
      - 0 = Bit map is not returned in the exception data
      - 1 = Bit map is returned in the exception data
    - Join field incurred an error Bit 1
      - 0 = A join field did not incur an error
      - 1 = A join field did incur an error
    - No records in group Bit 1
      - 0 = Group-by processing not in effect or a valid group was returned
      - 1 = Group-by processing found no records which qualify as part of the defined group (set only when grouping WITHOUT a data space index)
    - Reserved (binary zero) Bit 3-15
  - Bit map byte length Bin(2)
  - Bit map identifying the erroneous user buffer fields Char(\*)
  - Number of first exceptions Bin(2)
  - First exception data Char(14)  
(repeated for each offending field)
    - First error cursor data space number Bin(2)
    - First error ordinal entry number Bin(4)
    - First error join cursor ordinal positions Char(128)
    - First error field number Bin(2)
    - First error error type Char(2)

- |                              |         |
|------------------------------|---------|
| - First error field location | Char(1) |
| - Reserved                   | Char(5) |

The ordinal entry number will contain a value of binary zero when the exception occurs when inserting new data space entries or performing group-by and join operations.

The field number is the relative location of the field as specified when creating the cursor. A field number of 1 is the first field in the data field location.

The error type values are as follows:

- Hex 0001-Conversion: An invalid character was found by the derived operation, Invalid Character Scan.
- Hex 0002-Decimal Data: (1) Sign encoding is invalid for packed or zoned format, or (2) digit encoding is invalid for packed or zoned format.
- Hex 0006-Floating-Point Overflow: During conversion, a floating-point value exceeded the maximum value that can be represented.
- Hex 0007-Floating-Point Underflow: During conversion, a floating-point value became less than the minimum value that can be represented.
- Hex 0008-Length Conformance: A length specified for a variable length field was outside the limits of that field.
- Hex 0009-Floating-Point Invalid Operand: A floating-point NaN was used as an operand to convert from long floating-point format to short floating-point format or from short floating-point format to long floating-point format.
- Hex 000A-Size: The destination field is too small to hold all significant digits of the source field.
- Hex 000C-Invalid Floating-Point Conversion: An invalid floating-point value was used as an operand to convert floating-point to packed decimal or floating-point to binary.
- Hex 000D-Floating-Point Inexact Result: In a conversion operation, a floating-point value had at least one bit of precision rounded away.
- Hex 0012- Invalid extended character data; The character data in an extended character data field contain an invalid value.
- Hex 0015-Date boundary overflow: The end result of a date calculation or conversion, a date, exceeds the end of the time line described in the DDAT. Reference the Common Template Appendix for information on the DDAT.
- Hex 0016-Data format: The format of the data does not conform to the format that is described in the DDAT. Reference the Common Template Appendix for information on the DDAT.
- Hex 0017-Data value: The data value of a date, time, or timestamp is invalid with respect to the calendar specified in the DDAT. Reference the Common Template Appendix for information on the DDAT.
- Hex 0018-Date boundary underflow: The end result of a date calculation or conversion, a date, precedes the beginning of the time line described in the DDAT. Reference the Common Template Appendix for information on the DDAT.
- Hex 0019-Null status: An invalid situation exists relating to null capable fields. On retrieve related instructions, a null field was encountered and a null map was not provided with the instruction. On insert/update instructions, a null map was provided and indicated a field which is not null capable should be set to null or the null map contains an invalid null or not null value.

These errors are equivalent to the computational exceptions numbered 0C01, 0C02, 0C06, 0C07, 0C08, 0C09, 0C0A, 0C0C, 0C0D, 0C12, 0C14, 0C15, 0C16, and 0C17, and occur for similar reasons.

The bit map is specified bit indicates if the bit map identifying the erroneous user buffer fields is present in the exception data

The join field incurred an error bit indicates if any join fields incurred mapping errors. This bit is always binary zero for non-join cursors.

The bit map identifying the erroneous user buffer fields maps each field of the user buffer to a bit map in a one-to-one correspondence. Field 1 is bit 1, field 2 is bit 2, etc. If the bit corresponding to a user buffer field is 1 then that field is erroneous and has been replaced with the default value (blank for character, zero for numeric). The length of the bit map is given by:

$$(((\# \text{ of fields in user buffer}) + 7) / 8 + 1) \& \text{'FFFE'X}.$$

The first exception data area identifies the first field that incurred an error when a cursor created with the tolerate all mapping errors attribute is being used for retrieval operations. The field identified is not necessarily represented in the returned record nor is it necessarily represented in the bitmap of erroneous fields since it may not have been mapped to the user buffer. Instead, this is the very first field which incurred an error in the series of mappings which ultimately produced the record-view in the user's buffer.

The first error cursor data space number will contain binary zero when the error occurs during group-by derived field operations.

The first error ordinal entry number will contain binary zero when the error occurs during group-by derived field operations or while processing default values during a join operations.

The first error join cursor ordinal positions area is meaningful only on operations involving a join cursor and is zero in instances of non-join. It will also be zero if the exception occurs during group-by processing or derived field operations. Each ordinal is 4 bytes in length. All current ordinals associated with a join cursor are returned.

The first error field number is as described for field number above.

The first error error-type is as described for error type above with the addition of the following types:

*Hex 000B* -An attempt was made to divide by zero in a fixed point divide operation.

*Hex 000E* -An attempt has been made to divide by zero in a floating point divide operation.

The first error field location identifies the buffer where the first error occurred. The following values can be returned:

- 00 = Data space entry
- 01 = Cursor intermediate buffer
- 02 = Group-by intermediate buffer

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Copy Data Space Entries
- Insert Data Space Entry
- Insert Sequential Data Space Entries
- Retrieve Data Space Entry
- Retrieve Sequential Data Space Entries
- Update Data Space Entry
- Signal Exception

## 1202 Key Mapping Error

During conversions of a field from one data representation to another, an error occurred. The specific error is indicated in the error type value, below.

*Information Passed:*

The following data is provided:

|  |                |
|--|----------------|
| Cursor   | System pointer |
| Data space number  | Bin(2)         |
| Ordinal Entry Number                                       | Char(4)        |
| Number of fields in error                                  | Bin(2)         |
| Field data (repeated for each field that is in error)      |                |
| • Field number   | Bin(2)         |
| • Error type   | Char(2)        |
| Tolerate all mapping errors exception data                 |                |
| • Status bits  | Char(2)        |
| — Bitmap is specified                                      | Bit 0          |
| 0       = Bit map is not returned in the exception data    |                |
| 1       = Bit map is returned in the exception data        |                |
| — Reserved (binary zero)                                   | Bit 1          |
| — Reserved (binary zero)                                   | Bit 2-15       |
| • Bit map byte length                                      | Bin(2)         |
| • Bit map identifying the erroneous key buffer fields      | Char(*)        |
| • Number of first exceptions                               | Bin(2)         |
| • First exception data (repeated for each offending field) | Char(144)      |
| — First error cursor data space number                     | Bin(2)         |
| — First error ordinal entry number                         | Bin(4)         |
| — Reserved   | Char(128)      |
| — First error field number                                 | Bin(2)         |
| — First error error type                                   | Char(2)        |
| — First error field location                               | Char(1)        |
| — Reserved   | Char(5)        |

The field number is the relative location of the field as specified when creating the cursor. A field number of 1 is the first field in the data field location.

The error type values are as follows:

- Hex 0002-Decimal Data: (1) Sign encoding is invalid for packed or zoned format, or (2) digit encoding is invalid for packed or zoned format.
- Hex 0006-Floating-Point Overflow: During conversion, a floating-point value exceeded the maximum value that can be represented.



- Hex 0007-Floating-Point Underflow: During conversion, a floating-point value became less than the minimum value that can be represented.
- Hex 0008-Length Conformance: A length specified for a variable length field was outside the limits of that field.
- Hex 0009-Floating-Point Invalid Operand: A floating-point NaN was used as an operand to convert from long floating-point format to short floating-point format or from short floating-point format to long floating-point format.
- Hex 000A-Size: The destination field is too small to hold all significant digits of the source field.
- Hex 000C-Invalid Floating-Point Conversion: An invalid floating-point value was used as an operand to convert floating-point to packed decimal or floating-point to binary.
- Hex 000D-Floating-Point Inexact Result: In a conversion operation, a floating-point value had at least one bit of precision rounded away.
- Hex 0014-Date boundary underflow: The end result of a date calculation or conversion, a date, precedes the beginning of the time line described in the DDAT. Reference the Common Template Appendix for information on the DDAT.
- Hex 0015-Date boundary overflow: The end result of a date calculation or conversion, a date, exceeds the end of the time line described in the DDAT. Reference the Common Template Appendix for information on the DDAT.
- Hex 0016-Data format: The format of the data does not conform to the format that is described in the DDAT. Reference the Common Template Appendix for information on the DDAT.
- Hex 0017-Data value: The data value of a date, time, or timestamp is invalid with respect to the calendar specified in the DDAT. Reference the Common Template Appendix for information on the DDAT.
- Hex 0018-Null status: An invalid situation exists relating to null capable fields. On instructions that materialize a key, a null field was encountered and a null map was not provided with the instruction. On instructions with a key as input, a null map was provided and indicated a field which is not null capable should be set to null or the null map contains an invalid null or not null value.
- Hex 00F0-A substring set cursor operation was requested. The byte count specified ended in a key field that cannot be severed. This key field type could be but is not limited to: binary, floating point, date, or timestamp.

These errors are equivalent to the computational exceptions numbered 0C02, 0C06, 0C07, 0C08, 0C09, 0C0A, 0C0C, 0C0D, 0C14, 0C15, 0C16, and 0C17, and occur for similar reasons.

The ordinal entry number field will be zero if the exception occurred on input key mapping. For output key mapping, ordinal entry number will contain the ordinal number of the DSE which caused the exception.

The bit map is specified bit indicates if the bit map identifying the erroneous user buffer fields is present in the exception data

The bit map identifying the erroneous key buffer fields maps each field of the key buffer to a bit map in a one-to-one correspondence. Field 1 is bit 1, field 2 is bit 2, etc. If the bit corresponding to a key buffer field is 0 then that field incurred no errors. If the bit corresponding to a key buffer field is 1 then that field is erroneous and has been replaced with the default value (blank for character, zero for numeric). The length of the bit map is given by:

$$(((\# \text{ of fields in user buffer}) + 7) / 8 + 1) \& 'FFFE'X.$$

The first exception data area identifies the first field that incurred an error when a cursor created with the tolerate all mapping errors attribute is being used for retrieval operations. The

field identified is not necessarily represented in the returned key nor is it necessarily represented in the bitmap of erroneous fields since it may not have been mapped to the key buffer. Instead, this is the very first field which incurred an error in the series of mappings which ultimately produced the key-view in the key buffer.

The first error cursor data space number will contain binary zero when the error occurs during group-by derived field operations.

The first error ordinal entry number will contain binary zero when the error occurs during group-by derived field operations.

The first error field number is as described for field number above.

The first error error-type is as described for error type above with the addition of the following types:

- 000B     An attempt was made to divide by zero in a fixed point divide operation.
- 000E     An attempt has been made to divide by zero in a floating point divide operation.

The first error field location identifies the buffer where the first error occurred. The following values can be returned:

- 00       = Data space entry
- 03       Intermediate key buffer

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Copy Data Space Entries (mapping from template)
- Materialize Cursor Attributes (mapping key out to buffer)
- Retrieve Sequential Data Space Entries (mapping key to buffer)
- Set Cursor (mapping key in/out)
- Signal Exception

**1203** *Cursor Not Set*

An attempt was made to perform a data base operation using a cursor that is not set to address a data space entry.

*Information Passed:*

- System pointer to cursor
- Data space number Bin(2)

The data space number will be zero for a non-join cursor.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Retrieve Data Space Entry
- Set Cursor
- Signal Exception

**1204** *Data Space Entry Limit Exceeded*

The operation caused the user-provided maximum number of entries limitation for the data space to be exceeded.

*Information Passed:*

- Cursor (binary 0 for instruction not involving a cursor) System pointer
- Data space System pointer

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Copy Data Space Entries
- Data Base Maintenance (insert default entries and insert deleted entries option)
- Insert Data Space Entry
- Insert Sequential Data Space Entries
- Signal Exception

**1205 Data Space Entry Already Locked**

An attempt has been made to lock a data space entry using the Set Cursor instruction when the data space entry is already locked to a cursor (this cursor or another cursor) or to a commit block that is not attached to this process. A system pointer to the process control space of the process that activated the cursor or attached the commit block that holds the lock is returned.

*Information Passed:*

- |                                    |                |
|------------------------------------|----------------|
| • Cursor                           | System pointer |
| • Data space                       | Bin(2)         |
| • Ordinal entry number             | Bin(4)         |
| • Return code (bit significant)    | Char(1)        |
| Hex 00 = Locked to another process |                |
| Hex 01 = Locked to current process |                |
| • Reserved (binary 0)              | Char(9)        |
| • Process control space            | System pointer |

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Set Cursor
- Signal Exception

**1206 Data Space Entry Not Found**

An attempt has been made to refer to a data space entry that could not be found because the entry has been deleted or its key has been omitted from the data space index.

*Information Passed:*

- |                     |                |
|---------------------|----------------|
| • Cursor            | System pointer |
| • Data space number | Bin(2)         |

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Retrieve Data Space Entry
- Set Cursor
- Signal Exception

**1207 Data Space Index Invalid**

The index specified for a data base operation is not usable.

*Information Passed:*

- |  |                |
|--|----------------|
| • Cursor<br>(binary 0 for instructions not involving cursor) | System pointer |
| • Data space index   | System pointer |

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Activate Cursor

- Copy Data Space Entries
- Retrieve Data Space Entry
- Retrieve Sequential Data Space Entries
- Set Cursor
- Signal Exception

**1208 Incomplete Key Description**

The cursor cannot be set by key for this data space index because the output mapping template used to create this cursor failed to provide a description of each field that comprises the key, or an alternate entry definition supplied at Create Cursor differs from the entry definition used at Create Data Space Index.

*Information Passed:*

- |  |                |
|--|----------------|
| • Cursor                                       | System pointer |
| • Data space number of the key format selected | Bin(2)         |

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Copy Data Space Entries
- Create Cursor
- Set Cursor
- Signal Exception

**1209 Duplicate Key Value in Existing Data Space Entry**

An attempt has been made to insert or update a data space entry in a data space over which a unique keyed index has been built, and the data space entry has a key value identical to an existing data space entry addressed by the index.

*Information Passed:*

- |   |                |
|---|----------------|
| • Cursor (binary 0 for operations not involving a cursor)   | System pointer |
| • Data space index  | System pointer |
| • The data space number of the entry associated with the key already in the data space index                          | Bin(2)         |
| • The ordinal number of the entry associated with the key already in the data space index                             | Bin(4)         |
| • The data space number of the entry that was being added or changed and caused the exception                         | Bin(2)         |
| • The ordinal number of the entry that was being changed and caused the exception(0 if an insert was being attempted) | Bin(4)         |

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Apply Journalled Changes
- Copy Data Space Entries
- Insert Data Space Entry
- Insert Sequential Data Space Entries
- Update Data Space Entry
- Signal Exception

**120A End of Path**

The end of an access path was reached when an attempt was made to position a cursor.

*Information Passed:*

- Cursor System pointer

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Retrieve Sequential Data Space Entries
- Set Cursor
- Signal Exception

**120B Duplicate Key Value Detected**

While creating or rebuilding a data space index with the unique key attribute, entries were found to generate the same key value. The build detected up to a maximum of 20 duplicate key values before terminating.

*Information Passed:*

- Data space index System pointer
- Number of duplicates detected Bin(2)
- (Repeated for each duplicate)
  - Data space number of first entry Bin(2)
  - Ordinal number of first entry Bin(4)
  - Data space number of second entry Bin(2)
  - Ordinal number of second entry Bin(4)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Create Data Space Index
- Data Base Maintenance (rebuild option)
- Signal Exception

**120D No Entries Locked**

No data space entries were locked to this cursor.

*Information Passed:*

- Cursor System pointer

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Delete Data Space Entry
- Update Data Space Entry
- Signal Exception

**120F Duplicate Key Value in Uncommitted Data Space Entry**

An attempt has been made to insert or update a data space entry in a data space over which a unique keyed index has been created, and the data space entry has a key value identical to a data space entry key value that has been deleted or changed under commitment control but is still reserved by the index. The insert or update cannot be done until the uncommitted changes are committed.

*Information Passed:*

- Cursor (binary 0 for System pointer

operations not involving a cursor)

- Data space index System pointer
- The data space number of the entry Bin(2)  
associated with the key reserved in the data space index
- The ordinal number of the entry Bin(4)  
associated with the key reserved in the data space index
- The data space number of the entry Bin(2)  
that was being added or changed and caused the exception
- The ordinal number of the entry that Bin(4)  
was being changed and caused the exception (zero if an insert was being attempted)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Copy Data Space Entries
- Insert Data Space Entry
- Insert Sequential Data Space Entries
- Update Data Space Entry
- Signal Exception

**1213 Invalid Mapping Template**

An error was detected in a mapping template. The data space number indicates the template in the mapping template list that contains the error. This field will equal 1 for a group-by mapping template, and will reference the appropriate template for the per data space mapping templates for Create Cursor and Create Data Space Index instructions. This field will contain a zero when an intermediate mapping table is missing.

The template field number indicates which field number is in error for the scalar part of the mapping template (number of bytes in mapping template and mapping type). The contents of the reserved field immediately following the mapping type field is ignored (only present when intermediate mapping is specified).

The template field number also indicates the field in error for input and output mapping tables. Field number equal 0 indicates the template field number of bytes in the mapping template, field number equal 1 indicates field designating input mapping type, field number equal 2 indicates field designating output mapping type, field number equal 3 indicates field designating number of fields in the input/output mapping tables, and so forth. Each specification in the input/output tables is considered one field for counting purposes.

When an intermediate mapping table is in error, the template field number will equal 0. The offset to field in error field will designate the offset to the field from the start of the intermediate mapping table. Offset equal 0 designates the field number of intermediate mapping specifications, and so forth.

Possible errors are an invalid value, a value that exceeds allowed range, a length that is invalid for the specified type or a type that is inconsistent with the type specified for the field in the data space, key description, or an intermediate buffer description.

The invalid mapping template exception will not be signaled when a data pointer fails verification. The normal exception associated with verifying data pointers will be signaled instead.

*Information Passed:*

- Data space number Bin(2)
- Template field number Bin(2)  
(valid only for input/output mapping tables and the scalar part of the mapping template;  
number of bytes in template, input mapping type, output mapping type)

- Template type Char(1)
  - Hex 00 = Per data space mapping template (input/output mapping table and scalar part of template)
  - Hex 01 = Per data space mapping template (output intermediate mapping table)
  - Hex 02 = Group-by intermediate mapping table
  - Hex 03 = Derived key intermediate mapping table
- Reserved Char(1)
- Offset to field in error Bin(4)  
(valid only for intermediate mapping table errors)
- Error type Char(2)  
(valid only for intermediate mapping table errors)
  - GENERAL ERROR CODES
    - Hex 0000 = Data Pointer error
    - Hex 0001 = Reserved field invalid
    - Hex 0300 = Missing Intermediate mapping table
    - Hex 1000 = Operation field error
    - Hex 1012 = Specified Operation invalid for Variable length fields
    - Hex 1014 = Invalid Null Operation modifier
  - OPERAND 1 ERROR CODES
    - Hex 8010 = Operand 1 Location invalid
    - Hex 8020 = Operand 1 Length invalid
    - Hex 8040 = Operand 1 Field type invalid
    - Hex 8080 = Operand 1 Field number invalid
    - Hex 8008 = Operand 1 Start character invalid
    - Hex 8004 = Operand 1 End character invalid
    - Hex 8001 = Operand 1 Reserved Area invalid
    - Hex 8400 = Operand 1's Array Position of the Data Pointer is invalid
    - Hex 8088 = Operand 1's DDAT is invalid
    - Hex 8082 = Operand 1's Preferred format or separator is invalid
    - Hex 8048 = Operand 1's Start or End character referenced an invalid field type for a Substring operation
    - Hex 8044 = Operand 1 is a Split Variable length field that is not compatible with the specified operation
  - OPERAND 2 ERROR CODES
    - Hex 4010 = Operand 2 Location invalid
    - Hex 4020 = Operand 2 Length invalid
    - Hex 4040 = Operand 2 Field type invalid
    - Hex 4080 = Operand 2 Field number invalid
    - Hex 4008 = Operand 2 Start character invalid
    - Hex 4004 = Operand 2 End character invalid
    - Hex 4001 = Operand 2 Reserved Area invalid
    - Hex 4100 = Operand 2's Array Position of the Translate Table is invalid
    - Hex 4400 = Operand 2's Array Position of the Data Pointer is invalid
    - Hex 4088 = Operand 2's DDAT is invalid
    - Hex 4044 = Operand 2 is a Split Variable length field that is not compatible with the specified operation
    - Hex 4022 = Operand 2's Immediate Value or Length is invalid
  - RESULT ERROR CODES
    - Hex 2020 = Result Length invalid
    - Hex 2040 = Result Type invalid

Hex 2001 = Result Reserved area invalid  
 Hex 2002 = Result Rounding mode invalid  
 Hex 2004 = Result Type modifier is invalid  
 Hex 2088 = Result's DDAT is invalid

— DATA POINTER ERRORS

Hex 0020 = Data Pointer length is invalid  
 Hex 0040 = Data Pointer field type is invalid

• Error Types for Input and Output mapping templates

Hex 0001 = Field Location is invalid  
 Hex 0002 = Field Type is invalid  
 Hex 0003 = Field Length is invalid  
 Hex 0004 = Reserved area is not zero  
 Hex 0005 = DDAT number references an invalid DDAT number  
 Hex 0006 = DDAT number references an invalid format code  
 Hex 0007 = DDAT number references an invalid preferred format or separator  
 Hex 0008 = Type modifier is invalid  
 Hex 0009 = Variable Length/Type mismatch  
 Hex 000A = DDAT offset mismatch between mapping template DDAT number and field table DDAT offset  
 Hex 000B = Mapping Conversion is invalid  
 Hex 000C = Mapping a pseudo Date/Time field that is variable length and the fixed allocation length is greater than zero and less than the maximum size of the field.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Create Cursor
- Signal Exception

**1214 Invalid Selection Template**

An error was detected in a selection template. The data space number indicates which template in the selection template list contains the error. This field will equal 1 for a group-by selection template, and will reference the appropriate template for the per data space mapping template for Create Cursor and Create Data Space Index.

The offset to field in error indicates which field is in error in the selection template. The offset equal 0 designates the field length of selection template is in error, offset equal 4 designates the field number of selection descriptors is in error, and so forth.

The invalid selection template exception will not be signaled when a data pointer fails verification. The normal exception associated with verifying data pointers will be signaled instead.

*Information Passed:*

- Data space number (position list) Bin(2)
- Offset to field in error Bin(4)
- Selection template type Char(1)
- Hex 00 = Per data space selection
- Hex 01 = Group-by selection
- Reserved Char(1)
- Selection descriptor errors Char(2)
  - Descriptor type error Bit 0
  - Operand/operation error Bit 1
  - Maximum number specifications Bit 2



|  |          |
|--|----------|
| exceeded                                 |          |
| — Literal content in error               | Bit 3    |
| — Reserved                               | Bits 4-7 |
| — Operand location invalid               | Bit 8    |
| — Field number invalid                   | Bit 9    |
| — Starting offset invalid                | Bit 10   |
| — Ending offset invalid                  | Bit 11   |
| — Array position of data pointer invalid | Bit 12   |
| — Offset to pattern descriptor invalid   | Bit 13   |
| — Number pattern descriptor invalid      | Bit 14   |
| — Reserved field invalid                 | Bit 15   |
| • Pattern descriptor error types         | Char(2)  |
| — Descriptor type invalid                | Bit 0    |
| — Descriptor field invalid               | Bit 1    |
| — Reserved                               | Bits 2-7 |
| — Field location invalid                 | Bit 8    |
| — Field number invalid                   | Bit 9    |
| — Starting offset invalid                | Bit 10   |
| — Ending offset invalid                  | Bit 11   |
| — Array position of data pointer invalid | Bit 12   |
| — Span type invalid                      | Bit 13   |
| — Span width invalid                     | Bit 14   |
| — Reserved field invalid                 | Bit 15   |

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Create Cursor
- Signal Exception

**1215 Data Space Not Addressed by Index**

An entry in the data space list does not address the same data space that is addressed by the corresponding entry in the data space list defined for the data space index.

*Information Passed:*

- Entry in the data space list of the Create Cursor instruction template Space pointer

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Create Cursor
- Signal Exception

**1216 Data Space Not Addressed by Cursor**

An entry in the data space list does not address the same data space that is addressed by the corresponding list that is defined for the cursor.

*Information Passed:*

- Cursor System pointer
- Entry in the data space list Space pointer  
of the Activate Cursor instruction template

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Activate Cursor
- Signal Exception

**1217** *Key Value Changed Since Set Cursor*

The data space index key for the entry currently addressed by the cursor has changed since the cursor was set. The former value of the key was instrumental in finding the entry and is no longer valid; therefore, the entry is no longer the expected entry.

*Information Passed:*

- Cursor System pointer
- Data space number Bin(2)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Retrieve Data Space Entry
- Set Cursor
- Signal Exception

**1218** *Invalid Key Value Modification*

An attempt to update a data space entry would result in a difference key value when the Update Data Space Entry instruction specified the inhibit key change option. This exception is signaled for rejected key values if the rejected key image would change on the update, regardless of whether the updated key image would be rejected or selected.

**Note:** Updating a deleted data space entry is not a change in the key image.

*Information Passed:*

- Cursor System pointer
- Data space number Bin(2)
- Ordinal number of entry Bin(2)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Update Data Space Entry
- Signal Exception

**1219** *Invalid Rule Option*

The cursor has addressability to a data space index and the current cursor setting allows only rule options of relative or ordinal.

*Information Passed:*

- Cursor System pointer

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Retrieve Sequential Data Space Entries
- Set Cursor
- Signal Exception

**121A Data Space Entry Size Exceeded**

The sum of the field lengths in the entry definition template exceeds 32 766 bytes which is the maximum size allowed for a data space entry.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Create Data Space
- Signal Exception

**121B Logical Data Space Entry Size Limit Exceeded**

The user's view of the data space entry (defined by the mapping code) exceeds 32 766 bytes, which is the maximum size allowed.

*Information Passed:*

- Template number (position list) Bin(2)
- Template type Char(1)

Hex 00 = Input mapping template

Hex 01 = Output mapping template

Hex 02 = Intermediate mapping template

Hex 03 = Group-by output mapping template

Hex 04 = Group-by intermediate mapping template

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Create Cursor
- Signal Exception

**121C Key Size Limit Exceeded**

The sum of the key field lengths plus the specified fork characters exceeds 120 bytes, which is the maximum size allowed for a data space index key.

*Information Passed:*

- Data space number Bin(2)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Create Data Space Index
- Signal Exception

**121D Logical Key Size Limit Exceeded**

The user's view of the data space index key exceeds 32 766 bytes, which is the maximum size allowed.

*Information Passed:*

- Data space number Bin(2)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Create Cursor
- Signal Exception

**1221 Unable to Maintain a Unique Key Data Space Index**

An attempt has been made to insert or update a data space entry in a data space over which a unique keyed index exists that has been implicitly invalidated.

*Information Passed:*

- Cursor (binary 0 for operations not involving a cursor) System pointer

- Data space System pointer
- Data space index (invalidated) System pointer

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Apply Journaled Changes
- Copy Data Space Entries
- Insert Data Space Entry
- Insert Sequential Data Space Entries
- Update Data Space Entry
- Signal Exception

**1225 Invalid Data Base Operation**

A data base operation was attempted through a cursor whose activation options indicated that the operation was not to be allowed.

*Information Passed:*

- Cursor System pointer
- Extended activation functions Char(2)  
(as defined in the cursor activation template)
- Operation attempted Char(1)  
Hex 80 = Retrieval of data space entry  
Hex 40 = Update of data space entry  
Hex 20 = Delete of data space entry  
Hex 10 = Insert of data space entry

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Copy Data Space Entries
- Delete Data Space Entry
- Insert Data Space Entry
- Insert Sequential Data Space Entries
- Retrieve Data Space Entry
- Retrieve Sequential Data Space Entries
- Update Data Space Entry
- Signal Exception

**1226 Data Space Index with Invalid Floating-Point Field Build Termination**

While creating or rebuilding a data space index that contains floating-point keys, an invalid floating-point value was encountered. Up to 20 instances of these types of errors may be found before the instruction is terminated.

*Information Passed:*

- Data space index System pointer  
(binary 0 is signaled during creation)
- Number of errors detected Bin(2)
- Error description (repeated for each selection routine error)
  - Data space number Bin(2)
  - Ordinal entry number Bin(4)

- Reason code Char(1)  
Hex 01 = Floating-point NaN detected
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(1)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Create Data Space Index
- Data Base Maintenance
- Signal Exception

**1227 Data Space Index Key with Invalid Floating-Point Field**

An attempt was made to insert or update a data space entry in a data space under a data space index that contains floating-point key fields, or a key is being used to search a data space index that contains floating-point key fields and a floating-point key field contains an invalid value.

*Information Passed:*

- Cursor (binary 0 for operations not involving a cursor) System pointer
- Data space System pointer
- Data space index System pointer
- Data space number (in the data space list of the data space index) Bin(2)
- Ordinal entry number (zero if entry was being inserted) Bin(4)
- Reason code Char(1)  
Hex 01 = Floating-point NaN detected
- Reserved Char(1)
- Cursor data space number Bin(2)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Apply Journalized Changes
- Data Base Maintenance
- Copy Data Space Entries
- Insert Data Space Entry
- Insert Sequential Data Space Entries
- Set Cursor
- Update Data Space Entry
- Signal Exception

**1230 Specified Data Space Entry Rejected**

An attempt has been made to position a cursor to a specific data entry but the retrieval selection criteria has rejected the entry.

*Information Passed:*

- Cursor System pointer
- Data space number Bin(2)
- Ordinal number Bin(4)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Retrieve Data Space Entry
- Set Cursor
- Signal Exception

**1232 Join Value Changed**

A join value in a data space entry field used in the current join position in the cursor has changed since the cursor was positioned. The former value of the field was instrumental in performing the join operation and is no longer valid; therefore, the entry is no longer the expected entry.

*Information Passed:*

- |   |                |
|---|----------------|
| • Cursor  | System pointer |
| • Data space number in cursor associated with changed field | Bin(2)         |

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Retrieve Data Space Entry
- Set Cursor
- Signal Exception

**1233 Data Space Index with Non-User Exit Selection Routine Build Termination**

While creating or rebuilding a data space index that contains a non-user exit selection routine, data space entries were encountered which resulted in an error in the selection routine. The build, before terminating, found up to 20 instances of these types of errors. The instruction is terminated.

*Information Passed:*

- |  |                |
|--|----------------|
| • Data space index<br>(binary zeros if signaled during creation)   | System pointer |
| • Number of errors detected  | Bin(2)         |
| • Reserved   | Char(4)        |
| • Error description<br>(repeated for each selection routine error) | Char(22)       |
| — Data space number  | Bin(2)         |
| — Ordinal entry number   | Bin(4)         |
| — Reserved (binary 0)  | Char(6)        |
| — Error type   | Char(2)        |
| — Operand 1 field data   | Char(4)        |
| — Field number   | Bin(2)         |
| — Field location   | Char(1)        |
| Hex 00 = Data space entry  |                |
| Hex 01 = Cursor intermediate buffer                                |                |
| Hex 03 = Intermediate key buffer                                   |                |
| Hex 04 = Key field   |                |
| — Reserve  | Char(1)        |

- Operand 2 field data Char(4)  
(same as operand 1 field data)

The field number designates the relative location of the field as specified when creating the cursor, index, or data space. Field number equal 1 is the first field in the field location.

The error type values are as follows:

Hex 0000-A tolerated exception occurred during derived field mapping and was detected during non-user exit selection when the field incurring the error was referenced.

Hex 0002-decimal data: (1) Sign encoded is invalid for packed or zoned format, (2) Digit encoding is invalid for packed or zoned format.

Hex 0009-floating-point invalid operand: A floating-point NaN was used as an operand in a comparison.

Hex 0012-Invalid Extended Character Data; A character code in an extended character data field contains an invalid value.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Activate Cursor (over delayed maintenance data space index)
- Create Data Space Index
- Data Base Maintenance (rebuild data space index)
- Modify Data Space Index Attributes
- Signal Exception

**1234** *Non-User Exit Selection Routine Failure*

An attempt has been made to insert, retrieve, or update a data space entry in a data space, and an error was encountered in a non-user exit selection routine.

*Information Passed:*

- |   |                |
|---|----------------|
| • Cursor (binary 0 for operations not involving a cursor)                     | System pointer |
| • Data space  | System pointer |
| • Data space index (binary 0 if selection error not involving the index)      | System pointer |
| • Join cursor ordinal positions   | Char(128)      |
| • Error description   | Char(22)       |
| — Index data space number (binary 0 if selection error not on the index)      | Bin(2)         |
| — Cursor data space number (binary 0 for operations not involving a cursor)   | Bin(2)         |
| — Ordinal entry number (0, if entry was being inserted or group-by selection) | Bin(4)         |
| — Reserved  | Char(4)        |
| — Error type  | Char(2)        |
| — Operand 1 field data (0 if literal)   | Char(4)        |
| Field number  | Bin(2)         |
| Field location  | Char(1)        |
| Hex 00 = Data space entry   |                |

Hex 01 = Cursor intermediate buffer  
 Hex 02 = Group-by intermediate buffer  
 Hex 03 = Intermediate key buffer  
 Hex 04 = Key field

Reserved Char(1)

- |  |         |
|--|---------|
| — Operand 2 field data<br>(same as operand 1 field data) | Char(4) |
| — Operand 3 field data<br>(same as operand 1 field data) | Char(4) |

The field number designates the relative location of the field as specified when creating the cursor, index, or data space. Field number equal 1 is the first field in the field location. A field number equal 0 designates there is no exception data for this operand.

The error type values are identical with those received for exception hex 1233.

The ordinal entry number will contain a binary zero value if the exception occurs while processing default values during a join operation.

The join cursor ordinal positions area is meaningful only on operations with a join cursor and is zero otherwise. It will be zero for group-by selection. Each ordinal number occupies 4 bytes. All current ordinal numbers associated with a join cursor are returned.

#### *Instructions Causing Exceptions*

- Apply Journalled Changes
- Data Base Maintenance (insert default entries)
- Insert Data Space Entry
- Insert Sequential Data Space Entries
- Retrieve Data Space Entry
- Retrieve Sequential Data Space Entry
- Set Cursor
- Update Data Space Entry
- Signal Exception

#### **1236 No Mapping Code Specified**

Cursor cannot be used to perform inserts, retrieves, or updates with the specified data space due to no data space entry input mapping code or no output mapping code specified in a Create Cursor instruction.

#### *Information Passed:*

- |   |                          |
|---|--------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cursor</li> <li>• Data space number</li> </ul> | System pointer<br>Bin(2) |
|---|--------------------------|

#### *Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Insert Data Space Entry
- Insert Sequential Data Space Entries
- Retrieve Data Space Entry
- Retrieve Sequential Data Space Entry
- Signal Exception
- Update Data Space Entry



**1237 Operation Not Valid with Join Cursor**

An attempt has been made to insert, update, or delete a data space entry through a join cursor.  
*Information Passed:*

- Cursor System pointer

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Copy-Data Space Entries
- Delete Data Space Entry
- Insert Data Space Entry
- Insert Sequential Data Space Entries
- Signal Exception
- Update Data Space Entry

**1238 Derived Field Operation Error**

During derived field operations, one of a variety of derived field operational errors occurred. The field number designates the relative location of the field as specified when creating the cursor or data space index. Field number equal 1 is the first field in the field location. The field location is described by the field location exception data.

The error type is identical with those for exception number hex 1201, conversion mapping error with the addition of:

- Hex 000B = An attempt has been made to divide by zero on a fixed-point divide operation.
- Hex 000E = An attempt has been made to divide by zero on a floating-point divide operation.

*Information Passed:*

- Cursor (0 for operations not involving a cursor) System pointer
- Index (derived key operations) System pointer
- Join cursor ordinal positions Char(128)
- Index data space number (binary 0 for operations not involving the index) Bin(2)
- Cursor data space number (binary 0 for operations not involving the cursor) Bin(2)
- Ordinal entry number Bin(4)
- Buffer location type Char(1)
  - Hex 01 = Cursor intermediate buffer
  - Hex 02 = Group-by intermediate buffer
  - Hex 03 = Intermediate key buffer
- Reserved Char(3)
- Number of offending fields Bin(2)
- Field data (repeated) Char(6)
  - Field number Bin(2)
  - Error type Char(2)

— Reserved

Char(2)

The ordinal entry number will contain a binary zero value if the exception occurs during inserts of new entries into a data space or the error occurs while processing default values during a join operation.

The ordinal entry number and data space number will contain a value of binary zero when the error occurs during group-by derived field operations.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Apply Journal Changes
- Copy Data Space Entries
- Data Base Maintenance
- Insert Data Space Entry
- Insert Sequential Data Space Entries
- Materialize Cursor Attributes
- Modify Data Space Index Attributes
- Retrieve Data Space Entry
- Retrieve Sequential Data Space Entry
- Set Cursor
- Signal Exception
- Update Data Space Entry

**1239** *Derived Field Operation Error During Build Index*

While creating or rebuilding a data space index, data space entries were encountered which resulted in derived field operational errors. The build, before terminating, found up to 20 instances of these types of errors. The instruction is terminated.

Even though multiple errors may have occurred on a data space entry, only the first occurrence per entry is reported.

*Information Passed:*

- |  |                |
|--|----------------|
| • Data space index (binary zeros if during index creation) | System pointer |
| • Number of error descriptions                             | Bin(2)         |
| • Reserved   | Char(4)        |
| • Error description (repeated)                             | Char(14)       |
| — Data space number  | Bin(2)         |
| — Ordinal entry number                                     | Bin(4)         |
| — Field number   | Bin(2)         |
| — Error type   | Char(2)        |
| — Field location   | Char(1)        |
| Hex 03 = Intermediate key buffer                           |                |
| Unassigned values reserved                                 |                |
| — Reserved   | Char(3)        |

The exception field definitions are the same as for the hex 1238 exception (derived field operation error).

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Create Data Space Index
- Data Base Maintenance
- Activate Cursor (over delayed maintenance index)
- Insert Sequential Data Space Entries
- Signal Exception

**1240** *Invalid Entry Definition Table*

During validation of an entry definition table supplied at Create Data Space, Create Data Space Index or Create Cursor, an invalid field may be found.

*Information Passed*

- |  |           |
|--|-----------|
| • Error type   | Char(2)   |
| — Invalid table offset                                       | Bit 1     |
| — Invalid field type   | Bit 2     |
| — Invalid field length                                       | Bit 3     |
| — Invalid field precision                                    | Bit 4     |
| — Invalid entry length                                       | Bit 5     |
| — Invalid default length                                     | Bit 6     |
| — Invalid default offset                                     | Bit 7     |
| — Invalid field allocation                                   | Bit 8     |
| — Invalid null type  | Bit 9     |
| — Type/variable length mismatch                              | Bit 10    |
| — Invalid field modifier                                     | Bit 11    |
| — Reserved area not zero                                     | Bit 12    |
| — Reserved (binary zero)                                     | Bit 13-15 |
| • Data Space Number<br>(0 for Create Data Space instruction) | Bin(2)    |
| • DSE field number<br>(0 if error type is not field related) | Bin(2)    |

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Create Cursor
- Create Data Space
- Create Data Space Index
- Signal Exception

**1241** *ISV parameter value in runtime data pointer array not correct.**Information Passed*

- |                        |         |
|------------------------|---------|
| • Reason code          | Bin(2)  |
| • Array element number | Bin(2)  |
| • Create time type     | Bin(2)  |
| • Create time length   | Char(2) |
| • Runtime type         | Bin(2)  |
| • Runtime length       | Char(2) |

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

**1242 Non-Unique Fanout on Unique Join**

On a Unique fanout join more than one record in the "join to" file that satisfied the relationship was encountered.

*Information Passed*

- Data Space Number Bin(4)
- Ordinal # of candidate record (the first key match) Bin(4)
- Ordinal # of record identified as the duplicate key Bin(4)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Set cursor
- Retrieve Sequential

**1243 DDAT had an error.**

An error was found in a DDAT.

*Information Passed*

- Error type Bin(2)
  - 01 -- No valid template size
  - 02 -- No valid number of DDATs
  - 03 -- No valid reserved are
  - 04 -- No valid DDAT length
  - 05 -- No valid format code
  - 06 -- No valid date separator
  - 07 -- No valid time separator
  - 08 -- No valid time zone
  - 09 -- No valid time zone, hour
  - 10 -- No valid time zone, minute
  - 11 -- No valid calendar information
  - 12 -- No valid calendar, month
  - 13 -- No valid calendar, year
  - 14 -- No valid century definition
  - 15 -- No valid century definition current century
  - 16 -- No valid century definition century division
  - 17 -- No valid calendar table offset
  - 18 -- No valid reserved area
  - 19 -- No valid number of era table elements
  - 20 -- No valid era origin date
  - 21 -- No valid era name
  - 22 -- No valid era reserved area
  - 23 -- No valid number of calendar table elements

24 -- No valid calendar effective date

25 -- No valid calendar type

26 -- No valid calendar reserve area

- DDAT number in error

Bin(2)

- Era number

Bin(2)

- Calender number

Bin(2)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

**1262** *Parent index cannot be used to create new index*

The parent index referenced in the create index instruction is internally damaged. When the index was converted by the system on a previous release of the operating system, the concatenated key within the index was improperly converted.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

## 16 Exception Management

### 1601 Exception Description Status Invalid

The tested exception description was not in the deferred state.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Test Exception
- Signal Exception

### 1602 Exception State of Process Invalid

An attempt was made to retrieve exception data or resignal an exception when the process is not in an exception handling state; that is, the process is not in an external program, internal entry point, or branch point exception handler. The re-signal option is valid only for an external exception handler.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception
- Retrieve Exception Data

### 1603 Invalid Invocation Address

The invocation address specified in the space/invocation pointer on the instruction did not represent an existing program invocation.

*Information Passed:*

- Invocation pointer

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Return From Exception
- Sense Exception Description
- Signal Exception
- Send Process Message
- Cancel Invocations

### 1604 Retry/resume Invalid

An attempt was made to either retry a failed instruction or resume at an instruction after the instruction that failed in an invocation were retry or resume is not allowed.

*Information Passed:*

- Invocation pointer

*Instruction causing the exception:*

- Return From Exception

### 1605 No inquiry message found for reply message

An attempt was made to send a reply message for an inquiry message that does not exist.

*Instruction causing the exception:*

- Send Process Message

## 1A Lock State

### 1A01 Invalid Lock State

The lock enforcement rule or rules were violated when an attempt was made to access an object.

*Information Passed:*

- System pointer to the object

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- All instructions that enforce the lock rules
- Signal Exception

### 1A02 Lock Request Not Grantable

The lock request cannot be granted immediately and neither the synchronous nor asynchronous wait option was specified.

*Information Passed:*

- |   |               |
|---|---------------|
| • Pointer to lock request template                    | Space pointer |
| • Failing request number<br>(relative entry position) | Bin(2)        |

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Lock Object
- Signal Exception

### 1A03 Invalid Unlock Request

An attempt was made to unlock a lock state not held by the current requesting process.

*Information Passed:*

- |  |               |
|--|---------------|
| • Pointer to unlock request template                                     | Space pointer |
| • Number of requests not unlocked  | Bin(2)        |
| • Request number (relative entry<br>position for each lock not unlocked) | Bin(2)        |

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Unlock Object
- Signal Exception

### 1A04 Invalid Object Lock Transfer Request

An attempt was made to transfer locks that were not held by the transferring process, or the transfer lock request was not granted because the lock granting rules would have been violated.

*Information Passed:*

- |   |               |
|---|---------------|
| • Pointer to lock transfer request template                                 | Space pointer |
| • Number of requests not transferred  | Bin(2)        |
| • Request number (relative entry<br>position for each lock not transferred) | Bin(2)        |

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Transfer Object Lock
- Signal Exception

**1A05 Invalid Space Location Unlocked**

An attempt was made to unlock a space location lock not held by the current requesting process.

**Information Passed:**

- |  |               |
|--|---------------|
| • Space location process attempted to unlock | Space pointer |
| • Unlock request                             | Char(1)       |

**Instructions Causing Exception:**

- Unlock Space Location
- Signal Exception



## 1E Machine Observation

### 1E01 Program Not Observable

The program observation functions were destroyed for the program referenced by the executing instruction.

*Information Passed:*

- Program

System pointer

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Materialize Instruction Attributes
- Materialize Invocation
- Signal Exception

### 1E02 Invocation Not Found

An invocation matching the specified criteria was not found.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Find Relative Invocation
- Signal Exception

### 1E03 Invalid D-Code Instruction

The Debug Interpreter (DBGINT) MI instruction has detected an invalid field of a D-Code Instruction. The instruction and field are identified in the information passed (described below).

*Information Passed:*

- Erroneous D-Code instruction

Char(40)

The erroneous D-Code instruction is formatted as a hexadecimal string. Each hexadecimal digit represents 4 bits. D-Code instructions occupy twenty bytes.

- D-Code instruction index

Bin(4)

The D-Code instruction index is the index of the erroneous D-Code instruction in the D-Code instruction array. It is the value of the program counter (PC) register when the Debug Interpreter MI instruction issued this exception.

- Erroneous D-Code instruction field

Bin(4)

The erroneous D-Code instruction field is an integer code indicating which field of the D-Code instruction is in error. The table below associates codes with corresponding fields.

*Table 23-1. Erroneous D-Code Instruction Field*

| Code | D-Code Field             | Explanation                              |
|------|--------------------------|--|
| 0    | None                     | No field is in error                     |
| 1    | D-Code operator          | The D-Code operator field is invalid.    |
| 2    | Type operand             | The type operand field is invalid.       |
| 3    | Label operand            | The label operand is invalid.            |
| 4    | Reference operand        | The reference operand is invalid.        |
| 5    | Constant operand         | The constant operand is invalid.         |
| 6    | Invocation delta operand | The invocation delta operand is invalid. |
| 7    | Function operand         | The function operand is invalid.         |
| 8    | Conversion operand       | The conversion operand is invalid.       |

- Erroneous reference operand field

BIN(4)

The erroneous reference operand field is an integer code indicating which field of the reference operand is in error. The table below associates codes with corresponding fields.

Table 23-2. Erroneous Reference Operand Field

| Code | Reference Operand Field | Explanation                            |
|------|-------------------------|--|
| 0    | None                    | No field is in error                   |
| 1    | Type field              | The type field is invalid.             |
| 2    | Identifier field        | The identifier field is invalid.       |
| 3    | Storage class field     | The storage class field is invalid.    |
| 4    | Invocation delta field  | The invocation delta field is invalid. |

- Erroneous constant operand field

BIN(4)

The erroneous constant operand field is an integer code indicating which field of the constant operand is in error. The table below associates codes with corresponding fields.

Table 23-3. Erroneous Constant Operand Field

| Code | Constant Operand Field | Explanation   |
|------|------------------------|---|
| 0    | None                   | No field is in error                                  |
| 1    | Type field             | The type field is invalid.                            |
| 2    | Cardinal field         | The value of the cardinal constant is invalid.        |
| 3    | Integer field          | The value of the integer constant is invalid.         |
| 4    | Character              | The value of the 8-bit character constant is invalid. |
| 5    | Real                   | The value of the 64-bit real constant is invalid.     |
| 6    | Enumeration field      | The value of the enumeration constant is invalid.     |
| 7    | String field           | The value of the string offset is invalid.            |

#### 1E04 DBGINT error

The Debug Interpreter (DBGINT) MI instruction has detected an error. The instruction and error are identified in the information passed (described below).

##### Information Passed:

- Erroneous D-Code instruction

Char(40)

The erroneous D-Code instruction is formatted as a hexadecimal string. Each hexadecimal digit represents 4 bits. D-Code instructions occupy twenty bytes.

- D-Code instruction index

Bin(4)

The D-Code instruction index is the index of the erroneous D-Code instruction in the D-Code instruction array. It is the value of the program counter (PC) register when the Debug Interpreter MI instruction issued this exception.

- Error field

Bin(4)

The table below associates codes with corresponding errors.

Table 23-4 (Page 1 of 2). Error Field

| Code | Error Field | Explanation          |
|------|-------------|----------------------|
| 0    | None        | No field is in error |

Table 23-4 (Page 2 of 2). Error Field

| Code | Error Field          | Explanation                             |
|------|----------------------|---|
| 1    | Mark Pointer         | The Mark Pointer is invalid.            |
| 2    | Storage class        | The storage class is invalid.           |
| 3    | Results space        | The results space is not large enough.  |
| 4    | Stack error          | A stack entry is in error.              |
| 5    | Register             | A register in the directory is invalid. |
| 6    | Conversion specified | The conversion specified is invalid.    |

**1E05 DBGINT error**

An error occurred on the operation while executing the debug interpreter (DBGINT).

*Information Passed:*

- Operation field Bin(4)

The table below associates codes with corresponding operations.

Table 23-5. Opcode Field

| Code | Operation                |
|------|--------------------------|
| 0    | None                     |
| 1    | Equal                    |
| 2    | Not equal                |
| 3    | Greater than             |
| 4    | Greater than or equal to |
| 5    | Less than                |
| 6    | Less than or equal to    |
| 19   | And                      |
| 20   | Or                       |
| 21   | Exclusive Or             |
| 22   | Not                      |
| 23   | Add                      |
| 24   | Subtract                 |
| 25   | Negate                   |
| 26   | Multiply                 |
| 27   | Divide                   |
| 31   | Increment                |
| 32   | Decrement                |
| 33   | Modulo                   |

- Data Type field Bin(4)

The table below associates codes with corresponding data types.

Table 23-6 (Page 1 of 2). datatype Field

| Code | Data Type |
|------|-----------|
| 1    | Char_8    |

Table 23-6 (Page 2 of 2). *datatype* Field

| Code | Data Type |
|------|-----------|
| 2    | Char_16   |
| 3    | Bool32    |
| 4    | Card_16   |
| 5    | Card_32   |
| 6    | Int_16    |
| 7    | Int_32    |
| 8    | Real_32   |
| 9    | Real_64   |
| 10   | SpcPtr    |
| 11   | FncPtr    |
| 12   | MchAdr    |
| 13   | Record    |
| 14   | Array     |
| 15   | Enum      |
| 16   | String    |

## 20 Machine Support

### 2001 Diagnose

An error or discrepancy was found when a Diagnose instruction was processed.

#### Information Passed:

- Space element to the subelement in the operand 2 object that was being processed
- Data
  - Subidentifier unique to the requested function Bin(4)
  - Indicator of the pointer in operand 2 that was being processed Bin(2)

#### Instructions Causing Exception:

- Diagnose
- Signal Exception

### 2002 Machine Check

A machine malfunction affecting system-wide operation has been detected during execution of an instruction in this process.

#### Information Passed:

- Timestamp that gives the current value of the machine time-of-day clock. Char(8)
- Error code indicating nature of machine check. (This value is machine-dependent and is only defined in the machine service documentation.) Char(2)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(6)
- VLOG dump ID Char(8)
- Error class Bin(2)

The error class codes for the type of damage detected are as follows:

Hex 0000 = Unspecified abnormal condition  
 Hex 0002 = Logically invalid device sector  
 Hex 0003 = Device failure

- Auxiliary storage device indicator Bin(2)

This field is defined for error classes hex 0002 and hex 0003. It is the OU number of the failing device or 0 for a main storage failure.

- Reserved (binary 0) Char(100)

#### Instructions Causing Exception:

- Any instruction
- Signal Exception

### 2003 Function Check

The executing instruction has failed unexpectedly during execution within the process.

#### Information Passed:

- Timestamp giving the current value of the machine time-of-day clock. Char(8)

- Error code indicating the nature of the function check. (This value is machine-dependent.) Char(2)
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(6)
- VLOG dump ID Char(8)
- Error class Bin(2)

The error class codes for the type of damage detected are as follows:

Hex 0000 = Unspecified abnormal condition  
 Hex 0002 = Logically invalid device sector  
 Hex 0003 = Device failure

- Auxiliary storage device indicator Bin(2)  
 This field is defined for error classes hex 0002 and hex 0003. It is the OU number of the failing device or 0 for a main storage failure.
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(100)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Any instruction
- Signal Exception

## 22 Object Access

### 2201 Object Not Found

An attempt to resolve addressability into a system pointer was not successful for one of the following reasons:

- The named object was not located in the context specified in the symbolic address or in any context referenced in the name resolution list.
- An object with a corresponding name was found but the user profile(s) governing execution of the instruction did not have the authority required for resolution.

#### Information Passed:

- Object identification
  - Object type Char(32)
  - Object subtype Char(1)
  - Object subtype Char(1)
  - Object name Char(30)
- Required authorization Char(2)

#### Instructions Causing Exception:

- Any instruction that references an object through a system pointer
- Signal Exception

### 2202 Object Destroyed

An attempt was made to reference an object that no longer exists or part of it no longer exists.

This exception may not be signaled for operations which refer to the value of a space pointer machine object, but which do not attempt to reference the space data the pointer addresses. This can also be signaled when an associated space of the object is missing. The following instructions may not signal this exception upon references to a space pointer machine object.

- Add Space Pointer
- Compare Pointer for Space Addressability
- Compare Pointers for Equality
- Compare Space Addressability
- Set Space Pointer
- Set Space Pointer with Displacement
- Set Space Pointer from Pointer
- Subtract Space Pointer Offset
- Subtract Space Pointers For Offset

See the particular instruction description for more detail.

#### Instructions Causing Exception:

- Any instruction that references an object through a system pointer, a space pointer, or a data pointer
- Any instruction that references a scalar or a pointer operand when the object and the space containing the scalar or pointer have been destroyed
- Signal Exception

## 24 Pointer Specification

### 2401 *Pointer Does Not Exist*

A pointer reference was made to a storage location in a space that does not contain a pointer data object, or a reference was made to a space pointer machine object that was not set to address a space.

This exception may not be signaled for operations which refer to the value of a space pointer machine object, but which do not attempt to reference the space data the pointer addresses. The following instructions may not signal this exception upon references to a space pointer machine object.

- Add Space Pointer
- Compare Pointer for Space Addressability
- Compare Space Addressability
- Set Space Pointer
- Set Space Pointer With Displacement
- Set Space Pointer from Pointer
- Subtract Space Pointer Offset

See the particular instruction description for more detail.

#### *Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Any instruction that has pointer operands
- Any instruction that references a base operand (scalar or pointer) when the base pointer is not a space pointer
- Any instruction that allows a scalar defined by a data pointer to be an operand
- Any instruction that requires a pointer as part of the input template
- Signal Exception

### 2402 *Pointer Type Invalid*

An instruction has referenced a pointer object that contains an incorrect pointer type for the operation requested.

#### *Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Any instruction that has pointer operands
- Any instruction that contains a base operand (scalar or pointer) when the base pointer is not a space pointer
- Any instruction that allows a scalar defined by a data pointer to be an operand
- Any instruction that requires a pointer as part of the input template
- Signal Exception

### 2403 *Pointer Addressing Invalid Object Type*

An instruction has referenced a system pointer that addresses an incorrect type of system object for this operation.

#### *Information Passed:*

- The invalid system pointer System pointer

#### *Instructions Causing Exception:*



- Any instruction that references a system pointer, either as an operand or within a template operand, and that requires a specific object type as a part of its operation
- Signal Exception

**2404 Pointer Not Resolved**

The operation did not find a resolved system pointer. For example, NRL (name resolution list) entries must be resolved system pointers that address contents.

*Information Passed:*

- The invalid pointer

System pointer

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Resolve System Pointer
- Any instruction that causes a system pointer to be implicitly resolved when the NRL is used in the resolution. All entries in the NRL must be resolved.
- Resolve Data Pointer
- Any instruction that causes a data pointer to be implicitly resolved. All activation entries in the process must contain a resolved pointer to the associated program.
- Signal Exception

## 26 Process Management

### 2602 Queue Full

An attempt was made to enqueue a message to a queue that is full and is not extendable.

*Information Passed:*

- Queue for which the enqueue was attempted
- System pointer

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Enqueue
- Request I/O
- Signal Exception

## 2A Program Creation

### 2A01 Program Header Invalid

The data in the program header was invalid.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

### 2A02 ODT Syntax Error

The syntax (bit setting) of an ODT (object definition table) entry was invalid.

*Information Passed:*

- ODT entry number Char(2)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

### 2A03 ODT Relational Error

An ODT (object definition table) entry reference to another ODT entry was invalid or missing.

*Information Passed:*

- ODT entry number Char(2)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

### 2A04 Operation Code Invalid

One of the following conditions occurred.

- The operation code did not exist.
- The optional form was not allowed.

*Information Passed:*

- Instruction number of the instruction being analyzed UBin(2)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

### 2A05 Invalid Op Code Extender Field

The branch/indicator options were invalid.

*Information Passed:*

- Instruction number of the instruction being analyzed UBin(2)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

### 2A06 Invalid Operand Type

One of the following conditions was detected:

- An operand was not the required type (signed immediate, immediate, constant data object, scalar data object, pointer data object, null, branch point, or instruction definition list).
- An operand was described as an immediate or constant data object. However, the instruction specifies that the operand be modified to something other than an immediate or con-

stant data object, or the instruction does not allow an immediate or constant data object operand.

- The operand type specified is not a valid operand type.
- The type of one operand does not satisfy a required relationship with the type of another operand.

*Information Passed:*

- Instruction number of the instruction being analyzed UBin(2)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A07 Invalid Operand Attribute**

One of the following conditions was detected:

- An operand did not have the attributes required by the instruction (character, packed decimal, zoned decimal, binary, floating-point, scalar, array, assumed, overlay, restricted, open, based, explicitly based).
- The attributes of one operand did not match the required attributes of another operand.
- At least one operand in the argument list for a Transfer Control instruction was specified as automatic.
- The receiver for an instruction specified with the optional round form has the floating-point attribute.

*Information Passed:*

- Instruction number of the instruction being analyzed UBin(2)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A08 Invalid Operand Value Range**

One of the following conditions was detected:

- An operand was a constant or immediate data object and was used as an index into an array or indicated a position in a character string, but it was outside the range of the array or character string.
- An operand was a constant or immediate data object and did not conform to the value required by the instruction.
- The operand immediate value is outside of the accepted range. The valid range for an unsigned immediate value is equal to or greater than 0 and less than or equal to 8191. The valid range for a signed immediate value is from negative 4096 through a positive 4095.

*Information Passed:*

- Instruction number of the instruction being analyzed UBin(2)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A09 Invalid Branch Target Operand**

One of the following conditions was detected:

- An operand was not an instruction pointer, branch point, instruction number, or relative instruction number.
- An operand was an instruction number or relative instruction number but was outside the range of the program.
- A branch target operand identified an instruction that was not indicated as a branch target.

*Information Passed:*

- Instruction number of the instruction being analyzed UBin(2)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A0A Invalid Operand Length**

One of the following conditions was detected:

- The length attribute of an operand was not greater than or equal to the length required by the instruction.
- The length attribute of an operand was invalid based on its relationship to the length attribute of another operand in the same instruction.
- The length attribute of a decimal operand exceeds 15 digits when specified in conjunction with a floating-point operand.
- A decimal operand has an invalid integer or fractional digit length in relationship to that required by the instruction.

*Information Passed:*

- Instruction number of the instruction being analyzed UBin(2)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A0B Invalid Number of Operands**

The number of arguments in a Call Internal instruction was not equal to the number of parameters in the called entry point.

*Information Passed:*

- Instruction number of the instruction being analyzed UBin(2)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A0C Invalid Operand ODT Reference**

The ODT reference was not within the range of the ODV.

*Information Passed:*

- Instruction number of the instruction being analyzed UBin(2)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A0D Reserved Bits Are Not Zero**

The reserved bits in an opcode or operand are nonzero.

*Information Passed:*

- Instruction number of the instruction being analyzed UBin(2)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A10 Automatic storage for procedure exceeds maximum**

The object was not created because an internal system limit was reached. Not enough automatic storage was available to allocate a data object within a procedure.

Reduce the number or size of automatic data objects within the procedure.

*Information Passed:*

- Current automatic storage offset UBin(4)
- Maximum automatic storage offset UBin(4)
- Data object size UBin(4)
- Data object dictionary index UBin(4)
- Data object dictionary entry information Char(128)
  - Entry length UBin(2)
  - Entry Char(\*)
- Data object dictionary entry offset UBin(4)
- Procedure dictionary index UBin(4)
- Procedure dictionary entry information Char(128)
  - Entry length UBin(2)
  - Entry Char(\*)
- Procedure dictionary entry offset UBin(4)
- Machine log note ID Char(8)
- reserved Char(8)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A11 Machine automatic storage exceeds maximum**

The object was not created because an internal system limit was reached. Not enough machine automatic storage was available to allocate a data object within a procedure.

Reduce the size and complexity of the procedure or reduce the level of optimization used to create the object.

*Information Passed:*

- Current machine automatic storage offset UBin(4)
- Maximum machine automatic storage offset UBin(4)
- Data object size UBin(4)
- Data object dictionary index UBin(4)
- Data object dictionary entry information Char(128)

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| — Entry length                           | UBin(2)   |
| — Entry                                  | Char(*)   |
| • Data object dictionary entry offset    | UBin(4)   |
| • Procedure dictionary index             | UBin(4)   |
| • Procedure dictionary entry information | Char(128) |
| — Entry length                           | UBin(2)   |
| — Entry                                  | Char(*)   |
| • Procedure dictionary entry offset      | UBin(4)   |
| • Machine log note ID                    | Char(8)   |
| • reserved                               | Char(8)   |

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A12** *Data type or length of initial value not valid*

The object was not created because an initialization table entry is not valid. An initial value for a data object has either a data type that is not valid or a length that is not valid.

There is a problem in the compiler. Report this problem to the supplier of the compiler.

*Information Passed:*

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| • Initial value data type                | UBin(4)   |
| • Initial value length                   | UBin(4)   |
| • Initialization table index             | UBin(4)   |
| • Initialization table entry information | Char(128) |
| — Entry length                           | UBin(2)   |
| — Entry                                  | Char(*)   |
| • Initialization table entry offset      | UBin(4)   |
| • Machine log note ID                    | Char(8)   |
| • reserved                               | Char(8)   |

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A14** *Static data initialized to address of automatic data*

The object was not created because an initialization table entry is not valid. The static data cannot be initialized to the address of automatic data.

There is a problem in the compiler. Report this problem to the supplier of the compiler.

*Information Passed:*

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| • Initialization table index             | UBin(4)   |
| • Initialization table entry information | Char(128) |
| — Entry length                           | UBin(2)   |
| — Entry                                  | Char(*)   |
| • Initialization table entry offset      | UBin(4)   |
| • Static data dictionary index           | UBin(4)   |

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| • Static data dictionary entry information    | Char(128) |
| — Entry length                                | UBin(2)   |
| — Entry                                       | Char(*)   |
| • Static data dictionary entry offset         | UBin(4)   |
| • Automatic data dictionary index             | UBin(4)   |
| • Automatic data dictionary entry information | Char(128) |
| — Entry length                                | UBin(2)   |
| — Entry                                       | Char(*)   |
| • Automatic data dictionary entry offset      | UBin(4)   |
| • Machine log note ID                         | Char(8)   |
| • reserved                                    | Char(8)   |

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A15** *Initial value for static data not valid*

The object was not created because an initialization table entry is not valid. Static data is initialized, but the initial value is not valid.

There is a problem in the compiler. Report this problem to the supplier of the compiler.

*Information Passed:*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| • Reason code                            | UBin(4)  |
| 1 =                                      | Reserved initialization entry not binary zeros.                    |
| 2 =                                      | Initial length specified when zero is expected.                    |
| 3 =                                      | Target of initialization is too small.                             |
| 4 =                                      | Procedure not target of initCodeAddress.                           |
| 5 =                                      | PEP specified as target of initCodeAddress.                        |
| 6 =                                      | Offset specified when zero is expected.                            |
| 7 =                                      | Rep specified when zero is expected.                               |
| 8 =                                      | Bitfield initialization was not terminated by entry with dictNo=0. |
| 9 =                                      | Bitfield length is not a valid value.                              |
| 10 =                                     | Length is not large enough to initialize bitfield.                 |
| 11 =                                     | A dictionary entry (or its owner) did not have _TOBEMAPD = TRUE.   |
| 12 =                                     | Attempt made to initialize storage with invalid storage class.     |
| 13 =                                     | Invalid dictionary index.  |
| 14 =                                     | Invalid target dictionary index.                                   |
| 15 =                                     | Target of initialized space pointer does not specify addr_taken.   |
| • Initialization table index             | UBin(4)  |
| • Initialization table entry information | Char(128)  |
| — Entry length                           | UBin(2)  |
| — Entry                                  | Char(*)  |
| • Initialization table entry offset      | UBin(4)  |
| • Machine log note ID                    | Char(8)  |
| • reserved                               | Char(8)  |

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception



**2A16** *Number of procedures exceeds maximum allowed*

The object was not created because an internal system limit was reached. The number of procedures exceeds the maximum allowed.

Reduce the number of procedures.

*Information Passed:*

- Maximum procedures UBin(4)
- Procedure dictionary index UBin(4)
- Procedure dictionary entry information Char(128)
  - Entry length UBin(2)
  - Entry Char(\*)
- Procedure dictionary entry offset UBin(4)
- Machine log note ID Char(8)
- reserved Char(8)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A17** *Type table entry not valid*

The object was not created because the type table contains an entry that is not valid.

There is a problem in the compiler. Report this problem to the supplier of the compiler.

*Information Passed:*

- Reason code UBin(4)
  - 1 = Length of data object is invalid.
  - 2 = Type of data object is invalid.
  - 3 = Bit field displacement is invalid.
  - 4 = Bit field width is invalid.
  - 5 = Reserved area is invalid.
- Type table index UBin(4)
- Type table entry information Char(128)
  - Entry length UBin(2)
  - Entry Char(\*)
- Type table entry offset UBin(4)
- Machine log note ID Char(8)
- reserved Char(8)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A18** *Alias table entry not valid*

The object was not created because the alias table contains an entry that is not valid.

There is a problem in the compiler. Report this problem to the supplier of the compiler.

*Information Passed:*

- Reason code UBin(4)
  - 1 = Record type of alias table entry is invalid.

- 2 = Reserved field in alias class not binary zeros.
- 3 = Invalid alias class id.
- 4 = Invalid alias class size.
- 5 = Invalid dictionary id.
- 6 = Dictionary id is not for a data object.
- 7 = Reserved field in alias union not binary zeros.
- 8 = Invalid alias union id.
- 9 = Invalid alias union size.
- 10 = Invalid class id.

- Alias table entry information Char(128)
  - Entry length UBin(2)
  - Entry Char(\*)
- Alias table entry offset UBin(4)
- Machine log note ID Char(8)
- reserved Char(8)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A19 Size of constants exceeds maximum**

The object was not created because an internal system limit was reached. Not enough space was available to add a constant within a procedure.

Reduce the number or size of constants within the procedure.

*Information Passed:*

- Current size of all constants UBin(4)
- Maximum size of all constants UBin(4)
- Constant size UBin(4)
- Constant dictionary index UBin(4)
- Constant dictionary entry information Char(128)
  - Entry length UBin(2)
  - Entry Char(\*)
- Constant dictionary entry offset UBin(4)
- Procedure dictionary index UBin(4)
- Procedure dictionary entry information Char(128)
  - Entry length UBin(2)
  - Entry Char(\*)
- Procedure dictionary entry offset UBin(4)
- Machine log note ID Char(8)
- reserved Char(8)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A1A Procedure size exceeds maximum**

The object was not created because an internal system limit was reached. Not enough space was available for a procedure.

Reduce the size of the procedure.

*Information Passed:*

- Maximum procedure size UBin(4)
- Procedure dictionary index UBin(4)
- Procedure dictionary entry information Char(128)
  - Entry length UBin(2)
  - Entry Char(\*)
- Procedure dictionary entry offset UBin(4)
- Machine log note ID Char(8)
- reserved Char(8)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A1B** *Instruction stream not valid*

The object was not created because the sequence of instruction stream objects is not valid.

There is a problem in the compiler. Report this problem to the supplier of the compiler.

*Information Passed:*

- Reason code UBin(4)
  - 1 = Undefined MI operation code.
  - 2 = Invalid type table index.
  - 3 = Invalid dictionary number.
  - 4 = Invalid label identifier.
  - 5 = One or more instructions are out of sequence. Typically signaled when the first instruction in a procedure is not ENT.
  - 6 = The dictionary id on the END instruction does not match the dictionary id on first ENT instruction in the current procedure.
  - 7 = An operand of a an MI instruction has has an invalid value.
  - 8 = The data type of the stack operand(s) is invalid for the operation being attempted.
  - 9 = The length of the stack operand(s) is invalid for the operation being attempted.
  - 10 = An operand of a load instruction has has an invalid data type.
  - 11 = An object which is loaded has scope greater than the current procedure's scope.
  - 12 = The target of a STR operation in the new MI instruction stream is not a variable, or the target is a register variable and either offset or typeNo are nonzero.
  - 13 = The MI value stack is not empty at a label, jump, or other point in the instruction stream at which the MI architecture asserts it must.
  - 14 = The MI value stack has fewer items on it than need to be popped.
  - 15 = The values retrieved from the MI value stack are not compatible.
  - 16 = The data type of the stack operands is invalid for the comparison being attempted, (i.e. UNORD on binary dt).
  - 17 = There is control flow in the NMI program which reaches either a secondary entry point or an END instruction.
  - 18 = No exception handlers are currently enabled when a DHNDLR is encountered.
  - 19 = A DHNDLR instruction specifies an exception handler that was not the last one enabled.
  - 20 = A LAB instruction was encountered where the label qualifier was not one of: FwdOnlyLabel (1) or GeneralLabel (2).
  - 21 = An object in the dictionary with the "is\_reg" attribute lacks one or more of the required characteristics for inclusion in the machine storage class. For example, the dictionary object is the target of a LDA operation, or the dictionary object has

its data type or length superseded with a type table entry on a load or store operation.

- 22 = A blocked built-in function is called.
- 23 = An invalid built-in function number in CALLBI instruction.
- 24 = An invalid alias union id in PALI instruction.
- 25 = An invalid pali flag in PALI instruction.
- 26 = A switch-specific operation (i.e. CASE, DEFAULT, BRK, ENDS) was encountered outside of a SWE-ENDS block.
- 27 = Two CASE ranges were found with one or more elements in common, violating the requirement that all CASE ranges be totally disjoint.
- 28 = The low selector value for the range of a CASE statement is greater than the high selector value.
- 29 = A second DEFAULT case was found for a switch statement in the instruction stream.
- 30 = Built-in OPMPARMADDR or OPMPARMCNT is not invoked from PEP.
- 31 = A required built-in function argument was not specified.
- 35 = The number of arguments specified for a built-in function is incorrect.
- 36 = The null op mask specifies an argument that is not valid.
- 37 = A switch statement is still active (i.e. the ENDS operation for an open switch has not been encountered) at the END of a procedure.
- 38 = All three labels on a MiCMPB operation were found to equal zero.
- 39 = Built-in function NPMPARMLISTADDR was invoked from PEP.
- 40 = A label that was the target of a jump (FJP,TJP,CMPB,UJP) was not found in the instruction stream.
- 41 = A label that is in the dictionary, and that is indicated therein to have had its address taken, was not found in the instruction stream.
- 42 = A label constant on the stack when IJMP was encountered was now owned by the current procedure being translated.
- 43 = A data object which has been allocated to a machine storage class is the target of a LDA instruction, has its address referenced from the initialization component, or is used as an exception handler communication area. This situation can occur if the front end did not set the addr\_taken flag for the data object (or for the data object's owner if it is the member of an aggregate).

|                              |         |
|------------------------------|---------|
| • Current instruction count  | UBin(4) |
| • Data offset                | UBin(4) |
| • Current instruction offset | UBin(4) |
| • Current instruction opcode | UBin(4) |
| • Current statement number   | UBin(4) |
| • Machine log note ID        | Char(8) |
| • reserved                   | Char(8) |

#### *Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

#### **2A1C** *Size of literals exceeds maximum*

The object was not created because an internal system limit was reached. Not enough space was available in the literal pool to add the literal.

Reduce the number or size of literals.

#### *Information Passed:*

|                                |         |
|--------------------------------|---------|
| • Current size of all literals | UBin(4) |
| • Maximum size of all literals | UBin(4) |

- Literal size UBin(4)
- Literal information Char(128)
  - Literal length UBin(2)
  - Literal Char(\*)
- Machine log note ID Char(8)
- reserved Char(8)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

*2A1D Dictionary entry not valid*

The object was not created because the dictionary contains an entry that is not valid.

There is a problem in the compiler. Report this problem to the supplier of the compiler.

*Information Passed:*

- Reason code UBin(4)
  - 1 = Undefined data type.
  - 2 = Invalid reserved entry.
  - 3 = Parent of data object is IsReg variable.
  - 4 = Invalid alias union number.
  - 5 = Invalid alignment.
  - 6 = Invalid data type.
  - 7 = Invalid flags.
  - 8 = Invalid flags2.
  - 9 = Invalid handler.
  - 10 = Invalid handler comm area.
  - 11 = Invalid handler level.
  - 12 = Invalid handler type.
  - 13 = Invalid length.
  - 14 = Invalid linkage.
  - 15 = Invalid literal type.
  - 16 = Invalid offset.
  - 17 = Invalid owner.
  - 18 = Invalid procedure type.
  - 19 = Invalid replication.
  - 20 = Invalid reserved1.
  - 21 = Invalid reserved2.
  - 22 = Invalid reserved3.
  - 23 = Invalid return length.
  - 24 = Invalid return type.
  - 25 = Invalid scope.
  - 26 = Invalid storage class.
  - 27 = Invalid extended description.
  - 28 = Invalid control action.
- Dictionary index UBin(4)
- Dictionary entry information Char(128)
  - Entry length UBin(2)
  - Entry Char(\*)
- Dictionary entry offset UBin(4)
- Machine log note ID Char(8)

- reserved Char(8)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A1E** *Level of machine interface not supported on target release*

The object was not created because the software release level of the machine interface that was used is not compatible with the software release level targeted.

There is a problem in the compiler. Report this problem to the supplier of the compiler.

*Information Passed:*

- Machine interface level used UBin(2)
- Machine interface level targeted UBin(2)
- Machine log note ID Char(8)
- reserved Char(8)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A1F** *Size of dictionary exceeds maximum*

The object was not created because an internal system limit was reached. Not enough space was available in the dictionary.

Reduce the size and complexity of the procedure or reduce the level of optimization used to create the object.

*Information Passed:*

- Procedure dictionary index UBin(4)
- Procedure dictionary entry information Char(128)
  - Entry length UBin(2)
  - Entry Char(\*)
- Procedure dictionary entry offset UBin(4)
- Machine log note ID Char(8)
- reserved Char(8)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A20** *Internal machine operation not valid*

The object was not created because the internal representation of a machine operation is not valid. The machine interface template probably contains an error.

There is a problem in the compiler. Report this problem to the supplier of the compiler.

*Information Passed:*

- Name of machine operation Char(15)
- Statement number UBin(4)
- Machine log note ID Char(8)
- reserved Char(8)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A21** *Size of internal binding table exceeds maximum*

The object was not created because an internal system limit was reached. Not enough space was available in an internal binding table.

Reduce the number of external data objects in the program.

*Information Passed:*

- Current identifier UBin(4)
- Maximum identifier UBin(4)
- Machine log note ID Char(8)
- reserved Char(8)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A5E** *An error was detected in a static storage definition or initialization.*

An attempt was made to declare a static variable larger than the maximum size, or initialize a static variable beyond its defined length.

Correct the invalid initialization.

*Information Passed:*

- Reason code UBin(2)
- VLIC log note ID Char(8)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A5F** *Overlapping initializations not valid.*

Two initialization entries within the initialization component are for the same storage location.

Contact your service representative to report the problem.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A60** *Dictionary ID is not valid.*

A dictionary ID specified on one of the binding messages generated by the optimizing translator was not valid.

Contact your service representative to report the problem.

*Information Passed:*

- Dictionary ID UBin(4)
- Reason code UBin(2)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A61** *Binding specification value not valid.*

A value within the binding specifications component was in error.

Contact your service representative to report the problem.

*Information Passed:*

- Offset of error UBin(4)

- Length of error UBin(2)
- Reason code UBin(2)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A62** *Copyright component value not valid.*

A value within the copyright component was in error.

Contact your service representative to report the problem.

*Information Passed:*

- Offset of error UBin(4)
- Length of error UBin(2)
- Reason code UBin(2)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2A63** *Module limitation exceeded.*

An internal part of the module exceeds allowed size.

Contact your service representative to report the problem.

*Information Passed:*

- Reason code UBin(2)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2AA0** *Attempt to delete part that may not be deleted.*

The module was created with observable data that may not be deleted. An attempt was made to delete that data.

Contact your service representative to report the problem.

*Information Passed:*

- Reason code UBin(4)

*Instructions Causing Exception:***2AB0** *Object list referential extension not valid.*

An entry in the object list was not valid.

Contact your service representative to report the problem.

*Information Passed:*

- Pointer to the object list System pointer
- Byte offset UBin(4)
- Entry index UBin(4)
- Field length UBin(4)
- Bit offset UBin(2)
- Reason code UBin(2)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*



**2AB1 Symbol resolution list referential extension not valid.**

An entry in the symbol resolution list was not valid.

Contact your service representative to report the problem.

*Information Passed:*

|   |                |
|---|----------------|
| • Pointer to the symbol resolution list | System pointer |
| • Byte offset                           | UBin(4)        |
| • Entry index                           | UBin(4)        |
| • Field length                          | UBin(4)        |
| • Bit offset                            | UBin(2)        |
| • Reason code                           | UBin(2)        |

*Instructions Causing Exception:***2AB2 Service program export list referential extension not valid.**

An entry in the service program export list was not valid.

Contact your service representative to report the problem.

*Information Passed:*

|  |                |
|--|----------------|
| • Pointer to the service program export list | System pointer |
| • Byte offset                                | UBin(4)        |
| • Entry index                                | UBin(4)        |
| • Field length                               | UBin(4)        |
| • Bit offset                                 | UBin(2)        |
| • Reason code                                | UBin(2)        |

*Instructions Causing Exception:***2AB3 Secondary associated spaces list referential extension not valid.**

An entry in the secondary associated spaces list was not valid

Contact your service representative to report the problem.

*Information Passed:*

|   |                |
|---|----------------|
| • Pointer to the secondary associated spaces list | System pointer |
| • Byte offset                                     | UBin(4)        |
| • Entry index                                     | UBin(4)        |
| • Field length                                    | UBin(4)        |
| • Bit offset                                      | UBin(2)        |
| • Reason code                                     | UBin(2)        |

*Instructions Causing Exception:***2AB4 Program limitation exceeded.**

An internal part of the program exceeds allowed size.

Contact your service representative to report the problem.

*Information Passed:*

|               |         |
|---------------|---------|
| • Reason code | UBin(2) |
|---------------|---------|

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

2AC0 *Attempt to delete part that may not be deleted.*

The program was created with observable data that may not be deleted. An attempt was made to delete that data.

Contact your service representative to report the problem.

*Information Passed:*

- Reason code

UBin(4)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

## 2C Program Execution

### 2C01 Return Instruction Invalid

Improper usage of the Return, Transfer Control, or Return From Exception instruction occurred for one of the following reasons:

- A Return From Exception instruction was executed in an invocation that was not defined as an exception handler.
- A Return External or Transfer Control instruction was issued from a first-invocation-level exception handler.
- A Transfer Control instruction was issued from a first-invocation-level event handler.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Return External
- Return From Exception
- Transfer Control
- Signal Exception

### 2C02 Return Point Invalid

An attempt was made to use a Return External instruction with a return point that was invalid for one of the following reasons:

- The return point value was outside the range of the return list specified on the preceding Call External instruction.
- A nonzero return point was supplied, but no return list was supplied on the preceding Call External instruction.
- A nonzero return point was supplied when a Return External instruction was issued in the first invocation in the process.
- A nonzero return point was supplied when the Return External instruction was issued by an invocation acting as an event handler.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Return External
- Signal Exception

<D>

### 2C04 Branch Target Invalid

An attempt was made to branch to an instruction defined through an instruction pointer, but the instruction pointer was set by a program other than the one that issued the branch.

*Information Passed:*

- Instruction pointer causing the exception

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- All instructions that have a branch form
- Signal Exception

### 2C05 Activation in Use by Invocation

An attempt was made to de-activate a program that has an existing invocation which is not the invocation issuing the instruction.

*Information Passed:*

- Program

System pointer

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- De-activate Program
- Signal Exception

**2C08 Branch target defined by label pointer not valid**

The program that was running attempted to branch to a label pointer which points to a label than is not in the current procedure.

Change the program so that it only branches to a label in the currently running procedure.

*Information Passed:*

- Branch target

Label pointer

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

**2C10 Process object destroyed**

The process object pointer refers to a process object which has been destroyed.

*Information Passed:*

None.

*Instructions Causing Exception*

- Any instruction which has process object pointer operands.

**2C11 Process object access invalid**

An attempt has been made to reference a process object from another process which is not the owner of that object.

*Information Passed:*

None.

*Instructions Causing Exception*

- Any instruction which has process object pointer operands may signal this exception.

**2C12 Activation group access violation**

An inter-activation group access is not permitted based on the activation group access protection mechanism.

*Information Passed:*

- Source activation group mark
- Target activation group mark

UBin(4)

UBin(4)

*Instructions Causing Exception*

- Materialize Activation Attributes
- Materialize Invocation Attributes
- Cancel Invocation
- other instructions which use the activation group access protection mechanism.

**2C13 Activation group not found**

The activation group specified by an activation group identifier could not be found in the process. The activation group was either destroyed or never existed.

*Information Passed:*

- activation group number UBin(4)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Destroy Activation Group
- Materialize Activation Group Attributes
- Materialize Heap Space Attributes

**2C14** *Activation group in use*

The specified activation group contains an invocation (i.e., it is in use) and cannot be destroyed.

*Information Passed:*

- activation group number UBin(4)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Destroy Activation Group

**2C15** *Invalid operation for program*

The operation requested is not supported for this model of program. The system supports two distinct "models" of program objects. Not all operations are supported for all models of programs. (E.g., a new model program object cannot be deactivated.)

*Information Passed:*

- Program System pointer

*Instructions Causing Exception*

- deactivate program
- call program
- create bound program
- ...

**2C16** *Program activation not found*

The activation specified by an activation mark value does not exist. It was either destroyed or never created.

*Information Passed:*

- Activation mark Bin(4)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Materialize Activation Attributes

**2C17** *Default activation group not destroyed*

An attempt was made to destroy a default activation group using the Destroy Activation Group instruction. The operation is not permitted.

*Information Passed:*

- none

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Destroy Activation Group

**2C18** *Invalid source invocation*

A source invocation was specified that is older than the target invocation. The operation is not permitted.

*Information Passed:*

- Source invocation offset Bin(2)
- Operand number Bin(2)
- Reserved (zeros) Char(10)
- Base invocation used to determine source Invocation pointer

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Send Process Message
- Materialize Process Message
- Modify Process Message
- Cancel Invocations

**2C19 Invalid origin invocation**

An origin invocation was specified that is older than the source or target invocation. The operation is not permitted.

*Information Passed:*

- Origin invocation offset Bin(4)
- Operand number Bin(2)
- Reserved (zeros) Char(10)
- Base invocation used to determine origin Invocation pointer

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Send Process Message
- Materialize Process Message
- Modify Process Message
- Cancel Invocations
- Materialize Invocation Attributes
- Modify Invocation Attributes

**2C1A Invocation offset outside range of current stack**

An offset was specified that attempts to identify an invocation that is either newer than the newest invocation in the process or older than the oldest invocation in the process. The operation is not permitted.

*Information Passed:*

- Length of invocation identification Bin(2)
- Bit offset to invalid field Bin(2)
- Operand number Bin(2)
- Reserved (zeros) Char(10)
- Invocation identification value Char(\*)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Send Process Message
- Materialize Process Message
- Modify Process Message
- Cancel Invocations

- Materialize Invocation Attributes
- Modify Invocation Attributes
- Find Relative Invocation
- Sense Exception Description

**2C1B** *Invocation not eligible for operation*

An operation was attempted that is not valid for the specified invocation. The operation is not permitted.

*Information Passed:*

- none

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Modify Invocation Attributes

**2C1C** *Instruction not valid for invocation type*

An attempt was made to reference an invocation with an instruction that is not valid for the type of the invocation. The operation is not permitted.

*Information Passed:*

- none

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Materialize Invocation
- Materialize Instruction Attributes

**2C1D** *automatic storage overflow*

The automatic storage for the specified activation group has been exhausted. Further program execution within the activation group is not possible.

*Information Passed:*

- activation group mark

UBin(4)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- program call instructions
- procedure call instructions
- Modify Automatic Storage Allocation

**2C1E** *activation access violation*

The program could not be activated within an existing activation group. The program specifies an activation group access protection level which is incompatible with the existing activation group.

*Information Passed:*

- Program
- Target activation group mark

System pointer

UBin(4)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- program call instructions

**2C1F** *program signature violation*

The source program specifies a signature which is not supported by the service program. The service program interface has changed and the source program must be rebound.

*Information Passed:*

- Source program System pointer
- Service program System pointer
- Signature Char(16)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- program call instructions

**2C20 static storage overflow**

The static storage allocation for an activation group has been exceeded.

*Information Passed:*

- Activation group mark UBin(4)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- program call instructions

**2C21 program import invalid**

The actual type of a service program export does not agree with the type expected by a client program.

*Information Passed:*

- Client program System pointer
- Service program System pointer
- Export-ID UBin(4)
- Expected type UBin(2)
- Actual type UBin(2)

The type is encoded as:

0001 = procedure

0002 = data

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- program call instructions

**2C22 data reference invalid**

The client program imports a data item from a program which is active in a different activation group. Data items cannot be referenced across activation group boundaries.

*Information Passed:*

- Client program System pointer
- Service program System pointer
- Export-ID UBin(4)
- Client activation group mark UBin(4)
- Service activation group mark UBin(4)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- program call instructions



2C23 *imported object invalid*

The source program attempts to import items from an object which is not a service program.

*Information Passed:*

- Source program System pointer
- Object System pointer

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- program call instructions

2C24 *activation group export conflict*

The activation of one or more programs has resulted in conflicting specifications for activation group exports.

*Information Passed:*

- Reason UBin(4)
- Activation group mark UBin(4)
- Name (first 64 characters) Char(64)

The **Reason** field supplies more information as follows:

- 1 = multiple strong exports of the specified item were encountered.
- 2 = the specified item was already allocated within the activation group — a subsequent strong export was encountered for the same item.
- 3 = the specified item was already allocated within the activation group — a subsequent weak export with a conflicting length specification was encountered.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- program call instructions

2C25 *import not found*

The client program specifies a procedure or data import which is not found in the service program. The *export-ID* specified in the client program exceeds the *export count* of the service program. The client program must be rebound.

*Information Passed:*

- Client program System pointer
- Service program System pointer
- Export-ID UBin(4)
- Export count UBin(4)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- program call instructions

## 2E Resource Control Limit

### 2E01 User Profile Storage Limit Exceeded

The user profile specified insufficient auxiliary storage to create or extend a permanent object.

*Information Passed:*

- User profile System pointer

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- All create instructions creating a permanent object
- All instructions extending a permanent object

Any instruction which references bytes of data within a space object can cause an automatic extension of the space if the space has the attribute of being automatically extendible.

Therefore, this exception may be signaled for any instruction which has an operand which references bytes of data in a space.

- Signal Exception

### 2E02 Security audit journal failure

An entry could not be sent to the security audit journal.

*Information Passed:*

- Audit journal port System pointer
- Object being journaled System pointer  
(null for program adopt audits)
- Return code Char(2)

hex 0000 - No error detected  
 hex 0001 - No journal space attached  
 hex 0002 - Extend failure  
 hex 0003 - Damaged journal port  
 hex 0004 - Damaged journal space  
 hex 0005 - Maximum sequence number  
 hex 0006 - Journal failure  
 hex 0008 - Journal space off line  
 hex 0009 - Journal port off line  
 hex 0100 - This object type is not to be audited  
 hex 0200 - Invalid data length  
 hex 0300 - Object type table not defined  
 hex FF00 - Failure in VLIC auditing module

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- All instructions performing underlying operations that cause an audit record to be sent (program adopt, object change or reference, etc.).

## 32 Scalar Specification

### 3201 Scalar Type Invalid

A scalar operand did not have the following data types required by the instruction:

- Character
- Packed decimal
- Zoned decimal
- Binary
- Floating-point

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Any instruction using a late bound (data pointer) scalar operand
- Signal Exception

### 3202 Scalar Attributes Invalid

A scalar operand did not have the following attributes required by the instruction:

- Length
- Precision
- Boundary

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Any instruction using a late-bound (data pointer) scalar operand
- Any instruction that verifies the length of a character scalar in a space object operand
- Signal Exception

### 3203 Scalar Value Invalid

A scalar operand does not contain a correct value as required by the instruction.

*Information Passed:*

- |   |         |
|---|---------|
| • Length of data passed                       | Bin(2)  |
| • Bit offset to invalid field (relative to 0) | Bin(2)  |
| • Operand number                              | Bin(2)  |
| • Invalid data                                | Char(*) |

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Any instruction using a scalar operand
- Signal Exception

## 36 Space Management

### 3601 Space Extension/Truncation

A Modify Space Attributes instruction made one of the following invalid attempts to modify the size of the space:

- Truncate the space to a negative size.
- Extend or truncate a fixed size space.
- Extend a space beyond the space allowed in the referenced object.
- An operation which required an automatic extension of a space occurred when the extended space would not fit in the access group which contained it.
- Extend or truncate a space that has a hardware storage protection level of 01 or greater while running in user state.

For information on the maximum size space allowed for a particular object, refer to the *Limitations* topic within the definition of the create instruction for that type of object.

#### Information Passed

- Space System pointer

#### Instructions Causing Exception

- Activate Program
- Call External
- Modify Automatic Storage Allocation
- Modify Space Attributes
- Signal Exception
- Transfer Control
- Any instruction that invokes an external exception handler or an external event handler or an invocation exit
- Any instruction which has an operand which references bytes of data in a space.

Any instruction which references bytes of data within a space object can cause an automatic extension of the space if the space has the attribute of being automatically extendible.

### 3602 Invalid Space Modification

A Modify Space Attributes instruction made an attempt to modify the attributes of a space but the requested modification is invalid.

#### Information Passed:

- System pointer to the object
- Error code Char(2)

Error codes and their meanings are as follows:

| Code | Meaning   |
|------|---|
| 0001 | An attempt was made to modify the performance class attribute of the system object containing the space and the space was not a fixed length of size zero.                  |
| 0002 | An attempt was made to modify a system object to or from the state of having a fixed length space of size zero and the operation is invalid for that type of system object. |

- 0003 An attempt was made to modify a system object to the state of having a fixed length space and the automatic extend attribute. These are mutually exclusive.
- 0004 An attempt was made to modify the associated space of a program while running in user state on a system running at security level 40 or above. This combination is invalid.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Modify Space Attributes
- Signal Exception

## 38 Template Specification

### 3801 Template Value Invalid

A template did not contain a correct value required by the instruction.

*Information Passed:*

- Addressability to the template Space pointer
- Offset to invalid field in bytes Bin(2)  
 A value of 0 is the first byte in the template. An invalid field is considered to be the lowest-level character or numeric template entry that contains the information that is in error.
- Bit offset in invalid field or 0 Bin(2)  
 A 0 value indicates the leftmost bit in the invalid field.
- The number of bytes in the invalid field Bin(2)
- Instruction operand number Bin(2)  
 (The first operand in an instruction is 1.)
- Reason code Char(2)

The meaning of the reason code which may or may not be returned is specific to the definition of each instruction. Refer to the instruction definition to find out whether or not a meaningful value is returned. Unless otherwise stated, this field has no meaning.

The following instructions support setting the reason code.

- Create Dictionary
- Create Module
- Create Bound Program

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Any instruction that has a space pointer as a source operand
- Convert BSC to Character
- Convert Character to BSC
- Convert Character to MRJE
- Convert MRJE to Character
- Signal Exception
- Scan with Control

### 3802 Template Size Invalid

A source template was not large enough for this instruction.

*Information Passed:*

- Addressability to the template Space pointer

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Any instruction that has a space pointer that addresses a source template operand
- Signal Exception

### 3803 Materialization Length Exception

Less than 8 bytes was specified to be available in the receiver operand of a materialize instruction.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Any materialize instruction
- Any retrieve instruction
- Signal Exception

### 3A Wait Time-Out

#### 3A01 Dequeue

A specified time period elapsed, and a Dequeue instruction was not satisfied.

*Information Passed:*

- The queue waited for System pointer
- Time-out value Char(8)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Dequeue
- Signal Exception

#### 3A02 Lock

A specified time period elapsed, and a Lock Object instruction was not satisfied.

*Information Passed:*

- System pointer to the object waited for
- Time-out value Char(8)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Lock Object
- Signal Exception

#### 3A04 Space Location Lock Wait

A specified time period has elapsed and a Lock Space Location instruction has not been satisfied.

*Information Passed:*

- Space location Space pointer
- Time-out value Char(8)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Lock Space Location
- Signal Exception



### 3C Service

#### 3C01 Invalid Service Session State

The process is not in the proper service session for the request service command because of one of the following conditions:

- No service session exists for the process, and the command is other than start service session.
- The process is in service session, and the command is to start service session.
- The process is in service session, but a previous stop service session command was issued.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

#### 3C02 Unable to Start Service Session

The machine was unable to start a valid service session.

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Signal Exception

## 3E Commitment Control

### 3E01 Invalid Commit Block Status Change

An attempt was made to modify (to an invalid status) the status of a commit block attached to the issuing process. The exception data defines the attempted change to the commit block status.

#### Information Passed:

- Commit block System pointer
- Attempted status change Char(2)  
(as defined in the modifications options in the modification template for the Modify Commit Block instruction)

#### Instructions Causing Exception:

- Modify Commit Block
- Signal Exception

### 3E03 Commit Block Is Attached to Process

The identified commit block is attached to a process making the operation requested impossible. The process that has the commit block attached is identified in the exception data.

#### Information Passed:

- Commit block System pointer
- Process control space System pointer

#### Instructions Causing Exception:

- Destroy Commit Block
- Signal Exception

### 3E04 Commit Blocks Control Uncommitted Changes

The identified commit block controls uncommitted changes, and an attempt was made to detach the commit block from the issuing process.

#### Information Passed:

- Commit block System pointer

#### Instructions Causing Exception:

- Modify Commit Block
- Signal Exception

### 3E05 Operation Not Valid on Commit Block in Prepared State

The identified Commit Block is in a prepared state. The operation attempted is therefore not allowed. Signalled from #COCHECK module.

#### Information Passed:

- Commit block System pointer

#### Instructions Causing Exception:

- Modify Commit Block
- Activate Cursor
- Deactivate Cursor
- Delete Data Space Entry

- Destroy Commit Block
- Destroy Cursor
- Insert Data Space Entry
- Insert Sequential Data Space Entries
- Release Data Space Entries
- Retrieve Data Space Entry
- Update Data Space Entry

**3E06 Commitment Control Resource Limit Exceeded**

One of the resource limits for the commitment control functions has been reached.

*Information Passed:*

- Commit block System pointer
  - Condition code Char(1)
- Hex 01 = Lock limit exceeded  
 Hex 02 = Object list size exceeded  
 Hex 03 = Limit of attached commit blocks in the system exceeded  
 Hex 04 = Reposition cursor data limit exceeded

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Insert Data Space Entry
- Insert Sequential Data Space Entries
- Modify Commit Block
- Set Cursor
- Signal Exception

**3E08 Object Under Commitment Control Being Journalled Incorrectly**

All objects under commitment control must have their changes journalled through the same journal port as the commit block. An attempt was made to place an object under commitment control that did not meet this condition.

*Information Passed:*

- Object System pointer
- Journal port that must be used System pointer
- Journal port currently being used System pointer  
 (binary 0 if not currently being journalled)

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Modify Commit Block
- Signal Exception

**3E10 Operation Not Valid Under Commitment Control**

An operation was attempted on an object or through an object that was currently under commitment control. The operation is not supported under commitment control.

*Information Passed:*

- Object under commitment control System pointer

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Copy Data Space Entries

- De-activate Cursor
- Destroy Cursor
- Retrieve Sequential Data Space Entries
- Signal Exception

**3E11 Process Has Attached Commit Block**

An attempt was made to attach a second commit block to a process.

*Information Passed:*

- Commit block (attached) System pointer
- Commit block (attempted to attach) System pointer

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Modify Commit Block
- Signal Exception

**3E12 Objects Under Commitment Control**

An attempt was made to detach a commit block from a process that has objects under commitment control.

*Information Passed:*

- Commit block System pointer

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Modify Commit Block
- Signal Exception

**3E13 Commit Block Not Journalled**

An attempt was made to attach a commit block to a process, and the commit block was not being journalled.

*Information Passed:*

- Commit block System pointer

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Modify Commit Block
- Signal Exception

**3E14 Errors During Decommit**

Errors were detected during an execution of a Decommit instruction. The exception data indicates the type of errors detected.

*Information Passed:*

- Commit block System pointer
- Reserved (binary 0) Char(1)
- Decommit status Char(4)
  - Damaged Bit 0
    - 0 = Commit block is not damaged
    - 1 = Commit block is damaged
  - Reserved (binary 0) Bits 1-2
  - Partially damaged Bit 3

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| 0 = Not partially damaged  |            |
| 1 = Partially damaged  |            |
| — Reserved (binary 0)  | Bits 4-15  |
| — Decommit   | Bit 16     |
| 0 = All changes were decommitted                                 |            |
| 1 = Not all changes were decommitted                             |            |
| — Journal read errors  | Bit 17     |
| 0 = No journal read errors                                       |            |
| 1 = Journal read errors occurred during decommit                 |            |
| — Journal write errors   | Bit 18     |
| 0 = No journal write errors                                      |            |
| 1 = Journal write errors occurred during decommit                |            |
| — Partial damage to data space                                   | Bit 19     |
| 0 = No damage encountered  |            |
| 1 = Damage encountered on one or more data spaces                |            |
| — Damage to data space   | Bit 20     |
| 0 = No damage encountered  |            |
| 1 = Damage encountered on one or more data spaces                |            |
| — Function check   | Bit 21     |
| 0 = No function check encountered                                |            |
| 1 = Function check encountered                                   |            |
| — Reserved (binary 0)  | Bits 22-23 |
| — Constant = 100   | Bits 24-26 |
| — Reserved (binary 0)  | Bits 27-31 |
| • Reserved (binary 0)  | Char(7)    |
| • Journal entry sequence number of start<br>commit journal entry | Bin(4)     |

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Decommit
- Signal Exception

**3E15 Object Ineligible for Commitment Control**

The specified object is not eligible to be placed under commitment control.

*Information Passed:*

- Object System pointer
  - Reason code Char(1)
- Hex 01 = Object is a type that is not supported under commitment control  
Hex 02 = Object is a cursor that was not activated under the issuing process  
Hex 03 = Object is already under commitment control to this another commit block or to  
commit block  
Hex 04 = Object is a cursor that holds data space entry locks  
Hex 05 = Object is a join cursor

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- Modify Commit Block
- Signal Exception

**3E16 Object Ineligible for Removal from Commitment Control**

The specified object cannot be removed from commitment control.

**Information Passed:**

- Object System pointer
- Reason code Char(1)

Hex 01 = Object is a type that is not supported under commitment control

Hex 02 = Object is not under commitment control of this commit block

Hex 03 = Object is a cursor holding data space entry locks

**Instructions Causing Exception:**

- Modify Commit Block
- Signal Exception

**44 Domain Violation Exceptions****4401 Object Domain Violation**

An attempt was made to use a blocked instruction or to access a system domain object from a user state program. The system must be running at security level 40 to get this exception.

The execution of the instruction is suppressed when the exception is signalled.

*Information Passed:*

- Object. System pointer

*Instructions Causing Exception:*

- All blocked instructions.
- Any instruction that contains an operand that can be a pointer or be represented in storage (i.e. the value for the operand is to be retrieved from storage).







## Appendix A. Instruction Summary

This appendix provides an abbreviated format of all the instructions. The instructions are listed alphabetically by instruction mnemonic.

The summary list includes the following items for each instruction.

- *Operation Description*-The name of the instruction.
- *Mnemonic*-The mnemonic assigned to the instruction.
- *Operation Code*-The operation code assigned to the instruction.
- *Number of Operands*-The number of operands (excluding the extender) in the instruction.
- *Extender*-A description of the use of the extender field.
- *Operand Syntax*-The objects allowed as operands in the instruction.
- *Resulting Conditions*-The conditions that can be set at the end of the standard operation in order to perform a conditional branch or set a conditional indicator.
- *Optional Forms*-A notation for the optional forms that are allowed for the computational instructions.

**Note:** This summary list can also be used as an index to identify the page where a complete description of each instruction can be found in this manual. The page number is the last item included with each instruction in this summary.

The following paragraphs further describe the summary list format of the last five items in the previous list.

### Number Of Operands

Certain computational instructions allow a variable number of operands and are identified in the summary list by the following form:

number + B

The number defines the number of fixed operands. The B indicates the existence of variable operands (branch targets or indicator operands). A pair of braces around the letter indicates that the variable operands are optional.

### Extender Usage

Instructions that use an extender field have a brief description of the use of the extender. Hyphens indicate that the extender is not used. Brackets indicate that the extender is optional. The abbreviation BR/IND is used to mean branch or indicator options. The extender field defines the use of the branch or indicator operands with respect to the resulting conditions of the instruction.

### Resulting Conditions

Resulting conditions are the status result of the operation that is used for determining a branch target, if any.

The following conditions are indicated in the instruction summary.

|         |                          |
|---------|--------------------------|
| P, N, Z | Positive, negative, zero |
| Z, NZ   | Zero, not zero           |

|            |  |
|------------|--|
| H, L, E    | High, low, equal   |
| E, NE      | Equal, not equal   |
| P, Z       | Positive, zero   |
| H, L, E, U | High, low, equal, unequal  |
| Z, O, M    | Zero, ones, mixed  |
| [N]Z[N]C   | Zero and no carry, not zero and no carry, zero and carry, not zero and carry |
| S, NS      | Signaled, not signaled   |
| DE, I      | Exception deferred, exception ignored  |
| DQ, NDQ    | Dequeued, not dequeued   |

## Optional Forms

All instructions are classified as computational or noncomputational format. The format determines how the operation code is interpreted and whether optional forms of the instruction are allowed. (See "Instruction Format" in Chapter 1. "Introduction").

Certain computational instructions allow optional forms. The following optional forms can be specified:

- *B (Branch Form)*-The resulting conditions of the operation are compared with the branch options specified in the extender field. If one of the options is satisfied, a branch is executed to the branch target corresponding to the branch option.
- *I (Indicator Form)*-The resulting conditions of the operation are compared with the indicator options specified in the extender field. If one of the options is satisfied, the indicator corresponding to that option is assigned a value of hex F1. The other indicators referred to by the operation are assigned a value of hex F0.
- *S (Short Form)*-The operand that acts as a receiver in the instruction can also be one of the source operands.
- *R (Round Form)*-If the result of the operation is to be truncated before being placed in the receiver, rounding is performed.

## Instruction Stream Syntax

In this instruction summary, the following metalanguage is used to describe the machine interface instruction set operand syntax.

| Metasymbol | Meaning   |
|------------|---|
| { }        | Choose from a series of alternatives                                  |
| [ ]        | Enclose an optional entry or entries                                  |
|            | OR - used to separate alternatives                                    |
| .N.        | Repeat previous entry, up to N times                                  |
| ::=        | Is defined as - define a metavariable Metavariable ::= Metadefinition |
| DESC-{}    | Description of a metavariable in English                              |

### Notes:

1. Some of the computational op codes require an extender field while on other op codes an extender field is optional. Some computational op codes may be optionally short, or round.

## Program Object Definitions

ARG-LIST ::= DESC-{operand list which defines an argument list}

B-ARRAY ::= DESC-{array of binary variables} B-PT ::= DESC-{branch point} BIN ::= DESC-{binary} BIN[N] ::= DESC-{binary object with precision N} BT ::= DESC-{instruction number | relative instruction number | instruction pointer | branch pointer | IDL element | null}

C-ARRAY ::= DESC-{array of character string variables} CHAR ::= DESC-{character string which is either variable or constant} CHAR[N] ::= DESC-{string at least N bytes long} CHARV ::= DESC-{char variable} CHARC ::= DESC-{char constant}

D-PTR ::= DESC-{data pointer}

EXCP-DESC ::= DESC-{exception description}

F-BT ::= DESC-{instruction number | relative instruction number | branch point} F-P ::= DESC-{floating-point value}

IDL ::= DESC-{instruction definition list} IT ::= DESC-{char|numeric variable used as an indicator target} I-ENT PT ::= DESC-{internal entry point} I-PTR ::= DESC-{instruction pointer}

NULL ::= DESC-{indicates a null operand [X'0000']} NUMERIC ::= DESC-{binary | zoned | packed | numeric scalar} N-ARRAY ::= DESC-{array of numeric variable}

OP-LIST ::= DESC-{operand list}

PROCESS ::= DESC-{character string that names a process} PTR ::= DESC-{a 16-byte, 16-byte-boundary-aligned pointer element} P-ARRAY ::= DESC-{an array of 16 bytes, 16-byte-boundary-aligned pointer(s)}

SPDO ::= DESC-{space pointer data object} S-PTR ::= DESC-{system pointer} SPP ::= DESC-{space pointer} SPP-ARRAY ::= DESC-{an array of space pointer variables}

### Notes:

1. NUMERIC, CHAR, BIN, and UBIN may be followed by the special characters S, C, V. CHAR, BIN, and UBIN may also be followed by the special character I. These characters further qualify the object as being scalar, constant, variable or immediate, respectively.
2. All array objects are variable.

## System Object Declarations

ACTV ENTRY ::= DESC-{SPP that addresses an activation}  
AG ::= DESC-{S-PTR that addresses an access group}  
AL ::= DESC-{S-PTR that addresses an authorization list}  
CD ::= DESC-{S-PTR that addresses a controller description}  
CSD ::= DESC-{S-PTR that addresses a class of service description}  
CONTEXT ::= DESC-{S-PTR that addresses a context}  
CURSOR ::= DESC-{S-PTR that addresses a cursor}  
DATA SPACE ::= DESC-{S-PTR that addresses a data space}  
DCT ::= DESC-{S-PTR that addresses a dictionary}  
DS-INDEX ::= {S-PTR that addresses a data space index}  
INDEX ::= DESC-{S-PTR that addresses an index}  
LUD ::= DESC-{S-PTR that addresses a logical unit description}  
MD ::= DESC-{S-PTR that addresses a mode description}  
MODULE ::= DESC-{S-PTR that addresses a module}  
ND ::= DESC-{S-PTR that addresses a network description}  
PCS ::= DESC-{S-PTR to process control space}  
PROGRAM ::= DESC-{S-PTR that addresses a program}  
SPACE ::= DESC-{a system pointer pointing to a space object}  
QUEUE ::= DESC-{S-PTR that addresses a queue}  
QUEUE SPACE ::= DESC-{S-PTR that addresses a queue space}  
USER PROFILE ::= DESC-{S-PTR that addresses a user profile}

**Resulting Conditions Definitions**

ZC ::= DESC-{zero with carry}

[N]ZC ::= DESC-{[not] zero with carry}

Z[N]C ::= DESC-{zero with [no] carry}

[N]Z[N]C ::= DESC-{[not] zero with [no] carry}

CR ::= DESC-{completed record}

DE ::= DESC-{deferred}

DEN ::= DESC-{denormalized}

[N]DQ ::= DESC-{[Not]dequeued}

ECE ::= DESC-{escape code encountered}

E ::= DESC-{equal}

[N]F ::= DESC-{[Not]found}

H ::= DESC-{high}

I ::= DESC-{ignored}

IN ::= DESC-{infinity}

L ::= DESC-{low}

M ::= DESC-{mixed}

N ::= DESC-{negative}

NaN ::= DESC-{symbolic not-a-number}

NCO ::= DESC-{null compare operand}

NE ::= DESC-{not equal}

NRN ::= DESC-{normalized real number}

NS ::= DESC-{not signaled}

NZ ::= DESC-{not zero}

O ::= DESC-{ones}

P ::= DESC-{positive}

RO ::= DESC-{receiver overrun}

S ::= DESC-{signaled}

SE ::= DESC-{source exhausted}

TR ::= DESC-{truncated record}

U ::= DESC-{unequal}

UN ::= DESC-{unordered}

Z ::= DESC-{zero}



## Instruction Summary (Alphabetical Listing by Mnemonic)

| Operation Description                        | Mnemonic | Op Code | Number of Operands | Operand Syntax  | Resulting Conditions | Optional Forms | Page |
|--|----------|---------|--------------------|---|----------------------|----------------|------|
| Activate Program                             | ACTPG    | 0212    | 2                  | {ACTV ENTRY   PROGRAM}, PROGRAM                         | -                    | -              | 9-3  |
| Add Logical Character                        | ADDLC    | 1023    | 3 + [B]            | CHARV, CHARS.2., [BT.4.   IT.4.]                        | [N]Z[N]C             | [B   I, S]     | 2-3  |
| Add Numeric                                  | ADDN     | 1043    | 3 + [B]            | NUMERICV, NUMERICS.2., [BT.4.   IT.4.]                  | P, N, Z, UN          | [B   I, S, R]  | 2-6  |
| Add Space Pointer                            | ADDSP    | 0083    | 3                  | SPP.2., BINS  | -                    | -              | 5-3  |
| Allocate Heap Space Storage                  | ALCHSS   | 03B3    | 3                  | SPP, {BIN   NULL}, BIN                                  |                      |                | 7-3  |
| And  | AND      | 1093    | 3 + [B]            | CHARV, CHARS.2., [BT.3.   IT.3.]                        | Z, NZ                | [B   I, S]     | 2-10 |
| Branch                                       | B        | 1011    | 1                  | BT  | -                    | -              | 2-13 |
| Compute Array Index                          | CAI      | 1044    | 4                  | BINV, BINS.3.   | -                    | -              | 2-30 |
| Call Internal                                | CALLI    | 0293    | 3                  | I-ENT PT, {ARG LIST   NULL}, I-PTR                      | -                    | -              | 9-9  |
| Call External                                | CALLX    | 0283    | 3                  | PROGRAM   SPP, {ARG LIST   NULL}, {IDL   NULL}          | -                    | -              | 9-5  |
| Concatenate                                  | CAT      | 10F3    | 3                  | CHARV, CHARS.2.   | -                    | -              | 2-46 |
| Compute Date Duration                        | CDD      | 0424    | 4                  | NUMERICV, CHAR, CHAR, SPP                               | -                    | -              | 3-13 |
| Clear Bit in String                          | CLRBTS   | 102E    | 2                  | {CHARV   NUMERICV}, BINS                                | -                    | -              | 2-15 |
| Clear Invocation Exit                        | CLRIEXIT | 0250    | 0                  | -   | -                    | -              | 9-11 |
| Compute Math Function Using One Input Value  | CMF1     | 100B    | 3 + [B]            | NUMERICV, CHARS[2], NUMERICS, [BT.4.   IT.4.]           | P, N, Z, UN          | [B   I]        | 2-32 |
| Compute Math Function Using Two Input Values | CMF2     | 100C    | 4 + [B]            | NUMERICV, CHARS[2], NUMERICS, NUMERICS, [BT.4.   IT.4.] | P, N, Z, UN          | [B   I]        | 2-41 |
| Compare Bytes Left-Adjusted                  | CMPBLA   | 10C2    | 2 + B              | {CHARS   NUMERICS}.2., {BT.3.   IT.3.}                  | H, L, E              | {B   I}        | 2-17 |

| Operation Description                     | Mnemonic | Op Code | Number of Operands | Operand Syntax   | Resulting Conditions | Optional Forms | Page  |
|---|----------|---------|--------------------|--|----------------------|----------------|-------|
| Compare Bytes Left-Adjusted With Pad      | CMPBLAP  | 10C3    | 3 + B              | {CHARS   NUMERICS}.3.,<br>{BT.3.   IT.3.}  | H, L, E              | {B   I}        | 2-19  |
| Compare Bytes Right-Adjusted              | CMPBRA   | 10C6    | 2 + B              | {CHARS   NUMERICS}.2.,<br>{BT.3.   IT.3.}  | H, L, E              | {B   I}        | 2-21  |
| Compare Bytes Right-Adjusted With Pad     | CMPBRAP  | 10C7    | 3 + B              | {CHARS   NUMERICS}.3.,<br>{BT.3.   IT.3.}  | H, L, E              | {B   I}        | 2-23  |
| Compare Numeric Value                     | CMPNV    | 1046    | 2 + B              | NUMERICS.2.,<br>{BT.4.   IT.4.}  | H, L, E,<br>UN       | {B   I}        | 2-25  |
| Compare Pointer for Space Addressability  | CMPPSPAD | 10E6    | 2 + B              | {SPP   D-PTR},<br>{NUMERICV   CHARV   C-N-ARRAY   SPP   D-PTR},<br>{BT.4.   IT.4.} | H, L, E, U           | {B   I}        | 4-5   |
| Compare Pointer for Object Addressability | CMPPTRA  | 10D2    | 2 + B              | {D-PTR   SPP   S-PTR   I-PTR}.2.,<br>{BT.2.   IT.2.}                               | E, NE                | [B   I]        | 4-3   |
| Compare Pointers for Equality             | CMPPTRE  | 1012    | 3 + [B]            | { Any PTR }.2.   | E, NE                | [B   I]        | 4-7   |
| Compare Pointer Type                      | CMPPTRT  | 10E2    | 2 + B              | {D-PTR   SPP   S-PTR   I-PTR},<br>{CHARS[1]NULL},<br>{BT.2.   IT.2.}               | E, NE                | {B   I}        | 4-9   |
| Compare Space Addressability              | CMPSPAD  | 10F2    | 2 + B              | {CHARV   C-ARRAY   NUMERICV   N-ARRAY   PTR   P-ARRAY.2.},<br>{BT.4.   IT.4.}      | H, L, E, U           | {B   I}        | 5-5   |
| Compress Data                             | CPRDATA  | 1041    | 1                  | Space Pointer  | -                    | -              | 2-28  |
| Copy Bytes to Bits Arithmetic             | CPYBBTA  | 104C    | 4                  | {NUMERICV   CHARV},<br>BINI.2.,<br>{NUMERICV   CHARV}                              | -                    | -              | 2-124 |
| Copy Bytes to Bits Logical                | CPYBBTL  | 103C    | 4                  | {NUMERICV   CHARV},<br>BINI.2.,<br>{NUMERICV   CHARV}                              | -                    | -              | 2-126 |

| Operation Description                     | Mnemonic | Op Code | Number of Operands | Operand Syntax   | Resulting Conditions | Optional Forms | Page  |
|---|----------|---------|--------------------|--|----------------------|----------------|-------|
| Copy Bytes Left-Adjusted                  | CPYBLA   | 10B2    | 2                  | {NUMERICV   CHARV},<br>{NUMERICS   CHARS}              | -                    | -              | 2-110 |
| Copy Bytes Left-Adjusted With Pad         | CPYBLAP  | 10B3    | 3                  | {NUMERICV   CHARV},<br>{NUMERICS   CHARS}.2.           | -                    | -              | 2-112 |
| Copy Bytes Overlap Left-Adjusted          | CPYBOLA  | 10BA    | 2                  | {NUMERICV   CHARV}.2.                                  | -                    | -              | 2-114 |
| Copy Bytes Overlap Left-Adjusted With Pad | CPYBOLAP | 10BB    | 3                  | {NUMERICV   CHARV}.2.,<br>{NUMERICS   CHARS}           | -                    | -              | 2-116 |
| Copy Bytes Right-Adjusted                 | CPYBRA   | 10B6    | 2                  | {NUMERICV   CHARV},<br>{NUMERICS   CHARS}              | -                    | -              | 2-120 |
| Copy Bytes Right-Adjusted With Pad        | CPYBRAP  | 10B7    | 3                  | {NUMERICV   CHARV},<br>{NUMERICS   CHARS}.2.           | -                    | -              | 2-122 |
| Copy Bytes Repeatedly                     | CPYBREP  | 10BE    | 2                  | {NUMERICV   CHARV},<br>{NUMERICS   CHARS}              | -                    | -              | 2-118 |
| Copy Bits Arithmetic                      | CPYBTA   | 102C    | 4                  | {NUMERICV   CHARV}.2.,<br>BINI.2.                      | -                    | -              | 2-100 |
| Copy Bits Logical                         | CPYBTL   | 101C    | 4                  | {NUMERICV   CHARV}.2.,<br>BINI.2.                      | -                    | -              | 2-102 |
| Copy Bits With Left Logical Shift         | CPYBTLLS | 102F    | 3                  | {CHARV   NUMERICV},<br>{CHARS   NUMERICS},<br>CHARS[2] | -                    | -              | 2-104 |
| Copy Bits With Right Arithmetic Shift     | CPYBTRAS | 101B    | 3                  | {CHARV   NUMERICV},<br>{CHARS   NUMERICS},<br>CHARS[2] | -                    | -              | 2-106 |
| Copy Bits With Right Logical Shift        | CPYBTRLS | 103F    | 3                  | {CHARV   NUMERICV},<br>{CHARS   NUMERICS},<br>CHARS[2] | -                    | -              | 2-108 |
| Copy Bytes With Pointers                  | CPYBWP   | 0132    | 2                  | {CHARV   PTR},<br>{CHARV   PTR   NULL}                 | -                    | -              | 4-12  |

| Operation Description                           | Mnemonic | Op Code | Number of Operands | Operand Syntax                                    | Resulting Conditions | Optional Forms | Page  |
|---|----------|---------|--------------------|---|----------------------|----------------|-------|
| Copy Extended Characters Left-Adjusted With Pad | CPYECLAP | 1053    | 3                  | D-PTR<br>CHARS,D-PTR<br>CHARS,CHAR                | -                    | -              | 2-128 |
| Copy Hex Digit Numeric to Numeric               | CPYHEXNN | 1092    | 2                  | {NUMERICV   CHARV},<br>{NUMERICS   CHARS}         | -                    | -              | 2-132 |
| Copy Hex Digit Numeric to Zone                  | CPYHEXNZ | 1096    | 2                  | {NUMERICV   CHARV},<br>{NUMERICS   CHARS}         | -                    | -              | 2-134 |
| Copy Hex Digit Zone to Numeric                  | CPYHEXZN | 109A    | 2                  | {NUMERICV   CHARV},<br>{NUMERICS   CHARS}         | -                    | -              | 2-136 |
| Copy Hex Digit Zone to Zone                     | CPYHEXZZ | 109E    | 2                  | {NUMERICV   CHARV},<br>{NUMERICS   CHARS}         | -                    | -              | 2-138 |
| Copy Numeric Value                              | CPYNV    | 1042    | 2 + [B]            | NUMERICV,<br>NUMERICS,<br>[BT.4.   IT.4.]         | P, N, Z,<br>UN       | [B   I, R]     | 2-140 |
| Create Heap Space                               | CRTHS    | 03B2    | 2                  | BINV, SPP   |                      |                | 7-6   |
| Compute Time Duration                           | CTD      | 0454    | 4                  | NUMERICV,<br>CHAR,<br>CHAR, SPP                   | -                    | -              | 3-16  |
| Compute Timestamp Duration                      | CTSD     | 043C    | 4                  | NUMERICV,<br>CHAR,<br>CHAR, SPP                   | -                    | -              | 3-19  |
| Convert BSC to Character                        | CVTBC    | 10AF    | 3 + [B]            | CHARV,<br>CHARV[3],<br>CHARS,<br>{BT.3.   IT.3.}  | CR, SE,<br>TR        | [B   I]        | 2-48  |
| Convert Character to BSC                        | CVTCB    | 108F    | 3 + [B]            | CHARV,<br>CHARV[3],<br>CHARS,<br>{BT.2.   IT.2.}  | SE, RO               | [B   I]        | 2-52  |
| Convert Character to Hex                        | CVTCH    | 1082    | 2                  | CHARV,<br>CHARS                                   | -                    | -              | 2-55  |
| Convert Character to MRJE                       | CVTCM    | 108B    | 3 + [B]            | CHARV,<br>CHARV[13],<br>CHARS,<br>{BT.2.   IT.2.} | SE, RO               | [B   I]        | 2-57  |
| Convert Character to Numeric                    | CVTCN    | 1083    | 3                  | NUMERICV,<br>CHARS,<br>CHARS[7]                   | -                    | -              | 2-62  |
| Convert Character to SNA                        | CVTCS    | 10CB    | 3 + [B]            | CHARV,<br>CHARV[15],<br>CHARS,<br>{BT.2.   IT.2.} | SE, RO               | [B   I]        | 2-65  |

# Instruction Summary

| Operation Description                  | Mnemonic | Op Code | Number of Operands | Operand Syntax                           | Resulting Conditions | Optional Forms | Page  |
|--|----------|---------|--------------------|--|----------------------|----------------|-------|
| Convert Decimal Form to Floating-Point | CVTDFFP  | 107F    | 3                  | F-PS, NUMERICS, NUMERICS                 | -                    | -              | 2-74  |
| Convert External Form to Numeric Value | CVTEFN   | 1087    | 3                  | NUMERICV, CHARS, {CHARS[3]   NULL}       | -                    | -              | 2-76  |
| Convert Floating-Point to Decimal Form | CVTFPDF  | 10BF    | 3                  | NUMERICV, NUMERICV, F-PS                 | -                    | Round          | 2-79  |
| Convert Hex to Character               | CVTHC    | 1086    | 2                  | CHARV, CHARS                             | -                    | -              | 2-82  |
| Convert MRJE to Character              | CVTMC    | 10AB    | 3 + [B]            | CHARV, CHARV[6], CHARS, {BT.2.   IT.2.}  | SE, RO               | [B   I]        | 2-84  |
| Convert Numeric to Character           | CVTNC    | 10A3    | 3                  | CHARV, NUMERICS, CHARS[7]                | -                    | -              | 2-88  |
| Convert SNA to Character               | CVTSC    | 10DB    | 3 + [B]            | CHARV, CHARV[14], CHARS, {BT.3.   IT.3.} | SE, RO, ECE          | [B   I]        | 2-90  |
| Convert Date                           | CVTD     | 040F    | 3                  | CHAR, CHAR, SPP                          | -                    | -              | 3-22  |
| Convert Time                           | CVTT     | 041F    | 3                  | CHAR, CHAR, SPP                          | -                    | -              | 3-25  |
| Convert Timestamp                      | CVTTS    | 043F    | 3                  | CHAR, CHAR, SPP                          | -                    | -              | 3-28  |
| Decompress Data                        | DCPDATA  | 1051    | 1                  | SPP                                      | -                    | -              | 2-143 |
| De-activate Program                    | DEACTPG  | 0225    | 1                  | PROGRAM   NULL                           | -                    | -              | 9-12  |
| Decrement Date                         | DECD     | 0414    | 4                  | CHAR, CHAR, NUMERICV, SPP                | -                    | -              | 3-31  |
| Decrement time                         | DECT     | 0444    | 4                  | CHAR, CHAR, NUMERICV, SPP                | -                    | -              | 3-35  |
| Decrement timestamp                    | DECTS    | 040C    | 4                  | CHAR, CHAR, NUMERICV, SPP                | -                    | -              | 3-38  |
| Dequeue                                | DEQ      | 1033    | 3 + [B]            | CHARV, SPP, QUEUE, [BT.2.   IT.2.]       | DQ, NDQ              | [B   I]        | 12-3  |
| Destroy Heap Space                     | DESHS    | 03B1    | 1                  | BINV                                     |                      |                | 7-11  |

| Operation Description                   | Mnemonic | Op Code | Number of Operands | Operand Syntax                                   | Resulting Conditions | Optional Forms | Page  |
|---|----------|---------|--------------------|--|----------------------|----------------|-------|
| Divide                                  | DIV      | 104F    | 3 + [B]            | NUMERICV, NUMERICS.2., [BT.4.   IT.4.]           | P, N, Z, UN          | [B   I, S, R]  | 2-146 |
| Divide With Remainders                  | DIVREM   | 1074    | 4 + [B]            | NUMERICV, NUMERICS.2., NUMERICV                  | P, N, Z              | [B   I, S, R]  | 2-150 |
| Extended Character Scan                 | ECSCAN   | 10D4    | 4 + [B]            | B-ARRAY, CHARS, CHARS, CHARS[1], {BT.3.   IT.3.} | P, Z, ECE            | [B   I]        | 2-167 |
| Edit                                    | EDIT     | 10E3    | 3                  | CHARV, NUMERICS, CHARS                           | -                    | -              | 2-154 |
| End                                     | END      | 0260    | 0                  | -  | -                    | -              | 9-14  |
| Enqueue                                 | ENQ      | 036B    | 3                  | QUEUE, CHARS, SPP                                | -                    | -              | 12-9  |
| Ensure Object                           | ENSOBJ   | 0381    | 1                  | S-PTR  | -                    | -              | 19-3  |
| Exchange Bytes                          | EXCHBY   | 10CE    | 2                  | {CHARV   NUMERICV}.2.                            | -                    | -              | 2-162 |
| Extract Exponent                        | EXTREXP  | 1072    | 2 + [B]            | BINV, F-PS, {BT.4.   IT.4.}                      | NRN, DEN, IN, NaN    | [B   I]        | 2-171 |
| Extract Magnitude                       | EXTRMAG  | 1052    | 2 + [B]            | NUMERICV, NUMERICS, [BT.3.   IT.3.]              | P, Z, UN             | [B   I, S]     | 2-174 |
| Find Independent Index Entry            | FNDINXEN | 0494    | 4                  | SPP, INDEX, SPP.2.                               | -                    | -              | 11-12 |
| Find Relative Invocation Number         | FNDRINVN | 0543    | 3                  | BIN, {CHARS[48]   NULL}, SPP                     | -                    | -              | 21-3  |
| Free Heap Space Storage                 | FREHSS   | 03B5    | 1                  | SPP  | -                    | -              | 7-13  |
| Free Heap Space Storage from Mark       | FREHSSMK | 03B9    | 1                  | SPP  | -                    | -              | 7-15  |
| Insert Independent Index Entry          | INSINXEN | 04A3    | 3                  | INDEX, SPP.2.                                    | -                    | -              | 11-16 |
| Lock Object                             | LOCK     | 03F5    | 1                  | SPP  | -                    | -              | 13-3  |
| Lock Space Location                     | LOCKSL   | 03F6    | 2                  | SPP, CHARS[1]                                    | -                    | -              | 13-8  |
| Materialize Access Group Attributes     | MATAGAT  | 03A2    | 2                  | SPP, AG  | -                    | -              | 19-5  |
| Materialize Activation Group Attributes | MATAGPAT | 02D3    | 3                  | SPP, UBIN, CHARS[1]                              | -                    | -              | 9-19  |
| Materialize Authority List              | MATAL    | 01B3    | 3                  | SPP, AL, SPP                                     | -                    | -              | 17-7  |

# Instruction Summary

| Operation Description               | Mnemonic | Op Code | Number of Operands | Operand Syntax                             | Resulting Conditions | Optional Forms | Page                           |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---------|--------------------|--|----------------------|----------------|--------------------------------|
| Materialize Allocated Object Locks  | MATAOL   | 03FA    | 2                  | SPP, {S-PTR   SPDO}                        | -                    | -              | -- Heading 'MATAOL' unknown -- |
| Materialize Authority               | MATAU    | 0153    | 3                  | SPP, S-PTR, {USER PROFILE   NULL}          | -                    | -              | 17-3                           |
| Materialize Authorized Objects      | MATAUOBJ | 013B    | 3                  | SPP, USER PROFILE, CHARS[1]                | -                    | -              | 17-12                          |
| Materialize Authorized Users        | MATAUU   | 0143    | 3                  | SPP, S-PTR, CHARS[1]                       | -                    | -              | 17-20                          |
| Materialize Bound Program           | MATBPGM  | 02C6    | 2                  | SPP, S-PTR                                 | -                    | -              | 8-3                            |
| Materialize Context                 | MATCTX   | 0133    | 3                  | SPP, {CONTEXT   NULL}, CHARS               | -                    | -              | 16-3                           |
| Materialize Dump Space              | MATDMPS  | 04DA    | 2                  | SPP, S-PTR                                 | -                    | -              | 20-3                           |
| Materialize Data Space Record Locks | MATDRECL | 032E    | 2                  | SPP, SPP                                   | -                    | -              | 13-13                          |
| Materialize Exception Description   | MATEXCPD | 03D7    | 3                  | SPP, EXCP-DESC, CHARS[1]                   | -                    | -              | 14-3                           |
| Materialize Instruction Attributes  | MATINAT  | 0526    | 2                  | SPP, CHARS                                 | -                    | -              | 21-8                           |
| Materialize Invocation              | MATINV   | 0516    | 2                  | SPP.2.                                     | -                    | -              | 21-14                          |
| Materialize Invocation Attributes   | MATINVAT | 0533    | 3                  | SPP, {CHARS[48]   NULL}, SPP               | -                    | -              | 21-18                          |
| Materialize Invocation Entry        | MATINVE  | 0547    | 3                  | CHARV, {CHARV.1.   NULL}, CHARS.1.   NULL} | -                    | -              | 21-28                          |
| Materialize Invocation Stack        | MATINVS  | 0546    | 2                  | SPP, {S-PTR   NULL}                        | -                    | -              | 21-32                          |
| Materialize Machine Attributes      | MATMATR  | 0636    | 2                  | SPP, CHARS[2]   SPP                        | -                    | -              | 22-4                           |
| Materialize Machine Data            | MATMDATA | 0522    | 2                  | CHAR, {CHAR [2]   NUMERICV }               | -                    | -              | 22-30                          |
| Materialize Program                 | MATPG    | 0232    | 2                  | SPP, PROGRAM                               | -                    | -              | 8-24                           |

| Operation Description                 | Mnemonic | Op Code | Number of Operands | Operand Syntax                         | Resulting Conditions | Optional Forms | Page  |
|---------------------------------------|----------|---------|--------------------|--|----------------------|----------------|-------|
| Materialize Process Activation Groups | MATPRAGP | 0331    | 1                  | SPP                                    | -                    | -              | 18-3  |
| Materialize Process Attributes        | MATPRATR | 0333    | 3                  | SPP, {PCS   NULL}, CHARS[1]            | -                    | -              | 18-5  |
| Materialize Process Record Locks      | MATPRECL | 031E    | 2                  | SPP, SPP                               | -                    | -              | 13-20 |
| Materialize Process Locks             | MATPRLK  | 0312    | 2                  | SPP, {PCS   NULL}                      | -                    | -              | 13-17 |
| Materialize Process Message           | MATPRMSG | 039C    | 4                  | SPP, SPP, {SPP   NULL}, SPP            | -                    | -              | 15-3  |
| Materialize Pointer                   | MATPTR   | 0512    | 2                  | SPP, {S-PTR   D-PTR   SPP   I-PTR}     | -                    | -              | 21-37 |
| Materialize Pointer Locations         | MATPTRL  | 0513    | 3                  | SPP.2., BINS                           | -                    | -              | 21-46 |
| Materialize Queue Attributes          | MATQAT   | 0336    | 2                  | SPP, QUEUE                             | -                    | -              | 12-12 |
| Materialize Queue Messages            | MATQMSG  | 033B    | 3                  | SPP, S-PTR, CHARS[16]                  | -                    | -              | 12-16 |
| Materialize Resource Management Data  | MATRMD   | 0352    | 2                  | SPP, CHARS[8]                          | -                    | -              | 19-9  |
| Materialize Space Attributes          | MATS     | 0036    | 2                  | SPP, S-PTR                             | -                    | -              | 6-11  |
| Materialize Selected Locks            | MATSELLK | 033E    | 2                  | SPP, {S-PTR   SPP}                     | -                    | -              | 13-24 |
| Materialize System Object             | MATSOBJ  | 053E    | 2                  | SPP, S-PTR                             | -                    | -              | 21-48 |
| Materialize User Profile              | MATUP    | 013E    | 2                  | SPP, USER PROFILE                      | -                    | -              | 17-25 |
| Modify Automatic Storage Allocation   | MODASA   | 02F2    | 2                  | {SPP   NULL}, BINS                     | -                    | -              | 9-23  |
| Modify Exception Description          | MODEXCPD | 03EF    | 3                  | EXCP-DESC, SPP, CHARS[4]               | -                    | -              | 14-6  |
| Modify Independent Index              | MODINX   | 0452    | 2                  | S-PTR, CHARS[4]                        | -                    | -              | 11-23 |
| Modify Space Attributes               | MODS     | 0062    | 2                  | S-PTR, BINS                            | -                    | -              | 6-15  |
| Multiply                              | MULT     | 104B    | 3 + [B]            | NUMERICV, NUMERICS.2., [BT.4.   IT.4.] | P, N, Z, UN          | [B   I, S, R]  | 2-177 |



| Operation Description          | Mnemonic | Op Code | Number of Operands | Operand Syntax   | Resulting Conditions | Optional Forms | Page  |
|--------------------------------|----------|---------|--------------------|--|----------------------|----------------|-------|
| Negate                         | NEG      | 1056    | 2 + [B]            | NUMERICV,<br>NUMERICS,<br>[BT.4.   IT.4.]                                      | P, N, Z,<br>UN       | [B   I, S]     | 2-181 |
| No Operation                   | NOOP     | 0000    | 0                  | -  | -                    | -              | 10-3  |
| No Operation and Skip          | NOOPS    | 0001    | 1                  | UBINI  | -                    | -              | 10-4  |
| Not                            | NOT      | 108A    | 2 + [B]            | CHARV,<br>CHARS,<br>[BT.2.   IT.2.]  | Z, NZ                | [B   I, S]     | 2-184 |
| Or                             | OR       | 1097    | 3 + [B]            | CHARV,<br>CHARS.2.,<br>[BT.2.   IT.2.]   | Z, NZ                | [B   I, S]     | 2-187 |
| Override Program Attributes    | OVRPGATR | 0006    | 2                  | UBINI.2.   | -                    | -              | 10-5  |
| Remainder                      | REM      | 1073    | 3 + [B]            | NUMERICV,<br>NUMERICS.2.,<br>[BT.3.   IT.3.]                                   | P, N, Z              | [B   I, S]     | 2-190 |
| Retrieve Exception Data        | RETEXCPD | 03E2    | 2                  | SPP,<br>CHARS[1]   | -                    | -              | 14-9  |
| Remove Independent Index Entry | RMVINXEN | 0484    | 4                  | {SPP  <br>NULL},<br>INDEX, SPP.2.  | -                    | -              | 11-26 |
| Resolve Data Pointer           | RSLVDP   | 0163    | 3                  | D-PTR,<br>{CHARS[32]<br>  NULL},<br>{S-PTR  <br>NULL}                          | -                    | -              | 4-14  |
| Resolve System Pointer         | RSLVSP   | 0164    | 4                  | S-PTR,<br>{CHARS[34]<br>  NULL},<br>{S-PTR  <br>NULL},<br>{CHARS[2"  <br>NULL} | -                    | -              | 4-17  |
| Return From Exception          | RTNEXCP  | 03E1    | 1                  | SPP  | -                    | -              | 14-12 |
| Return External                | RTX      | 02A1    | 1                  | {BINS  <br>NULL}   | -                    | -              | 9-25  |
| Scale                          | SCALE    | 1063    | 3 + [B]            | NUMERICV,<br>NUMERICS,<br>BINS, [BT.4.  <br>IT.4.]                             | P, N, Z,<br>UN       | [B   I, S]     | 2-194 |
| Scan                           | SCAN     | 10D3    | 3 + [B]            | {BINV  <br>B-ARRAY},<br>CHARS.2.,<br>[BT.3.   IT.3.]                           | P, Z, NCO            | [B   I]        | 2-198 |
| Scan With Control              | SCANWC   | 10E4    | 4 + [B]            | SPP,<br>CHARV[8],<br>CHARS[4],<br>[BT.4.   IT.4.]                              | H, L, E,<br>NF       | [B, I]         | 2-201 |

| Operation Description               | Mnemonic | Op Code | Number of Operands | Operand Syntax  | Resulting Conditions | Optional Forms | Page  |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---------|--------------------|---|----------------------|----------------|-------|
| Search                              | SEARCH   | 1084    | 4 + [B]            | {BINV   B-ARRAY},<br>{N-ARRAY   C-ARRAY},<br>{CHARV   NUMERICV},<br>BINS, {BT.2.   IT.2.} | P, Z                 | [B   I]        | 2-209 |
| Set Access State                    | SETACST  | 0341    | 1                  | SPP   | -                    | -              | 19-31 |
| Set Argument List Length            | SETALLEN | 0242    | 2                  | ARG-LIST,<br>BINS   | -                    | -              | 9-27  |
| Set Bit in String                   | SETBTS   | 101E    | 2                  | {CHARV   NUMERICV},<br>BINS   | -                    | -              | 2-212 |
| Set Data Pointer                    | SETDP    | 0096    | 2                  | D-PTR<br>{NUMERICV   N-ARRAY   CHARV   C-ARRAY}   | -                    | -              | 5-7   |
| Set Data Pointer Addressability     | SETDPADR | 0046    | 2                  | D-PTR<br>{NUMERICV   N-ARRAY   CHARV   C-ARRAY}   | -                    | -              | 5-9   |
| Set Data Pointer Attributes         | SETDPAT  | 004A    | 2                  | D-PTR,<br>CHARS[7]  | -                    | -              | 5-11  |
| Set Heap Space Storage Mark         | SETHSSMK | 03B6    | 2                  | SPP, BIN  | -                    | -              | 7-25  |
| Set Invocation Exit                 | SETIEXIT | 0252    | 2                  | S-PTR, ARG<br>LIST NULL   | -                    | -              | 9-29  |
| Set Instruction Pointer             | SETIP    | 1022    | 2                  | I-PTR, F-BT   | -                    | -              | 2-214 |
| Set System Pointer From Pointer     | SETSPFP  | 0032    | 2                  | S-PTR,<br>{D-PTR   SPP<br>  S-PTR   I-PTR}  | -                    | -              | 4-24  |
| Set Space Pointer                   | SETSPP   | 0082    | 2                  | SPP, {CHARV   C-ARRAY   NUMERICV   N-ARRAY   PTR   P-ARRAY}                               | -                    | -              | 5-14  |
| Set Space Pointer with Displacement | SETSPPD  | 0093    | 3                  | SPP, {CHARV   C-ARRAY   NUMERICV   N-ARRAY   PTR   P-ARRAY}                               | -                    | -              | 5-16  |
| Set Space Pointer From Pointer      | SETSPFP  | 0022    | 2                  | SPP, {S-PTR   D-PTR   SPP}  | -                    | -              | 4-22  |

| Operation Description                  | Mnemonic | Op Code | Number of Operands | Operand Syntax                                       | Resulting Conditions | Optional Forms   | Page  |
|--|----------|---------|--------------------|--|----------------------|------------------|-------|
| Set Space Pointer Offset               | SETSPPO  | 0092    | 2                  | SPP, BINS  | -                    | -                | 5-18  |
| Signal Exception                       | SIGEXCP  | 10CA    | 2 + [B]            | SPP.2., [BT.2.   IT.2.]                              | I, DE                | [B   I]          | 14-19 |
| Sense Exception Description            | SNSEPCPD | 03E3    | 3                  | SPP.3.   | -                    | -                | 14-15 |
| Store and Set Computational Attributes | SSCA     | 107B    | 3                  | CHARV[5],<br>{CHARS[5]   NULL},<br>{CHARS[5]   NULL} | -                    | -                | 2-216 |
| Store Parameter List Length            | STPLEN   | 0241    | 1                  | BINV   | -                    | -                | 9-31  |
| Store Space Pointer Offset             | STSPPO   | 00A2    | 2                  | BINV, SPP  | -                    | -                | 5-20  |
| Subtract Logical Character             | SUBLC    | 1027    | 3 + [B]            | CHARV,<br>CHARS.2.,<br>[BT.4.   IT.4.]               | Z, NZ, C,<br>NC      | [B   I, S]       | 2-220 |
| Subtract Numeric                       | SUBN     | 1047    | 3 + [B]            | NUMERICV,<br>NUMERICS.2.,<br>[BT.4.   IT.4.]         | P, N, Z,<br>UN       | [B   I, S,<br>R] | 2-223 |
| Subtract Space Pointer Offset          | SUBSPP   | 0087    | 3                  | SPP.2., BINS   | -                    | -                | 5-22  |
| Subtrace Space Pointer For Offset      | SUBSPFO  | 0033    | 3                  | BINS, SPP.2.   | -                    | -                | 5-24  |
| Test Authority                         | TESTAU   | 10F7    | 3                  | {CHARV[2]   NULL},<br>{S-PTR   SPDO},<br>CHARS[2]    | -                    | -                | 17-29 |
| Test Extended Authorities              | TESTEAU  | 10FB    | 3                  | {CHARV[8]   NULL},<br>CHARS[8],<br>{BINS[2]   NULL}  | -                    | -                | 17-34 |
| Test Exception                         | TESTEXCP | 104A    | 2 + [B]            | SPP,<br>EXCP-DESC,<br>[BT.2.   IT.2.]                | S, NS                | [B   I]          | 14-24 |
| Trim Length                            | TRIML    | 10A7    | 3                  | NUMERICV,<br>CHARS,<br>CHARS[1]                      | -                    | -                | 2-240 |
| Test Bit in String                     | TSTBTS   | 100E    | 2 + B              | {CHARS   NUMERICS},<br>BINS, {BT.2.   IT.2.}         | Z, O                 | {B   I}          | 2-229 |
| Test Bits Under Mask                   | TSTBUM   | 102A    | 2 + B              | {CHARS   NUMERICS}.2.,<br>{BT.3.   IT.3.}            | Z, O, M              | {B   I}          | 2-231 |
| Test and Replace Characters            | TSTRPLC  | 10A2    | 2                  | CHARV,<br>CHARS                                      | -                    | -                | 2-227 |

| Operation Description | Mnemonic | Op Code | Number of Operands | Operand Syntax                             | Resulting Conditions | Optional Forms | Page  |
|-----------------------|----------|---------|--------------------|--|----------------------|----------------|-------|
| Unlock Object         | UNLOCK   | 03F1    | 1                  | SPP  | -                    | -              | 13-30 |
| Unlock Space Location | UNLOCKSL | 03F2    | 2                  | SPP, CHARS[1]                              | -                    | -              | 13-33 |
| Verify                | VERIFY   | 10D7    | 3 + [B]            | {BINV   B-ARRAY}, CHARS.2, [BT.2.   IT.2.] | P, Z                 | [B   I]        | 2-242 |
| Wait On Time          | WAITTIME | 0349    | 1                  | CHARS.16.                                  | -                    | -              | 18-18 |
| Transfer Control      | XCTL     | 0282    | 2                  | PROGRAM   SPP, {ARG LIST   NULL}           | -                    | -              | 9-33  |
| Transfer Object Lock  | XFRLOCK  | 0382    | 2                  | PCS, SPP                                   | -                    | -              | 13-27 |
| Translate             | XLATE    | 1094    | 4                  | CHARV, CHARS, {CHARS   NULL}, CHARS        | -                    | -              | 2-233 |
| Translate With Table  | XLATEWT  | 109F    | 3                  | CHARV, CHARS, CHARS                        | -                    | -              | 2-235 |
| Exclusive Or          | XOR      | 109B    | 3 + [B]            | CHARV, CHARS.2., [BT.2.   IT.2.]           | Z, NZ                | [B   I, S]     | 2-164 |



# Index

## A

- absolute instruction number 1-1
- activation entry 9-3
- activation group 9-3, 9-7, 9-20, 9-21, 9-35, 18-3
  - activation count 9-21
  - heap space count 9-21
  - mark 9-21
  - name 9-21
  - root program 9-21
  - storage address recycling key 9-21
- activation group heap list 9-20
- activation group mark 18-3
- activation mark 9-3
- activation entry 9-7, 9-35
- array 1-4
- authorization management instructions 17-1
- authorization required 1-3
- automatic storage frame (ASF) 9-7, 9-35

## B

- byte string 1-1

## C

- Character 1-3
- compound operands 1-1
  - explicit base 1-2
  - subscript 1-1
  - substring 1-2
- computation and branching instructions 2-1
- context management instructions 16-1

## D

- data pointer 1-4
- data pointer defined scalar 1-4
- dump space management instructions 20-1

## E

- Exceptions 1-3, 14-1
  - management instructions 14-1
  - specifications 23-1
- external entry point 9-7, 9-35

## H

- heap management instructions 7-1

## I

- immediate operands 1-1
- IMPL (initial microprogram load) 22-5

- IMPLA (initial microprogram load abbreviated) 22-5
- independent index instructions 11-1
- initial microprogram load (IMPL) 22-5
- initial microprogram load abbreviated (IMPLA) 22-5
- instruction definition list element 1-4
- instruction format
  - authorization required 1-3
  - Exceptions 1-3
  - limitations 1-3
  - lock enforcement 1-3
  - resultant conditions 1-3
- instruction forms
  - number 1-4
  - pointer 1-4
- instruction summary A-1
- invocation count 9-7, 9-13, 9-35
- invocation exit and deactivation 9-13
- invocation mark 9-7, 9-35
- invocation number 9-7, 9-35
- invocation type 9-7, 9-35
- IPL (initial program load) 22-11

## L

- LEAR (lock exclusive allow read) 13-4
- LENR (lock exclusive no read) 13-4
- limitations 1-3
- lock enforcement 1-3
- lock exclusive allow read (LEAR) 13-4
- lock exclusive no read (LENR) 13-4
- lock management instructions 13-1
- lock shared read (LSRD) 13-4
- lock shared read only (LSRO) 13-4
- LSRD (lock shared read) 13-4
- LSRO (lock shared read only) 13-4
- LSUP (lock shared update) 13-4

## M

- machine initialization status record (MISR) 22-5, 22-11
- machine interface support functions instructions 22-1
- machine observation instructions 21-1
- mark count 9-7, 9-35
- Materialize Invocation Attributes 9-7, 9-35
- MISR (machine initialization status record) 22-5, 22-11

## N

- null operands 1-1

## **O**

object  
object mapping table 8-25  
ODT object 1-1  
Operand  
    Syntax 1-3

## **P**

pointer 1-4  
pointer/name resolution addressing instructions 4-1  
process management instructions 18-1  
program  
    execution instructions 9-1  
    management instructions 8-1  
program creation control instructions 10-1  
program entry procedure 9-7, 9-35

## **Q**

queue management instructions 12-1  
queue space management instructions 15-1

## **R**

relative instruction number 1-4  
resource management instructions 18-19  
resultant conditions 1-3

## **S**

Scalar 1-3  
signed binary 1-1  
simple operands 1-1  
space addressing instructions 5-1, 5-3  
space management instructions 6-1  
space pointer 1-4  
static storage 9-3  
static storage initialization 9-3  
Syntax definition  
    array 1-4  
    Character 1-3  
    data pointer 1-4  
    data pointer defined scalar 1-4  
    instruction definition list element 1-4  
    instruction number 1-4  
    instruction pointer 1-4  
    Numeric 1-3  
    pointer 1-4  
    relative instruction number 1-4  
    Scalar 1-3  
    space pointer 1-4  
    space pointer data object 1-4  
    system pointer 1-4  
    variable scalar 1-4  
system pointer 1-4

## **U**

unsigned binary 1-1

## **V**

variable scalar 1-4  
Vital Product Data (VPD) 22-17  
VPD (vital product data) 22-17

# Customer Satisfaction Feedback

Application System/400  
Machine Interface  
Functional Reference  
Version 2

Publication No. SC41-8226-02

Overall, how would you rate this manual?

|                      | Very Satisfied | Satisfied | Dissatisfied | Very Dissatisfied |
|----------------------|----------------|-----------|--------------|-------------------|
| Overall satisfaction |                |           |              |                   |

How satisfied are you that the information in this manual is:

|                          |  |  |  |  |
|--------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| Accurate                 |  |  |  |  |
| Complete                 |  |  |  |  |
| Easy to find             |  |  |  |  |
| Easy to understand       |  |  |  |  |
| Well organized           |  |  |  |  |
| Applicable to your tasks |  |  |  |  |
| THANK YOU!               |  |  |  |  |

Please tell us how we can improve this manual:

---

---

---

---

---

May we contact you to discuss your responses? ☐ Yes ☐ No

Phone: ( ) Fax: ( )

To return this form:

- Mail it
- Fax it

United States and Canada: 800+937-3430

Other countries: (+1)+507+253-5192

- Hand it to your IBM representative.

Note that IBM may use or distribute the responses to this form without obligation.

Name

Address

Company or Organization

Phone No.





Fold and Tape

Please do not staple

Fold and Tape



NO POSTAGE  
NECESSARY  
IF MAILED IN THE  
UNITED STATES



## BUSINESS REPLY MAIL

FIRST CLASS MAIL PERMIT NO. 40 ARMONK, NEW YORK

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

ATTN DEPT 245  
IBM CORPORATION  
3605 HWY 52 N  
ROCHESTER MN 55901-9986



Fold and Tape

Please do not staple

Fold and Tape